



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

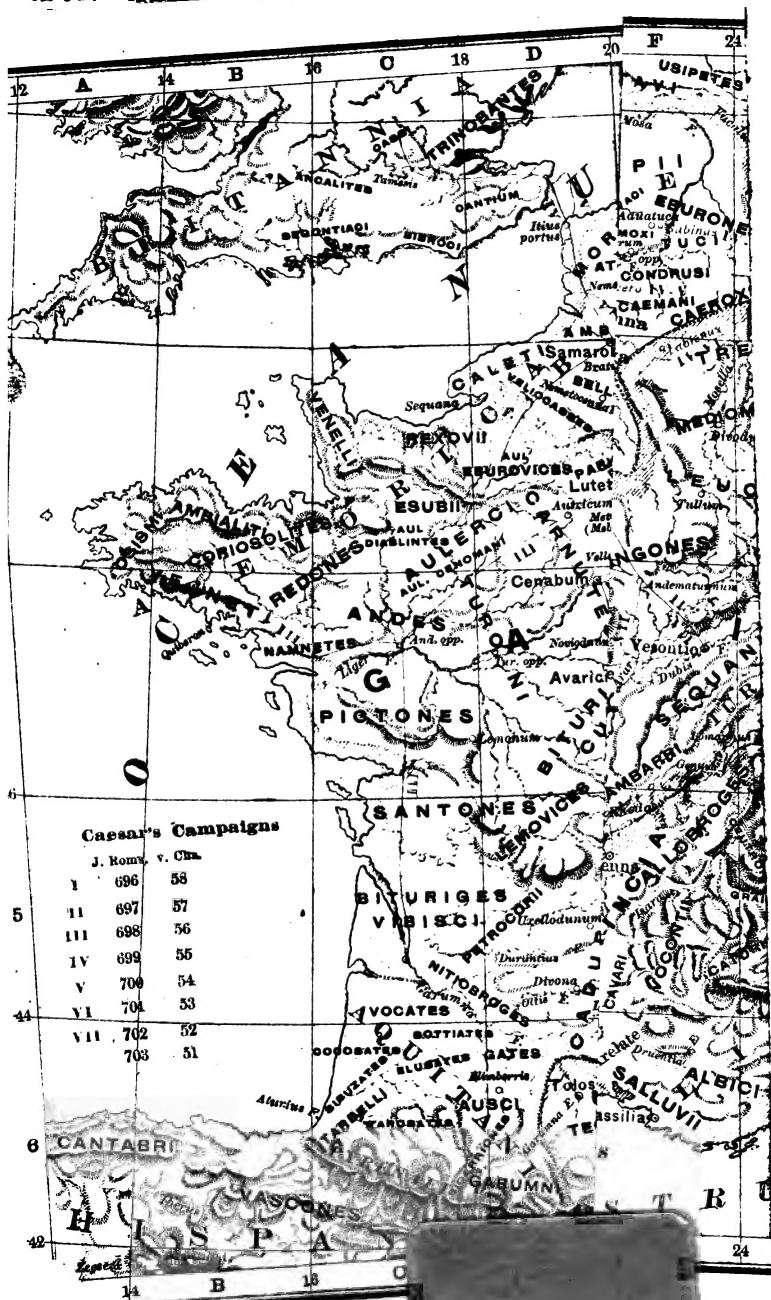
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>







Educ T 1000.540.895.



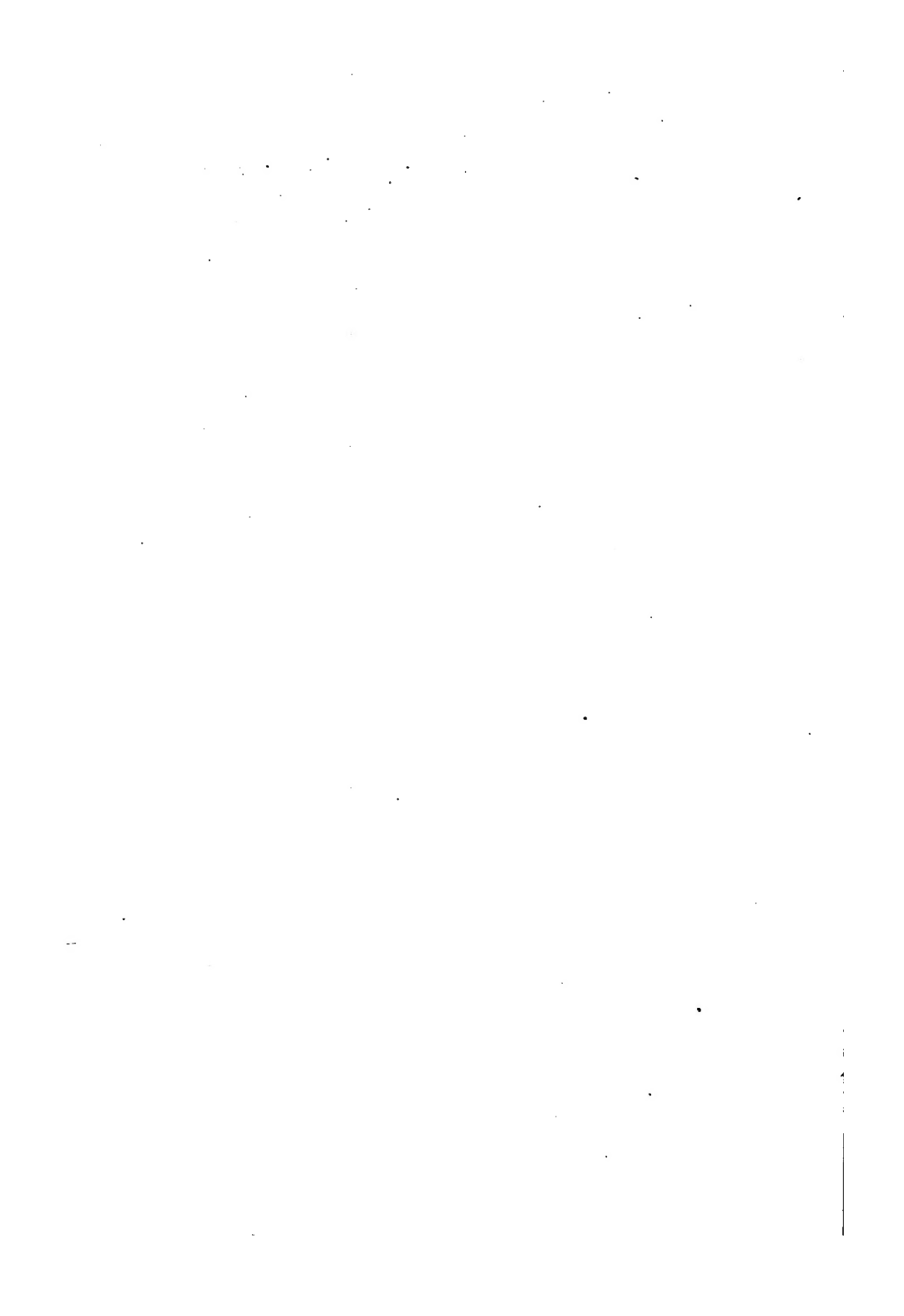
3 2044 097 076 806



**Harvard College Library**

THE GIFT OF

**GINN AND COMPANY**



**Inter-Collegiate Latin Series.**

---

DE BELLO GALLICO LIBRI VII.

# CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

WITH A LIFE OF CAESAR,  
GEOGRAPHY AND PEOPLE OF  
GAUL, HISTORY OF THE MILITARY ART IN  
CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES; SPECIAL VOCABULARIES  
ON THE INDUCTIVE PLAN; HISTORICAL AND GRAMMATICAL  
NOTES, A GENERAL REFERENCE VOCABULARY, AND AN INDEX

BY

C. M. LOWE, Ph. D.

HEIDELBERG UNIVERSITY

AND

J. T. EWING, M. A.

ALMA COLLEGE

THE TEXT OF KRANER.

CHICAGO

ALBERT, SCOTT AND CO.

1895

Edw. T 1000.540.895.2

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
GINN & COMPANY  
MARCH 17, 1927

*Copyright, 1893,*  
**By C. M. Lowe.**

Wheaton College Press.



## PREFACE.

---

The Commentaries of Caesar are widely used as the best introduction to the study of classical Latin. The purity and simplicity of the diction and the importance of the subject matter justify this usage. This new edition has been prepared to meet the student's needs in attaining a thorough knowledge of the principles of the Latin language and a familiarity with Caesar's writings commensurate with their great historical and literary importance.

The vocabularies, notes, illustrations and explanatory matter have been placed on the same page with the text, thus saving the student's time, which is uselessly spent in turning leaves and searching for explanations which are here placed immediately before him. At the same time, self reliance is secured by the use of a separate text in the class room, without either notes or vocabulary. The special vocabularies have been arranged so that the first four books and the rest of the annotated text may be read consecutively, or the war with Ariovistus (Bk. I. chaps. 30-54) may be omitted and the valuable, and less familiar, matter substituted from the annotated chapters of Bks. V-VII. An opportunity for sight reading is afforded in the unannotated parts of these latter books.

To insure correct pronunciation the quantity of all long vowels has been marked throughout the text, notes, and vocabularies. In this we have followed the exceptionally correct and complete marking of Lewis' Elementary Latin Dictionary. This plan has been adopted at the suggestion of Dr. W. G. Hale of Chicago University, who has inaugurated this system, so helpful to Latin students in acquiring a correct pronunciation.

The application of the inductive method to the notes with the system of references adopted has enabled us to furnish a constant review of necessary facts and principles without unduly increasing the size of the book.

The text of Kraner is given without alteration as it seems better to present the exact results of the ablest textual critic of the commentaries, free from the preferences and prejudices which mark certain collated texts.

The special vocabularies, based on the lexicons of Lewis, Harper, and Gepp and Haigh, are made with reference to the derivation and relation of the words defined, to their special use in the text treated, and to their later use by the student. The General Reference vocabulary encourages thoroughness by directing the student to the passage where the word is first found and fully explained. In the preparation of the notes free use has been made of the latest and best English, French, and German authorities. The editions of Brackenbury, Compton, Bond and Walpole, Long, Peskitt, Moberly, Benoist and Dosson, Menge, Rheinhard, Kraner, and Procksch, have given much valuable assistance. The valuable lives of Caesar, by Col. Dodge, Warde Fowler, Froude, Napoleon III; Rustow's *Heerwesen* and *Kriegfuhrung*; and the histories of Duruy, Long, Merivale, Mommsen, etc., have been constantly consulted.

Much credit is due to Mr. H. F. Scott, who has given the advance sheets and proofs his careful revision, and to Mr. E. W. Dresser and his associates of the Wheaton College Press, for the mechanical execution of the work.

Dr. H. W. Johnston of Illinois College, revised the earlier chapters and to him and Dr. Wm. G. Hale, the editors are under obligations for valuable suggestions. Friendly criticism is invited that the book may most completely serve its purpose.

C. M. LOWE.

J. T. EWING.

#### PUBLISHERS' NOTICE.

The authors finding their time so thoroughly taken up with professional and other literary labors have made an arrangement whereby a thorough revision of their work should be made to rid it of some small mistakes that are likely to appear in the first edition of any book.

This work has been committed to a thorough scholar who has been for many years a successful teacher of preparatory Latin, and a new set of plates throughout has been made. The book is therefore commended to teachers with entire confidence in its accuracy and thoroughness. The attention of teachers is called to the figures or star following the definitions in the page vocabularies. The figures indicate the number of times a word is used in the first four books of the Gallic War, while the star follows all words used five times or more.

August 10th, 1894.

THE PUBLISHERS.

## SUGGESTIONS TO THE STUDENT OF CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES.

---

1. Caesar's *De Bello Gallico* is a masterpiece in literature and classic Latin which demands and repays the most earnest study.

2. Learn thoroughly each new word as it occurs in the special vocabularies as it is not repeated and valuable time should not be required to hunt it up again in the general vocabulary. Observe carefully the root meaning of each word and the force of the various words and syllables used in compounding words and you will be able to define many new words for yourself and to add to the definitions given.

3. Familiarize yourself with the system of references employed throughout this book and explained on page 65. Make sure of the principle explained by the reference to the grammars and thereafter only use the reference when in doubt, but do not leave any word until its form and construction are entirely clear.

4. You will best and most really learn the Latin by receiving the thought in the order of the Latin words, just as they stand in the sentence. The meaning of a Latin sentence is not certain until its close. You must therefore suspend your judgment until the sentence is ended. Establish, as far as possible, the meaning of each word as presented. If the word is inflected and several constructions are possible, select the one most likely and then modify this judgment, if required, by the thought as developed in the succeeding words. It will soon become natural to receive the thought of a simple sentence, like *pater filium cārē amat*, 'the father his son dearly loves,' without translating into English at all. The more complex and difficult sentences will yield to the same method and the language will become to you replete with the interest felt by the Romans themselves, when received in its own natural and significant order. You will thus learn to think in Latin which is essential to oral or written Latin composition as well as to a living knowledge of the language.

5. When required to translate, let your translation be in the best English you can command. If you retain the Latin idioms by a so-called 'literal' translation, you make but half a translation and do violence to both tongues. A barbarous, corrupt English style is formed by such 'literal' translations, while this exercise should be most helpful in en-

riching and refining your forms of expression. Thus, in the transfer into English, the frequent use of the participle is to be avoided and a clause may be substituted. Test each ablative absolute and if it denotes time, render by a clause with *when*; or if it denotes cause render by a clause with *since*, and so on. We must, however, vary the 'when' with *after* and the 'since' with *because*, etc. We will translate *militē missō*, 'when he had sent the soldier,' 'after he had sent—,' 'though he sent—,' 'on sending—,' 'because he sent—,' or otherwise, as variety of expression and the connection may require. The Latin sometimes drops words which are required in English or inserts or repeats them contrary to our usage. Thus Caesar says *duo itinera erant, quibus itineribus*, where good English requires the omission of *itineribus* in the translation. The use of the demonstrative and relative pronoun and of the connectives in the Latin differs from the English. In all these cases the comprehensive rule for the translator is, while noting the structure of the Latin, to follow the English idiom. Particular words are also to be rendered by terms appropriate to their connection. *Haec* or *hae res* is not truly translated by the spiritless term, 'these things,' but we will say 'these events, dangers, obstacles, accidents, advantages, means, supplies, plans' as we observe what kind of 'things, matters, or circumstances' is really meant.

6. Note the favorite forms of expression in Caesar and commit some of these to memory. Such memorized passages will be helpful in all your future course.

7. In the preparation of your lesson read aloud the Latin text, receiving the thought according to suggestion 4. You will thus not merely practice the pronunciation but the words will be more vividly fixed in the mind.

8. Employ the words used by Caesar in forming new sentences, either in conversation or in composition. This practice will be found a valuable aid in acquiring the ability to write or speak Latin.

9. Possess at least one of the works on Caesar mentioned in the 'References for Reading' or in the Preface of this book and read it in connection with the particular part of the Commentaries assigned for your study.

## CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE.
PREFACE . . . . .	3
SUGGESTIONS TO THE STUDENT OF CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES .	5
CAESAR AND HIS TIMES . . . . .	9
CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE . . . . .	28
GEOGRAPHY AND PEOPLE OF GAUL . . . . .	31
THE MILITARY ART IN CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES . . . . .	40
REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	65
MAPS OF GAUL AND FRANCE . . . . .	
BOOK I. INTRODUCTION, TEXT, VOCABULARIES, NOTES . . .	67
" II.       "       "       "       " . . .	189
" III.     "       "       "       " . . .	251
" IV.     "       "       "       " . . .	294
" V.      "       "       "       " . . .	341
" VI.     "       "       "       " . . .	390
" VII.    "       "       "       " . . .	428
INDEX TO NOTES AND INTRODUCTION . . . . .	496
LATIN ENGLISH REFERENCE VOCABULARY . . . . .	509





# CAESAR AND HIS TIMES.

---

## Birth and Family.

**B. C.** On July 12, 102 B. C., was born Caius Julius Caesar, **1** destined to make for himself "the greatest name in history." The Julian *gēns* had a lofty lineage, and numbered a long line of distinguished sons. The branch to which Caesar belonged had been prominent in the Republic for more than a hundred years. A Caesar had been consul in 157, the uncle of Gaius Julius in 91, and still another of the family in 90. His grandfather and father, however, reached the praetorship only. The prestige of the family was increased by the marriage of Caesar's aunt to the great Marius. Aurelia, the mother of Caesar, belonged to a prominent plebeian family of the Aurelian *gēns*, the Cottas.

## Education and Political Training.

The year of Caesar's birth was signalized by the defeat of **2** the Germans by Marius at Aquae Sextiae. The greatest danger that had threatened Rome since Hannibal's invasion was averted, and Marius was the hero of the hour. Then followed years of "storm and stress" in the political world, during which Caesar was living a quiet home life under the careful discipline of his mother, Aurelia. She appears to have been a woman of strong character and to have exerted

- a powerful influence over her son. His academic training, **B. C.**
- 3** which was under the supervision of M. Antonius Gniphō, a learned Gaul, seems to have been of the conventional sort, and can hardly have been very stimulating or attractive to a mind as original as that of Caesar. He was, indeed, fortunate in having for his tutor a man of intellectual culture and courteous manners, instead of the customary slave who, we are informed by Plutarch, was usually a drunkard or a glutton, and unfit for any other occupation. Daily contact with such a man as Gniphō doubtless did much to develop that love of knowledge which made Caesar a learner all his life.
- 4** The genesis of Caesar's political opinions can easily be traced. Brought up in a household of democratic sympathies, his earliest impressions were doubtless those of the greatness of his uncle Marius, the leader of the democracy. When the civil war broke out, he was already old enough to be familiar with its origin and meaning, and his political opinions crystallized rapidly while his relatives and friends were fleeing before Sulla, the aristocrat. The democratic bias thus given to his views was strengthened by reflection upon the relative titles of the two parties to the support of the Romans of his generation; and the two, bias and reflection, bred in him a sober conviction to which he was ever true. His zeal and promise were soon recognized by
- 5** Marius, who made him *flāmen diālis*, or priest of Jupiter, at the age of fourteen. Soon after the death of his <sup>88</sup> father, Caesar broke off an engagement with a wealthy <sup>81</sup> heiress of equestrian rank, and deliberately identified himself with the Marian party by marrying Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, the dictator. It cannot be doubted that he was cognizant of the purposes of his father-in-law as the arbiter of the policy of the popular party.

### The Sullan Government.

B. C. In 82, Sulla returned in triumph to Italy. After a severe struggle, the popular party was again driven out of power, and the victor, determined to make a revival of it impossible, proscribed its prominent men and so reorganized the government as to render the position of the Senate impregnable. Briefly, this was done by destroying the independent power of the tribunate, and by taking the judges in criminal cases exclusively from the ruling aristocracy. The effect of this legislation was to bind the Roman people hand and foot; and had the nobles been reasonable and at all patriotic, the elaborate defenses erected for them might long have served their purpose. But such was their venality that the effort was a hopeless one from the beginning. Such a thing as disinterested action was not to be expected from a class chiefly interested in keeping the ill-gotten gains which they had made under the wing of the Dictator.

Caesar's career was cut short by the revolution in affairs, and he necessarily sank into obscurity for a time. One incident shows the spirit of the youth. Sulla commanded him to divorce his wife Cornelia. He refused, although deprived of his wife's dowry, his own inheritance, and the office of *flāmen*. Finally, he fled from Rome with a price set on his head, and his life was saved only by the entreaties of powerful relatives and of the College of Vestals, who won for him a reluctant pardon from the Dictator, accompanied, however, by a warning "to beware of the youth with the loose girdle." It is probable that Caesar still felt unsafe in Rome, for he sailed soon after into Asia Minor, where he served with credit, winning the civic crown of oak leaves at the storming of Mytilene. The death of Sulla put an end to his voluntary exile, and he at once returned to Ro

- 8** The Sullan constitution was now to be tested, with its **B. C.** originator and supporter no longer at hand. Scarcely had Sulla ceased to breathe, when the consul, Lepidus, began the attack. He sought the support of Caesar, but without success. Lepidus failed, and things went on in the old way. That Caesar, however, had not forgotten his party was proved by his bold prosecution of Cornelius Dolabella, an **77** optimate, for extortion while proconsul of Macedonia. The senatorial court acquitted Dolabella, but Caesar triumphed in that he reaped a harvest of popular applause. The next year he attacked in the same way Caius Antonius, one of **76** Sulla's lieutenants, for extortion in Greece, and with the same result. The popular party was beginning to take heart again, and nothing was more natural than that Caesar, the bold
- 9** young orator, with manifest gifts and the prestige of close relationship to Marius and Cinna, should be looked upon as its leader. Caesar, however, probably felt that it would be prudent to leave, until a riper time, the scenes where he was becoming dangerously prominent. In the same year he sailed for Rhodes to study the art of rhetoric under Apollonius Molo. One of the pirate bands that infested the seas swooped down upon his vessel off the coast of Caria, and carried him as a captive to the little island of Pharmacusa, where he was held for over a month, while a large ransom was being collected for his release. He coolly informed the robbers while held by them that he would return and crucify them all; and he kept his word. He then proceeded to Rhodes, where he pursued his studies under Molo for two years.
- 10** When Caesar returned to Rome, eight years of senatorial **74** misrule had prepared the way for a democratic reaction. He at once plunged into the political conflicts of the hour, furthering zealously the movement to restore the tribunes to their former power, and also to reform the senatorial courts.



B. C. He was made military tribune and member of the college of pontiffs in place of his uncle, Aurelius Cotta, who had recently died. In the pursuit of his aims he paid assiduous court to the people and spent money with a lavish hand, supplementing his slender fortune by borrowing enormous sums. He was nearly thirty years of age, with standing and some experience, and was undoubtedly a rising man. But it was not through him and his party that the Sullan constitution was to be overthrown. Help came from an  
70 unexpected quarter in 70. Pompeius and Crassus were the consuls, and were the most powerful men in Rome. Through 11 influences which are not known, they were induced to pull down the defenses of the Senate and give the *populāres* a chance. Whether Caesar was instrumental in bringing about this result or not, it was certainly of the greatest moment to him. All obstacles were removed from his path of political advancement at the moment when he was ready to put his foot upon the lowest round of the official ladder.

### The Rising Politician.

69 At the age of thirty-two, Caesar was elected quaestor and 12 went out to Spain, where he served with honor. His wife  
67 Cornelia having died, he married Pompeia, cousin of the great Pompeius, and quietly supported the proposal to clothe that general with extraordinary power to put down the pirates that infested the Mediterranean Sea, and to finish  
65 the Mithridatic war. Two years later he was curule aedile along with Bibulus, a wealthy, but obstinate and stupid optimiate. They entertained the populace with magnificent shows, prepared with a lavishment of expenditure such as had never been witnessed before. While the favor of the people was active in his behalf, Caesar took the bold step of restoring to the Capitol the statue of Marius and the trophy

of his victories over the enemies of Rome which Sulla had removed. The nobles were enraged; the people delighted. B. C.

- 13** If the story of Suetonius is true, that Caesar induced the tribunes to propose for him an extraordinary command in Egypt, it shows how the precedent established in Pompeius' case was bearing fruit. It is certain that he supported the agrarian law of Servilius Rullus, a democratic tribune, the provisions of which were so important that it became a test of party fealty. Cicero won a victory over Caesar in successfully opposing this law, and by his opposition definitely broke with the popular party and joined the *optimātēs*. In another direction, Cicero, however, was not 63
- 14** so easily successful. Caesar brought to trial and convicted one of the agents in the murder of the tribune, Saturninus, which had occurred nearly forty years before, and only the resort by Cicero to an ancient and absurd custom saved him. These bold yet well-considered acts naturally won the hearts of the masses, who soon after showed in a signal way their partiality toward their favorite. The office of *pōntifex m̄ximus* falling vacant, Caesar was elected over the strongest candidates the Senate could put forward. The victory was a signal one both for Caesar personally and for the cause he represented. It revealed the strength of that cause and shook the hitherto firm seat of the nobility.
- 15** In the fall of this year the plot of Catiline was laid bare 63 by the consul, Cicero, and such of the conspirators as fell into the hands of the government were put to death without trial. Caesar, as well as Crassus, was charged with complicity in the plot, but the proof was lacking, and he was exonerated by the consul himself. It is probably true that these leaders of the *populārēs* knew something about the movement of Catiline, but they gave it no personal support. They simply held aloof, not proposing to help the party in power, so long as the

the C. matter remained a political one. Caesar's speech in the Senate opposing the execution of the death penalty, was an appeal to the law against the violence of a frightened oligarchy. He warned his hearers against resorting to an unconstitutional penalty, which would certainly create a dangerous precedent, and after all remedy nothing. He advised life imprisonment for the culprits and confiscation of their property. In this great speech Caesar is seen at his best as the calm and dispassionate advocate of the principles of constitutional liberty for which he and his party had so long fought. The wisdom of his warning to Cicero and his supporters was shown by the issue. 16

Jan. 1 Caesar was at this time praetor-elect, and his political 17  
 52 movements, from the moment of his induction into office, indicated his purpose to maintain a good understanding with Pompeius, whose return from the East with the laurels of a conqueror was awaited with painful suspense by all parties. Rome expected another Sullan despotism with Pompeius in the principal role. This was the supreme moment in his career when he needed only to put forth his hand to grasp the prize of universal rule. The *populārēs*, though of late his allies, feared him, for he was by nature and training a Sullan. The *optimātēs* feared him but little in view of their former jealous opposition to his ambitious designs. Pompeius, however, dispelled all their fears by dismissing 18  
 his army as soon as he landed on Italian soil. He then descended to the station of a private citizen, with leanings toward Caesar which grew stronger as time went on. Says Mommsen: "If it is a piece of good fortune to gain a crown without trouble, fortune never did more for mortal than it did for Pompeius; but on those who lack courage the gods lavish every favor and every gift in vain."

At the end of his praetorship, Caesar went out to farther

- Spain, where he won distinction in military and civil affairs. B. C. 61
- 19** In recognition of his brilliant successes in the field the Senate voted him a triumph, but refused to let him stand for the consulship while absent from Rome, hoping thus to prevent his election. He at once relinquished the triumph, and, hastening to the capital, entered upon an active canvass. His candidacy had the support of both Pompeius and 60 Crassus, and his election was compassed without difficulty, although the Senate succeeded in electing Bibulus, his old enemy, as the other consul.

### Caesar's Consulship.

- 20** Caesar had been uniformly successful from a politician's standpoint. Still there is to be noticed a certain reserve and caution in his movements, due probably to the overshadowing influence, first of Sulla, and afterward of Pompeius. With the virtual abdication of the latter, Caesar's path became plainer and his policy bolder. Released from the necessity of self-repression, the qualities of the coming leader began to appear. His first movement showed consummate political sagacity. The most prominent men in the Republic were Caesar himself, Pompeius and Crassus—the able politician, the talented general, and the cautious financier. The popularity of Caesar, the military prestige of Pompeius, and the wealth of Crassus would be invincible if united, and to the
- 21** accomplishment of this end Caesar addressed himself. Pompeius and Crassus were enemies, but each had a grievance against the Senate. Caesar succeeded in reconciling them and forming with them a political combination of vast power, which he made still stronger by giving his daughter Julia in marriage to Pompeius. The "First Triumvirate" was not a conspiracy against the constitution, a skilful attempt to forestall the opposition of the

B. C. Senate. Thus fortified, Caesar entered upon his office. Always  
<sup>59</sup> self-controlled, he began with great moderation. He held out the olive branch to the Senate, but it was rejected with scorn, and the great Council, hoping to block legislation, practically refused to perform its functions in the state. A weak man would have yielded, but Caesar simply ignored **22** the Senate and carried his propositions to the popular assembly, where they were enacted without difficulty. Bibulus struggled in vain against the superior address of Caesar, and finally retired from the contest. The democratic consul had no further opposition, and rapidly pushed through a large amount of legislation. Pompeius' arrangements in the East were ratified, and his veterans provided for. Crassus and the monied class were gratified by the reduction of certain tax contracts in Asia. In addition to this personal legislation, many laws were passed which **23** looked towards much-needed reforms. The *Leges Juliae* and other legislative enactments of this complexion show the strong common sense of Caesar, his love of order, and his broad political views. But all this was sure to be destroyed if the Senate returned to power; so the efforts of the consul during the latter part of his term of office were directed toward the perpetuation of his influence. The people were induced to offer him the united command of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for five years. The humbled Senate, at Pompeius' suggestion, added the province in Transalpine Gaul with an army and the power to **24** take such measures as should be needed for the defence of the Republic against attacks in that quarter. This extraordinary commission gave Caesar a power in the West similar in nature and extent to that of Pompeius in the East; but the circumstances under which they undertook their commissions were widely different. Pompeius had th



practically unanimous support of all classes; Caesar had that of a powerful political combination, but the intense hatred of the Senate, which never forgot an injury, and stood ready to destroy him if the chance ever came.

### Caesar's Personality.

- 25** The recipient of this remarkable proof of popular favor was just turned forty-four and in the prime of life. From Suetonius and the numerous extant busts and coins, we learn that he was tall and spare in figure, with dark, keen eyes, a high forehead, a fair complexion, a mouth large but well-formed, and lips firmly set together. His hair was scanty, and he wore no beard. His expression was alert and thoughtful. His naturally weak constitution had been made strong by devotion to athletic sports. He was a skilful horseman and swordsman and an excellent swimmer. His tastes were simple, though he had an inbred fondness for elegance, and was particular about the care of his person.
- 26** His firm self-control, courteous bearing, gentleness and clemency are mentioned by all the authorities. The moral standard of Roman society was very low, and he had doubtless sounded the depths of fashionable dissipation. In this respect he was no worse than his contemporaries; but in generosity, humaneness and freedom from animosity, he was vastly superior to them. He was a constant friend, and had the power to inspire the most enthusiastic personal devotion.

### The Gallic War.

- 27** Caesar began his career in Gaul in 58, and for eight years was incessantly engaged in war and conquest. The following summary of his campaigns, adapted from Dinter's *Vita Caesaris*, illustrates his extraordinary military genius

B. C. and marvellous activity: In the first year he defeated the  
 58 Helvetii in two battles, and drove the German king, Ario-  
 57 vistus, out of Gaul. The next summer was devoted to the 28  
 subjugation of the Belgae, which was followed by a winter  
 56 campaign against the Alpine tribes. In the spring of the  
 next year, Caesar met Pompeius and Crassus at Lucca in  
 Cisalpine Gaul, and arranged with them for an extension of  
 his command for another period of five years, they to have  
 in return his support for the consulship in 55, and in  
 the following year proconsular commands similar to his.  
 The Veneti, Aquitani and the coast tribes from Brittany to  
 the mouth of the Rhine were subdued in a single campaign.  
 55 In the next campaign he measured strength a second time  
 with the Germans, defeated them, and crossed the Rhine.  
 Late in the fall he made an experimental trip to Britain, and 29  
 ravaged the territory of the Morini and Menapii on his  
 54 return. After subduing the Treviri and Aedui the next  
 spring, he invaded Britain with only moderate success.  
 A conspiracy of the Eburones and other tribes of northern  
 Gaul was crushed during the fall and winter with the loss of  
 53 a legion and a half under Sabinus. The next summer he  
 was employed in punishing the tribes engaged in the revolt  
 52 of the previous year. In desperation the Gauls revolted  
 once more under Vercingetorix. After a severe struggle the 30  
 last hope of Gallic independence was destroyed by the capture  
 51 of Alesia. One year more sufficed to complete the conquest  
 and reorganize the country as a Roman province. Caesar  
 then passed over into Cisalpine Gaul, intending to remain  
 there until the termination of his proconsulship on March  
 1, 49.

### Caesar's Work in Gaul.

It is not necessary to ascribe to Caesar the remote  
 intention of making himself master of Rome in order

31 account for his actions in Gaul. The glory to be obtained by adding such a magnificent region to the territory of the Republic was a sufficient incentive. The threatened invasion of the Helvetii furnished him with the coveted opportunity, and the tyranny of Ariovistus rendered inevitable the appeal to him for aid by the Gauls.

Having determined on conquest, he never hesitated about the means. His conduct in many particulars excites our abhorrence, but it is only just to remember that it was strictly in accordance with Roman ideas. The lack of political unity in Gaul gave him an advantage, which he used with great tact and skill. This was offset, however, by the fact that the tribes were so isolated as to make the work of conquest tedious and incomplete. He was from the first 32 independent of the home government. He levied troops, concluded treaties, laid tribute, all on his own responsibility. He was led to do thus by the necessities of the situation and by the conviction that nothing could safely be referred to the hostile Senate. Caesar felt equal to his enormous task, and trusted to the splendid success of his achievements in Gaul to justify him in the eyes of the Roman people. And he was not mistaken. Repeated thanksgivings were decreed on account of his victories. He steadily 33 rose in public estimation as the evidences of his matchless abilities as a conqueror multiplied. The camp, as well as the forum, rang with his praises. Those who knew him best were the most enthusiastic. His legions adored him and were devoted to his personal fortunes. Caesar's work in Gaul was thoroughly done, and the results were permanent. The Gauls themselves were the gainers, and in this fact lies Caesar's justification.

**Quarrel with the Senate.**

B. C. During these years of campaigning, Caesar had kept himself advised of the drift of public opinion through his agents in Rome. The winters he spent in Cisalpine Gaul, ostensibly engaged in the discharge of the civil duties of his office, but neglecting no opportunity to strengthen himself at home against the machinations of his enemies. Their hatred of him had grown with his success, which threatened to eclipse their supremacy in political affairs, and they were impatiently awaiting the moment when the laying aside of his proconsular power would leave him defenseless. The only pledge of political stability was the friendship between Caesar and Pompeius. But the relations between the two had changed. The successes of Caesar had no doubt excited Pompeius' latent jealousy. The death of Julia in 54 had severed a strong personal tie, and the death of Crassus the next year had dissolved the coalition. These events made Pompeius feel free to become the centre of senatorial intrigue. He was made sole consul to restore public order, and was practically dictator of Rome during this year. Indebted to the Senate for this honor, he was naturally drawn into closer relations with those determined to compass the downfall of Caesar, and finally united with them.

Two things were essential to Caesar's safety, first, that he retain his proconsular command until after the election of consuls in the summer of 49; second, that he be permitted to sue for the consulship without going to Rome. Both of these safeguards had been accorded him by law with the approval of Pompeius. But now Pompeius and the Senate unfairly abrogated these laws, leaving Caesar without defense. With great moderation, Caesar offered to give up his command if Pompeius would do the same, and the Senate

in a lucid interval approved this by vote. Shortly after, B. C. however, it voted that Caesar should be recalled and Pompeius be allowed at the same time to retain his powers. Caesar, determined to put his enemies in the wrong, was studiously fair in his proposals. On January 1, a letter <sup>49</sup> **37** from him was read to the Senate, in which he offered to give up the Transalpine province and eight legions, provided the Senate would allow him to retain Cisalpine Gaul with two legions or Illyricum with one until after he had been elected consul. The Senate, urged to decisive action by Pompeius, would listen to no compromise, and passed a decree which required Caesar to surrender his command by a certain date under penalty of being declared a public enemy. This was followed a few days later by a virtual declaration of war, the levying of troops and the appointment of Pompeius as general. These decisive **38** measures were intended to force Caesar to submit, with a certainty before him of impeachment and judicial murder. The only alternative was to fight. He promptly crossed the <sup>Jan.</sup> Rubicon, which formed part of the boundary between his <sup>49</sup> province and Italy, and the Civil War began.

### Conquest of Rome.

**39** In the course of a few months Pompeius was driven out of Italy into Greece, the whole peninsula was reduced and the administration of home affairs was temporarily reorganized. Caesar then went in search of his enemies. He proceeded to Spain, wrested it from Pompeius' officers in forty days, completed the reduction of Massilia on his return march, and after spending only eleven days in Rome followed his rival across the Adriatic. The passage was attended with much danger, on account of the presence of Pompeius' powerful fleet; nevertheless Caesar essayed

B. C. it, trusting to the very audacity of his act for its success. Landing in safety, he advanced toward Pompeius' strongly fortified position at Dyrrhachium (Durazzo). After suffering a severe reverse in attempting to hem in Pompeius, Caesar retreated into Thessaly, whither he was leisurely followed by the enemy. After much manœuvering the two 40 rivals faced each other at Pharsalia, Pompeius with fifty thousand men besides foreign allies, Caesar with not more Aug. 9 than thirty thousand. A hard fought battle ensued, and 48 Caesar was victorious. The enemy's camp was stormed, and the remnant of the army captured. Pompeius, however, succeeded in escaping from the field, and reaching the coast, crossed the Aegean into Asia Minor and finally fled to Egypt, where he was slain by order of King Ptolemy. Caesar followed in haste, and on landing he was presented with the head of his unfortunate rival. He turned away from the ghastly sight with horror.

The state of Egyptian affairs at this juncture called for 41 his interference as the representative of Rome. After restoring order in a campaign known as the Alexandrian War, he repaired to Rome by way of Asia Minor. At the capital the herculean task of reorganizing the government awaited him; but from this he was soon called away to Africa, where Cato still held out with an army of malcontent 46 tents from all quarters. Over this force Caesar gained a April 16 complete victory at Thapsus. Cato shut himself up in Utica, and preferred a self-inflicted death to the pardon which the victor freely offered.

In the belief that opposition was crushed, Caesar entered 42 upon the work of reform. The Senate was purified; social and political vices were made the subjects of legal enactments; the calendar was reformed, and a general amnesty was proclaimed. In the midst of these beneficent labors

Caesar was called to Spain, because of the revolt under B. C. Labienus, his recreant lieutenant, and the two sons of Pompeius, Sextus and Gnaeus. At Munda he won a great <sup>March 17</sup> 45 victory and crushed the last hope of the opposition.

Caesar was now the undisputed master of Rome. He **43** projected a vast scheme of social, political and financial reform, the details of which he began to work out with prodigious energy. His enemies were freely forgiven and invited to unite with him in securing the stability of the new order of things. Respect for law returned, the people were satisfied with their new ruler, and the murmurs of dissent were lost in the chorus of acclaim. Caesar's enemies, however, were incapable of change. His generosity touched no responsive chord in their hearts, and immunity from punishment encouraged them in concerting measures against his life, to which his own fearlessness made him fall an easy victim. Accordingly, on the Ides of March, he was slain in the Senate House by a band of conspirators, among whom were <sup>March 15</sup> 44 some of his most trusted associates.

Thus by a foolish and criminal act the one man whose qualities fitted him for the task of building up a new **44** Rome was removed from the scene. But enough had been done to make it certain that he who had proved himself great in the field would have been equally great in the chair of state. The same perfection of endowment that made him a successful general made him a great statesman. The same firm grasp of principles and the same power of adapting means to ends were joined to a daring conception of the magnificent possibilities of a new Rome—such as were realized under the Empire. He clearly saw that the old form of government had outlived its usefulness and had become an instrument of injustice in the hands of an unprincipled aristocracy. Rome no longer had anything in

common with her glorious past. Patriotism was dead; faction was rife. The rule of the people was a fiction. In putting an end to this intolerable state of things, Caesar performed an unpleasant but necessary service, for which he received the thanks of all men of discernment and right feeling. With consummate ability he raised on that old foundation a new structure, whose utility and permanence showed it to be the work of a master of statecraft. 45

### The Writings of Caesar.

A place among the "Immortals" has by common consent been assigned to Caesar, the author and orator. His extant writings are the "Commentaries" upon the Gallic War in seven books, and upon the Civil War in three books. The works that have not come down to us comprised poems, a treatise on grammar, a digest of the auspices, works on divination and astronomy, letters and speeches. 46

The history of the Gallic War was written to influence public opinion at the critical moment in Caesar's career, when rupture with the Senate was imminent. He wrote in haste, depending upon his memory, refreshed by the perusal of the files of military despatches and letters, and with little opportunity for revision; yet the "Commentaries" stands first among Latin historical works both in style and authority. Though written to place his acts in the best light, they are candid in spirit and moderate in language. There is a remarkable absence of self-consciousness on the author's part. On the whole he gives little occasion for the suspicion that facts have been suppressed or given a false coloring. As a record of his work they are invaluable. Their presentation of the details of battles and sieges, of military tactics and manœuvres, is admirably clear and concise. The causes of the war and the justification of Caesar's conduct are presented 47 48



- calmly and forcibly. The scientific value of his inquiries into the political and social characteristics of the peoples with whom he came in contact can hardly be overestimated. They remain to-day our chief authority in these particulars. With regard to the literary merits of his performance the opinion is universally favorable. Its style is clear, simple and unornamented, with the "elegance of an undraped statue." Its terseness presents a difficulty in reading, which, however, is relieved by the lucid arrangement of the matter. In its precision and propriety of diction it exhibits the exquisite literary taste of the author and his perfect command of all the resources of the Latin tongue.
- 50 The eighth book of the "Commentaries" was written by Aulus Hirtius, one of Caesar's officers and a personal friend. It is in the main a well written account of the events of the last two years of the conquest of Gaul, somewhat lacking in force and wanting the charm of its professed model, the earlier books of the same history.

### Caesar's Military Methods.

- 51 The "Commentaries" present Caesar to our view as a military leader of the first rank, and yet he had reached middle life before he held an independent command. During his youth, when the fascinations of "war's wild trade" may have attracted him, all the channels to military preferment were closed to him on account of his connection with the Marian party. When he finally turned his attention to war, he brought the calm calculation of the man of affairs seeking to accomplish certain desirable ends through its agency. Neither the charm nor the traditions of camp and field life held sway over his mind. Love of military glory alone never lured him on, nor was the sweep of his genius hampered by the shackles of an exclusively military training.

The "Commentaries" reveal his method. He clearly conceived the object desired and took the most direct way possible to reach it. He united with swiftness in execution a deliberation in planning that provided for every contingency. He gave careful heed to the commissariat. He provided depots of supplies, made requisitions upon subject or allied tribes, or foraged on the enemy. He always took the offensive and endeavored to concentrate his force and strike the enemy unexpectedly. He thus made up by quickness of movement for his lack of numbers. He kept himself informed of the enemy's movements and was quick to take advantage of his mistakes. He was careful of the comfort and lives of his men. He preferred to carry on war in the summer, and often cautioned his soldiers against unnecessary exposure of their lives in battle. Their devotion to him was unbounded, and they endured unexampled hardships without a murmur. Indeed, his ascendancy over their minds was one of the secrets of his success. He generously rewarded their valor and fidelity, and knew how to rouse them on occasion to the highest pitch of enthusiasm. He ruled by tact rather than by fear. In matters of military discipline he was no martinet, but looked leniently upon occasional infractions of order, provided they did not affect the *morale* of the army. In battle he was cool and confident. He was devoid of fear, and when necessary fought in the foremost ranks. Often he retrieved the day by his personal exertions. If the enemy fled he pursued him vigorously with his cavalry, slaughtering without mercy as long as a man was to be reached. He was sometimes cruel from policy, though naturally clement.

## CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

B. C. Aet. Caes.

102		Birth of Caesar, July 12. C. Marius defeats the Teutones at Aquae Sextiae.
101	1	Defeat of the Cimbri at Vercellae by Marius.
100	2	Death of Saturninus and Glaucia. Fall of Marius.
91	11	Agitation among the Italians for the franchise. Assassination of Livius Drusus.
90	12	Social War.
88	14	Marius appoints Caesar <i>flāmen diālis</i> . Civil War between Marius and Sulla.
87	15	Caesar assumes the <i>toga virilis</i> . Marius returns to Rome. The Sullans proscribed.
86	16	Death of Marius. Cinna is Dictator.
84	18	Caesar marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, the Dictator. Sulla ends the war with Mithridates.
83	19	Civil War. Sulla is victorious.
82	20	Sulla becomes perpetual Dictator. He proscribes and pardons Caesar. Caesar leaves Rome for the East.
80	22	Caesar wins the <i>corōna civica</i> at Mytilene.
78	24	Sulla dies. Caesar returns to Rome.
77	25	Caesar prosecutes Dolabella. Pompeius is sent to Spain against Sertorius.
76	26	Caesar prosecutes Antonius. He sails to Rhodes to study under Molo.
74	28	Caesar returns to Rome. He is elected military tribune and <i>pōntifex</i> .
73	29	The Servile War.
71	31	Spartacus defeated by Crassus. Pompeius ends the war in Spain.
70	32	Consulshp of Pompeius and Crassus The Sullan constitution overthrown.
69	33	Caesar is elected <i>quaestor</i> . Cicero is <i>curūlis aedilis</i> .
67	35	Caesar returns to Pompeia. He supports the law giving Pompeius the command of the war against the pirates.

- |    |    |  |
|----|----|--|
| 66 | 36 | Caesar supports the law transferring the command in the Mithridatic war from Lucullus to Pompeius. Cicero is <i>praetor</i> .      |
| 65 | 37 | Caesar is <i>curulis aedilis</i> . Pompeius defeats Tigranes.  |
| 63 | 39 | Caesar is elected <i>praetor</i> and <i>pontifex maximus</i> . Cicero is consul. Conspiracy of Catiline exposed. C. Octavius born. |
| 62 | 40 | Caesar is <i>praetor</i> . He divorces Pompeia. Pompeius returns from the East.  |
| 61 | 41 | Caesar is <i>propraetor</i> in Farther Spain.  |
| 60 | 42 | Caesar is elected Consul. "First Triumvirate."   |
| 59 | 43 | Caesar is Consul. He marries Calpurnia.  |
| 58 | 44 | Caesar becomes <i>proconsul</i> of Gaul. Campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. Cicero is exiled.                          |
| 57 | 45 | Caesar conquers the Belgae. Recall of Cicero.  |
| 56 | 46 | Caesar's campaign in Brittany. The conference at Lucca.  |
| 55 | 47 | Caesar invades Britain and Germany. Pompeius and Crassus are joint consuls for the second time.                                    |
| 54 | 48 | Caesar invades Britain a second time. Death of Julia.  |
| 53 | 49 | The Northwestern Gauls rebel. Crassus is slain by the Parthians.   |
| 52 | 50 | General revolt of the Gauls under Vercingetorix. Capture of Alesia. Alienation of Pompeius.  |
| 51 | 51 | Caesar completes the conquest of Gaul.   |
| 50 | 52 | The quarrel between Caesar and the Senate.   |
| 49 | 53 | Civil War. Caesar is made Dictator.  |
| 48 | 54 | Caesar defeats Pompeius at Pharsalus. Pompeius is killed in Egypt. The "Alexandrian War."  |
| 47 | 55 | Caesar is made Dictator for the third time. He reorganizes the government.   |
| 46 | 56 | The "African War." The Pompeians defeated at Thapsus. Suicide of Cato.   |
| 45 | 57 | The "Spanish War." Battle of Munda.  |
| 44 | 58 | Caesar Dictator for life. Slain in the Senate House, March 15th.   |

## GEOGRAPHY AND PEOPLE OF GAUL.

---

The home of the Celts had at first natural boundaries: on the south the Pyrenees and the Mediterranean, on the east the Alps and the Rhine, on the north the Rhine and the English Channel, and on the west the ocean. This vast tract forms  
**55** an inclined plane extending from the summit of the Alps to the Atlantic and spreading out in its descent in the shape of a fan, so that while its eastern front has an extent of two and a half degrees of longitude, its western front extends through six degrees. It is divided by the Cevennes Mountains (*Mōns Cebenna*) into two parts, the northwestern part having an undulating or flat surface, arable or marsh lands, and navigable rivers; the southeastern part containing  
**56** lofty mountains, swift streams, deep lakes, and grazing lands. The united chains of the Cevennes and the Vosges (*Vosagus*) form the backbone of the land, having a considerable altitude throughout most of their extent, but permitting intercommunication at numerous points. Their eastern slopes are steep, and supply only small streams to the Rhône and Saône, but the long western slopes give rise to large rivers which flow to the north and west. The valleys are of two kinds—interior, such as those of the Seine and Loire, originating in the Cevennes and Vosges; and exterior, which have  
**57** their sources outside of the limits of the country, such as those of the Garonne, Rhine and Rhône. The interior valleys are open and communication among them is easy.

To this physical fact was largely due the substantial unity in race-feeling that characterized the Gauls. The currents of internal commerce then, as now, followed the courses of the large streams of the interior, while foreign trade found its way into the land along the Garonne, Rhône and Rhine, and across the Channel. The northern and southern sections of the country presented the same contrast in climate as at present, but the mean temperature was lower on account of the vast forests that covered the face of the country. The soil was everywhere well adapted to the growth of all kinds of farm products. Mines of gold, silver, lead and copper were extensively worked throughout the centre and south. 58

In this vast region, set apart by natural barriers to be the home of a single race, the van of the great Celtic host halted about 609 B. C. Other divisions seem to have pressed on into the Spanish peninsula and later still into the valley of the Po which they conquered about 587 B. C. Their long and bloody struggles with the Romans culminated in the capture and destruction of the city of Rome in 390 B. C. From that day of disaster, the Romans regarded the Gauls of the Po as their most inveterate and formidable foes. Only after repeated efforts were they able, in the third century before Christ, to extend the frontiers of the Republic to the Alps, and in the second century to organize the whole region from the Apennines to the Alps as a Roman province. 59 60

The Gauls beyond the Alps now attracted the attention of Rome, who was anxious to secure her new acquisitions from attack and to keep up her communications by land with the Spanish provinces. The valleys of the Saône and Rhône and the passes of the maritime Alps furnished a natural thoroughfare between the two Gauls, and along this the northern invaders were wont to advance. In order to get control of this route Rome took advantage of various pretexts to pu 61

- her conquests over the southern Alps and down their western slopes into the valley of the Rhône. About the year 120 B. C. she was in full possession of the tract between the Rhône, the Alps, and the dominions of the Greek city
- 62** Massilia, to which she was bound by close ties of interest and friendship. Ere long she had pushed her conquests across the Rhône as far as the Cevennes and the Pyrenees. The whole region thus carved out of Gallic territory was called *Prōvincia*, "the Province," and the usual means were made use of to secure it against attack. Military colonies were founded at Narbo and Tolosa and the country was dotted with fortresses connected by military roads. The strength of this bulwark against invasion was soon severely
- 63** tried by the hordes of Cimbri and Teutones, distant kindred of the Celts from the shores of the Baltic. Advancing south at the suggestion of the northern Celts, they swept away army after army until the Province lay helpless before them and Italy was without a defender. After a respite of two years
- 64** Italy was simultaneously attacked from the east and the west. The Teutones were exterminated at Aquae Sextiae, in the Province, by the great Marius, who then turned upon the Cimbri, who had penetrated into the valley of the Po, and inflicted upon them a crushing defeat at Vercellae.
- 65** The Gauls of the Province had remained faithful to Rome in spite of the temptation to join the invaders. Their reward was ingratitude and ill-treatment, which they resented and resisted. The Province became the refuge and resort of malcontents and exiles from Italy. The remnants of the Marian party found a welcome here after the Social War.
- 66** Sertorius maintained his revolt in Spain largely through Gallic support. The Province was a favorite stage for the exhibition of Roman rapacity and extortion. The wretched people were not only crushed by the burdens of taxation, but

also corrupted by a civilization which touched them only to scorch and blast.

Beyond the Cevennes, however, the native Celt still  
roamed in his original freedom. This region was divided  
into three parts, inhabited by the Belgae and Celtae, or  
Galli, who were Celts and the Aquitani, who were Iberians.  
The Matrona and Sequana separated the Belgae from the  
Celtae and the Garumna separated the Celtae from the  
Aquitani. 67

Each of these grand divisions was composed of politically  
independent states, of which there were, in Caesar's time,  
twenty-seven in Belgica, forty-three in Celtica, and twelve in  
Aquitania. Leagues for defensive and offensive purposes  
were common in Gaul. They were seldom permanent, but  
fell to pieces when the cause that called them into existence  
had ceased to be operative. Factions existed in every state  
and the whole country was divided into two great parties  
which contended with the utmost bitterness. The central-  
ization of political power was thus rendered impossible, and  
Gaul, instead of becoming a nation, remained a mere aggre-  
gation of states, unable to present a united front to any  
danger. 68 69

In the eyes of the Roman, the Belgae and Galli formed  
one people, so much alike were they in manners and customs.  
They are described as taller than the Romans, with fierce  
blue eyes and light hair which they wore long. They shaved  
their beards, but wore long sweeping mustaches. Courage  
and a passionate fondness for war were joined in them with  
a quarrelsome disposition which gave frequent occasion for  
strife. They were generous, personally devoted to their  
chiefs and families, and capable of great self-sacrifice.  
They were intelligent and readily adopted the manners and  
customs of other peoples. 70 71



- 72** The desire for national unity, which the peculiar political constitution of the Gauls rendered ineffectual, was fostered by their form of religion. The Druids formed a close theological corporation with a hierarchy and a ritual calculated to impress a barbarous people with awe. The members
- 73** of the order discarded all tribal allegiances and were a unit on all questions affecting the interests of the order. They were at once the priests and the teachers of the whole people. Certain exemptions from taxation and military
- 74** service gave them standing as a privileged class. Their system included belief in a ruling Providence, the transmigration of souls, and the mediation of the priesthood between earth and heaven. They were addicted to human sacrifice, which they practised with mysterious rites in the
- 75** depths of the forests at dead of night. They made use of astrology and magic. Their unbounded influence over the people was exercised in secular as well as religious matters and tended to unite the masses by a common religious feeling.
- 76** The nobles were the other privileged class in Gaul, sustaining a sort of feudal relation to the lower orders. The masses of the people were little better than slaves, being bound by obligations of personal service to their lords. The operation of the law of debt, which delivered the insolvent debtor into the power of his creditor, tended to the further degradation of the lower classes.
- 77** Such were the main institutional features of Gaul previous to the establishment of Roman power in the Rhône valley. With the introduction of foreign trade a gradual change took place. The Gauls grew in wealth, settled in villages and cities, and adopted habits of comparative luxury. The
- 78** Druids declined in power, while their rivals, the nobles, waxed more influential, and between the two orders in every

state a bitter strife was waged, which weakened both religious zeal and patriotic spirit.

At length the nominal leadership of the nation fell into the hands of the Aedui, a powerful tribe of central Gaul, with whom Rome, in pursuance of her usual policy, thereupon concluded an alliance. The patriotic element, not relishing this, flocked to the standard of the Sequani, who had taken the place of the Arverni as competitors of the Aedui. The Sequani called in Ariovistus, a German chief, to counterbalance the influence of Rome. The Aedui were conquered and compelled to make a humiliating peace with the German chief, who thereupon settled his victorious bands on Gallic soil. Rome, appealed to by the Aedui, not only gave them no aid, but even recognized the validity of Ariovistus' course by concluding an alliance with him. Thus encouraged, the Germans became more aggressive and treated the Gauls as a conquered people. Gaul bid fair to become a German dependency, when Caesar obtained the command, and more alive than the supine senate to the real interests of Rome, determined to contest the claims of Ariovistus. In his "Commentaries" on the Gallic War he gives a minute account of the struggle thus inaugurated for the possession of Gaul—a struggle which added a magnificent region to the domains of Rome and gave its conqueror a foremost place among the military leaders in the world's history.



## MILITARY ART IN CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES.

---

### I. ROMAN.

**Military Service.** Originally, service in the army was a privilege of wealth, not a common duty of all citizens. The soldier served without pay and met all his expenses, so he was necessarily a man of means. The poor were exempt from service, and when called out their equipment was provided by the state. Marius was the first to break through the barriers of this constitutional provision by enlisting those who were not taxed (*capite cēnsi*). While the census list of *iūniōrēs* (those from seventeen to forty-six years of age) was still taken as the basis for military levies, it became more and more common for the well-to-do to avoid service by the payment of a certain sum of money. Caesar had no great respect for the traditional classes of *Servius*. Suetonius says that he laid stress, not upon custom nor the possession of an income, but upon valor alone. 82

A levy (*dēlēctus*) of persons for military service was made as the necessity for troops arose. Its size depended upon the circumstances. It was proclaimed in the name of the state or of the general by officers called *conquīsītōrēs*. At first the levy was confined to Rome; but, when citizenship was extended to the Italians after the Social War (90 B. C.), it became lawful to raise troops in any designated part of the peninsula. Caesar obtained most of his recruits in Cisalpine 84

- Gaul. The physical requirements of a recruit were quick eyes, a broad chest, muscular shoulders, strong arms, long fingers, a slender body, slim legs, with sinewy calves and feet. The Roman soldier was rather undersized, strong and active, hardy and enduring. The recruit took a solemn oath (*sacrāmentum*) which bound him to service for a period of from sixteen to twenty years.
- 86** The Legion. The legion (*legiō*) was the nucleus of the army and was composed of Roman citizens of Italy, the colonies and the provinces. The number of troops in the legion varied greatly, and the rule at any period is hard to fix; probably at this time its normal strength was about five thousand men. Its effective strength was always much less, and varied according to the length of service and the severity of its losses. We are told of a legion that contained less than a thousand men. Probably the average number was 3,600. It was divided into ten cohorts (*cohortēs*), each cohort into three maniples (*manipulī*), and each maniple into two centuries (*centuriae*, *ordinēs*). The tactical unit of the legion was the cohort and all maneuvers were by cohorts. The three maniples stood side by side, ten ranks deep, the front five ranks forming the first century, and the rear five ranks the second. The size of the cohort formed in close order was one hundred and fifty feet front by fifty feet in depth; in open order, three hundred feet front by fifty feet in depth. The legions when formed received numbers by which they were known as long as they existed. New levies thus led to the formation of new legions, the old legions retaining their membership unchanged except by the casualties of the service.
- 88**
- 89** The officers of the legion were the subalterns (*centuriōnēs*) and general officers (*tribūnī militum*). There were six of the latter, appointed by the general from the equestrian

class, often for political or family reasons rather than for military efficiency. Being young as a rule, they were not much valued by Caesar, who confined them to the comparatively simple matters of administrative detail, such as the oversight of camp discipline, the inspection of out-posts and sentinels, the distribution of the password, etc. They served by twos in turn for a period of two months, the two alternating daily. The real officers of the legion were the centurions, sixty to each legion, who, unlike the tribunes, rose from the ranks through appointment by the tribunes or commander; their duties lay between those of a captain and sergeant; and they all served on foot. Their helmets were crowned by crests (*cristae*) and they carried a stick (*vitis*) as a symbol of authority. The two centurions of a maniple were designated as *prior* and *posterior*, with a slight difference in rank, and each had a sub-centurion. There was a regular gradation in rank from the last centurion of the tenth cohort to the first centurion of the first cohort; this last-named officer (*primipilus*) had charge of the standard, and was a member of the council of war. The height of a centurion's ambition was to become a *primipilus*, and as merit was the test, he had a sufficient stimulus to do his whole duty. He must be a man of steady courage, good judgment, and always at his post. The centurions of Caesar's army are often mentioned by him for their efficiency and valor. Forty-six were killed at Gergovia (*Bellum Gallicum*, VII. 51), and thirty at Pharsalia (*Bellum Civile*, III. 99).

The general's staff consisted of the lieutenants (*lēgātī*) and quartermaster (*quaestor*). The lieutenants, or military aids of the general, were elected by the Senate on his nomination, and belonged to the senatorial rank. Usually there were three; Caesar regularly had ten, and mentions eighteen different persons who served in this capacity in

Gaul. The more important duties of the tribune were  
95 by him given to them. They were not usually assigned to permanent commands, but took such as were given them, and in battle were put in charge of the legions. The *légātus* undertook no independent operations; hence the burden of his success or failure rested upon the shoulders of his general. The *quaestor* went with the proconsul to his province to take charge of receipts and expenditures. In addition to his usual duties, Caesar often gave him command of a single legion or a whole corps.

96 The whole army was under the command of a general (*dux bellī*) having the *imperium* or military command, with the power of life or death over his soldiers. After a victory he was saluted as *imperātor* by the army. As provincial governor he was judge as well as general. His power was practically absolute. The outward marks of his dignity were the cloak edged with broad bands of purple (*palūdāmentum*), the *toga praetexta*, the ivory sceptre (*scēptrum*), and the chair of state (*sella curūlis*).

97 The council of war (*concilium*) was composed of the lieutenants, tribunes and centurions of the first rank, and was presided over by the general, or by a lieutenant in his absence.

98 **Veterans.** The *ēvocātī* were veterans who served the full time, but who later re-entered the service voluntarily. They enjoyed the rank and pay of centurions and were exempted from ordinary routine duties. The *veterānī* were soldiers who remained in the army without cessation of service after their legal term had expired. Both these classes of soldiers were highly esteemed on account of their military efficiency.

99 **Auxiliaries.** The auxiliary forces (*auxilia*) were composed of foreigners and of native provincials, usually armed with their national weapons and commanded by native

**officers.** The most important were the slingers (*funditōrēs*), bowmen (*sagittārī*), and spearmen (*peditēs levis armātūrae*). The nationalities represented in Caesar's army were the Numidians, Gauls, Cretans, Balearians, Illyrians and Germans.

**Cavalry.** The cavalry (*equitēs, equitātus*) was drawn from the foreign allies, Gauls, Spaniards, or Germans. There were two kinds: first, the permanent force, consisting of from two hundred to three hundred horsemen attached to each legion and armed in the Roman fashion; second, the contingent furnished by the allies at the opening of a campaign upon the general's requisition. These formed a body separate from the legionaries, and were armed with their national weapons. Each *ala* (wing) was divided into ten *turmae*, each *turma* into three *decuriae*. The *turma* was the tactical unit and probably contained about thirty men. The principal officers (*praefecti equitum*) were Romans, but the subalterns (*decuriōnēs*) were of the same nationality as the troops. The whole cavalry-force was commanded in battle by a *lēgātus*. Caesar usually had about four thousand cavalry.

**Non-Combatants.** A large number of persons followed the army in various capacities. There were the servants of the officers (*cālōnēs*), the wagoners (*mūliōnēs*), sutlers (*mercātōrēs*), smiths (*fabrī*), etc. The first two classes were slaves; the sutlers accompanied the army to buy booty and sell provisions; the *fabrī* formed the engineering corps, a body probably distinct from the legion, and commanded by an officer (*praefectus fabrum*) who had charge of the artillery, siege operations, and baggage train.

**Equipment.** The dress of the soldier consisted of a sleeveless woolen blouse (*tunica*) worn next to the skin and reaching to the knees. Over this was thrown when needed a military cloak (*sagum*), also made of wool and usually



rectangular in shape; this was fastened by a clasp. Coarse boots (*caligae*) covered the feet and ankles.

- 104** The defensive coverings of the body were a coat of mail (*lōrica*), metal helmet (*cassis*), greaves (*ocreae*), and shield (*scūtum*). The coat of mail was made of very thick leather, with flexible bands of steel over the shoulders and around the waist. Officers wore the chain or scale cuirass (*lōrica hāmāta*, *squāmāta*), which was often highly ornamented. The helmet was made of iron or bronze, and fitted the head closely, leaving exposed scarcely more than the eyes, nose, and mouth. It was held on by the cheek-pieces (*bucculae*), which were fastened together under the chin; when on the march, it hung on the soldier's breast. The centurion's helmet had a ridge on the crown, plated with silver and supporting a crest (*crista*) of red or black plumes, so placed as to nod at either side. The greaves were of bronze, reaching to the knee, and fastened to the legs by straps and buckles. The shield, four-cornered and cylindrical, was two and a half feet wide and four feet long. It was made of boards firmly fastened together, and covered with leather; a rim of metal around the edges added to its strength. In the centre of its face was the boss (*umbō*), a projection of iron intended to cause missiles to glance off. The face was painted with *insignia*, such as thunderbolts, wreaths, etc. The name of the owner and the number of his cohort and maniple, possibly also the name of his general, appeared on the inside. For the protection of the metal work of the shield a leather covering was used, which was drawn off before battle.
- 105**
- 106**
- 107**

The cavalryman was not so heavily armed as the legionary.

- 108** A metal helmet (*cassis*), a light buckler (*parma*) of round or oval shape, about three feet across and with a framework of iron, a light cuirass, and possibly greaves, formed his

defensive equipment. The auxiliaries wore the helmet, and carried the buckler; the bowmen, however, necessarily omitted the latter.

The offensive weapons of the legionary were the sword (*gladius*) and the javelin (*pilum*). The blade of the sword **109** was short (two feet long), straight, two-edged, and pointed; hence it could be used both for cutting and stabbing, the latter being its common use. It hung at the right side, because the shield was carried on the left arm; the scabbard (*vāginā*) was suspended from a sash (*balteus*) passing over the left shoulder, or from a belt (*cingulum*), both made of leather. **110** The officers of high rank, who did not have shields, carried the sword at the left side. The javelin was between six and seven feet long, and consisted of the shaft and the iron shank, of about equal weight. The former was round, about four feet long, a little more than one inch thick and **111** pointed with iron at the butt, so as to be thrust into the ground. The latter was slender, round or four-sided, and about two feet long, and ended in a barbed or flat heart-shaped point. The entire weight was about nine pounds. It was exclusively used as a missile weapon. In order to prevent its use by the enemy, the head was made of soft iron, which easily bent on coming in contact with an obstacle such as a shield.

The cavalry fought with the lance (*hasta*), longer and lighter than the *pilum*, and especially adapted for thrusting, **112** though it could be used as a javelin. The sword used by them was longer than the *gladius*. The light-armed troops also wielded the lance or threw darts (*iacula*). The slingers threw stones or slugs (*glandēs*) of lead moulded into the shape of an almond and sometimes inscribed with letters.

**Pay.** The pay of the legionary soldier in Caesar's army was 225 *dēnārii* (about \$44) per year; that of the centurion

- twice as much. Payment was made every four months, beginning with March 1. The auxiliary troops were paid either by the Roman state or by the allied states furnishing them; in either case their pay was less than that of the Roman soldier. The cost of the food and equipments furnished by the state was deducted. Extra pay was sometimes given as a reward at the end of a successful campaign, and
- 114** something was realized from the sale of booty. For special bravery the general could bestow gifts (*dōna*), such as chains of gold for neck or breast (*torquēs*), bracelets (*armillae*), medallions (*phalārae*), spears with gold or silver points (*hastae pūrae*), and, most valued of all, crowns (*corōnae*). These crowns were of various kinds, the most coveted being the civic crown (*corōna cīvica*), granted to him who had saved the life of a Roman citizen and slain his adversary. Crowns of myrtle or of laurel were given to successful generals, and, in case of a great victory, an ovation (*ovātiō*), or a triumph (*triumphus*). When his
- 115** term of service was ended the soldier received his discharge (*mīssiō honesta*); if rendered unable to serve his full time by sickness or wounds, he was granted an invalid's discharge (*mīssiō causāria*). For offences against military law he was punished variously, according to the grade of the offence; reprimands, loss of pay and dishonorable discharge were resorted to in ordinary cases, and whipping or death by stoning or decapitation in aggravated ones.

- Ration.** The ration of each soldier was about two pounds
- 116** of grain (*frūmentum*), usually wheat, per day; this was issued every twelve or fifteen days, and was carried by the soldier as a part of his kit. The grain was prepared for use by grinding it in handmills (*molae manuālēs*). It was then baked in the form of unleavened dough or boiled as a kind of paste. Whatever else the soldier needed he got by foraging

or trading his grain for other articles of food. The horses **117** were fed on barley and green fodder when it was obtainable. The commissariat was in charge of the *quaestor*, and was carefully attended to; depots of supplies were established at convenient points and requisitions were made upon allied tribes. The Roman system of army support was less elaborate but in many ways more efficient than the modern.

**Baggage.** The baggage of the army was either light (*sarcinae*) or heavy (*impedimenta*). The light baggage **118** was carried by the soldier himself in the form of a bundle (hence the name *sarcina*), fastened to the end of a forked pole (*furca*) carried on the shoulder. The contents of this bundle were a hatchet, cooking utensils (*vāsa*), rations (*cibāria*), a cloak (*sagum*), and various smaller articles. The weight of the whole kit was between fifty and sixty pounds, and when marching under it the soldier was said to be *impeditus*. Before a battle the baggage was piled up in one **119** place (*sarcinas cōferre*) and guarded, or was left in the camp; the soldier was then said to be *expeditus*. The heavy baggage (tents, hand-mills, artillery, bridge material, etc.) was carried in wagons (*carri*) or on pack-animals (*iūmenta*), of which there were about six hundred to each legion.

**Ensigns.** The ensigns (*signa*) were the *aquila* for the legion, *signum* for the cohort and maniple, and *vexillum* for **120** the cavalry and auxiliary foot. The *aquila* was a silver or gold eagle with outstretched wings, placed on top of a staff overlaid with silver; the butt of the staff had an iron point, so as to be thrust into the ground (*aquilās figere*, to halt), and from a cross-piece just below the eagle was often hung a square banner inscribed with the number of the legion. It was placed in the first cohort under the special care of **121** the *prīmipilus* and was carried by the *aquilifer*, a man of

tried strength and valor. In the camp it was placed in the *practōrium* under a little shelter (*sacellum*), where it was carefully guarded and worshipped as sacred. In time of peace it was deposited in the temple of Saturn, the state treasury (*acrārium*) at Rome.

The *signum* was the ensign of the maniples, that of the first  
**122** maniples serving for the cohort also; it consisted of the figure of an animal—bear, wolf, minotaur, etc.,—on a staff, to which were attached metallic disks and half-moons with a symbolic meaning, and a banner like to that on the *aquila*, displaying the letter of the maniples, and probably the number of the legion and of the cohort. During an engagement the *signa* were carried by the *signiferi* behind the first line of cohorts.

The *vexillum* was a small quadrangular banner attached  
**123** to a wooden cross-bar at the top of a staff; it was white, red, or purple, according to the division of the troops represented. When portions of a legion were detached on special duty, they had as ensigns *vexilla*. A large red banner, also called *vexillum*, bearing the name of the general, was displayed above his tent as a signal for march or combat.

The sacredness of the standard intensified the feeling of disgrace at its loss, in which all who followed it shared; if  
**124** due to the cowardice of the standard-bearer, his punishment was death. That the standards had a symbolic meaning is very clear, but that their tactical importance preponderated is shown by the constant use of such expressions as *signa convellere* (to prepare to march), *signa prōmovēre* (to advance in line), *signa īferre* (to attack), *signa convertere* (to change front), *ā signīs discēdere* (to flee), *signa referre* (to retreat), *signa cōstituere* (to halt).

**125** **Signal Instruments.** The musical instruments have a close relation to the ensigns through the similarity of their use in tactics. The signal for attack or retreat was given by

the *tubicinēs* on the *tuba*, a straight metal tube with a bell-shaped mouth about four feet long; its tone was deep and hoarse. The signal on the *tuba* was taken up and passed along the lines by the *cornicinēs* on the *cornū*, a large trumpet originally made of the horn of an ox, in later times made also of brass. It had the form of an almost complete circle, through which ran a cross-bar that served the double purpose of keeping it in shape and aiding the player to hold it steady. There were probably at least thirty *cornicinēs* to each legion, one being stationed near each *signum*. The cavalry movements were directed by signals on the *lituus*, a trumpet with a tube straight until near the end, then abruptly curved; its tone was shrill. In camp the changing of the watches was signalled on the *būcina*, a curved instrument similar to the *cornū*, but smaller. The *classicum*, which summoned the whole army together to be addressed by the general, was played by the assembled musicians before the general's tent. On the march, signals were given on the *tuba*; but there is no evidence that marching tunes were played to assist in keeping step. 126 127 128

**The Camp.** The site of the camp was selected with great care by a camping party sent in advance under the command of a tribune and centurions. When possible the camp was pitched on the side of a hill, facing down the slope, with space enough in front for drawing up the army in line of battle, and with fuel and water easily accessible. The usual form of the camp was a square, or rectangle, but, if the nature of the site required, it might be semi-circular or triangular. 129

When the army reached the site chosen and already staked out by the surveyors (*mēnsōrēs* or *mētālōrēs*), the arms (except the sword) and packs were laid aside, and working parties were formed. Along the outside boundary-line a ditch (*fossa*) 130

was dug nine to twelve feet wide at the top and seven to nine feet deep, and the earth from it was thrown inward to form a rampart (*agger*). The outer face of the *agger* was steep and was covered with sod from the ditch and with bundles of brush, to keep the earth in place. At the top was often placed a parapet (*lōrica*) of stakes (*vālli*) set close together. The top was flat and broad enough for the soldiers to stand upon easily; the inner face was sloping, and furnished with steps made of logs, or earth, to give easy access to the top. Entrance to the camp was through gates (*portae*) probably forty feet wide. There was at least one in each side,—that in the front, toward the foe, being the *porta praetōria*; the one opposite, the *porta decumāna*; those in the right and left sides the *porta dextra* and *porta sinistra*. These gates were masked by earthworks (*clāviculae*) so placed that the enemy had to turn to the left to reach the gates, thus exposing the right side, unprotected by the shield, to the defenders of the gate.

Entering at the *porta praetōria*, the observer would see before him a space from one hundred to two hundred feet wide, extending along the wall entirely around the camp; this prevented the enemy's missiles from reaching the tents. Along this space the troops were easily and quickly marched to any point on the *agger* where reinforcements were needed, and part of it was occupied by the wagons of the baggage-train. The space bounded by this broad avenue was divided into blocks by streets. The principal of these were the *via praetōria*, fifty feet wide, *via principālis*, one hundred feet wide, and *via quīntāna*, fifty feet wide. For the location of these see plan of Roman camp. The *via principālis* and *via quīntāna* divided the whole camp into three parts; the *praetentūra*, between the front wall and the *via principālis*; the *latera praetōrii*, between the two streets mentioned; and

the *retentūra*, between the *via quīntāna* and the rear wall. The *praetentūra* was bisected by the *via praelōria*. At the junction of the *via praelōria* with the *via principālis*, and extending back to the *via quīntāna*, was an open space called the *praetōrium*; in it were the general's quarters, the altars (*ārae*), the *forum* for the meeting of the soldiers, and the tribunal (*suggestus*) from which the general addressed them. Back of the *praetōrium* was a similar space in the *retentūra*, called the *quaestōrium*, where were kept the hostages, prisoners, booty, etc., in charge of the *quaestor* and his staff. The remaining space was portioned out according to a definite plan among the various divisions of the army and divided by smaller streets. Each cohort occupied a space one hundred and twenty feet wide and one hundred and eighty feet deep, cut into six parts, one for each century. The tents of the two centuries in a maniple were placed back to back in parallel lines. These tents were made of skins (*pellēs*), and held ten men, forming a "mess" (*contubernium*, *contubernālēs*), under the command of an under-officer (*decanus*). 135 136

The building of the camp began about noon and was finished in about three or four hours. Then the tents were put up and the evening meal was prepared and eaten. Guard-duty was performed in the day time by outposts (*excubiae*) in front of the gates, consisting of a cohort and a *turma* of horsemen; at night, by sentinels (*vigilēs*) divided into four watches (*vigiliae*), each relief standing for from three to four hours. The watchword (*tessera*) for the night was given by the general to the two tribunes on duty and the praefect of cavalry, who, through the *tesserārī*, communicated it to the soldiers. 137 138

The permanent camp (*castra stativa*) was laid out much the same as the daily camp, but was more strongly fortified in all respects. The wall was solidly built and strengthened 139



by rectangular works (*castella*) placed at convenient intervals. In winter quarters (*castra hiberna*) wooden barracks covered with skins and straw took the place of tents, as a better protection to the occupants.

- 140** **The March.** At the first signal on the *tuba* the tents were struck and the baggage packed up; at the second, the wagons and pack animals were loaded; at the third, the army began to move. Usually the order of march was in column of cohorts, each legion followed by its baggage train; when in the presence of the enemy, the army either kept the column formation, or was formed in order of battle (*aciēs instructa*). In either case the baggage was brought together under guard. The march in order of battle could be successfully maintained for a short distance only and over favorable ground. When a flank attack was expected the army marched in a hollow square (*āgmen quadrātum*) with the baggage-train in the center.

- The divisions of the army on the march were the van-guard (*prīmum āgmen*), the main body (*āgmen exercitus*, *āgmen legionum*), and the rear guard (*āgmen extrēmum* or *novissimum*). The van-guard, consisting of most of the cavalry and light-armed troops, enveloped the head of the main column. Scouts (*speculātōrēs*) or scouting parties (*explōrātōrēs*) scoured the country in search of the enemy, whom it was the duty of the van-guard to engage until the main body could come up. The work of selecting and staking out the site of the camp fell to the van-guard. The rear
- 142** guard was usually composed of cavalry, but in a dangerous region it was strengthened by several cohorts of legionaries. On occasions when Caesar doubted the reliability of his cavalry or needed it to protect the flanks, he kept it with the main body, light-armed foot taking its place in the van and rear. Each legion with its baggage, when marching in a

column forty feet wide (*āgmen centuriātim*), was about three-quarters of a mile in length.

The march began at sunrise and ended with the arrival at **143** the new camping place about noon. The regular day's march (*iter iūstum*) was about seventeen miles. Under pressure a much longer distance could be covered. The step (*gradus*) was two and one-half Roman feet, the pace (*passus*) was two steps, from right heel to right heel. The ordinary march step was one hundred to the minute; the quick step, one hundred and twenty. Rivers were usually **144** crossed by fords, the soldiers wading streams up to the waist or even neck. When the water at the ford was deep and the current swift, a line of cavalry was stationed above to break the force of the current and a second one below to rescue men who were carried off their feet. Bridges were built only where fords were not available. They were built when needed, on boats or piles, with as much ease and rapidity as to-day.

**The Battle.** When in order of battle, each legion was usually drawn up in three lines (*aciēs triplex*) of cohorts, **145** four in the front line and three in each of the others, the cohorts in the second and third lines covering the spaces in the line before them. The intervals between the cohorts of each line equalled the width of a cohort (one hundred and twenty feet); but these were probably filled up, when the battle began, by the soldiers taking a double distance (six feet apart instead of three) so as to use their weapons more freely. The lines were probably one hundred and fifty feet **146** apart. This arrangement would make the width of a legion ten hundred and fifty feet and its depth four hundred and fifty feet. Each legion being thus arranged, the length of the whole front of the line of battle would depend upon the number of legions. The cavalry and auxiliary foot were

- 147** stationed on the wings or in the rear. It will be observed that the Roman battle-formation was one of separate bodies of convenient size, each of which acted as a unit, with enough space on all sides of it for free movement. When it was necessary to extend the front of the army, the cohorts were arranged in two lines (*aciēs duplex*).
- 148** The Romans, when possible, chose as a battle-ground a slope, where they could have the advantage of the onset. If the time permitted, the general made an address to each legion. He then rode to his position, usually on the right flank, and ordered the signal for the attack, with the *tuba*. When the foe was about two hundred and fifty paces off, the legions moved forward at a rapid walk over half the space
- 149** and then the first line of cohorts broke into a run. When within ten to twenty paces the first two ranks hurled their javelins and then drew their swords and came to close quarters. In case the enemy's line was not broken by the first volley of javelins, the other ranks advanced in turn and hurled their javelins before advancing to the hand-to-hand conflict, in which the Roman's skill as a duellist gave him a
- 150** great advantage. Comparatively few of the legionaries were either killed or wounded in battle. Shields as well as swords were used in attack and the soldiers sometimes leaped upon the enemies' shields and stabbed them from above. When tired out by their exertions, those in front would retire through the spaces in the ranks behind them, and fresh fighters would take their places. If the first line of cohorts
- 151** proved unequal to the task of defeating the foe, the second line was called in, and in stubborn contests even the third. Thus by a steady pressure and a succession of attacks the enemy's lines were finally broken. There was less of strategic movement of large masses on the battlefield than in modern warfare, the combatants standing up to their work at

close quarters until one or the other yielded to superior **152** weight or skill. When the enemy broke and fled, they were pursued by the cavalry and slaughtered or captured. Ordinarily, no quarter was given, hence defeat was equivalent to annihilation. The victors suffered a comparatively small loss.

It is evident that the fighting strength of the Roman **153** army lay in its heavy infantry. The cavalry was useful in reconnoitering, in pursuit and to a degree in attack upon the enemy's horsemen; in the latter case, however, it was often strengthened and steadied by light-armed foot placed between the *turmae*. The light infantry was available for skirmish work and the protection of the flanks of the army.

**Taking of Walled Towns.** Ancient towns were surrounded by walls, very high and thick, with facings of stone **154** laid in courses, and a filling of rubble and earth. The walls of Gallic towns were sometimes strengthened by beams laid transversely in the masonry. Usually a wide and deep fosse, wet or dry, ran around the wall, and towers at regular intervals added to its strength.

The Romans had three methods of reducing fortified towns: (1) by assault; (2) by blockade; and (3) by siege. **155** In the first (*oppugnātiō repentīna*) the soldiers filled up the ditch at the points chosen with hurdles (*crūtēs*) and having crossed it planted scaling ladders (*scālae*) and mounted the walls. Others strove to batter down the walls or to break in the gates with the battering ram (*ariēs*). An artillery fire was kept up to drive the enemy from the battlements. Testudos were formed under cover of which bodies of troops approached the breaches in the walls.

If the strength of the fortifications made an assault **156** impracticable, and the town was not well provisioned, the besiegers resorted to the blockade (*obsessiō*). Strong

redoubts (*castella*) were thrown up at commanding points and connected by a line of earthworks (*mūnitiōnēs*), the whole forming the *circumvāllātiō* and encircling the town.

**157** The army was quartered in fortified camps which were so pitched as to make it easy to concentrate the troops rapidly at any point threatened with attack from the town. If there was danger of attack from the outside, a line of intrenchments (*contrāvāllātiō*) was run parallel to the first and facing the other way. When the supply of provisions within the town gave out, the garrison speedily surrendered.

**158** When the town was strongly fortified and well provisioned, the attempt was made to reduce it by a regular siege (*oppugnātiō*). As the artillery in use was not powerful enough to make breaches in the walls from a distance, provision must be made for reaching the walls and staying there long enough to break them down or surmount them. At the line of intrenchments a mound (*agger*) of timber-work and earth was begun and

**159** extended toward the walls. Covered passages were made in this mound through which to convey the material used in building it. As the mound neared the walls, its height was increased by successive stories until the level of the parapet was attained. When the fosse was reached, material of all sorts was carried through the covered passages in the mound and thrown into it until it was filled up to the level of the top of the wall and mound.

**160** The most of this work had to be done under fire, and the workmen were protected in various ways. The movable screens (*plutei*), made of plaited willows for lightness and placed on rollers, warded off arrows and other light missiles. The movable sheds (*vīneae*), with roofs and sides of wicker-work or planks protected against fire by skins, were placed end to end, forming galleries through which the besiegers

**161** passed to and from their work. Sheds (*mūscoli*), triangular

in shape and built very strong so as to resist heavy missiles, were used to protect those who were filling the fosse and undermining the walls. Lines of *plutei* parallel to the walls protected the archers and slingers, who kept up a constant fire to prevent the besieged from interrupting the work. When the mound had been extended to the walls, the storming party might advance along it to the attack. Or, if a breach was to be made, movable towers (*turrēs mōbilēs*), often many stories (*tabulāta*) in height, were rolled along the level top of the mound, which was not then made so high. **162**

In the lower story of the tower was hung the battering-ram, a beam from sixty to one hundred and eighty feet long, ending in a mass of metal in the shape of a ram's head. In the upper stories were stationed sharpshooters and pieces of light artillery to drive the defenders from the wall. Some- **163**

times, when the ground was sufficiently level, the tower was rolled forward to the outer edge of the fosse, across which the ram was worked, while access was had to the top of the wall by means of a drawbridge. The ram was sometimes placed under a sort of covered derrick (*testūdō arictāria*). The "wall-hooks" (*falcēs mūrālēs*), attached to long beams **164**

hung like the ram, were used to tear down the shattered walls. Various means were used by the besieged to defeat the efforts of the besiegers. Towers were erected on the walls opposite to the towers of the besiegers, or the walls themselves were built higher where the mound touched them. Firebrands were thrown against the woodwork of the towers or mounds in the effort to destroy them. A sudden **165**

sally (*ēruptiō*) from the town was sometimes made for the same purpose. Countermines were run so as to intersect those of the enemy. Grappling hooks were let down by ropes to seize and divert the ram, or mats of wicker-work or sand-bags were suspended between it and the wall to break

the force of its blow. Boiling pitch, melted lead, burning arrows, beams and stones, were thrown upon the attacking troops.

- 166** When a breach had been made, a storming party protected by the "shield tortoise" mounted it under cover of a heavy artillery fire and tried to force its way through. If successful and no further obstacles were encountered, the town and its inhabitants lay at the mercy of the victors, who usually repaid the stubborn valor of the garrison with slaughter or slavery.

**Engines of War.** For their artillery the Romans were

- 167** largely indebted to the Greeks. There were two kinds, catapults (*catapultae*) and ballistas (*ballistae*), which were probably used by Caesar, although he employs only the general term *tormenta* in speaking of artillery. All these engines were called *tormenta* because their propulsive power was derived from the recoil of some twisted substance,
- 168** such as rope or hair. The catapults were huge bows which shot horizontally or at a slight elevation large arrows, sharpened beams, fire-darts, etc., a distance of from five hundred to one thousand feet. The ballistas were larger than the catapults and hurled at an angle of forty-five degrees stones and other missiles, weighing as much as six hundred
- 169** pounds, a distance of from eight hundred to twelve hundred feet. On account of their bulk, these engines were commonly used in siege operations only; but light field-pieces (*scorpiōnēs*, hand-catapults, *carrō-ballistae*, ballistas mounted on wagons) were used in battle. The artillery was manned by the *fabri*.

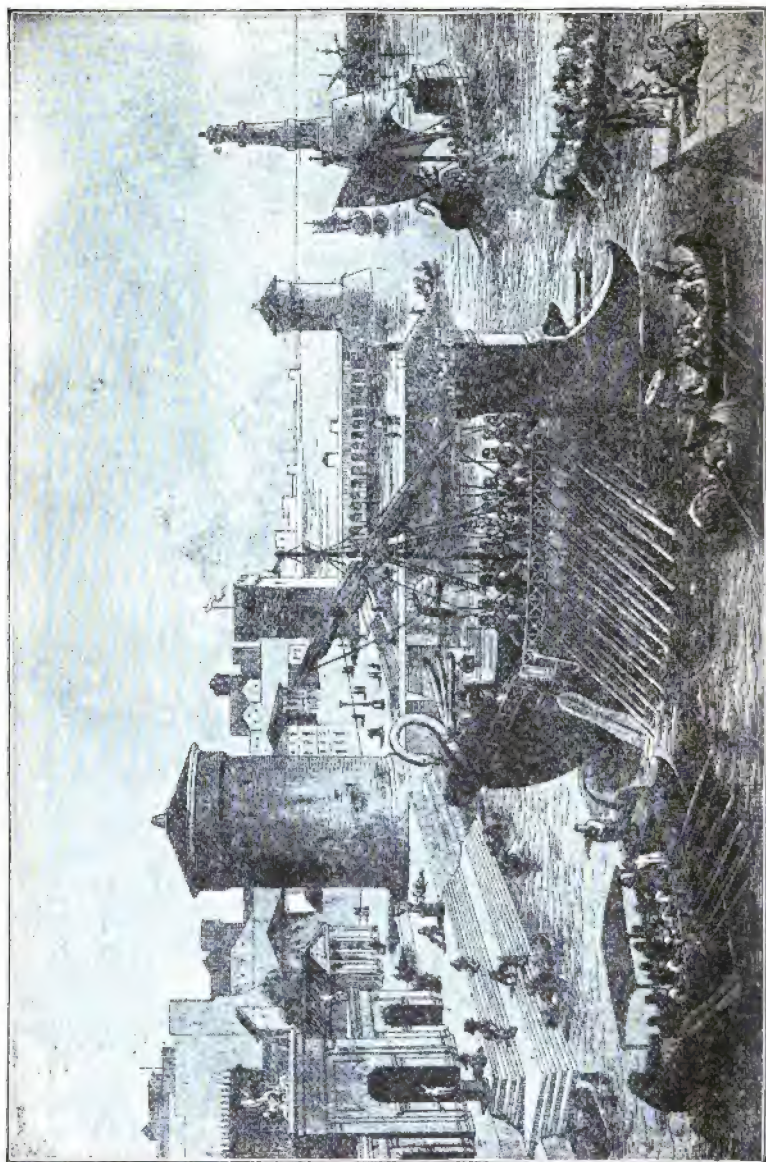
**Navy.** There were two kinds of vessels in the Roman

- 170** navy, war-ships and transports. The former were distinguished from the latter by their greater length (*nāvēs longae*), or by the addition of a beak used in battle as a ram



STORMING A CITY.





NAVAL SOJNE.

(*nāvēs rōstrātae*). The prow (*prōra*) was gracefully curved, and ornamented with finely executed figure-heads; from it projected the beak (*rōstrum*). This was sometimes placed above, sometimes below the water-line. The tall stern (*puppis*) was adorned with a high fan-shaped ornament (*āplustre*), over which was displayed the ship's flag (*vēxillum*).

Each vessel had as a rule but one mast (*mālus*), one sail-yard **171** (*antenna*), and one large, square sail (*vēlum*). Oars, however, were the main dependence for propelling vessels; they were arranged in tiers or banks from one up to six in number. The average-sized warship (*trirēmis*) had three. The handles of the oars in the upper banks were weighted so as to make them easier to use. The movements of the oars were regulated by a musical instrument, or by the taps of a gavel on a sounding-board. The rowers (*rēmigēs*) were slaves. On going into action they **172** were chained to the rowing benches, to prevent the possibility of their acting in concert with the enemy. The helmsman (*gubernātor*) guided the ship by means of two broad steering-paddles attached to the sides near the stern. The ship's anchors were made of iron and had one or two flukes. A certain class of vessels (*nāvēs tēctae*) had a complete deck; very commonly, however, only a fore deck and a hinder deck were found (*nāvēs apertae*).

For fighting purposes the warship was equipped with **173** grappling-hooks or cranes for seizing and lifting out of the water opposing vessels, movable bridges for the purpose of boarding them, wooden towers, tanks of oil, military engines, etc. These were placed on the fore deck. The fighting was done by marines, who were armed like legionary soldiers. **174** The commander of a fleet was called *praefectus classis*, and had the rank of a *lēgātus*. The admiral's ship (*navis*

*praetōria*) displayed as ensign the *vēxillum purpureum* by day and three lanterns by night.

- 175** The transports (*nāvēs onerāriae*) were about one-half as long as the war-ships, and had much greater breadth of beam.

Light, swift vessels used as despatch boats, etc., were called *nāvēs actuāriae*. Boats used in scouting service were called *nāvēs speculātōriae*. They had sails and a single bank of oars.

The Romans did not devise anything noteworthy in naval affairs, but borrowed largely from their more inventive neighbors.

## II. GALLIC.

- Military Service.** The Gallic army was composed of all the citizens in the tribe. No one excepting the Druids was exempt from service, age itself being no excuse. The levy was accomplished by calling an assembly of the tribe. Prompt attendance was secured by the custom of putting to death the last man to arrive at the place of meeting.

- Equipment.** The Celts of the early time were depicted **177** as a large race, with bodies more fleshy than sinewy. Their dress consisted of close-fitting breeches (*braccae*), a tunic of various colors, a wooden cloak (*sagum*) worn like a Scotch plaid, and wooden-soled shoes. They were not so perfectly furnished with defensive armor as were the Romans. Coats of chain-mail and brazen helmets to which were attached horns symbolizing power, and figures in relief representing birds and animals, were worn by those who had **178** sufficient means. This armor they often threw away, and with a characteristic disregard of consequences, went into battle unprotected. The shield was about as tall as the Roman *scūtum*, but much narrower, while its brazen boss

was on the inside instead of the outside. Their offensive weapons were the sword (*spatha*), very long and heavy, without a point, and made of hardened iron which often bent **179** at the first blow; and pikes of different lengths with long and very broad heads. Thongs were used sometimes in hurling these. The slingers used for missiles hard clay pellets. Bracelets or armlets and collars of gold, elaborately worked, were a frequent addition to the soldier's equipment.

**Organization and Tactics.** But little is known of the organization of a Gallic army. It is evident, however, from **180** the great number of standards used in comparison with the size of the army, that the subdivisions into ranks and files was very minute. The Gauls had little knowledge of tactics, and aside from personal valor, had few resources to rely upon for securing a victory. Their favorite method of attack was **181** a furious onset, which usually gave them good fortune in a contest with a foe unused to it, but which was not so successful with the same foe in subsequent encounters. They relied upon the momentum of a rapidly-moving mass of soldiers to sweep away the hostile obstacle; but if this was not accomplished, the subsequent hand-to-hand conflict usually resulted **182** in their discomfiture. Their losses in battle were heavy on account of the reckless daring and obstinacy with which they maintained their ground even after the contest was proved hopeless. They made no provision against possible defeat by stationing reserves within supporting distance; hence a **183** defeat meant the annihilation of their army as an organization and the complete crippling for the time of their means of resistance.

They had no idea of the importance of a proper provision of supplies for the support of an army in the field. Their **184** operations were therefore of necessity carried on in haste, and delay was fatal to the cohesion of their loosely organized

forces. An enemy who knew this could beguile them into hasty and foolish movements by working upon their impatience at inaction. This was what Ariovistus did in the war with the Aedui (I, 40, 25-30). In the same way Sabinus overcame Viridovix (III, 17-19), and Caesar the Belgae at the Axona (II, 9-11). In siege operations also the Gauls were no match for the Romans. Their strongholds were often nothing but inclosures on sites difficult of access, and were as a rule unoccupied, serving as places of refuge only in case of need. Ordinarily their camps were not fortified. In Aquitania alone, where the native troops were led by veterans who had served under Sertorius in Spain, Caesar's lieutenant found Gallic camps laid out and defended after the Roman fashion (III, 23, 12-14). Long contact with their conquerors taught the Gauls lessons which they turned to good account at Gergovia, Avaricum and Alesia. Their unwearied activity in devising fresh means of defence is highly praised by their great conqueror in his "official report," which does full justice to the valor of an unfortunate people with whose cause its author could have no sympathy.

### III. GERMAN.

**Equipment.** The Germans wore a short cloak (*sagulum*) of fur or wool, which was fastened in front by a thorn or pin. No uniformity of equipment prevailed among them. Helmets and breastplates were used by some, but more went into battle without these or any other defensive weapons except a shield of metal or ox-hide. To lose the shield in battle was accounted the greatest possible disgrace. They used the sword, but relied chiefly upon the *francea*, a lance with a chisel-shaped iron head, which served equally well for hurling, thrusting, or slashing. War-clubs, bows and arrows were in use, and harpoons with which

the shield that had been pierced could be pulled out of the enemy's hands. The cavalry used shield and lance only.

**Organization and Tactics.** The organization of the army was very simple. Every freeman was a soldier and had to obey without question a call to service. The members of the same clan kept together under their chief in the belief that the presence of their relations was a stimulus to valorous deeds. The followers of a chief were bound to faithful service until death. Desertion of his standard was a lasting disgrace. To defend him and ascribe to him their own deeds of heroism were sacred duties. "The chiefs fought for victory, the retainers for the chief." The militia of a tribe was led by the best warrior, regardless of rank. When several tribes united their forces, their chiefs chose a commander-in-chief. They advanced to the attack in the form of a solid wedge—a method that was very effective if the enemy broke, but which, in case of ill success in this particular, made further movements very difficult. An arrangement peculiarly effective was a combination of cavalry and foot in a single troop; the latter attacked the enemy's horses and in case of retreat kept pace with the cavalry by clinging to the manes of their steeds. Caesar was so impressed with the value of this mixed troop that he introduced it into his own army toward the end of the Gallic war. The attack of the cavalry was directed against the front or flank of the foe. They often alighted to fight and had their mean-looking steeds so well trained that they would remain standing in the place where they had been left until their masters mounted again. The presence of the women during the battle had a powerful effect upon the warriors. These spectators often fired the weakening ranks to heroic deeds by their prayers and encouraging words, or themselves

gave the victorious foe a bloody reception with the wagons as a bulwark. The Germans had too much confidence in their prowess on the field of battle and too much contempt for military order and system, to resort much to defensive warfare. Two or more concentric circles of wagons served for a protection against surprise when engaged in a campaign. Their fortifications were mere circles of earthworks faced with stone, and they relied more upon sudden sallies than upon these defences. Their resources were entirely inadequate to the reduction of fortified places. In later times, however, they made themselves justly feared by storming the once invincible cities of the Empire. Even imperial Rome, from whose walls a Hannibal turned away baffled, succumbed to the prowess of the northern barbarians.



## REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

**A.**==Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar.

**B.**==Bellum Helveticum.

**G.**==Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar (Revised ed. 1894).

**H.**==Harkness' Latin Grammar.

**B.**==Bennett's Latin Grammar.

Commas placed between the divisions of a reference to the grammar show that each division is to be studied. The omission of the commas indicates that reference is made only to the last division.

In the notes to the Commentaries references are made to books in Roman characters, to chapters in bold-faced Arabic, and to lines in ordinary Arabic numerals; thus, **III, 2**, 11, refers to Bk. III, chapter **2**, line 11.

A figure (1, 2, or 4) after a verb shows the number of the conjugation and that the verb is regular according to the model verb of its conjugation given in the grammars.

abl. . . . .	<i>ablative.</i>	Eng. . . . .	<i>English.</i>
abs. . . . .	<i>absolute.</i>	e. g. . . . .	<i>exempli gratiā</i> (for example).
acc. . . . .	<i>accusative.</i>	etc. . . . .	<i>et cetera</i> (and so forth, and the rest).
adj. . . . .	<i>adjective.</i>	f., fem. . . . .	<i>feminine.</i>
adv. . . . .	<i>adverb.</i>	ff., . . . . .	<i>the following.</i>
cap., chap., . . .	<i>caput</i> (chapter).	fig. . . . .	<i>figuratively.</i>
card. . . . .	<i>cardinal.</i>	freq. . . . .	<i>frequentative.</i>
cf. . . . .	<i>confer</i> (compare).	fr. . . . .	<i>from.</i>
cl. . . . .	<i>clause.</i>	gen. . . . .	<i>genitive.</i>
comp., compar.	<i>comparative.</i>	Gr. . . . .	<i>Greek.</i>
conj. . . . .	<i>conjunction.</i>	i. e. . . . .	<i>id est</i> (that is).
dat. . . . .	<i>dative.</i>	imp. . . . .	<i>imperative.</i>
def. . . . .	<i>defective.</i>	impf. . . . .	<i>imperfect.</i>
dem. . . . .	<i>demonstrative.</i>	indef. . . . .	<i>indefinite.</i>
dep. . . . .	<i>deponent.</i>	ind., indic. . . .	<i>indicative,</i>
dim. . . . .	<i>diminutive.</i>		
distr. . . . .	<i>distributive.</i>		



inf., infin. . . .	<i>infinitive.</i>	pl., plur. . . .	<i>plural.</i>
interj. . . .	<i>interjection.</i>	plpf. . . .	<i>pluperfect.</i>
irr. . . .	<i>irregular.</i>	prep. . . .	<i>preposition.</i>
l. . . .	<i>line.</i>	pr., pres. . . .	<i>present.</i>
lit. . . .	<i>literally.</i>	pron. . . .	<i>pronoun.</i>
m., masc. . . .	<i>masuline.</i>	rel .. . .	<i>relative.</i>
n., neut. . . .	<i>neuter.</i>	sc. . . .	<i>scilicet (under-</i>
nom. . . .	<i>nominative.</i>		<i>stand, supply).</i>
num. . . .	<i>numeral.</i>	seq., sqq., . . .	<i>sequentia( the</i>
ord. . . .	<i>ordinal.</i>		<i>following).</i>
p., pp. . . .	<i>page, pages.</i>	sing. . . .	<i>singular.</i>
pt., part. . . .	<i>participle.</i>	subj. . . .	<i>subjunctive.</i>
pf., perf. . . .	<i>perfect.</i>	sup., superl., . . .	<i>superlative.</i>
p. p., pf. pt. . . .	<i>perfect participle.</i>	voc. . . .	<i>vocative.</i>
pass. . . .	<i>passive.</i>		

\* following definitions in page vocabularies indicates that the word is used five times or more in the first four books of the Gallic War.

1, 2, 3, 4 following definitions, that words are used that number of times.

## BOOK I.—CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE HELVETII AND ARIOVISTUS.

---

The Helvetii were a Celtic people living in the Alpine valleys east of Lake Lemannus. Hemmed in by the mountains, they had retained without loss their strength and independence. They were hostile to the Romans, and had joined the Cimbri and Teutones, their natural enemies, in the invasion of Gaul and Italy. Defeated with the latter at Aix (102 B. C.) by the great Marius, they had remained quiet for a long time; but the present condition of Gaul, torn by factional strife, roused their ambition. Dissatisfied with the contracted stage of action to which they were confined by mountain barriers, they determined to seek a wider one far to the west, on the shores of the Atlantic. With admirable self-control, they delayed their departure until all the necessary preparations were made, and then with bold resolution burned their homes behind them.

Rome justly viewed the intended movement with apprehension. She had fought for the foothold that she had in Gaul, and was very sensitive to anything that threatened its permanence. Caesar clearly saw the danger to her interests, and as clearly, no doubt, the opportunities for gaining military renown, and determined to oppose the Helvetii. He appeared in the vicinity of Geneva at the time when they were gathering on the banks of the Rhone, and destroyed the bridge over that river, which they had unaccountably failed to secure. Curbing their impatience at the delay, they sought his permission to traverse that portion of the Roman Province lying between the Alps and the Rhone, through which lay the more feasible of the routes open to them. After an intentional delay utilized in manning hastily improvised defences along the Rhone, Caesar returned a refusal, and easily foiled their attempt to force a passage of the stream.

The baffled Helvetii now obtained permission of the Sequani to pass to the west through their territory. Across this the current of migration flowed smoothly enough until the Aedui were reached; they resisted it and were overwhelmed. In this extremity they appealed to Caesar, who was not loth to become the champion of Gallic freedom. With his army largely increased by legions hurried across the Alps from Cisalpine Gaul, he assumed the offensive, and overtook the Helvetii at the crossing of the Arar, where he destroyed one of their four tribes. For fifteen days he followed the rest, but on account of the nature of the country was unable to head off the slowly moving mass. Finally, the lack of provisions compelled him to turn aside to Bibracte. Conceiving this action to be due to cowardice, the Helvetii in turn became the pursuers, thus allowing Caesar to meet them on ground of his own choosing. After a severe battle, he defeated them with immense loss. A few escaped by night, but were brought back and "treated as enemies" and the remnant of the once proud and mighty host sadly returned to its mountain home.

Such a signal victory at once gave prestige to the Roman arms. All Gaul threw itself at Caesar's feet, and begged his aid against the German, Ariovistus. He saw the importance to Rome of making head against this menace to Gallic independence, and did not refuse the task. He first proposed to Ariovistus to settle the matter amicably, but met with a haughty refusal. Determined to bring the German king to terms before he was joined by other tribes, Caesar marched against him with all speed. While halting at Vesontio (*Besancon*), a panic caused by the current stories regarding the terrible aspect of the Germans seized his soldiers. Caesar allayed this by a speech full of tact, rousing his troops to a high pitch of enthusiasm; he then led them against the foe.

Ariovistus, struck with Caesar's determination and celerity, in turn proposed a conference, and they met on a hillock in view of both armies. Ariovistus replied boastfully to the demands of Caesar and the interview was broken up by an attack of the German guard. Another meeting was sought by the king, but Caesar refused to attend, sending, however, two representatives. They were thrown into chains, and the negotiations were thus finally broken off.

On the following day the king executed a flank movement which placed him in Caesar's rear. After five days Caesar resorted to the bold expedient of flanking in his turn and building a small camp in the rear of the enemy's position, thus re-establishing his communications, but dividing his already inferior force. Ariovistus could not resist the temptation to attack the smaller camp. After a severe struggle he was repulsed. Caesar seized the moment of exultation to order a general advance. The king was thus forced to fight, and ranged his troops in battle array in front of his baggage. Caesar in person led on his right wing, which was successful; his left, on the contrary, was beaten back. At this juncture, Publius Crassus brought forward the reserves and decided the contest. The Germans broke and fled to the Rhine, fifty miles away, so closely pursued that only a few, including, however, the king, escaped to the other bank.

In this single season's campaigning, important results were achieved. The Rhine for the first time became the frontier of the empire: the tide of barbarian invasion was rolled back for five hundred years; the destiny of Gaul as a future dependency of Rome was fixed; and the Roman's traditional fear of Gaul and German was dispelled.

---

#### REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.

FROUDE: Caesar: A sketch, chap. xiv. pp. 170-188.

TROLLOPE: Caesar's Commentaries, chap. ii. (Ancient Classic Series)

MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. iv. pp. 288-299.

MERIVALE: History of the Romans, vol. i. pp. 238-262.

NAPOLÉON: Julius Caesar, vol. ii. pp. 49-105.

# C. IULII CAESARIS DE BELLO GALLICO

## COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

B. C. 58

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum

**1. Gallia, -ae** [Gallius, -a, -um, Gallic], *f.*, Gaul, the country of the Galli, including Franke, Belgium, Netherlands, Switzerland, Italy north of the Po, and the Rhine provinces of Germany. \*  
**sum, esse, fui, futurus, n.**, be, exist, live; happen; serve for; stay, remain. \*  
**omnis, -e**, all, every, the whole of. \*  
**di-vidō, -ere, visi, visus** [dis-, apart], *a.*, divide, sunder, separate; in *p. p.* as *adj.*, divided. \*  
**in, prep. with acc. and abl.**, (*a*) with *acc.* (of motion), into, to, among, in, towards, against; (of time) up to, till, for; on, about; with *abl.*, (of space) in, upon, among, over, at, within; (of time) in, during, at, in the course of; on, upon, in the case of. \*  
**pars, partis, f.**, part, piece, portion, share; party, faction; direction, side; place, district. \*  
**trēs, tria, gen. trium, card. num.**, three. \*  
**quī, quae, quod, rel. pro.**, who,

which, what, that: often implying an antecedent, he who or those who. \*  
**ūnus, ūna, ūnum, gen. ūnīus, card. num.**, one; same, single, only, sole, alone, one. \*  
**2. in-colō, -ere, colui, cultus** [colō, cultivate], *a.* and *n.*, inhabit, live, dwell in. \*  
**Belgae, -ārum, m.**, the Belgae or Belgians, a nation of mixed German and Celtic origin, inhabiting northern Gaul. \*  
**alius, -a, -ud, gen. aliūs**, another, other; *alius . . . alius*, one . . . another; in *pl.* some . . . others. \*  
**Aquitānus, -a, -um**, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; in *pl.* as *subst.*, the Aquitani or Aquitanians, inhabiting south-western Gaul. \*  
**tertius, -a, -um, [ter, thrice] ord. num.**, third. \*  
**ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsīus**, self (as opp. to some one else); himself, herself, etc.; he, she, it etc. (emphatic); as *adj.*, very, (his, her, their) own. \*

**1. Gallia.** *Gallia Transalpina*, exclusive of the Roman Province. See Int. 67-69. *omnis*: as a whole in distinction from the land of the Celts (*tertiam*, sc. *partem*, line 2) which also was called *Gallia*. *divisa*: the perfect participle is here used as a predicate adjective

after *est*. *quārum ūnam*, one of these (parts). For the Genitive see A. 216, a, 2; B. 56; G. 370; H. 397, 2; B. 201.

**2. quī, those who.** The antecedent (here *ī*) is often omitted if indefinite or easily supplied from the context.

linguā Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,

*Description of  
the divisions  
and inhabitants  
of Gaul.*

5 institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et Sē-

3. *lingua, -ae, f., tongue; dialect, language. 2*

*Celtae, -arum, m., the Celts, a branch of the Indo-European family of nations including the French, the Welsh, the Irish, the Gaels, and the people of Brittany. In Roman writers, the inhabitants of Central Gaul. 1*

*noster, -tra, -trum [nōs], our, ours, our own; in pl. as subst., our men, our troops. \**

*Gallus, -a, -um, of Gaul, Gallic; in pl. as subst., the Gauls, inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc. \**

*ap(ad)-pellō, 1. [pello, drive], a. n. drive or go to to accost; accost, address, call by name, name, call. \**

*hic, haec, hōc, gen. huius, dem. pron., used for what is near in space, time, or thought, this, this man (woman or thing); in pl., these, they, etc.; used of what precedes with more emphasis than is. hic... ille, the one... the other; the latter (as nearer)... the former (as more remote). \**

4. *īnstitūtum, -ī [īnstituō, set up, establish], n., a fixed course,*

*principle or arrangement; habit, institution, custom. \**

*lēx, lēgis, f., law, statute, enactment. \**

*inter, prep. with acc., between, amid, among; in reciprocal relation, with, by, from. \**

*sui, sibi, sē or sēsē, reflex pron. of 3d person, himself, herself, itself, themselves; as subj. acc. of infin., he, she, they, etc. \**

*diff-erō, ferre, distuli, dilātus, [dis-, apart], a. and n., bear apart, disperse, spread; defer, distract; be different, differ. \**

*ā (before consonants), ab (before a vowel or a consonant), ābs (with, tē and -que) prep. with abl., from away from, at, by, on, on the side of. \**

5. *Garumna, -ae, m., the Garonne, a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul. 3 flūmen, -inis [fluō, flow], n., a flowing; river, stream. \**

*Matrona, -ae, m., the Marne, a tributary of the Seine. 1*

*et, and, and further, also, too, even; et... et, both... and. \**

*Sēquana, -ae, m., the Seine. \**

3.4. *Celtae, Galli*: these terms were first applied to this people by the Greeks and afterwards adopted by the Romans. For the case, see A. 183, 185, 239 1 a, N. 2; B. 50; G. 205, 206; H. 362, 2, 2; B. 168, 2, b). *linguā*: the Gauls spoke the pure Celtic language; the Belgians used a dialect of the Celtic, probably mixed with German; the Aquitani-ans spoke Basque, which is still used in the western Pyrenees. *lin-  
guā, īnstitūtis, lēgibus, in lan-*

*guage, etc.* What idea is denoted by this Ablative? With what parts of speech is it employed? A. 253; B. 95; G. 397; H. 424; B. 226.

4. *inter sē, from one another*: the reciprocal idea for the third person is often expressed by *inter sē*.

5. *Matrona et Sēquana divi-  
dit*: these two rivers constituted one boundary and the verb is therefore in the singular.

quana dividit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important,

6. fortis, -e, strong, valiant, brave. \*

7. propter-eā, conj., on this account, therefore. \*

quod, conj. [adv. acc. of the neuter of quī], as to which, in that, that, because. \*

cultus, -ūs [colō] m., cultivation; training, culture, dress; civilization. \*

atque, (āc only before cons.) [ad + -que], adds something important while et associates objects of equal importance, and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison, with, as; after words of difference, than, from. \*

hūmānitās, -tātis [hūmānus, human], m., humanity, courteousness, refinement. 2

prōvincia, -ae [prō-vincō, extend by conquest], f., charge or administration of a province; province. \*

longē [longus], adv., far, far away, absent, distant. \*

8. ab-sum, esse, āfui, āfutūrus, n., be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. \*

minimē [minimus], superl adv., least, very little; by no means, not at all. \*

-que, (always affixed to the word or

some part of the expression it connects), and. \*

ad, prep with acc., to, towards, against; among, near, at, about (with numerals); at, till (of time). \*

is, ea, id, gen. eius, weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context, this, that; he, she, it, they, etc.; is ut, such as; with comparatives eō (abl.) the, all the; eō magis, all the more; eō (abl. as adv.), on this account, therefore; eā (sc. viā) in that way (only V, 51, 9). \*

mercātor, -ōris [mercōr, trade], m., merchant, trader. \*

saepe, often, frequently; many times; minimē saepe, very rarely.

commeō, 1. [meō, go] n., go, resort; with ad, resort to, visit. \*

9. ef-feminō, 1. [fēmina, woman], a., make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. 2

animus, -ī, m., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings, character; resolution, courage. \*

per-tineō, 2. [teneō, hold], n., hold or reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, tend. \*

im-portō, 1. [portō, carry], a., carry or bring in, import. 4

6. hōrum: for the Gen. see A. 216, a, 2; B. 56; G. 372; H. 397, 3; B. 201. How does this differ from quārum 1, 1?

7. prōvinciae: the Prōvincia Rōmāna, in the southeast part of Gallia omnis. See Int. 62, 65, 66.

8. minimē...saepe commeant, by no means frequently (very seldom) resort. The expression of strong affirmation by denying the contrary is called Litotes. mercātōrēs: Massilia, founded by the

Greeks about 600 B. C., was the commercial center of Gaul. Her traders penetrated the interior, following the lines of water communication, which did not reach the Belgians. They sold strong wine, of which the Gauls were very fond, and horses from Italy. They did much to Romanize southern Gaul.

9. effēminandōs: the Gerundive is most conveniently translated as governing the noun (here animōs) with which it (as a verbal ad-

10proximique sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotidiānīs proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut

10. **proximus**, -a, -um [*superl. fr. proprior, nearer*], nearest, next to, next; last. \*

**Germānus** -ī, [*Celtic Gairmean, one who shouts the war cry, or wehr-mann, war-man, warrior*], m., a German; in *pl.* the Germans; *Germānus*, -a, -um, German. \*

**trāns**, *prep. with acc.*, across, beyond, over. *With geographical expressions to be translated east of, west of, etc., according to the context.*

**Rhēnus**, -ī, m., the Rhine, forming the boundary between Gallia and Germānia. \*

**cum**, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with, together with. \*

11. **continenter** [*continēns*], *adv.*, continuously, without interruption, continually. \*

**bellum**, -ī, n., warfare, war. \*

**gerō**, -ere, gessi, gestus, a., bear, carry, wield; (of war) carry on, perform, wage, conduct. \*

**dē**, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from; of, out of; concerning, for, with respect to; on account of, about, in regard to. \*

**causa**, -ae, f., cause, reason, grounds, motive; in *abl. after a gen.*, for the sake of; **causam dicere**, to plead a case. \*

**Helvētīi**, -ōrum, m., the Helvetians, a Celtic tribe between Mt. Jura,

*Lake Leman, the Rhone and Rhine.\**

12. **quoque**, *adv. following the word emphasized*, also, too, even. \*

**reliquus**, -a, -um [*relinquō, leave*], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; **reliquum**, -ī, n., remainder, residue, rest. \*

**virtūs**, -ūtis [*vir, man*], f., manliness, valor, merit, worth; *pl.* good qualities, virtues. \*

**prae-cēdō**, -ere, cessi, cessus, [*cēdō, go*], a., go before; precede, surpass, excel. \*

**ferē**, *adv.*, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. \*

**cotidiānus**, -a, um, *abl.*, every day, daily; usual, customary. \*

13. **proelium**, -ī, n., battle, contest, engagement. \*

**con-tendō**, -ere, tendi, tentus [*tendō, stretch*], n., push forward, hasten; strive, contend, fight. \*

**cum**, *conj.*, with *indic.*, simply defining the time when, when, while, whenever; with *subj.*, showing the situation in which the event occurred, when; with *subj.*, showing the situation as tending to cause the event, since, because; with *subj.*, showing the situation as tending to prevention, though, although. \*

**aut**, *conj.*, used where the difference is important, or exclusive, or; aut ... aut, either ... or.

jective) agrees. What is the Gerundive in form and how is it employed? A. 296; B. 126; G. 427; H. 543, 544, 1; B. 339, 1.

10. **proximi Germānīs**, next to the Germans. For the case see A. 234, a; B. 63; G. 359; H. 391, I; B. 192. **trāns Rhēnum**, i. e. on the east bank, though scattered tribes were permanently settled west of the river.

11. **quā dē causā**, and for this reason. The Relative is used to connect co-ordinate clauses more frequently in Latin than in English. When it thus connects independent sentences, it should be rendered by a conjunction with a demonstrative. **Helvētīi**: a Celtic tribe whose territorial limits coincide in general with those of Switzerland.

12. **virtūte**, in valor; for con-

suīs finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, ini-<sup>16</sup> tium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae

14. **suus, -a, -um** [suī, himself, herself, etc.], *reflex. pron. adj. referring to subject, of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, etc., their own; his, hers, its, theirs: in neut. as subst., one's property; suī, their men (friends or countrymen).* \*

**finis, -is** [*cf.* findō, divide], *m.*, boundary, limit, border; *in pl.*, boundaries, territory, country. \*

**pro-hibeō, 2. [habeō]**, *a.*, have, hold, or keep from or forth; restrain; keep, prevent. \*

15. **obtinēō, -ēre, -uī, tentus** [teneō, hold], *a.*, hold (against the claim of another), retain, obtain, possess; maintain, have control of. \*

**dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus**, *a.*, say, tell, speak, name, mention, express. \*

**initium, -ī** [in-eō, go into], *n.*, beginning, commencement, origin. \*

16. **capio, -ere, cēpi, captus**, *a.*, take, capture, seize; take up; obtain. \*

**Rhodanus -ī m.**, a Gallic river, now the Rhone. \*

**contineō, -ēre, -uī, tentus** [teneō], *a.*, hold together; hold in check, restrain; enclose, contain, bound. \*

17. **oceanus, -ī, m.**, the great or outer sea, the ocean: used once as *adj. with mare.* \*

**at(ad)tingō, -ere, tigi, tactus** [tangō, touch], *a.*, touch or border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. \*

**etiam** [et + iam], *conj.*, and also, even also. \*

**Sēquani, -ōrum, m.**, a Gallic tribe between the Saone and the Jura. \*

18. **vergō, -ere, a., n.**, look or lie towards, incline, slope. 4

**septentrionēs, -um, [triōnēs, ploughing oxen]**, (the constellations of the Great Bear and Little Bear were compared to a wagon with oxen), *m.*, the stars of the Great Bear, hence the North: *in sing.* Septentriō -ōnis, *m.*, the North (once). \*

struction *cf. linguā* etc. ll. 3, 4.

14. **suīs**, *their own*. To what do the forms of **suus** and the reflexive **sē** regularly refer? A. 196; G. 309; H. 419; B. 244. **finibus**: For the case see A. 243, a; B. 83; G. 390; H. 414; B. 214. **eōs, ipsi**: Who are meant?

15. **eōrum ūna pars**, *one part of these (their territory)*; **eōrum** is a Partitive Genitive limiting **pars** (the people, where we put the country). **obtinēre**: has *quam* as a di-

rect object, and with its subject acc. **Gallōs** is the subject of the impersonal verb **dictum est**. For the infinitive with subject accusative as subject, see A. 330; B. 80; G. 535; H. 538; B. 330. **initium capit ā**, *begins at*.

16, 17. **flūmine, Oceanō, finibus**: The omission of conjunctions is called Asyndeton; *cf. linguā . . . lēgibus* l. 3.

18. **vergit ad septentrionēs**: notice on the map the general course of the rivers.



ab extrémis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs mōntēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

*Orgetorix persuades the Helvetians to invade Gaul.*

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōn-

19. extrémus, -a, -um, [*superl. of exter, outer*], outermost, utmost, farthest, extreme. \*

orior, oriri, ortus, *n.*, arise, begin, spring up, rise: oriens sōl, the rising sun, the east. \*

inferus, -a, -um, low, below, underneath: *comp. inferior, lower, inferior: sup. infimus or imus*, lowest, last, at the foot or bottom. \*

20. spectō, 1. *a.*, look at, behold; look, face, lie. \*

21. sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun. \*

Aquitānia, -ae, *f.*, Aquitania; Southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and Pyrenees. \*

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, belonging to the Pyrenees, Pyrenean: mōntēs, the Pyrenees mountains. 1

22. mōns, mōntis, *m.*, mountain; mountain range. \*

Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain, the country of the Hispani, including the

whole peninsula. \*

23. occāsus, -ūs, [*oc-cidō*, fall down, set], *m.*, falling or going down, setting: with sōlis, sunset, the west. \*

1. apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, near, with; (*with persons*) at the house of, in the presence of. \*

nōbilis, -e, [*nōscō*, know], well known, famous, noted. \*

dītissimus, -a, -um (*superl. of dives, not used by Caesar*), very rich, richest. 1

2. Orgetorix, -igis, *m.*, a chief of the Helvetii. \*

M., abbreviation for Marcus. \*

Messālā, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name, Marcus Valerius Messala, consul 61, B. C. 2

Pisō, -ōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name, Marcus Papius Piso Calpurnianus, consul with Messala, 61, B. C. \*

19. extrémis finibus: i. e. those farthest from the *Prōvincia Rōmāna*. Galliae: The land of the Celts, not *Gallia omnis*. inferiorem, lower, or near the mouth.

20. in . . . sōlem: the Sambre, Scheldt and other Belgian streams flow Northeast.

22. ad, near, bordering upon.

2. M. Messālā . . . cōsulibus,

in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso (when Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso were consuls). This was in the year 61 B. C., three years before Caesar came to Gaul. For the political situation in Gaul at this time see Int. 79-81. M. Messala M. Pisōne: For the Abl. see A. 255, a; B. 98; G. 409; H. 431, 4; B. 227.

sulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fecit et civitātī persuāsit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus 5

cōsul, -ulis [*cf. cōn-sedeō, cōnsilium*], *m.*, a consul, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. \*

3. rēgnum, -ī [rēx, king], *n.*, kingly or royal authority, royal power; sovereignty; kingdom. \*

cupiditās, -tātis [cupidus], *f.*, eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. \*

in-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate. 4.

con-iūratiō, -ōnis [iūrō, take an oath], *f.*, swearing together, plot, conspiracy; secret league.

nōbilitās, -tātis [nōbilis], *f.*, celebrity; noble birth, nobility; the nobility, the nobles. \*

4. faciō, -ere, fecī, factus, *a.*, and *n.*, make, do, accomplish, effect, form: *pass.* fiō, fieri, factus

sum: certiorē facere, to inform: iter facere, to march. \*

civitās, -tātis [civis, citizen], *f.*, citizenship; the citizens (*as forming a community*), state, city, nation, commonwealth. \*

per-suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus [suādeō, advise], *a.*, *n.*, advise prevailingly; convince, persuade. \*

ut (utī), *conj.* with subj., that, in order that, to; that, so that, so as to; though, although; *after words of fearing*, that not: *with indic.* as *adv.*, as, as though, how. \*

5. cōpia, -ae [cum+ops, power], *f.*, supply, plenty, abundance; *in pl.*, resources, forces, troops. \*

ex-eō, ire, ivi (ii), itus [eō, go], *n.*, go from or out, depart from, leave. \*

per-facilis, -e [facilis, easy], very easy. 3.

3. nōbilitātis (=nōbilitium), the nobles, the abstract being used for the concrete.

4. civitātī persuāsit, he persuaded the citizens: for case see A. 227; B. 61; G. 346; H. 385, II; B. 187, II. civitātī=civibus, cf. nōbilitātis, l. 3. For the political organization of the Gauls see Int. 68, 69, and Mommsen IV, pp. 270, 271. ut... exirent, to leave their country, a substantive clause of purpose, the direct object of persuāsit. A. 331; G. 546; H. 498; B. 294, 295. cōpiis: including women and children. This movement (ut... exirent), was possibly suggested by

their former connection with the Cimbri and Teutones.

5. cum... praestarent, since they surpassed all in valor. This claim seems to have been well founded: see 1, 11, 12, *Helvētī*, sqq. omnibus: For case see A. 228; B. 62; G. 347; H. 386; B. 187, III. per-facile esse etc., (saying) that it was very easy to get control of the government (lit. to get control... was very easy): indirect discourse with the verb of saying implied in persuāsit. In direct discourse the words would stand; *perfacile est, cum virtūte omnibus praestētis*.

praestarent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, qui agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dividit, alterā ex parte mōnte 10 Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā

6. prae-stō, stāre, stitī, stātūrus (stitus) [stō, stand], *a., n., stand* or place before, show, supply, furnish; be superior or pre-eminent, excel, surpass. *Impers. praestat*, it is better. \*
- tōtus, -a, -um, *gen. tōtius, dat. tōtī*, the whole, the whole of, entire, all. \*
- imperium, -i, [imperō, command], *n., command, order; authority, sway; supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power.* \*
- potior, -i, -itus sum [potis, powerful], *a., become master of, get control or possession of; obtain, possess.* \*
- facile [facilis, easy], *adv., easily, readily. Comparative, facilius, superl., facillimē.* \*
7. undique, *adv., from all parts, on all sides.*
- locus, -i, *m., and plural loca, -ōrum,*

- n., place, position, locality.* \*
- nātūra, -ae [nātus, birth], *f., nature, constitution, character.* \*
8. ē (only before consonants) ex (before vowels and consonants), *prep. with abl. out, out of, from: ex itinere, on the march; ūnā ex parte, on one side.* \*
- lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide, extensive. \*
- altus, -a, -um [*p. p. of alō*, nourish, promote], high, lofty; deep: *neut. as subst., the deep, the sea.* \*
9. ager, agri, *m., field; territory, district; land, ground.* \*
- alter, -era, -erum (*gen. alterius, dat. alteri*), the other (of two); second; the one; alter...alter, the one...the other; alteri...alteri, the one party...the other. \*
10. Iūra, -ae, *m., the Jura, a mountain range from the Rhine to the Rhone.* 3.
11. lacus, -ūs, *m., a lake.* 3.

6. imperiō: For the case see A. 249; B. 91; G. 407; H. 421, I; B. 218, 1. potiri: For the mood cf. *obtinere* 1, 15. *id...persuāsit*, he persuaded them (to follow) this (course) (i. e., *ut exirent*), the more easily. When *persuādere* is thus used with a direct object (here *id*) and an indirect object (*iis*), the former is either a pronoun or a substantive clause of purpose, (as *ut...exirent*, ll. 4 5, above).

7. loci nātūrā: see the map for the following details. *continentur*, shut in.

8. ūnā ex parte, on one side, the

northeast and east. Note the position of the monosyllabic preposition in reference to the noun and its adjective, and cf. *quā de causā*, 1, 11. *lātissimō*: very broad: at Basle, 750 ft. The swift current, in the stretch from the Lake of Constance to Basle, would be a great obstacle to an easy crossing.

9. alterā etc., on a second side.

10. Sēquanōs: A powerful tribe living between the Arar and the Rhone. It headed the patriotic party in Gaul. See Int. 79. *tertiā sc. ex parte* and cf. rendering of *alterā*. A fourth boundary, not mentioned here, was formed by the Alps.

lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dividit. His rēbus fiēbat, ūt et minus latē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiē-

**Lemannus**, -ī (*with or without lacus*), *m.*, Lake Leman, Lake Geneva. 3.

12. **rēs, rei, r.**, thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence, circumstance: **rēs familiāris**, property; **rēs frumentāria**, supplies; **rēs militāris**, warfare; **novae rēs**, revolution; **rēs pūblica**, the state, the public interests. \*

**fiō, fieri, factus sum** (*pass. of faciō*), be made or done; come to pass, result, happen. \*

**minus, adv.**, [minor, less], less. \*

**latē** [**lātus**, wide], *adv.*, widely, extensively. \*

13. **vagor**, 1. [**vagus**, roaming], *n.*, roam about, rove, wander. \*

**finitimus, -a, -um** [**finis**, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *in pl.* as *subst.*, neighbors. \*

**in-ferō, ferre, intulī, illātus** [**ferō**, bear], *a.*, bear, bring, or make upon, inflict; **signa inferre**, to advance the standards, to attack. \*

**possum, posse, potuī** [**potis**, able, +**sum**], *n.*, be able, can; to have power or influence; **plūrimum posse**, to be very powerful. \*

14. **homō, -inis** [*cf.* **humus**, earth], *m.*, human being, man; *in pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. \*

**bellō**, 1. [**bellum**, war], *n.*, make or carry on war, wage war. 4.

**cupidus, -a, -um** [**cupiō**, desire], desirous, eager, zealous, fond. \*

**māgnus, -a, -um** (*comp.*, **māior**, *superl.*, **māximus**), great (*in size, quantity, or degree*), large; abundant, much; important, extensive; **māgnī** (*gen. sing. neut.*), of great importance; **māgnis itineribus**, by forced marches. \*

**dolor, -ōris** [**doleō**, grieve], *m.*, grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*); vexation, annoyance. \*

**af** (**ad-**) **-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus** [**faciō**], *a.*, do to, treat, affect; **māgnō dolōre afficere**, to annoy greatly. \*

11. **prōvinciam**: see on 1, 7.

12. **his rēbus**, for this reason (because of these things). For the case see A. 245; B. 85; G. 408; H. 416; B. 219. **fiēbat**: The subject of verbs used impersonally is frequently a clause (here *ut . . . possent*, a substantive clause of result). **minus**, less (than they desired).

13. **finitimīs**: esp. the Ger-

mans. See 1, 12, 13.

14. **quā ex parte**, and on this ground: cf. **quā dē causā**, 1, 11. **hominēs etc.**, as they were men who were . . . they were much dissatisfied. **bellandī cupidī fond** of making war. **bellandī**: What is the Gerund? A. 295; B. 125; G. 425; H. 541; B. 338. For its case here see A. 218, a; B. 55; G. 374; H. 399 I, 1; B. 204.

15bantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā belli atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finis habēre arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

*Preparations  
of the Helve-  
tians.*

3. His rēbus adducti et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōti cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum

15. prō, *prep. with abl.* [cf. prae], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in proportion to. \*

multitūdō, -inis [multus], *r.*, a great number, multitude. \*

autem, *conj.*, but (a weak adversative), however, now, on the other hand; moreover. \*

glōria, -ae, *r.*, glory, renown, honor, fame. \*

16. fortitūdō, -inis [fortis, strong], *r.*, strength, courage. 1

angustus, -a, -um [angō, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow. \*

habēō, 2. *a. and n.*, have, hold, possess; consider, regard. \*

arbitror, 1. [arbitrator, witness; judge], *a. and n.*, witness, testify; judge, decide; think, believe. \*

17. longitūdō, -inis [longus], *r.*, length, extent; long duration. \*

mille, *num. adj.* (*indecl. in sing.*), a thousand; *pl.*, milia (millia), -um, *n.*, thousands (*a subst., usually followed by part. gen.*): milia passuum, thousands of paces, miles. \*

passus, -ūs [*p. p. of* pandō, extend],

*m.*, a pace, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1-4 inches, (five Roman feet). \*

CC = ducenti, -ae, -a [duo + centum], *num. adj.*, two hundred. 3

XL = quadragintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, forty. 4

lātitudō, -inis [lātus, wide], *r.*, width, extent, breadth. \*

C = centum, *indecl. num., adj.*, a hundred. 3

LXXX = octōgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, eighty. \*

18. pateō, -ēre, -uī, *n.*, lie or be open; stretch out, extend. \*

1. ad-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead or draw to; constrain, influence. \*

auctōritās, -tātis [auctor, producer], *r.*, a producing influence, character, authority, reputation. \*

2. per-moveō, -ēre, mōvi, mōtus [moveō, move], *a.*, move thoroughly, rouse, incite, instigate. \*

cōn-stituō, -ere, stitui, stitutus [statuō, set up], *a.*, set up, station; put together; establish, settle, determine. \*

proficiscor, -i, profectus sum, *n.*, set out, start, depart; go, proceed. \*

15. prō multitūdine, in comparison with their great numbers. According to Chap. 29, 263,600.

16. angustōs, too narrow. The comparative idea is contained in prō multitūdine. finis: acc. pl. What other spelling for this form? These narrow limits were considerably larger than those of modern Switzerland which contains a population of 3,000,000. Uncivilized

peoples, however, require wide limits.

17. longitūdinem: from the Jura range west of Geneva to Lake Constance. lātitudinem: from Basle to the Lepontine Alps. Switzerland is 216 miles long by 140 miles broad. milia: for case see A. 257; B. 77; G. 335; H. 379; B. 181. passuum: for constr. see quārūm 1, 1.

pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs civitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eas rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum pro-

3. com-parō, 1. [parō, prepare], a., prepare, get ready; supply, furnish, muster, equip. \*

iūmentum, -ī [for iugimentum fr. iugum, yoke], n., yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. \*

carrus, -ī, m., cart. \*

quam, adv. with interrog., how, how much; with comp., as, than; with sup., as possible; with expressions of time, after; quam diū, as long as. \*

māximus, -a, -um [sup. of māgnus], greatest, largest. \*

4. numerus, -ī, m., number, quantity; account, estimation. \*

coēmō, -ere, -ēmi, -ēptus [cum + emō], a., buy, buy up, purchase. 2

sēmentis, -is [sēmen, seed], r., seeding, planting, sowing. 1

5. iter, itineris [for itiner fr. p. of eō, go], n., a going, way, route; journey, march. \*

frūmentum, -ī, n., grain; in pl., crops. \*

sup (sub-) -petō, -ere, -īvī (ii),

-ītus [petō, seek, obtain], n., be near or at hand, be present or in store. \*

6. pāx, pācis [pācō, pacify], r., peace. \*

amicitia, -ae [amicus, friend], r., friendship. \*

cōn-firmō, 1. [firmus, strong], a., establish, strengthen, encourage; declare, assert. \*

cōn-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [faciō], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish; finish up, exhaust; furnish, prepare. \*

7. biennīum, -ī [bis, twice, + annus, year], n., a period of two years. 1

satis (sat), adv. and indec. adj., enough, sufficiently; sufficient, satisfactory. satis causae, sufficient reason. \*

dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, a., lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. \*

annus, -ī, m., year. \*

3. pertinērent: for the mood see A. 320; B. 109; G. 631; H. 503, I; B. 283.

comparāre, depends upon cōstituērunt l. 2: for the mood see A. 271; B. 121; G. 423; H. 533; B. 328. Point out three other infinitives of the same kind in this sentence.

iūmentōrum, beasts of burden, properly "yoke-animals" (iū-gum, a yoke). carrōrum: vehicles with two wheels; a Celtic word Latinized: cf. the English car formerly spelled carre. quam māximum, as great as possible (the greatest possible). For quam with

the superlative see A. 93, 6; B. XXX; G. 303; H. 170, 2 (2); B. 240, 3.

5. ut cōpia suppeteret, in order that a supply might be at hand. For the mood see A. 317; B. 107; G. 545, 1, 2, 3; H. 497, 11; B. 282. Contrast the adverbial use of this Final Clause with the substantive use in 2, 5. proximīs civitatibus: the Sequani, Allobroges, etc.

6. ad . . . cōficiendās, for completing these preparations. For form and construction, see on ef-feminandōs, 1, 9.

7. dūxērunt, here a verb of

fectionem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eas rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscēpit.

- 10 *Orgetorix conspires with chiefs of other tribes for supremacy.* In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnū in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populi Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnū in civitatē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itēque Dumnorī-

8. **profectiō, -ōnis** [proficiscor, set out], *r.*, a setting out, start, departure. \*

9. **dē-ligō, -ere, lēgī, lectus** [legō, choose], pick or choose out, select, cull; levy, gather. \*

**lēgatiō, -ōnis** [lēgō, despatch], *r.*, embassy, legation; commission; the office of an ambassador. \*

**sus-cipiō, -ere, cēpi, ceptus** [sub + capiō, take], *a.*, take or lift up (from beneath), undertake, assume; begin; engage in; undergo, suffer. \*

10. **Casticus, -ī, m.**, a nobleman of the Sequani. 1

**Catamantaloedēs, -is, m.**, a Sequanian chieftain. 1

11. **filius, -ī, m.**, son. \*

**pater, patris, m.**, father; *in pl.*, ancestors. \*

12. **multus, -a, -um, comp. plūs, sup. plūrimus**, much; *pl.* many. \*  
**senātus, -ūs** [senex, old man], *m.*, a body of old men, senate; *esp.*, the administrative council of Rome. \*

**populus, -ī, m.**, the people, the mass, the crowd; a people or nation. \*

**Rōmānus, -a, -um**, of Rome, Roman; *as subst.* a Roman; *in pl.* the Romans. \*

13. **amicus, -ī, m.**, friend. \*  
**occupō, 1.** [ob + capiō], *a.*, seize upon, take possession of; hold, possess. \*

14. **ante, (1) adv.**, before, above, previously (2) *prep. with acc.*, before, in advance. \*

**item, adv.**, in like manner, so, also, just so. \*

thinking, is followed by the infinitive *esse* in Indir. Disc. The English idiom requires that such infinitives be rendered by the Indicative. They considered that two years were etc: cf. rendering of *esse* in 2, 5.

8. **lēge, by resolution**, of the public assembly.

9. **sibi . . suscēpit**, he took on himself.

10. **persuādet**: for tense see A. 276 *d*; B. 123; G. 229; H. 467, III; B. 259 3. **Casticō**: case? Cf. *civitātī* 2, 4.

11. **filiō, Sēquanō**: for case see A. 183, 184; B. XXXI; G. 320, 321; H. 363; B. 169, 1, 2.

12. **multōs annōs**, for many years. For the accusative see A.

256; B. 78; G. 336; H. 379; B. 181.

13. **amicus**: an honorary title often granted to foreign states or chiefs by the Roman Senate in recognition of special services or to attach them to Roman interests. *ut . . . occupāret*, to seize. For mood cf. *exirent* 2, 5. For the sequence after the Historical Present see A. 287, *e*; B. 102; G. 511, R. 1; H. 495, II. **rēgnū, supreme authority**; there were no hereditary kings in Gaul, a chief's tenure being dependent on his wealth and personal qualities.

14. **Dumnorīgī**: younger than Diviciacus, a bold leader of the anti-Roman party among the Aedui and an adherent of the old aristocracy.

gī Aeduō, frātrī Diviciaci, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in civitā-1 5  
te obtinēbat ac māximē plēbi acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur,  
persuadet eiūque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat. Perfacile  
factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse

**Dumnorix**, -igis, m., an Aeduan  
chieftain, brother of Diviciacus. \*

15. **Aeduus**, -a, -um, of the  
Aedui, Aeduan; as subst., an Aedu-  
an; in pl., the Aedui, a powerful  
Gallic tribe between the upper  
waters of the Saone and Loire. \*

**frāter**, **frātris**, m., brother. \*

**Diviciacus**, -i, (1), a chief of the  
Aedui, brother of Dumnorix and  
friendly to the Romans. (2), a  
chief of the Suessiones. \*

**tempus**, -oris, n., a division or sec-  
tion of time; time; occasion;  
crisis; **omni tempore**, always; in  
**reliquum tempus**, for the future;  
**ūnō tempore**, at the same time. \*

**prīncipātus**, -ūs [princeps, chief],  
m., chief place or position; chief  
authority, leadership. \*

16. **plēbs**, **plēbis** or **plebēs**, -ēi, f.,  
common people; multitude. \*

**accipio**, -ere, cēpi, ceptus [ad-  
cipio], a., take or receive to  
one's self, accept; experience,  
suffer; learn, hear, take; in p. p.  
as adj., acceptable, beloved, pop-  
ular. \*

**idem**, **eadem**, **idem** [is+ -dem],

dem. adj. pron., the same; this  
very, also. \*

**cōnor**, 1. a., attempt, endeavor,  
try. \*

17. **filia**, -ae, f., daughter. 4  
**mātirimōnium**, -i [māter], n., mar-  
riage, wedlock, matrimony: in  
**mātirimōnium dare**, to give in  
marriage; in **mātirimōnium dū-**  
**cere**, to marry. 2

**dō**, **dare**, **dēdi**, **datus**, a., give, be-  
stow, confer; furnish, present;  
yield, give up: in **fugam dare**,  
put to flight. \*

18. **ille**, **illa**, **illud**, gen. **illius**, dat.  
**illi**, dem. adj. pron. (of what is re-  
mote in time, place, thought, etc.  
cf. **hic**), that: as subst. he, she, it;  
that man, that woman, etc.; **hic**  
... **ille**, this ... that, the latter  
... the former. \*

**probō**, 1. [probus, good], a., con-  
sider good, approve; test, prove;  
show, demonstrate. \*

**cōnātum**, -i, n., an attempt, effort,  
undertaking.

**per-ficiō**, -ere, **fēci**, **fectus** [faciō],  
a., make or do thoroughly or  
completely; achieve, accomplish,  
perfect. \*

racy which had generally been driven  
out of power.

15. **Aeduō**: the Aedui lived  
west of the Sequani, between the  
Loire and the Saone. For their po-  
litical condition at this time, see  
Int. 79, 80. **Diviciaci**: an ardent  
admirer of the Romans, whose cap-  
ital he had visited. He belonged to  
the popular party which was favor-  
able to Rome. This party was head-  
ed by the Druids, a priestly order  
wielding a powerful influence  
throughout Gaul. For details re-

garding them, see Intr. 72-75. **quī**:  
i. e. Dumnorix. **prīncipātum**, a  
**prominent position**, largely due to  
his brother's influence.

16. **plēbi acceptus**, popular  
with (acceptable to) the people.  
**plēbi**: for case see on *Germanis* 1,  
10. **ut idem cōnārētur**, to attempt  
the same thing, i. e. the subversion  
of the constitutional government  
and the establishment of a military  
rule. **cōnārētur**: for mood and  
tense cf. *occuparet* l. 13.

17. **perfacile** ... **factū**: English



suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; nōn esse dubium, 20 quā tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possent; sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrū cōfirmat. Hāc orātiōne adducti inter sē fidem et iūs iurandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

19. nōn [contr. fr. nē ūnum], not, no. \*

dubius, -a, -um [duo], uncertain, doubtful. 4

20. quā [quī + nē], conj., by which not, that not, but that; after negative words of doubt or hindrance, but what, that, from, to; quā etiam, nay even, moreover. \*

plūrimum [sup. of multum], most, very much, exceedingly, especially. \*

21. exercitus, -ūs [exerceō, train], m., a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. \*

conciliō, 1. [concilium, assembly], a., assemble or bring together; gain or win over; reconcile, conciliate. 4

22. orātiō, -ōnis [orō, speak], f., a

speaking, speech, language; a speech, address, argument. \*

fidēs, -eī [fidō, confide], f., good faith, confidence; pledge, promise; assurance. \*

iūs iurandum, iūris iurandi [iūs, right + iūrō, swear], n., swearing to one's rights, an oath. \*

23. per, prep. with acc., through, throughout, by means of, through the agency of, on account of: in composition, through, very, thoroughly. \*

potēns, -entis [pr. p. of possum], adj., powerful, influential. \*

ac, see atque, 1, 7.

firmus, -a, -um, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. \*

24. spērō, 1. [spēs, hope], a., n., hope, hope for, anticipate. \*

order; probat illis perficere cōnata esse perfacile factū.

18. esse, for mood and rendering see on esse l. 7. factū: explain the use of the Supine. A. 308: B. 129; G. 436; H. 547; B. 340 2. The English idiom requires the omission of factū in translating.

19. obtenturus esset, purposed to get control of. What is denoted by the first or active periphrastic conjugation? How is it formed? A. 113, b, N., 129; B. XXXVIII; G. 247; H. 233; B. 116. nōn esse dubium, quā, that there is no doubt that.

20. Galliae: for case see on horum 1, 6. plūrimum possent, were the most powerful. possent, for the mood see A. 332 g, Rem.; B.

108, d; G. 555, 2; H. 501, II 2; B. 298.

cōpiis, resources of influence, money, etc. For the case see A. 248 c 1; B. 90; G. 401; H. 420; B. 218. So exercitū in l. 21.

21. illis... conciliātūrū (esse), that he would win for them. For the infinitive see esse l. 7, and l. 18. illis = Castico et Dumnorigi.

22. orātiōne, by (means of) this argument. For the case cf. cōpiis and exercitū in the preceding clause. intersē, to each other; cf. 1, 4.

23. fidem, etc., their word and oath. rēgnō occupātō, after they have seized the royal power (in their own lands). For the case see on M. Messālā, etc. 2, 2. trēs populōs: What three nations?

24. tōtius... spērant, they

4. Ea res est Helvetiis per iudicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt; damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, 5

*Orgetorix is tried for conspiracy but escapes. His sudden death.*

1. iudicium, -i [indicō, disclose], n., disclosure, information. 4. enuntiō, 1. a., report, declare, disclose. \*

2. mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom, way: pl. customs, morals, character. \*

vinculum (vinculum), -i [vinciō, bind], n., bond, fetter, chain. \*

3. cōgō, -ere, cōgē, cōactus [cum + agō, lead], a., lead or bring together, collect; draw together, compress; force, compel, constrain. \*

damnō, 1. [damnum, damage], a., declare guilty, sentence, condemn. 2.

poena, -ae [pūniō, punish], f., punishment, penalty. \*

sequor, sequi, secutus, dep., follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend. \*

oportet, -ēre, -uit [opus, need], impers., it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; (I, you, he, etc.) must, ought. \*

4. ignis, -is, m., fire. \*

cremō, 1. a., consume with fire, burn to ashes, burn. 2.

diēs, -ē, m., f., day: in diēs, from day to day. \*

dictiō, -ōnis [dicō, speak], f., speaking, pleading; causae dictiō, defense, answer to a charge. \*

5. iudicium, -i [iūdex, judge], n., judicial proceedings, trial; judicial opinion or decision, judgment; court. \*

familia, -ae [famulus, house-servant], f., the slaves of a household; vassals, dependents, retinue; household, establishment. \*

decem, indecl. num., ten. \*

hope that they can get control of the whole of Gaul: tōtius Galliae potiri: for the Genitive see A. 249, a; B. H. 228; G. 407 2 d; H. 410, V, 3; B. 212, 2. This is the only place in Caesar where potior takes the Gen. What is its usual construction?

1. ea res, this plan, viz. the conspiracy just described.

2. moribus suis, according to their customs. For the Ablative see A. 253, N; B. H. 287; G. 399; H. 416; B. 220 8. ex vinculis, in chains, i. e. while under arrest. The Roman custom allowed the accused his liberty until the judgment was rendered. dicere, to plead.

3. damnatum . . . cremaretur,

it was necessary that the punishment follow (him), if condemned, of being burned by fire. damnatum (supply eum, object of sequi) = a conditional clause. A. 292; B. XL, n. 4; G. 667; H. 549, 2; B. 337, b). poenam . . . sequi is the subject of oportebat.

4. The clause ut . . . cremaretur is in apposition with poenam, the subject of sequi. A. 332, f; G. 557; H. 501, III; B. 297, 3. diē constitutā, on the day appointed. How is time at which or within which regularly indicated? A. 256; B. 97, a; G. 393; H. 429; B. 230, 231. diē, for gender see A. 73; B. 127, a; G. 64; H. 123; B. 53. causae dictionis, for the pleading of the case. For case of causae see A. 217; B. H. 54; G. 363, 2; H. 396, III; B. 200.

undique coëgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnūm numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitas ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suū exsequī cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominū ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit.

6. cliēns (cluēns), -entis [clueō, hear one's self called], *m.*, *f.*, vassal, dependent, retainer. \*

ob-aerātus, -a, -um [aes, copper, money], held under obligations or in debt; as *subst.*, debtor. 1

7. eōdem, *adv.* [idem *sc. locō*], to the same place, to the same point, result, end etc. \*

con-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. \*

nē, (*a.*), *conj.* with *subj.*, that... not, for fear that; not to; after words of danger or fear, that; (*b.*), *adv.*, not; with words of command, do not, let not, not to; nē... quidem (enclosing the expression emphasized), not even. \*

8. ē-ripiō, -ere, -ui, -reptus [rapiō, seize], *a.*, wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. \*

ob, *prep.* with *acc.*, on account of, for; in *comp.*, opposed to, to, against; ob eam (hanc) causam, for this reason; quam ob rem, wherefore. \*

in-citō, 1. [cieō, rouse], *a.*, rouse, instigate, incite. \*

9. arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, objects fitted to the body; armor, arms, equipments; by *meton.*, battle, war. \*

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right (in nature and character), justice, rights; legal rights, law; authority. \*

ex-sequor, sequi, secutus sum [sequor, follow], *a.*, follow out, exercise, assert, accomplish. 1

10. magistrātus, -ūs [magister, master], *m.*, public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate; body of officers, government. \* morior, mori, mortuus sum, *n.*, die. 8

11. neque (nec), *conj.* and *adv.* [nē+que], and not, not, nor; neque (nec)... neque, neither... nor. \*

suspiciō, -ōnis [suspico, suspect], *f.*, suspicion, distrust. \*

12. mors, mortis [morior, die], *f.*, death. \*

cōn-sciscō, -ere, -scivi, -scitus [sciscō, resolve], *a.*, resolve upon, appoint, determine, decree. \*

6. cliēntēs obaerātōsque: the *clientēs* were vassals or retainers. "Some of these retainers devote themselves to their chieftain for life or death. They share all the goods of life with those to whom they have thus devoted themselves; if the chief dies a violent death, they share his fate and kill themselves with their own hands." The *obaerātōs* were those who had become slaves on account of debt.

7, 8. per eōs, by their help. nē... diceret, to avoid pleading his case (in order that he might not plead his case). How is the negative clause of purpose regularly introduced? A. 317; B. 107; G. 545, 3; H. 497, II; B. 282.

9. cōnārētur, when the state attempted. For the mood after *cum* temporal see A. 325; B. 111, a; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2; B. 288, 289.

11. ut with the Indic. is a rela-

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, *The Helvetians complete their preparations and depart.* quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt,

1. **post**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, after; behind, back, beneath, afterwards. \*
- nihilō**, *adv.* [nihilum, nothing], by no means, not, none; **nihilō minus**, none the less. \*
3. **ubi**, *adv.* [quō-bi fr. quī], (of place) in which or what place, where; (of time) whenever, when. \*
- iam**, *adv.*, now (denoting immediate occurrence in ref. to the past, present or future, while nunc emphasizes the present), already, by this time, at length. \*
- parō**, 1. *a.*, provide means, prepare, get ready, procure; *p. p. as adj.*, ready, prepared. \*
4. **oppidum**, -ī, *n.*, town; stronghold.
- duo-decim**, (xii), *indecl. num.* [decem], twelve. 2

- vicus**, -ī [cf Eng. -wick e. g. Berwick], *m.*, a collection of dwellings, hamlet, village. \*
- quadringenti**, -ae, -a [quattuor, centum], four hundred. \*
5. **privātus**, -a, -um [*p. p. of privō*, set apart], apart from publicity; private, personal, individual. \*
- aedificium**, -ī [aedificō, build], *n.*, building, edifice, structure. \*
- in-cendō**, -ere, cendi, cēnsus [candeō, shine], *a.*, set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite, rouse. \*
6. **praeterquam**, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], except. 2
- portō**, 1. *a.*, carry, transport, bring. \*
- com-būrō**, -ere, būssi, būstus [(b)ūrō, burn], *a.*, burn completely, burn up, consume. 1

tive adverb, as. What part of speech is it, and how translated with the subjunctive? *quin . . . cōsciverit*, that he decreed death to himself, i. e. committed suicide. For the clause cf. *ut . . . cremārētur* 4, 3, 4, and for the use of *quin* instead of *ut* see on *possent* 3, 20.

2. **ut . . . exeant**, to go forth. The clause *ut . . . exeant* is in apposition with *id*, cf. 4, 3, 4. The pressure upon them from the north compelled them to act.

3. **parātōs**: used as an adj. cf. 1, 1. **esse**, *were*, for tense cf. 3, 7.

4, 5. **oppida**, strongholds: occupied in times of war. **vicōs**, settle-

ments; the *vicus* was a subdivision of the *pāgus*, forming a country community. **aedificia**: houses standing alone.

6, 7. **praeterquam**, except. **portātūrī erant**: form? 3, 19. **domum reditiōnis**, of returning home. **domum**: the terminal Acc. after *reditiōnis* a noun denoting action (cf *dictiōnis* 4, 4.), which governs the case as a verb. For the omission of the prep. in the Terminal Acc. with *domus* etc. see A. 258, 2, b; B. H. 76; G. 337 *fin.*; H. 380, II, 2, 1); B. 182, 1 b). **spē sublātā**: trans. by a temporal clause. **ad . . . subeunda**, for enduring, etc. For constr. cf. *ad cōficiendas* 3, 6, and see on 1, 9.

ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent, trium mēnsū molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauricīs et Tulingīs et La-  
 10 tovicīs finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō oppidis suis vicisque

7. domus, -ūs (-ī in loc.) dat. domū (domō), abl. domō, r., house; home; native country or home. \*

reditiō, -ōnis, [re + eō, go], r., a going back, returning, return. 1

spēs, -ei, r., hope, anticipation, expectation. \*

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, a., lift or raise up, elevate; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; in p. p. as adj., elated. \*

periculum, -ī, n., experiment, trial; risk, hazard, danger. \*

8. sub-eō, ire, ivi (ii), itus (eō, go), a., come or go under, come up to, come up; undergo, encounter, endure. \*

mēnsis, -is [cf. metior, measure], m., month. 4

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus [mola, mill], a., grind. 1

cibārius, -a, -um [cibus, food], pertaining to food; in neut. pl. as subst., provisions, supplies. 3

quisque, quaeque, quid(que) que (adj. quodque), gen. cuiusque, universal indef. pron., each one, each; every one, every, all. \*

9. efferō, efferre, extuli, ēlātus, a., bring or carry out, carry or take away; spread or publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. \*

iubeō, -ere, iussī, iussus, a., order, bid, command, enjoin. \*

Rauricī, -ōrum, m., a tribe on the upper Rhine. 4

Tulingī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe on the Rhine, east of the Raurici. 4

Latovicī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe north of the Tulingi. 3

10. ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, a., n., make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of; practice, have, enjoy; possess, show, manage. \*

cōnsilium, -ī [cf. cōsul] n., consultation, deliberation; counsel, design, measure, plan; judgment, prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, a council. \*

8. essent: for the mood cf. 3, 5. trium mēnsū cibāria, supplies for three months. For the Genitive see A. 215, b; B. XLIX, n. 1; G. 365; H. 396, V; B. 203, 2. Napoleon III. estimates that 8500 wagons, drawn by 36000 draught animals, were needed to transport the provisions required to feed the Helvetian host.

9. domō, from home. Read the following references and explain: (1) how the place from which is regularly expressed; (2) how it is expressed with domus; (3) what nouns are construed as domus is? A. 258,

2 a: B. 96; G. 390, 391; H. 412, II, 1; B. 229, 1. Rauricis, etc.

German tribes from the vicinity of the Rhine. See map.

10. eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, adopting (having used) the same plan. ūtor, like potior, governs the Ablative. cf. 2, 6. oppidis... exūstis, having burned or when they had burned, etc. The Ablative Absolute is here equivalent to a temporal clause as in l. 7, and in 2, 2. This construction is often employed because the Latin has no perfect active participle.

exūstīs. ūnā cum iis proficiscantur, Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trāsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exire possent; ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter mōntem Iūram et flūmen

*They arrange to cross the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.*

11. ex-ūrō, -ere, assī, ūstus [ūrō, burn], *a.*, burn up, consume. 1 ūnā, *adv.* [ūnus, one], one with, together or along with, together, at the same time. \*

Bōiī, -ōrum, *m.*, a powerful Celtic tribe of Central Gaul in modern Bourbonnais. Part migrated to northern Italy and another part to Germany. \*

12. Nōricus, -a, -um, Norican, belonging to Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps). 2 trāns-eō, *ire*, ivi (ī), itus [eō, go], *a.*, *n.*, go across or over, pass, cross. \*

Nōrēia, -ae, *f.*, a town in Noricum now Neumarkt. 1

13. op-pugnō, 1. [ob + pugnō, fight], *a.*, fight against, fight, at-

tack, assault, storm. \*

re-cipiō, -ere, cēpi, ceptus [capiō, take], *a.*, take or get back, recover: sē, withdraw, retire, retreat; ad sē, take to one's self, accept, receive. \*

socius, -ī [cf. sequor, follow], *m.*, companion, partner, associate; confederate, ally. \*

ad-sciscō, -ere, scivī, scītus [sciscō *incept.* of sciō, approve], *a.*, take upon acquaintance, approve; admit or receive (as allies). \*

1. omnīnō, *adv.* [omnis], altogether, wholly, in all. \*

duo, -ae, -o, *num. adj.*, two. \*

3. difficilis, -e, [dis- + facilis easy], not easy, hard, trouble some, difficult. \*

11, 12. cum iis: should be sēcum. Why? See on suis 1, 13. Bōiōs: Celts who had been driven from Italy by the Romans in the 2nd century B. C. and who occupied no definite territory at this time. Nōrēiam: a city northeast of Aquileia, now Neumarkt in Corinthia.

13. receptōs . . . adsciscunt, they admitted among their people (ad sē) and associated with themselves as confederates the Boii. receptōs: For the perf. part. instead of a co-ordinate clause see A. 292, R; B. L. n. 8; G. 664, R 1; H. 549, 5. adsciscunt: fortensesee on persuadet, 3, 10. Name the several instances of the Historical Present in this chapter.

1. erant, there were. The English idiom sometimes requires the use of the expletive there in translating the forms of esse. omnīnō only. itinera, itineribus: Caesar, contrary to English usage, frequently repeats the antecedent noun in the relative clause. Study these itinera on the map. quibus . . . possent, by which they could leave home. For the Subj. cf. pertinērent 3, 3.

2, 3. Sēquanōs: for their location see on 2, 10. angustum: at the Pas de l'Ecluse, thirteen miles west of Geneva. difficile: narrow, rugged, and easily held against them by a handful of men.

Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem  
 5 altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent;  
 alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedi-  
 tius, propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum,  
 quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllis locīs  
 vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est pro-  
 10 ximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns  
 ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs,

4. **vix**, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly ever, hardly, scarcely. \*  
**quā**, *adv.* [*abl. fem. of quī*], by which way or road, in which direction or place, where. \*

**singulī**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each, one at a time, single, separate. \*

5. **im-pendeō** (in-), -ēre [**pendeō**, hang], *n.*, hang or be suspended over, overhang, impend, threaten. 2

**facilis**, -e, [**facio** + **lis**], *adj.*, easy (to do), convenient, without difficulty, easy (*generally*).

**per-paucī**, -ae, -a, [**paucus**, few], very few, but very few. \*

6. **expeditus**, -a, -um, [*p. p. of expedio*, disengage], unimpeded, free, unobstructed, light armed:

*as subst.*, a light armed soldier. \*

7. **Allobrogēs**, -um, *m.*, a powerful Gallic people between the Rhone and Isere. \*

8. **nūper** [*for novum-per fr. novus*, new], newly, recently, not long ago. 4

**pācō**, 1. [**pāx**, peace], *a.*, make peaceful, subdue, pacify: *in p. p. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. \*

**fluō**, -ere, **flūxī**, **fluxus**, *n.*, flow, run, sweep. 2

**nōn-nūllus**, -a, -um [**nūllus**, none], some, several: *in pl. as subst.*, some, several. \*

9. **vadum**, -ī [*cf. Eng. wade*], *n.*, ford, shallow, shoal. \*

10. **Genāva**, -ae, *f.*, a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. 2

4. **dūcerentur**, *could be drawn*. For mode *cf. possent*, 1. 2.

5. **ut . . . perpaucī . . . possent**, *so that a very few could*. Name and state the use of this *ut* clause. A. 319; B. 107, a; G. 552; H. 500; B. 284.

6. **alterum**: the southern route. **prōvinciam**: the Rhone here formed the northern boundary of the Roman province. **nostram** = *Rōmānam*.

7. **Allobrogum**: they dwelt between the Rhone, the Isere, and the Alps. **nūper pācātī erant**: 61 B. C. after a desperate struggle to maintain their independence.

8. **nōnnūllis locis**, *in several places*. How is the Ablative of

placere regularly denoted? When may the preposition be omitted with common nouns? A. 258, c, 1, 2 f, 1, 2; B. XLII, n. 1; G. 385, 388, R.; H. 425, 1, 2; B. 228, 1, b), c).

9. **vadō**: it is stated that the Rhone can now be forded at only one point along its course from Geneva to mount Jura, namely, at the village of Russin, seven miles from the city. **extrēmum**: because on the northern frontier.

10. **Genāva**, also spelled *Genēva* and *Genua*. The word is said to come from the Celtic *gena*, *mouth*. Where is Geneva situated with reference to the lake and river?

11. **Allobrogibus sēsē . . . per-**

quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant: is diēs<sup>15</sup> erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.

12. nōn-dum, *adv.*, not yet. \*  
bonus, -a, -um, *comp.* melior, *sup.* optimus, good, beneficial, profitable, well disposed, (*with animō*) friendly; *as subst.*, bonum, -i, profit, advantage; bona, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; bonī, -ōrum, the good, good men or citizens. \*

videō, -ēre, vīdī, visus, *a.*, see, examine, understand, see to, take care; *in pass.* seem, appear, seem good or proper, seem best. \*

13. ex-istimō 1. [aestimō, compute], *a.*, estimate, reckon, think, consider. \*

vel, *conj.* [*imper. of volō, lit. choose*], or rather, or, even; vel ... vel, either ... or. \*

vis, vis, *r.*, force, might, energy, power; violence, severity; influence, weight; quantity, supply. \*

eō, ire, īvī(ii), itūrus, *n.*, go, proceed, march, pass. \*

pator, pati, passus sum, *a.*, *n.*, bear, endure, suffer, permit, allow. \*

15. rīpa, -ae, *r.*, bank (*of a stream*). \*

con-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [veniō, come], *a.*, *n.*, come together, assemble, convene, meet; come to, arrive; agree, to be agreed upon, be convenient or suitable. \*

16. V., *abbrev. for* quintus, -a, -um [*quinque*], fifth. 4

Kal., *abbrev. for* Kalendae, -ārum, *r.*, the Calends, the first day of the Roman month, when the Calendar of the month was proclaimed by the pontifex to the assembled people. 1

Apr. or April., *abbrev. for* Aprilis, -e [aperiō, open], *adj.*, of April, April. 2

L., *abbrev. for* Lucius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen.

A. *abbrev. for* Aulus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen. 1

Gabīnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. Aulus Gabinius, consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B. C. 1

suasūrōs ... exīstimābant, *they thought they would persuade the Allobroges.* Allobrogibus: for case see on civitātī 2, 4. persuāsūrōs: *sc. esse*, which is generally omitted in the future Infīn. Why Infīn? see on dūxerunt esse 3, 7.

12. bonō animō, *of a kindly spirit.* For the Ablative see A. 251; B. H. 93; G. 400; H. 419, II; B. 224. What other case is used to denote quality? Cf. 5, 8.

13. coāctūrōs (*esse*), *would compel.* See persuāsūrōs above. paterentur: for mood cf. possent

1. 5. suōs: whose? Cf. 1, 13.

14. omnibus rēbus comparātis, *when (after) everything had been made ready.* Constr? Cf. 5, 10.

16. a. d. v. Kal. Apr: March 28, but the calendar was in a state of great confusion. a. d. v. (= ante diem quintum) grew to be a fixed form of expression, and must be treated as an indeclinable noun. Here it is a predicate nominative after erat. B. LIV, n. 1. For the details of the reckoning of time by the Romans see A. 376; G. p. 491; H. 644; B. 371. Pisōne ... cōsulibus: in 58 B. C. Constr? 2, 2.



7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per *Caesar delays them by pretexts.* prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrāt ab urbe proficisci et, quam māximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ūteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae 5 tōtī quam māximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ūteriōre legiō ūna), pōntem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiū

1. Caesar, -aris, m., (1), Caius Julius Caesar, conqueror of Gaul and author of the Commentaries (2), Lucius Julius Caesar, a kinsman and lieutenant of the former. \*
- nūntiō, 1. [nūntius], a., announce, send news, report, make known. \*
2. mātūrō, 1. [mātūrus, ripe], a., n., ripen, bring to maturity; quicken, hasten, accelerate. 4
3. urbs, urbis, f., city; esp. the city (Rome). \*
4. ūterior, -ius, comp. adj. [ūtrā, beyond], beyond, farther, more remote, ulterior. \*
- per-veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus [veniō, come], n., come through; come to, arrive at, reach; attain

- to, come into possession of. \*
5. milēs, -itis, m., soldier; private [opp. to imperātor], infantry (opp. to equitēs): militēs imperāre, levy soldiers upon. \*
- imperō, 1. [in + parō, procure], a., n., make requisition upon, demand from, enjoin or levy upon, command. \*
6. legiō, -ōnis [legō, choose], f. a chosen number, a levy; a legion. \*
- pōns, -ōntis, m., bridge. \*
7. re-scindō, -ere, scidi, scissus [scindō, cleave], a., cut away or down, break up, destroy. \*
- adventus, -ūs [veniō, come], m., coming to, arrival, approach. \*

1. Caesarī: in the vicinity of Rome where after retiring from the office of consul in the beginning of 58 B. C. he had been busy in making his preparations to leave for his provincial government.

1, 2. id this fact, viz. eōs cōnārī, that they were planning, etc. nūntiātum esset: for mode cf. 4, 9. ab urbe, from (near) the city, not ex urbe, because he could not be in the city while invested with the military authority of proconsul. What were Caesar's provinces? What political object had he in securing them?

3. quam . . . itineribus, by forced marches (by as great marches as possible): force of quam with the superl. 3, 3. According to Plutarch, Caesar reached his desti-

nation on the eighth day, after leaving Rome.

4, 5. ūteriōrem = trānsalpinam, beyond the Alps from Rome. The valley of the Po was called Gallia Cisalpina, or Gaul on this side of the Alps, i. e. toward Rome. prōvinciae . . . numerum imperat, he levies upon the entire province: for the Dative (prōvinciae) and Accusative (numerum) see A. 227, f; G. 345; H. 884, II; B. 187 1. How was the levy conducted? See Int. 84.

6. legiō: the tenth, afterwards Caesar's favorite legion. It was probably not at Geneva then, but was sent there at once. For legion, see Int. 86. pōntem probably a bridge of boats. Why did Caesar order it to be destroyed?

certiorēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgatiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent, sibi esse in animō sine<sup>10</sup> ullō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre, ut ēius voluntāte id sibi fa-

8. certus, -a, -um [for crētus, p. of cernō], decided; certain, sure, fixed: certiorē facere, to inform. \*

lēgātus, -ī [lēgō, despatch, delegate], m., one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. \*

mittō, -ere, misi, missus, a., send, send off, let go, despatch; hurl, discharge. \*

9. Nammēius, -ī, m., a noble Helvetian, sent as ambassador to Caesar. 1

Verucloetius, -ī, m., a noble of the Helvetii. 1

princeps, -ipis [primus, + capiō], m., taking the first place; chief,

most prominent, principal; as subst., chief or principal person, leader. \*

10. sine, prep. with abl., without. \*

11. ūllus, -a, -um, gen., ūllius [for ūnulus, dim. of ūnus], any one, a single, any: as subst., any one, anybody. \*

maleficiū, -ī [malum, evil + faciō], n., doing evil, mischief, harm, injury. 4

12. nūllus, -a, -um, gen., nūllius [nē + ūllus], not any, none, no: as subst., no one, none. \*

voluntās, -tātis [volō, wish], f., willingness, good-will, desire, will, consent, approval. \*

8, 9. certiorēs ... facti ... sunt, were informed (were made more certain). civitātis: for case cf. Galliae 3, 20.

10. quī dicerent, to say (who were to say), quī = ut ei (ii). What words introduce the Relative clause of purpose? A. 317, 2; B. 107, b; G. 545, 1; H. 497, 1; B. 282 2. \* sibi esse in animō, it was to them (the Helvetii) in mind, or better, they had in mind, which in direct form becomes: we have in mind (we intend). sibi: for the dative of Possession see A. 231; B. H. 66; G. 349; H. 387; B. 190. esse, for mood see A. 336, 2, p. 371; G. 650; H. 523, I; B. 314, 1. The subject of esse is the clause iter ... facere l. 11.

11, 12. facere, as subject of esse (see note above) is used as a noun (cf. perficere 3, 18) and represents an accusative; in the direct

form (see foot note) its form is not changed but it represents what case? habērent: for mood see A. 336, 2 ad fin. p. 371; G. 650; ad fin.; H. 524; B. 314, 1. Its subject is 'they,' referring to the Helvetii, which in the direct form becomes 'we.' rogāre: sc. sē (indirect 'they,' direct 'we') as subject, and for mood cf. esse l. 10. Its object is the following clause ut ... liceat. ēius: 'his' (i. e. Caesar's) as they are speaking to Caesar becomes in the direct form 'your.' id: change to hōc in the direct form. sibi: for case A. 227 e, 1; G. 346; H. 384; B. 187. (1); for translation cf. sibi l. 10.

13. facere: for mood cf. facere l. 11; what case does it represent here? liceat: for mood cf. occupāret 3, 13. The change to a primary tense from a secondary (cf. hab-

\*TO THE TEACHER: The speech of the ambassadors follows in Orāt Obliqua. The pupil has had the general uses of moods, tenses, and p:

cere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat, L. Cassium cōsulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis pulsum et  
 15 sub iugum mīssum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque

13. licet, -ēre, licuit (licitum est), *impers.*, it is lawful, I have permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; licet mihi, I may; petere ut liceat, to ask permission. \*

memoria, -ae [memor, mindful], *f.*, recollection, memory. \*

teneō, -ēre, -ui, tentus, *a.*, hold, keep, retain, have; hold in, restrain, bind. \*

Cassius, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name: Lucius Cassius Longinus, consul 107 B. C., slain by the Tigurini in battle. 3

14. oc-cidō, -ere, cidi, cīsus [caedō, cut, slay], *a.*, cut or strike down, destroy; cut off, kill, slay. \*

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *a.*, beat, strike, push, drive; drive out, expel, repulse. \*

15. sub, *prep. with acc. (with verbs of motion) and abl.*, under, near to, just by, at the foot of; (*of time*) about, just at, during; in *comp. (subs-), adv.*, under, up or away (*from beneath*), secretly, in succession, slightly. \*

iugum, -ī [iungō, join], *n.*, yoke; ridge, crest. \*

con-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [cēdō, go]. *a.*, *n.*, go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield. \*

putō, *l. a.*, cleanse; clear up, adjust; reckon, estimate, think. \*

rent l. 12) is made for greater liveliness and is called *repraesentatio*. *memoriā tenēbat*, remembered (was holding in memory), as a phrase of *knowing* is followed by the indirect discourse. *Cassium*: in 107 B. C. Cassius lost his army and his own life in a battle with the Tigurini, one of the four Helvetian cantons or tribes. This tribe joined the host of the Cimbri and Teutones which threatened Rome with destruction, but was finally annihilated by Caius Marius (see Int. 60-64).

14. The Infinitive represents the time present past or future, as compared with the time of the verb upon which it depends. Thus the perfect infinitives *occisum (esse)*, *pulsum (esse)*, *missum (esse)*, represent past action completed before the time of the governing verb, (*memoriā tenēbat* and hence must be rendered in English by the plu-

perfect Indicative: *Caesar remembered that Lucius Cassius, the consul, had been slain etc.* In the same way the auxiliary *would*, the past tense of *will*, must be used in translating the future Inf. *temperātūrōs (esse)* l. 17. A. 288; BH. 119; G. 281; H. 537; B. 270.

15. *sub iugum*, under the yoke. The *iugum* was made of three spears, two being planted in the ground and the third being fastened across them at a suitable height. Under this the soldiers of the captured army were compelled to pass. *concēdendum (esse)* *nōn putābat*, *did not think it* (the request of the Helvetians) *ought to be allowed*. Explain the formation of the passive (Second) Periphrastic Conjugation. What ideas are expressed by this construction? A. 118 d, 1, N; B. LVII, 5; G. 251; H. 234 B. 337, 7, b), 1).

15-17. *neque... existimābat*: was Caesar correct in this opinion?

nouns explained in his introductory book. These may now be reviewed as a whole from his grammar (A. 336 in full, 338, 339; G. 648-654, 660; H.

hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātis respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Id. April. re-20 verterentur.

16. in-imicus, -a, -um [amicus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile: as *subst.*, an enemy (*personal*). \*  
 facultās, -tātis [old *adj.*, *facul* = *facilis*, easy], *f.*, ability, power, privilege, opportunity; resources, means. \*  
 17. temperō, 1. [tempus], *a.*, mix in due proportion, qualify, temper; restrain or control one's self, refrain, check, restrain. 2  
 iniuriā, -ae [iūs, right], *f.*, wrong, injustice, injury, outrage. \*  
 18. tamen, *adv.* (opposed to some expressed or implied concession), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however. \*  
 spatium, -ī, *n.*, space, distance, extent, interval, period, length (of time or space). \*  
 inter-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [cēdō, go], *n.*, go or come between, lie between, intervene, pass; occur or be between, happen. \*  
 dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; till,

- until; provided that, if only. \*  
 19. re-spondeō, -ēre, spondi, spōnsus [spondeō, promise], *a.*, make return; reply, answer. \*  
 dē-liberō, 1. [libra, balance], *a.*, weigh well, consider carefully, deliberate. 3  
 20. sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [sub + emō, take], *a.*, take away, take, assume, employ, inflict, spend. \*  
 sī, *conj.*, if; to see if, whether: quod sī, but if, now if. \*  
 quis, quae, quid (quod), (1), *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? (2), *indef. pron.* (especially after sī, nisi, num, nō), anyone, anything, any; somebody, some, something. \*  
 Idūs, -uum, *f.*, *pl.*, the Ides, the time of the full moon; the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of other months. 1  
 re-vertō, -ere, verti, *n.*, used almost exclusively in the perfect ten-

16. inimicō animō: cf. bonō animō, 6, 12. datā facultāte, when the privilege was granted.

17. faciundī older spelling of faciendī.

18, 19. dum...convenīrent,

until the soldiers should muster. When does dum take the subjunctive? A. 328; B. 111; G. 572; H. 519 II, 2; B. 293, III, 2. diem, time. dē-liberandum: form? 2, 14.

20. sī...reverterentur: no-

522-526; B. 313-322. or the pupil may study the various uses one by one as they occur in the text with the help of the notes given above. It is suggested that the loose and ambiguous indirect English form be forbidden in the class room, and that the pupil be required to translate Caesar's indirect discourse into English direct, and also to give the direct form in Latin. As a help we give here the direct form in Latin of the passage above; Nobis est in animō sine ullō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habemus nullum; rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte hōc nobis facer liceat.

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, *He prevents their crossing the Rhone.*  
 mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū  
 Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad mōntem Iūram,  
 quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia pas-  
 5 suum XVIII mūrū in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim  
 fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit,

*ses and re-vertor, -ī, versus sum, used in the imperfect tenses [vertō, turn], n., turn back or again; return. \**

1. inter-eā, *adv.*, meantime, meanwhile, in the interim. \*

3. in-fluō, -ere, flūxi, fluxus [fluō, flow], *n.*, flow in or into, empty into. \*

5. XVIII (= ūndēviginti), nineteen.

mūrus, -ī [cf. moenia], *m.*, a wall, *esp.* a wall for defense. \*

altitūdō, -inis [altus, high, perpendicular], *f.*, height; depth. 4  
 pēs, pedis, *m.*, the foot; a foot (*as a measure*); pedibus, on foot; pedem referre, retreat. \*

sēdecim, *indecl. num.* [sex + decem], sixteen. 2

6. fossa, -ae [*p. p. fem. of fodiō, dig*], *f.*, trench, ditch.

per-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead through or along, conduct, convey; bring over, carry along, construct, extend. \*

opus, operis, *n.*, work, labor; military works, fortifications; a work (*of art, literature, or architecture*); nātūrā et opere, by nature and art; māgnō opere, *adv. phrase*, much, greatly, earnestly; tantō opere, so much, so greatly; quantō opere, how much, how greatly. \*

praesidium, -ī [praeses, guard], *n.*, guard, garrison; safeguard, defence; redoubt, stronghold. \*

dis-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], *a.*, place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. \*

tice that in this complex sentence both verbs are in the subjunctive. As the first (*vellent*) follows *sī*, the second (*reverterentur*) must be the principal verb. What kinds of sentences have in indirect discourse their principal verbs in the subjunctive? A. 338, 339; G. 651, 652; H. 523, II. 1, III; B. 315, 316.

Of these two kinds of sentences which does the punctuation show this to be? What mood therefore will *reverterentur* take in the direct form? What mood and tense will *vellent* take? *quid, anything*. When are the forms of *quis* indefinite? A. 105 d; B. LVIII, 6; G. 315; H. 455, 1; B. 91 5. *ad, about*.

1. eā legiōne: see on legiō, 7, 6.

2, 3. ā lacū... ad mōntem

Iūram. See map, p. 95.

4. milia: for case cf. 2, 17.

5. XVIII = 17½ English miles following the winding of the stream. mūrū: *sc. in longitūdinem*. mūrū... fossamque: The fortifications consisted of redoubts and a 'wall' and 'ditch' where the banks were not high and steep enough. There are only five points on the south bank where defensive works would be needed. The wall was made by digging down the bank so as to present a steep slope sixteen feet high. The 'ditch' was simply the depression at the foot of this slope, formed by throwing the earth away from the slope toward the river. The top of the 'wall' was defended by a row of

castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsire cōnā-

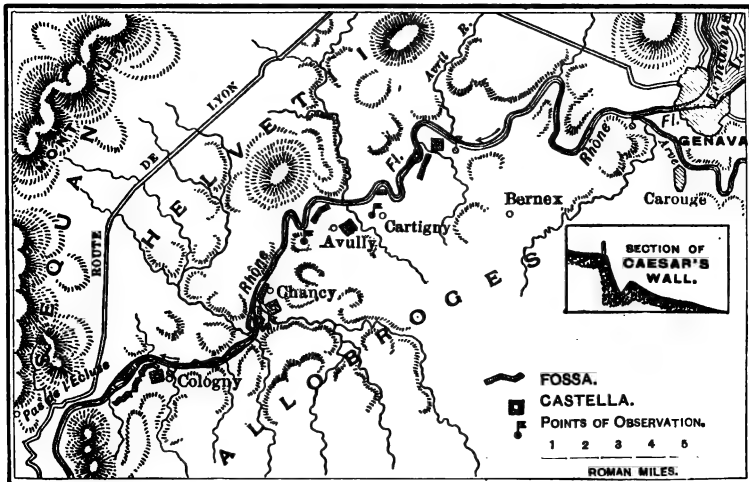
7. **castellum**, -ī [castrum, fort],  
n., fortress, redoubt, outwork. \*  
**com-mūniō**, 4. [mūniō, fortify],  
a., fortify strongly, intrench. 3  
quō, *final conj.* (usually with com-  
paratives) [abl. of quī], in order

that, that; quō minus, that not,  
from (*with subjunctive after verbs  
of hindering etc.*). \*  
**invitus**, -a, -um, against one's  
wish or will, unwilling, reluctant;  
**sē invītō**, against his will. \*

vāllī or stakes, behind which the  
Roman soldiers fought. (see ver-  
tical section of *murus* and *fossa* on  
plan below).

6. **opere perfectō**: it is esti-  
mated that three thousand men

**prohibēre possit**, the more easily  
to check them. For quō (=ut eō)  
introducing a purpose clause see A.  
817, b; B. 107, c; G. 545, 2; H. 497,  
II, 2; B. 282 2, a. **sē invītō**, with-  
out his (Caesar's) consent. For the



Caesar's Fortifications on the Rhone.

could do this in three days. **dis-  
pōnit**, stations at different points.

7. **castella**, redoubts, placed at  
intervals along the whole line of  
works, so that a sufficiently strong  
force could be concentrated at any  
threatened point. Caesar did not  
have troops enough to man the for-  
tifications at all points. quō....

Abl. Abs. with Adjectives see A. 255  
a; B. 98; G. 409; H. 481, 4; B. 227  
1. **cōnārentur**: Notice that the  
clause **sī....cōnārentur** interrupts  
the purpose clause **quō...possit**,  
upon which it depends and for the  
mood of the dependent verb see  
342; B. 99 d; G. 629; H. 529,  
B. 324.

rentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit, et legati ad eum revertentur, negat se 10 more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare et, si vim facere conentur, prohibiturum ostendit. Helvetii ea spe deiecti, navibus iunctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnumquam interdum, saepius noctu, si 15 perrumpere possent, conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi hoc conatu destiterunt.

9. venio, -ire, veni, ventus, n., come, arrive, go, happen. \*

negō, 1. [nē + aiō, say], a., n., say no, deny, refuse, say . . . not. 5

10. exemplum, -i [eximō, take out], n., selection; pattern, model; precedent, example; warning, punishment. 3

12. os-tendō, -ere, tendi, tentus [ob + tendō, stretch], a., stretch towards or in the way; present, show, point out, declare. \*

dē-iciō, -ere, ieci, iectus [iaciō, hurl], a., hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. \*

nāvis, -is, f., ship, boat; nāvis longa, galley, ship of war; nāvis oneraria, a transport. \*

iungō, -ere, iunxi, iunctus, a., join or unite together, join, yoke, attach, connect. 5

ratis, -is, f., raft; bark, vessel. 3

13. complurēs, -a [plūs, more], several, many; a great many. \*

14. nōn-numquam (nunquam), [numquam, never], sometimes. 4

inter-diū, adv., during the day, by day. 3

noctū, adv. [nox, night], by night. \*

15. per-rumpō, -ere, rupi, ruptus [rumpō, break], n., a., break through, force one's way or passage. \*

mūnitiō, -ōnis [mūniō, fortify], f., fortifying, fortifications, works, intrenchments. \*

16. con-cursus, -ūs [cursus, running], m., a running together, rush, onset; collision, encounter; attack. \*

tēlum, -i, n., a weapon for fighting at a distance; missile, dart, javelin. \*

repellō, -ere, repuli (reppuli), repulsus [rē + pellō, beat, drive], a., beat or drive back, repel, repulse. \*

cōnātus, -ūs [cōnor, attempt], m., attempt, trial, effort. 1

dē-sistō, -ere, stitī, stitus [sistō, stand], n., stand or leave off; abandon, cease, give up. \*

8. possit: the Historical Present (*communit* 1. 7) is here followed by a secondary tense (*cōnarentur*) and also by a primary tense (*possit*). A. 287 e; B 119; G. 511, R; H. 495, II.

9, 10. negat sē . . . posse he says . . . that he cannot. For the infin. *posse* cf. *rogāre*, 7, 12.

11. cōnentur: for mood cf. *velent* 7, 20. What mood and tense in direct form? *prohibiturum*: what must be supplied? See on *persuāsūrōs* 6, 11.

12. eā spē deiecti, disappointed in this expectation. For the Ablative see on 1, 14. *nāvibus, ratibus*:

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā *The Helvetians obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.*  
 Sēquanīs invitīs propter angustīas ire nōn poterant.  
 Hīs cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent  
 lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre,  
 ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud  
 Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amicus, quod  
 ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat, et

1. re-liquō, -ere, liqui, lictus [linquō, leave], *a.*, leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. \*

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route, journey. \*

2. propter [for propter fr. prope, near], (1) *adv.* near, at hand. (2) *prep.* with *acc.*, near, close to; on account of, because of, for; by means of, through. \*

angustiae, -arum [angustus, narrow], *f. pl.*, narrowness; a narrow place or pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. \*

3. spontis, *gen.* and sponte, *abl.* [obs. *nom.* spōns], *f.*, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily. 5

4. dē-precātor [dēprecor, avert

by entreaty], *m.*, mediator, intercessor. 2

5. impetrō, 1. [patrō, accomplish], *a.*, obtain (*by request, entreaty, exertion*), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (*one's request*); impetrāre ā (ab), gain permission from, persuade; si nōn impetrāret, if he failed to obtain his request. \*

grātiā, -ae [grātus, pleasing], *f.*, favor, good will, gratitude; esteem, influence, popularity; grātiās agere, thank. \*

largitiō, -ōnis [largior, give freely], *f.*, giving freely, liberality. 1

6. amicus, -a, -um [amo], *adj.*, friendly, well disposed: praesidium (*devoted*); as *noun*, *m.*, a friend, an ally. \*

for case and rendering cf. 6, 14.

14, 15. sī... possent, to see whether they could, etc. For this use of sī (not conditional) see A. 334, f; G. 460, b; H. 529, II 1, N. 1; B. 300, 3.

16. repulsi: were repulsed and; for the translation see on receptōs, 5, 13. cōnātū: for case cf. spē, 1. 12.

1. ūna via, only the way.

2. Sēquanīs invitīs, against the Sequanians' will (if the Sequani should refuse), cf. sē invitō, 8, 7.

What was the attitude of the Helvetians toward the Romans? angustias: see on angustum, 6, 2.

3. hīs: for case cf. Allobrogibus 6, 11. cum... nōn possent, since they could not, etc. What construction follows cum causal? A. 326; B. 111, c; G. 586; H. 517; B. 286 2.

4. Dumnorīgem: see on 3, 14. eō dēprecātōre, by his meditation (with him as their advocate); the Abl. Abs. denoting means. The noun ending -tor (-sor) denotes the agent or doer.

6. Helvētiīs: for case cf. 1, 10



cupiditate rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. 10 Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trāseant.

*Caesar brings up his forces to oppose their passage.*

10. Caesarī renūtiātūr, Helvētiīs esse in animō, per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitas est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat

8. novus, -a, -um, new, novel, fresh: rēs novae, a change of government, revolution; novissimus, -a, -um, sup., latest, last: āgmen (the rear). \*

studeō, -ēre, -ui, n., be eager or zealous, desire, strive after, pay attention to. \*

9. beneficium, -i [bene, well + faciō], n., well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. \*

ob-stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus [stringō, tie], a., bind, hold (under obligations). 2

10. ita-que [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. \*

11. obses, -idis [ob+sedēō, sit], m., f., hostage; pledge, security. \*

1. re-nūtiō, 1. [nūntius], a., bring back word, bring news, report; proclaim, declare. \*

3. Santonī, -ōrum (ēs, -um), m., a Gallic tribe between the Loire and Garonne. 4

Tolōsātēs, -ium, m., the people of Tolōsa in Gallia Provincia, modern Toulouse. 2

4. intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [inter+legō, choose, select], a., select or distinguish between; understand, know, ascertain, perceive. \*

8. novis . . . studēbat, was eager for a change of government. For the Dat. cf. his, l. 3. quam: see on 3, 8.

9. habēre obstrictās, to have under obligations (bonds).

10. 11. rem = lēgatiōnem. ā . . . impetrat ut patiantur, gets the Sequani to permit. For the Substantive clause of Result as object see A. 332; G. 553; H. 501, II; B. 297 1. Contrast the use of ut . . . possent 2, 12. obsidēsque . . . dent, and to exchange hostages.

12. Sēquanī, Helvētiī: sc. dent obsidēs from the line above. nē . . . prohibeant, ut trāseant: for mode cf. 4, 8; 3, 5.

1. renūtiātūr: Caesar kept himself informed of the movements of the Helvetii. See Int. to Bk. I. Helvētiīs . . . animō: for cases and translation see sibi . . . animō, 7, 10. esse, subject of renūtiātūr, cf. 1, 15. What is the subject of esse?

3. facere, cf. facere 7, 11. nōn longē: about forty miles. Tolōsātium: they were clients of the Romans.

4. quae cīvitas (= gēns, populus): trans. a tribe which. prōvinciā see on 1, 7. Trace on the map the boundaries of the Roman province, and read Int. 61, 62.

māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs belli-<sup>5</sup>  
cōsōs, populi Rōmānī inimicōs, locis patentibus māximēque  
frūmentāriis finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī,  
quam fēcērat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam  
māgnis itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit

5. **bellicōsus**, -a, -um [bellum, war], full of war, warlike. 3

8. **T.**, abbreviation for **Titus**, a Roman praenomen. 2

**Labiēnus**, -ī, m., A Roman family name; Titus Attius Labienus, Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda, 45, B. C. \*

**praeficiō**, -ere, fēcī, fectus [faciō,

make], a., make or place before or over, put in command of. \*

**Ītalia**, -ae, [for **Vitalia**, the land of oxen], f., Italy, sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul. \*

9. **ibi**, adv., there, in that place. \*

**cōn-scribō**, -ere, scripsī, scriptus [scribō, write], a., write together in a list, register; levy, enroll, enlist. \*

5. **māgnō** ... **futūrum** (esse), that it would be (attended) with great danger to the province. For the infin. cf. 3, 7; for its subject see on *fiēbat* 2, 12. **prōvinciae**, genitive, not dative.

6. **populī** ... **inimicōs**, enemies of the Roman people. For the Gen. see A. 234 d, 1; G. 359 R. 1; H. 391 II, 4; What case would we expect with *inimicōs* if not used substantively? Cf. *Helvētiūs* 9, 6. **locis patentibus**: the broad valley of the Garonne, the most fertile part of the Province.

7. **eī mūnitiōnī**, he placed over (put in command of) that fortification. For the Dative see on 2, 5.

8. **T. Labiēnum**. A very efficient officer, and one in whom Caesar reposed great confidence. As tribune in the year 63 B. C., he was very useful to Caesar and was a close confidant of the latter's political schemes. He basely deserted his patron when the Civil war broke out, and was killed at the battle of Munda, 45 B. C. **lēgātum**: see Int. 94, 95. **Ītaliām**, i. e. Cisalpine Gaul

which was one of the provinces under his proconsular charge. What were the others? See Int. 23, 24.

9. **māgnis itineribus**, by forced marches. **duās**: the XIth and XIIth. **cōn-scribit**, levied. See Int. 84.



*Imperātor. Lēgātus.*

This levy was made on Caesar's own authority. See Int. 32.

10 et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernis ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ūteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his quīque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutrōnēs et Grāiocelī et Caturigēs, locis superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliis 15 pulsīs ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ūteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit:

10. *circum* [circus, a circle], *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*, around, about; among. \*

*Aquilēia*, -ae, *f.*, a city of Cisalpine Gaul, still retaining its ancient name. \*

*hiemō*, 1. [hiems, winter], *n.*, pass the winter, winter. \*

*hibernus*, -a, -um, of or belonging to winter, cold, winter; in *n. pl.* as *subst.*, *hiberna*, -ōrum (sc. castra), winter camp, winter quarters. \*

*ēdūcō*, -ere, *dūxī*, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead out or forth, draw forth. \*

11. *Alpēs*, -ium, *f.*, *pl.*, the Alps mountains, separating Italy from Switzerland, France and Austria. \*

12. *quīque*, *indecl. num.*, five. \*

*Ceutrōnēs*, -um, *m.*, (1), a Belgic tribe in Western Flanders. (2), a tribe of the Province in Savoy

about modern Centron. 2

13. *Grāiocelī*, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe in the Graian Alps. 1

*Caturigēs*, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe in the Province whose name survives in modern Chorges. 1

*superior*, -ius, *adj.* [comp. of *superus*, above], upper, preceding, higher, superior; previous, earlier, former. \*

15. *Ocelum*, -i, *n.*, a town of the Graioceli in Piedmont, now Oulx or Usseau. \*

*citerior*, -ius, *adj. comp.*, [cis, on this side], nearer, hither; *Gallia Citerior* = (Cisalpine), Cisalpine Gaul, on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. \*

16. *Vocontiī*, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe between the Isere and Durance. 2

*septimus*, -a, -um, [septem, seven], *ord. num.*, seventh. \*

10. *trēs*: the VIIth VIIIth and IXth. *hibernis*: See Int. 139.

11. *quā*, where there was etc., or by the shortest road there was etc. *proximum iter*: up the Po to Turin, through Ocelum over Mont Genève to Lyons on the Rhone. *ūteriōrem Galliam*; the *Prōvincia Rōmāna* or *Gallia Trānsalpina*.

12. *cum...legiōnibus*, with these five legions. For the case see A. 248a; B. LXVIII; G. 392; H. 419, I; B. 222. cf. *sēcum* 8, 1. *Ceutrōnēs*, *Grāiocelī*, *Caturigēs*: Alpine tribes in the territory of modern Savoy and Provence.

13. *locis* etc., seizing the heights.

14. *complūribus*, etc.: English order: his pulsīs complūribus proeliis. When the attribute of one pair of words comes between another word and its attribute (a b A B) the arrangement is called interlocked. Here the order is made more artificial for reversing the positions of the noun and attribute (a B A b).

15. *Ocelō*: Usseau, southwest of Turin. *extrēmum*, farthest (point, place, or town.)

16. *ūteriōris prōvinciae*: see on line 11.

inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

11. Helvētīi iam per angustīas et finēs Sē- *The Helvetians invade the country of the Aedui who implore Caesar's protection.*  
 quanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs

17. inde, adv. [im loc. fr. is, +de], from that place, from there, thence. \*

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m., a tribe west of the Rhone, capital Lugdunum, now Lyons. 3

18. extrā [contr. fr. exterā, sc. parte]. adv. and prep. with acc., out of, outside of, beyond, without. \*

19. primus, -a, -um, superl. adj.:

(comp. prior), first; foremost, chief. \*

2. trā-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [trāns, across], a., lead or bring across, lead over, transfer, convey; draw or win over. \*

3. populor, 1. a., devastate, ravage, lay waste. 5

4. dē-fendō, -ere, fendi, fēnsus, a., keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect; support, maintain. \*

18. exercitum dūcit: Caesar was only about two months in going to Cisalpine Gaul, raising two legions there, forcing his way across the Alps through a hostile region and reaching Lyons, ready to confront the Helvetii. Trace on the map his route throughout and locate carefully all the places mentioned. extrā prōvinciam. In going outside of the Province, as in the levying of the troops, Caesar acted under a general commission to defend the frontier of the Province. See Int. 24. The situation among the Aedui, Sequani and other Gallic tribes was such as to compel Caesar to drive back the Helvetii, or the Romans would lose all their influence in Celtic Gaul and Ariovistus, the German king, would become supreme there. The extraordinary efforts of Caesar to hurry forward troops from Italy show how serious he thought the

situation was.

1. angustīas: where were these narrows?

3. pervēnerant: they seem to have followed the right bank of the Rhone about half-way to its junction with the Saone and then to have headed in a northwesterly direction for the Saone. The whole distance is stated to be not more than 98 miles. populābantur: for what reasons?

4, 5. suaque, and their property. The neuter plural of adjectives is often employed to denote the abstract idea of things in general. possent: for the mode see on 9, 3. rogātum, to ask. With what verbs is the Acc. of the Supine employed? What idea is denoted? A. 302; B. 128; G. 435; H. 546; B. 340, 1. ita sē etc., sc. quidīrunt or some expressions of ing.

5 ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessariī et cōsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiorem 10 faciunt, sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum

5. **rogō**, 1. *a., n.*, ask, question, request; propose (*iūs*); bring forward (*magistrātum*); administer the oath to (*militēs*). \*

**auxilium**, -i8[*augeō*, increase, promote], *n.*, help, assistance, aid; *in pl.* auxiliary troops, reinforcements. \*

**ita**, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way; as follows; *ita...ut*, even as, just as; *ut...ita*, in proportion to, although...yet.

6. **mereō** and **mereor**, 2. *a.*, deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn. \* **paene**, *adv.*, nearly, almost. \*

**cōspectus**, -ūs [*cōspiciō*, describe], *m.*, perception, observation; sight, view, presence. \*

7. **vāstō**, 1. [*vāstus*, waste]. *a.*, lay waste, ravage, make desolate, devastate. \*

**liberī**, -ōrum [*liber*, free], *m.*, the free members of the household (as *opp.* to slaves); children. \*

**servitūs**, -ūtis [*servus*, a slave], *f.*, slavery, servitude. \*

**ab-dūcō**, -ere, *dūxī*, ductus [*dū-*

*cō*, lead], *a.*, lead away, draw, or carry off, withdraw. \*

8. **ex-pūgnō**, 1. [*pūgnō*, fight], *a.*, take or carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. \*

**dēbeō**, 2. [contr. for *dē-habeō*], *a., n.*, have from (one's possessions) and hence, owe, be bound or under obligations; be due, ought. \*

**Ambarri**, -ōrum, *m.*, clients of the Aedui, between the Saone and Rhone. 2

9. **necessārius**, -a, -um, needful, requisite, necessary; **necessāria**, -ōrum, necessities (of life), supplies; **necessārius**, -i, kinsman, friend, client, patron. \*

**cōn-sanguineus**, -a, -um, [*sanguis*, blood], of the same blood; as *subst.*, kinsman, relative. 4

10. **dēpopulor** 1. *dep. a.*, lay waste, ravage; sweep away, destroy. \*

11. **hostis**, -is, *m., f.*, stranger, foreigner; (public) enemy, foe; *pl.*, the enemy. \*

6. **meritōs esse**: an appeal to the friendly relations that had long existed between the two peoples. Sixty years before, the Aedui had been styled '*socii populī Rōmānī*'. *in cōspectū*, before the eyes.

7. **nostrī**, (gen. sing. with *exercitus* = *Rōmānī*), used because the *oratio obliqua* is addressed to Romans by a Roman.

8. **Ambarri**: the branch of the Aedui around or near the Arar or Saone. They dwelt in the angle

formed by the Saone and Rhone. *Bibracte*, the center of the Druidical religion and *Noviodunum* (Nevers), an important commercial town, were the chief cities.

9. **necessārii**, close friends (through common interest). **cōn-sanguineī** kinsmen.

10. **dēpopulātis agrīs**, since their fields were laid waste. The perfect participle in a number of dependents is used passively.

11. **trāns Rhodanum**: north

vīcōs possēssiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant, sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fōrtūnīs sociōrum cōnsūptīs in 15 Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduō- *While crossing the Arar Caesar destroys Tigrini, the rear guard of the Helvetians.*  
rum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrē-  
dibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculis in utram partem flu-

12 possēssiō, -ōnis, [possidō, take possession of], *r.*, taking possession of, seizing; possession, occupation; a possession, property. 5

fuga, -ae, *r.*, running away, flight.\*

13. dē-mōnstrō, 1. [mōnstrō, show], *a.*, point out, declare precisely, show, prove, explain. \*

praeter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, along by, beyond, contrary to; except, besides. \*

solum, -ī, *n.*, bottom, ground, soil;

agri solum, the bare ground. 4

nihil (nil) [cf. nihilum fr. nē + hilum, a whit, anything], *n.*, *indecl.*, nothing; *acc. as adv.*, not at all, in no way \*

14. ex-spectō, 1. [spectō, look at], *a.*, look out, wait; look out for, await, expect; anticipate, apprehend. \*

15. statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [sta-

tus, position], *a.*, put in position, set up, place; determine, judge, resolve; take measures. \*

fōrtūna, -ae [fōrs, chance], *r.*, luck, chance; good fortune, success; property, estate. \*

cōn-sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus

[sūmō, take], *a.*, take together or all at once; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. \*

1. Arar, -aris (*acc. -im*), *m.*, a river of Belgic Gaul rising in the Vosges and emptying into the Rhone, the modern Saone. 5

2. in-crēdibilis, -e [crēdibilis, worthy of belief], unworthy of belief, unlikely, extraordinary. \*

3. lēnitās, -tātis [lēnis, smooth], *r.*, smoothness, gentleness. 1

oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye. \*

uter, utra, utrum, (*gen. utrius*) which of the two, which. 4

of the upper course of the stream.

13, 14. sibi... reliquī, *that they (direct we) have nothing left, except the soil of the field.* sibi: 7, 10. reliqui: used substantively and partitive *gen.* with *nihil*, *lit. nothing of a remainder.* nōn... expectandum (*esse*), *that he must not wait (it was not to be waited by him).* For the verb form see on 7, 15.

15. sibi: for the case see A. 232; B. LXXI; G. 355; H. 388; B. 189. How is the agent expressed with other parts of the verb?

16. Santonōs: already mentioned in 10, 3. pervenirent: for mode see on *convenirent* 7, 19.

3. lēnitāte, *with remarkable gentleness*, as contrasted with the swift turbid waters of the Rhine and the rivers of Italy. For the ablative see A. 248; B. 88; G. 399; H. 419, III; B. 220. (1), (2). What may be used instead of the adjective? in... fluat, *in which direction it flows.* For the mood *f* 334; B. 114; G. 467; H. 529, I; Cf 8, 15.

at iudicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus  
 5 iunctīs trānsibant. Ubi per explorātōrēs Caesar certior  
 factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiarum Helvētiōs id flūmen  
 trādūxisse, quartam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam  
 esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus  
 ad eam pārtē pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.  
 10 Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs aggressus māgnam partem  
 eōrum concidit: reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunť atque in

4. iudicō, 1. [iudex, a judge], *a.*,  
 pass judgment judge, decide, de-  
 termine. \*

linter, lintris, *f.*, *m.*, skiff, river or  
 ferry boat. 3

5. explorātōr, -ōris, *m.*, a scout. \*

7. quartus, -a, -um [quattuor,  
 four], fourth. \*

citrā [cis, on this side], *adv.* and  
*prep.* with *acc.*, this side, within. \*

8. vigilia, -ae [vigil, awake], *f.*,  
 wakefulness, watching; watch,  
 guard, sentinels; the Romans di-  
 vided the night into four watches. \*

castrum, -i, *n.*, fort, stronghold: *in*  
*pl.*, castra, castrōrum, fortified  
 camp, camp. \*

10. im-pediō, 4. [in + pēs, foot],  
*a.*, entangle the feet; hamper, ob-

struct, embarrass, hinder: *in p. p.*  
*as adj.*, encumbered with bag-  
 gage, burdened, hampered, hin-  
 dered. \*

in-opināns, -antis [opīnor, sup-  
 pose], not supposing, unawares. \*

ag (ad) -gredior, gredī, gressus  
 sum [ad + gradior, step, ad-  
 vance], *a.*, *n.*, advance to or  
 against, approach; assault, at-  
 tack. 4

11. con-cidō, -ere, cidi, cismus  
 [caedō, cut], *a.*, cut to pieces,  
 kill, slay. 3

mandō, 1. [manus + dō, give], *a.*,  
 give into one's hands; entrust,  
 commit; enjoin, order, com-  
 mand. \*

4. possit: for mood cf. 6, 13.

5. trānsibant: at Macon or  
 north of Trevoux. explorātōrēs:  
 see Int. 141.

6, 7. trēs . . . trādūxisse, that  
 the Helvetii had already conveyed  
 three parts (fourths) of their troops  
 across this river. Of the compound  
 trādūxisse, the simple verb governs  
 partēs, while flūmen is the object of  
 trāns in composition. A. 239 2, b;  
 G. 331 R. 1; H. 376; P. 394 (3).  
 Ararim: for the ending -im see A.  
 56 a, 1; B. H. 4, c; G. 57; R. 1; H. 62,  
 III, 1; B. 179. reliquam esse,  
 was left. The adj. reliquus is often  
 joined with part of esse as if a participle.

8. dē tertiā vigiliā, during (in  
 the course of), etc. dē, in expres-  
 sions of time shows that the action  
 (time) is in progress. vigiliā:  
 there were four watches, two before  
 midnight and two after. The third  
 watch lasted from midnight to  
 about three a. m. legiōnibus tri-  
 bus: about how many men? See  
 Int. 86.

9. pervēnit: he marched North  
 along the east bank of the Saone.

10. impeditōs, inopināntēs,  
 (while) unprepared (because) not  
 expecting (the Romans).

11. concidit: numerous burial  
 mounds, both Roman and Celtic,  
 have been unearthed on the site of

proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus: nam omnis cīvītās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum 15 sub iugum mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvītātis Helvētiae insīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam privātās

12. **silva**, -ae, *f.*, a wood, forest, woods. \*

**ab-dō**, **dere**, **didī**, **ditus** [dō, give], *a.*, give or put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. \*

**pāgus**, -i, [cf. **pangō**, fix], *m.*, a place with fixed boundaries; village; district, province, canton. **Tigurinus pāgus**, one of the four Helvetian cantons, the country of the Tigurini, perhaps in modern Zurich. \*

13. **nam**, *conj.*, for, now: introducing an explanation. \*

**quattuor**, *indecl. num. adj.*, four. \*

15. **interficiō**, -ere, **fēcī**, **fectus** [faciō, make], *a.*, make from among; make away with, kill, destroy. \*

16. **sive**, (**seu**) [sī, if + **ve**, or], *conj.*, or if, whether, if either, **sive** ... **sive**, either ... or, whether ... or. \*

**cāsus**, -ūs [cadō, fall], *m.*, what befalls; accident, chance, misfortune: **cāsū**, by chance. \*

**deus**, -ī, *m.*, a god, deity. \*

**immortālis**, -e [in- + **mortalis**, mortal], not mortal, immortal. \*

17. **insignis**, -e [signō, mark], marked, remarkable; *in neut. as subst.*, mark, sign, signal, decoration. \*

**calamitās**, -tātis, *f.*, defeat; disaster, misfortune.

18. **per-solvō**, -ere, **solvī**, **solūtus** [solvō, loose], *a.*, loose or pay in full, discharge, pay (**poenās**, penalty), 1

19. **solum**, *adv.* [sōlus, only], only, merely. \*

**pūblicus**, -a, -um [for **populicus** fr. **populus**, people], of the state or people, common, public. \*

**sed**, *conj.*, but, yet (a stronger adverbative than **autem** or **at**). \*

this battle, showing that burial was performed in great haste. This battle is placed by Rüstow on the 10th of June. **mandārunt**: contracted from **mandāverunt**. For the contraction of perfects in -āvī (also -ōvī -ōvī) see A. 128 a, 1; B. L. 7; G. 131, 1; H. 235; B. 116, 1 a. **silvās**: we should expect the abl. (place where) but the verb **abdidērunt** implies motion: *ran into and hid*.

12. **pāgus**: a tribe or district.

13. **omnis**, as a whole.

14. **exisset**: for mode cf. 4.

9. For the contraction of perfects

in -īvī see A. 128 a 2; B. H. L. 7; G. 131, 1; H. 235 1; B. 116, 1.

15. **memoriā**, in the time (not memory); for case see on **diē** 4. 4. **L. Cassium**: see on 7, 13. **sub iugum**: see on 7, 15.

17. **quae** ... **Helvētiae**, that part of the Helvetian people, which. The antecedent (*pars*) here appears only in the relative clause with the relative (*quae*) in agreement. A. 201 c; B. LXXIV; G. 616; H. 445 9; B. 251 4.

18. **populō** ... **intulerat**, *he inflicted upon, etc.* **populō**: for ca



20 iniuriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfecerant.

*The Helvetians, headed by Divico, haughtily ask for peace.*

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequi posset, pōntem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū commōti, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx  
5 aegerrimē cōfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātīōnis Divicō princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum

20. *ulciscor, -ī, ultus sum, a.,* avenge, chastise, punish, take vengeance on. 5

*socer, socerī, m.,* father-in-law. 1  
*avus, -ī, m.,* grandfather; ancestor. 2

2. *cōn-sequor, sequi, secūtus sum [sequor, follow], a.,* follow up, go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, succeed. \*

3. *cūrō, 1. [cūra, care], a.,* care for, take care, provide, arrange, cause to be done. \*

4. *repentinus, -a, -um [repēns,*

*sudden], sudden, unlooked for, unexpected, hasty. \**

*com-moveō, -ēre, mōvi, mōtus [moveō, move], a.,* move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate. \*  
**XX** (= viginti), indecl. num., twenty. \*

5. *aegerrimē [aegrē, with difficulty], adv., superl.,* with the greatest difficulty. 1

7. *Divicō, -ōnis, m., an Helvetian chieftain. 2*

*Cassiānus, -a, -um [Cassius], of or with Cassius, Cassian. 1*

see on 2, 5. *princeps . . . persolvit; first suffered punishment.* For the adverbial use of the adjective see A. 191; B. LXXIV, G. 325 R. 6; H. 443; B. 239.

20, 21. Note the accumulation of appositives: **L. Pisōnis** with **socerī**; **L. Pisōnem** with **avum**; **lēgātum** with **L. Pisōnem**. **socerī**: L. Calpurnius Piso, who was one of the consuls in this year. Caesar had married his daughter, Calpurnia, while consul, in 59 B. C.

2. *pōntem faciendum cūrat,* causes a bridge to be constructed.

For the Gerundive expressing purpose after verbs (not prepositions) see A. 294, d; B. 126; G. 430; H. 544 N. 2; B. 337, 7, b), 2). This bridge was probably of boats. See Int. 144.

4. *cum etc.: English order, cum intellegent illum ūnō diē fēcisse id quod ipsi etc.*

5. *ut . . . trānsirent:* in apposition with *id*, cf. *ut . . . cremārētur*. 4, 3.

6. *intellegent,* for mood see on 4, 9. *lēgātōs:* does the word have the same meaning as *lēgātum* in 10, 8?

7. *bellō Cassiānō:* see on 7, 13.

fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse volu-<sup>10</sup> isset: sīn bellō persequī perseverāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī,

8. agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *a., n.*, set in motion; drive (*of animals*); move forward, advance (*of military works*); do, transact, carry on (*of business*); discuss, speak; hold (*conventum*); give, render (*grātiās*); plead (*causam* or *rem*); quod agitur, the matter in hand; rēs agitur, something is at stake. \*

11. sīn, *conj.* [sī + nō], if however, but if. 2

per-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum [sequor, follow], *a.*, follow through or on, continue in, pursue, follow up; avenge (*mortem*). \*

perseverō, 1. [per-sevērus, very strict], *n.*, abide by, adhere to; persist, persevere. 2

reminiscor, -ī [mōns, mind], *a.*, call to mind, remember. 2  
vetus, -eris, old, ancient, former: veteran (*militēs*). \*

12. in-commodum, -ī [commodum, convenience], *n.*, inconvenience, loss, trouble, disaster, defeat. \*

prīstinus, -a, -um [for priustinus fr. prior], former, primitive, original. \*

13. im-prōvisus, -a, -um [prō + videō, see], not seen before, unforeseen, unexpected: *abl.* im-prōvisō, *adv.*, unexpectedly, suddenly. \*

ad-orior, orīrī, ortus sum [orior, arise], *a.*, rise against, assail, attack; begin, attempt. \*

8. sī etc.: Divico's speech is put in *ōrātiō obliqua*. The first sentence, Sī... *voluisset* (l. 10) is declaratory. In what mood will its principal verbs (*futūrōs*, *itūrōs* l. 9) be in direct discourse?

9. Helvētiīs: in direct discourse the noun may be retained, or the pronoun *we* substituted for it. *faceret*; a future condition with no thought of doubt: what mood and tense in the direct form? *itūrōs*, *futūrōs*: sc. what? cf. 8, 11; 6, 13.

10. Caesar: Divico is speaking to Caesar: what pronoun will replace the noun *Caesar* in the direct form? *cōstituisset*: for the mode in subordinate clauses of indirect disc. see on 7, 12. For the tense in the direct form notice that the idea is future and the stem is

the perfect: what tense in the indicative with a perfect stem denotes future time?

11. sīn etc.: this sentence is in form precisely similar to that in 7, 20. What is the principal verb in this sentence? What mood will it have in the direct form? As its subject here is *Caesar* understood, what person will it have in the direct form? *perseverāret*: for mood and tense cf. *faceret* l. 9; what person in direct form?

12. in-commodi, virtūtis: for the construction with verbs of remembering and forgetting see A. 219; B. LXXVI; G. 376; H. 406, II; B. 205, 206.

13. quod, as to the fact that *adortus esset*: indicative perfect in direct form: what person?

quī flūmen trānsissent, suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnō opere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiis nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus, ubi cōstitissent, ex calamitatē populi Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet.

20

14. *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, a., n.,* carry, bring; endure, suffer, withstand; receive, report: *ferunt*, they say. \*

15. *māgnō opere = māgnopere* [*māgnus, +opus, work*], *adv. with great labor*; especially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. \*

*tribuō, -ere, uī, -ūtus* [*tribus, a tribe or division*], *a., divide*; assign, allot, ascribe; grant, pay, render. \*

16. *dēspiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus* [*speciō, look*], *a., look down upon, scorn, despise*. 5

*māiōr, māius* [*comp. of māgnus*], greater (*in degree, size, time etc.*); older: *in pl. as subst. (with or without nātū)*, ancestors. \*

*discō, -ere, didici, a., n., learn*, be taught. 4

17. *magis, comp. adv. [māgnus]*, more, rather, in a higher degree. \* *dolus, -ī, m., craft, tricks, treachery*. 2

*insidiae, -arum* [*sedeō, sit*], *f., pl.*, a sitting or lying in wait; ambush, ambushade: *per insidiās* or *ex insidiis*, by artifice or stra-

tagem. \*

*nītor, -ī, nīsus (nīxus) sum, n.,* rest, or rely upon; climb, advance; strive, endeavor. 3

18. *quārē* [*abl. of quī and rēs*], *adv., by which thing*; wherefore, why. \*

*committō, -ere, misi, missus* [*mittō, send*], *a., send or bring together, unite, join*; commit, cause, do; *proelium committere*, join or begin battle. \*

*cōsistō, -ere, stiti* [*con-sistō*], *n., take a stand or position, keep one's position*; stand, form (*of soldiers*); stop, halt, remain, stay; consist in, depend or rest on. \*

19. *interneciō, -ōnis* [*necō, destroy*], *f., extermination, annihilation, utter destruction*. 2

*nōmen, -inis, n., name*; reputation, renown; account. \*

20. *prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus* *a., give forth, publish, betray, transmit, hand down*: *memoriam*: preserve, hand down (*to posterity*); *memoriā proditum*: told in tradition, handed down. \*

15. *māgnō opere*, used for the lacking adverb of *māgnus*; with *tribueret* trans. *overrate*. *tribueret*: for mood cf *reminisceretur* l. 11, but notice that *nē* (l. 14) cannot be joined with the imperative mood. For a substitute see A. 269 a, 1, 2; G. 270, 271 2 H. 489; B. 276, a, b, c.

17, 18. *contenderent, nīterentur*: for mode in direct disc. cf.

12, 4. *insidiis nīterentur*, *trust in stratagems*. For constr. with *nītor* see A. 254b; B. LXXVII; G. 401, R. 6; H. 425, 1 (1) N; B. 218, 3. *nē committeret*, (precisely like *nē tribueret* l. 15) *do not cause (or permit)*. *ubi cōstitissent*, may stand for a perfect indicative (cf. *adortus esset* l. 13) or a future perfect (cf. *cōstituisset* l. 10), more probably the latter.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus <sup>Caesar pro-</sup>  
dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvē-<sup>poses terms,</sup>  
tii commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre,  
quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidissent: quī sī alicūius  
iniūriāe sibi cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed 5  
eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret, quārē  
timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī vete-

1. minor, -us, [comp. of parvus], smaller, less. dimidiō minor: half as large—*Neut. as subst., less, not much.* \*

2. dubitātiō, -ōnis [dubitō, doubt], *f.*, doubt, uncertainty. 3

3. commemorō, 1. [memor, mindful], *a.*, call to mind, remind, state, mention. \*

graviter, *adv.*, heavily, with greater weight, with force.—*Fig.*, severely, seriously: graviter ferre: take to heart, be annoyed; premere, press hard. \*

4. meritum, -ī [mereor, deserve], *n.*, desert, service, merit, favor. \*

ac-cidō, -ere, cidi [cadō, fall], *n.*, fall to or upon; befall, happen,

fall to the lot of, occur: accidit, it happens. \*

aliquis, -quae, -quid [alius, other + quis] and aliqui, -qua, -quod [alius + qui] *indef. pron.*, some one, something; anyone, anything, any. \*

5. cōn-sciū, -a, -um [sciō, know], *sharing in knowledge*; cōn-sciū, aware of. \*

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, *n.*, be cautious or on one's guard: take heed or precautions. 3

6. dē-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capiō, take], *a.*, deceive. 1

7. timeō, -ēre, -uī, *a.*, *n.*, fear, dread, apprehend; be afraid or alarmed. \*

1. eō minus dubitātiōnis, the less perplexity. For case of eō see A. 250; B. H. 92; G. 403; H. 423; B. 223. minus used as a substantive; why acc? dubitātiōnis, for case cf. reliquī 11, 14.

3. eō gravius etc., I am the more annoyed, the less they have happened by the desert of the Roman people (= the less the R. p. deserved that they should happen). eō ... quō, the ... the. For the case cf. eō, l. 1.

4. quī sī, now if they (the Roman people) for translation see on 1, 11.

5. iniūriāe sibi cōnsciū: con-

scious of any wrong doing; sibi (dat. after cōnsciū) is not to be trans. in English. iniūriāe: for case see on 2, 14.

6. eō dēceptum (esse), they had been deceived on this account, because etc. eō, for case see on rēbus 2, 12, and distinguish carefully from the same case in ll. 1 and 3 above. cōmmissum (esse): sc. as subject aliquid and translate: that anything had been done. sē, by them (i. e. the Roman people). For case see A. 246; B. H. 86; G. 401; H. 415, I; B. 216.

7. quod sī, but if.

ris contumēliae obliviscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptās-  
 10 sent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vēxās-  
 sent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam in-  
 solenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tu-

**8. contumēlia, -ae** [cf. **contumāx**, unruly], *r.*, affront, indignity, injury, violence. \*

**obliviscor, -i, oblitus sum** [ob+liveō, become dark], *a.*, have the mind darkened; forget. 2

**num**, interrog. particle implying a negative answer. **num possum**, I cannot, can I? *in indirect interrogation*, whether. 1

**recēns, -entis, adj.**, recent, fresh, new, vigorous. \*

**9. temptō, 1.** [*freq. of tendō*, stretch], *n.*, handle, feel; make an attempt upon, attack; try, test, prove; try to win over. \*

**10. vēxō, 1.** [*intensive of vehō*, carry], *a.*, shake, agitate; injure, harass, plunder, waste, overrun. \*

**11. dē-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus** [pōnō, place], *a.*, place down

or aside, put away or off; place, station, deposit; give up; entrust. \*

**victōria, -ae** [victor, victorious], *r.*, victory. \*

**tam**, so, so much, so very: **nōn tam . . . quam**, not so much as, less than. \*

**insolenter** [in-solēns, unwonted]. *adv.*, unusually; arrogantly. \*

**12. glōrior, 1.** [glōria, glory], *n.*, glory, glory in, boast of. \*

**diū, adv.** [diēs], by day, cf. **noctū**; for a long time, long; **quam diū**, as long as; *comp.* **diūtius**, longer, too long, any longer; *superl.* **diūtissimē**. \*

**impūne** [in+poena, punishment], *adv.*, without punishment, with impunity. 1

**8. contumēliae**: for case see on *incommodi* 13, 12. **vellet**: the subject changes abruptly from *populus Rōmānus* to *Caesar*; *sc.* therefore *ipse*. What pronoun in the direct form? **iniūriarum**, objective gen. with *memoriam* l. 11.

**9. quod**, the fact that. The four clauses introduced by *quod* are substantive clauses (not causal clauses) and explain, i. e. are in apposition to, *iniūriarum*. The mood with this *quod* in direct discourse is the indicative: see A. 333; G. 524; H. 516, II; B. 299. **eō** = *Caesare*, for case cf. 8, 7., and distinguish in gender from lines 1, 3, and 5 above.

**11. posse**, he could not, could he? In the direct form: I cannot, can I? What answer is expected?

Notice that this sentence is interrogative, and that in interrogative sentences in indirect discourse the mood varies according to the person of the subject or the character of the question. See A. 338; G. 651, R. 1; H. 523, II, 1, 2; B. 315, 1, 2. **quod** etc., whereas you boast etc. This clause differs from those in lines 9 and 10 only in having no noun to explain; in this use it is said to be in the adverbial accusative. See A. 333 a; G. 525 R. 2; H. 516 II. 2 N.; We have, therefore, three uses of the conjunction *quod* in this chapter, besides the relative (as a connective) in l. 7. Explain each.

**12. sē . . . tulisse**, that they (the Helvetii) had for so long a time carried off their misdeeds (in-

lisce admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtatiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsis sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satis-

13. *ad-mīror*, 1. [*mīror*, wonder], *a.*, wonder at, be surprised, admire. 5

*cōn-suēsco*, -ere, *suēvī*, *suētus* [*suēsco*, become used], *n.*, become accustomed, be wont: *pf.* used as *pres.* and *plupf.* as *impf.*: in *p. p.* as *adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. \*

*enim*, *conj.* corroborative and explanatory [*e-(i) fr. is + nam*, for], in fact, really; for, but, now; *sed enim*, but in fact, however. \*

14. *com-mūtatiō*, -ōnis [*mūtō*, change], *r.*, a changing, change. \*  
15. *doleō*, 2. *n.*, feel or suffer (*bodily*) pain, suffer; feel (*mental*) pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve. \*

15. *scelus*, *sceleris*, *n.*, crime, wickedness. 1

*secundus*, -a, -um [*sequor*, follow], next (in time or order), sec-

ond; (of currents and winds as following a vessel and metaphorically of other objects), favorable, propitious, prosperous. *rēs*: prosperous affairs, prosperity. \*

*inter-dum*, [*dum*, while], *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime; at times, sometimes. 2

16. *diūturnus*, -a, -um [*diū*, long], of long duration, prolonged, long. 1

*im-pūnitās*, -tātis [*in + poena*, punishment], *r.*, freedom from punishment, impunity. 1

17. *polliceor*, 2. [*prō + liceor*, bid, offer], *a.*, *n.*, hold forth, offer, promise. \*

19. *satis-faciō*, -ere, *fēci*, *factus* [*faciō*, make], *n.*, make or do enough for, make or give satisfaction, satisfy; apologize, ask pardon. \*

*iūriās*) without punishment; or had escaped punishment for their misdeeds.

13. *eōdem pertinēre*, tended to the same result. *cōsuēsse*: uncontracted form? 12, 11. *quō*: see on 8, 7.

15, 16. *secundiōrēs rēs*, a considerable degree of prosperity; *diūturniōrem*, quite long. Observe that the comparative may be rendered by *too*, rather, *quite*, or any term expressing a comparison. *cum*, though. What is the construction with *cum concessive*? A.

326; B. 112, b; G. 587; H. 515, III; B. 309 3. What is the construction with *cum causal*? With *cum temporal*?

17. *iis*: for case see on *ā sē*, l. 6.

18, 19. (*eōs*) *factūrōs (esse)*, that they would do. *si Aeduīs etc.*, sc. *satisfaciant* from l. 19 and trans. if you will give satisfaction to the Aedui for the wrongs you have done them and their allies etc. *Aeduīs*, for case see A. 227 e, 2; B. 62, Rem.: H. 384 II 4 N. 1. *ipsis sociīs*: for case of. 12, 18.

20 faciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Divicō respondit:

Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suis īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuērint: ēius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

*Caesar follows the Helvetians and is defeated in a cavalry skirmish.*

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, 5 quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum āgmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvē-

21. in-stituō, -ere, stitui, stitutus [statuō, set up], *a., n., set up or in order, establish; set in array, draw up, form, devise; instruct, educate; begin, adopt; set on foot, determine, decide.* \*

23. testis, -is, *m., f., a witness.* 4 respōnsū, -ī [respōndeō, answer], *n., reply, answer; advice.* 4 dis-cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessus [cēdō, go], *n., go apart or away, depart, leave, retire, forsake.* \*

1. posterus, -a, -um [post, after], after, following, next; *in m. pl. as subst., posterity; sup. postrumus or postumus.* \*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *a., set in motion, move; excite, influence; occasion, remove, break up.* \*

2. equitatus, -ūs [equitō, ride], *m., a riding; cavalry, horsemen.* \*

4. prae-mittō, -ere, misi, missus [mittō, send], *a., send before or in advance; dispatch.* \*

5. cupidē, [cupidus, desirous], *adv., desirously, eagerly.* 4

6. āgmen, -inis [agō, set in motion], *n., a moving body; a marching column; army; in āgmine, on the march; primum āgmen, the van.* \*

in-sequor, sequi, secutus sum [sequor, follow], *a., n., follow up or after, pursue; press close, harass.* \*

aliēnus, -a, -um [alius, other], of or belonging to another, another's; *strange, alien, unfamiliar; inopportune, unfavorable.* \*

1. diē: for case see on 4, 4. castra movent: the Helvetii turned north to avoid Caesar.

2. equitātum: see Int. 100.

3, 4. quem coāctum habēbat, which he had collected. coāctum habēbat almost = coēgerat, see A. 292 c; G. 238; H. 388 I, N; B. 337, 6.

5. quī videant, to see; cf. 7, 10. quī: plural, because of the collective idea in the antecedent equitā-

tum. quās in partēs, in what direction. videant: for mood see on 12, 3. cupidius: for trans. cf. 14, 16.

6. novissimum āgmen, the rear, i. e. the "newest" or nearest to the pursuing Roman cavalry. aliēnō locō: because of the rugged nature of the region, which hindered the proper evolutions of the cavalry. aliēnō, another's, unfavorable: cf. suus, one's own, favorable.

tiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostris cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētīi, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōnnunquam et novissimō āgmine proeliō nostrōs lacēssere<sup>10</sup> coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat āc satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnis, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīdecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum primum

7. paucus, -a, -um (usually in pl.), [cf. paulus, little], little, few; in pl. as subst., a few; pauca (sc. verba), a few words. \*

cadō, -ere, cecidi, cāsus, n., fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. 2

8. quīgentī, -ae, -a [quīn-que, five+centum], five hundred. 5

eques, -itis, m., a horseman, a rider. —Plur. cavalry. Then (as orig. serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). Also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class). \*

tantus, -a, -um [cf. tām, so], so much, so great, such; tantī (neut. sing. gen.), of so great account. \*

9. prō-pellō, -ere, puli, pulsus [pellō, drive], a., drive or thrust forward, propel, urge on; put to flight, rout, dislodge. 4

audācter (audāciter) [audāx, bold], adv., boldly, fearlessly, daringly. 5

sub-sistō, -ere, stitī [sistō, stand] a., n., halt; remain. 2

10. lacēssō, -ere, -ivī, -itus [laciō, entice, move], a., arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. \*

11. coepī, coepisse, defect. [cum +apō (apiō), take hold], a., have taken hold; began, commenced, undertook. P. p., coeptus, -a, -um, began, commenced. \*

12. presentia, -ae, f., presence the present moment: in praesentiā, for the moment, at the moment. 5

rapīna, -ae [rapiō, pillage], f., pillaging, robbery, plunder. 1

pābulātiō, -ōnis [pābulum, fodder], f., getting fodder, foraging. \*

populātiō, -ōnis [populor, ravage], f., ravaging, pillaging. 1

13. circiter, adv. and prep. with acc. [circus, circle], about, near. \*

quīdecim [quīque, five + decem], indecl. num., fifteen. \*

7. paucī: the rest fled at the instigation of their commander, the treacherous Dumnorix.

8. sublātī (fr. tollō), elated. tantam, etc. How many?

11, 12. satis habēbat... prohibēre, considered it sufficient... to

keep (held that to prohibit was sufficient). rapīnis: for case cf. 8, 16.

13. ita, etc. Caesar was obliged to follow the Helvetii because there was no place along their road where he could attack them to advantage or head them off.



15 *nōn* amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum interesset.

*The Aeduans  
fail to furnish  
Caesar prom-  
ised supplies.*

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod essent publicē polliciti, flāgitāre. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn

15. *amplē* [amplus, large], largely, widely, liberally; *comp. amplius*, more, farther, longer. \*

quīnī, -ae, -a [quīnque], *distrib. num. adj.*, five each, five at a time. 4

sēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [sex, six], six each. 2

*inter-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus*, *n.*, be or lie between, intervene; be apart; be present, take part in; *impers. interest*, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference, an interval. \*

1. *interim, adv.* meanwhile, in the meantime: *interim . . . interim*, sometimes . . . sometimes. \*

*cotidiē* [quot, how many, every + diēs], daily, every day. \*

2. *publicē* [pūblicus, public], at

state cost, on behalf of the state, officially. \*

flāgitō, 1. *a.*, demand passionately, importune, press. 1

3. *frīgus* -oris [frigeō, be cold or chilly], *n.*, cold weather, cold; *pl.*, frigora, -um, cold seasons. \*

4. *pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus* [for *posnō* fr. *por* (prō) + *sinō*, let], *a.*, place, put, set aside; appoint, station, regard; pitch (*castra*): *pass.*, be situated, dependent. \*

*modo, adv.* [modus, measure], with measure or limit; only, merely; even, just, at least, but: of time, just now, recently; *nōn modo . . . sed etiam*, not only . . . but also. \*

mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe; of proper age, mature; timely, early. \*

15. *nōn amplius . . . interesset*, there was an interval of not more than &c. *milibus*: for the case see A. 247; B. 87; G. 398; H. 417; B. 217. *interesset*, used impersonally.

1. *Caesar*: the Roman general was in a perilous situation, being far from his own supplies, in the midst of only half hearted allies, and confronted by a vigilant foe. Caesar was careful of his supplies, see Int. 52. *Aeduōs frūmentum*, corn of the Aedui. For the two Accusatives see A. 239 c; B. 74, a; G. 339; H. 374; B. 178, 1, a).

2. *quod . . . polliciti, which* (as Caesar claimed) they had proffered on the state's behalf. For the mood

see A. 341, d; G. 628; H. 528, 1; B. 323. *flāgitāre* = *flāgitabat* (*flāgitavit*): for the Infinitive (notice the case of its subject!) see A. 275; B. 123; G. 647; H. 536 1; B. 335.

3. *frigora, the cold* (season). The climate in Gaul was much colder in Caesar's time than now. The clearing up of the country accounts in part for the change. *ut*: adv. or conj.? See on 4, 11. *ante*: in 1, 18.

4. *frūmenta, standing grain, crops: frūmentum, grain* (harvested) and in the singular number because in bulk. *mātūra nōn erant*: although it was now late in June.

5. *pābuli, fodder* for the support of the pack animals. The Hel-

erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat: 5  
eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvēxerat,  
proptereā minus ūti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētīi āver-  
terant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Ae-  
duī: cōferri, comportāri, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius dūci  
intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mē-10  
tīri oportēret, convocātis eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māg-  
nam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Diviciacō et Liscō, quī

5. pābulum, -ī [cf. pāscō, feed and pānis, bread], n., food, fodder, sustenance. \*

quidem, adv., (*emphasizing the expression before it*) indeed, at any rate, at least, truly: nō... quidem, not even. \*

6. sub-vehō, -ere, vēxi, vēctus [vehō, carry], a., bring up. 1

7. ā-vertō, -ere, verti, versus [vertō, turn], a., turn away from or away, turn aside; turn back, repulse, estrange; in p. p. as adj., turned away, retreating. \*

8. nōlō, nolle, nōlui (nē + volō, wish], a., n., not wish, be unwilling; imper. nōlī (nōlite) with infin. do not. \*

9. cōn-ferō, ferre, contulī, collātus [ferō, bring], a., bring or get

together, collect, gather; ascribe to, charge: sē, retreat, take refuge; signa, join battle. \*

com-portō, 1. [portō, carry] a., carry together, collect. \*

ad-sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be near or present, be at hand; aid, assist. \*

10. in-stō, stāre, stitī, status [stō, stand], n., stand upon or near, be at hand, press on; impend, threaten. \*

mētiōr, -iri, mēnsus sum, n., deal or measure out, distribute. 3

11. con-vocō, 1. [vocō, call], a., call together, summon, assemble. \*

12. Liscus, -ī, m., a chief magistrate of the Aedui. 4

vetii had left nothing in the country for them.

6. frūmentō: object of ūti l. 7, cf. 5, 10. flūmine, by way of the river. For the case see A. 258 g; G. 389; H. 420, 1, 3; B. 218, 9. nāvibus: for case see on 3, 20.

7. iter āverterant: the Helvetii had turned west toward the Loire in order to cross the Cevennes where their altitude was least. This was their best route to their destination (the country of the Santones).

8. diem... dūcere, delayed him day after day. For the inf. dūcere see on *flāgitāre*, l. 2.

9. diūtius dūci, that he was put off too long. For rendering of the comparative see on 14, 16.

10. quō diē, on which; why is diē not translated? See on 6, 1; case of quō? Cf. 15, 1. mētiri: see Int. 116. The subject of mētiri is sē understood; its object is frūmentum. The clause frūmentum... mētiri is the subject of oportēret, l. 11.

11. convocātis prīncipibus etc. summoning etc; for case of. eō 14, 9.

12. Diviciacō: see 3, 14. Sc. convocātis with Diviciacō and Liscō,

summō magistratūi praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet  
 15 potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sumī posset, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus ab iis nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

13. **summus**, -a, -um [*sup. of superus*, high], highest, the highest part of, the top of; preeminent, greatest, chief, supreme. \*

**prae-sum**, esse, fui, futurus [*prae*, before], *n.*, be before or over, be in command of, rule over. \*

**vergobretus**, -ī, *m.*, vergobret, the title of the Aeduan chief magistrate. 1

14. **creō**, 1. *a.*, create, produce; elect, appoint. 5

**annuus**, -a, -um [*annus*, year], year by year, yearly, annual. 1

**vita**, -ae [*cf. vivo*, live], *r.*, life; manner of life; mankind. \*

**nex**, **necis** [*necō*, slay], *r.*, violent death, slaughter, murder; death. 3

15. **potestās**, -tātis [*possum*, be able], *r.*, ability, power; dominion; authority. \*

**accūsō**, 1. [*ad+causa*] *a.*, *n.*, bring

a case or charge against: blame, censure, accuse. 3

**emō**, -ere, **ēmī**, **ēmtus**, *a.*, buy, purchase. 2

16. **propinquus**, -a, -um [*prope*, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; *in pl. as subst. relatives*. \*

17. **sub-levō**, 1. [*levō*, lift], *a.*, lift from beneath, lift or raise up; sustain, assist, encourage. \*

**praesertim** [*prae+serō*, join], placed foremost; particularly, especially. \*

18. **prex**, **precis**, (*in sing. only in abl.*) [*precor* pray], *r.*, prayer, request, entreaty; a good wish; imprecation. \*

19. **dē-stituō**, -ere, **stitūi**, **stitūtus** [*statuō*, set up], *a.*, set or place aside, forsake, desert. 1

**queror**, -ī, **questus sum**, *a.*, *n.*, complain, bewail, lament. \*

13. **summō...praeerat**, held (was over) the highest office. For the Dat. see on 2, 5.

13. **quem...Aeduī**, whom the Aeduans call vergobret. For the two Accusatives see A. 239 1 a; G. 340; H. 373; B. 177. **vergobretum**: a Roman corruption for Celtic *guery*, "effecting" and *breth*, "judgment". Caesar tells us (VII, 33) that this officer was not permitted to go beyond the limits of the state during his term; and that

no one could be vergobret while one of his family who had held the position was living.

15-17. **quod...sublevētur**, because (as he said) he was not aided by them. When does *quod* causal take the Subj? A. 321; B. 110, a; G. 541; H. 516, II; B. 286, 1. **ab iis**: what Abl.? Cf. 14, 6.

18, 19. **multō**: for case cf. *eō* 14, 3. **sit dēstitūtus**: for mode see on 1, 15-17, above.

17. Tum dēnum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris ad-  
ductus, quod antea tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōn-  
nullōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum  
valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs.  
Hōs sēditiosā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinē dēterrere  
nē frumentum cōferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam  
prīncipātum Galliae obtinere nōn possint, Gallōrum quam  
Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Hel-  
vētios superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs

*Liscus shows  
the bad faith  
of an Aeduan  
faction headed  
by Dumnores.*

1. **tum**, *adv.* [cf. **tam**], then, at this or that time (*coinciding with another period of time*): **cum** ... **tum**, both ... and, not only ... but also. \*

**dēnum**, *adv.* [acc. of **dēmus** (superl. of **dē**), downmost], at length, at last finally. 4

2. **antēā**, *adv.*, formerly, before, previously, once; *always with a verb*. \*

**taceō**, 2 *a., n.*, be silent or quiet, keep silence, pass over in silence: *in p. p. as adj.*, silent. 3

**prō-pōnō**, -ere, **posui**, **positus** [**pōnō**, place], *a.*, place or put forward, set forth, present, propose, explain, declare, promise, offer, purpose. \*

4. **valeō**, 2. *n.*, be strong or vigorous, have weight or influence; avail; be well. \*

**privātīm**, *adv.* [**privātus**, private],

privately, individually, as private citizens. 3

5. **sēditiosus**, -a, -um [**sēditio**, sedition], full of sedition, mutinous, seditious. 1

**im-probus**, -a, -um [**probus**, good], bad, wicked, shameless. 1

**dē-terreō**, 2. [**terreō**, frighten], *a.*, frighten away or off, hinder, deter, prevent. 5

8. **per-ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus** [**ferō**, bear], *a.*, bear or carry through, convey; announce, report; submit to, endure; \*

**dubitō**, 1., *a., n.*, have two opinions, waver in judgment, be uncertain, doubt. \*

9. **superō**, 1. [**super**, over], *a., n.*, go over, overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer; be overmuch or in excess, abound; be left over, remain, survive. \*

2. **quod**: for omission of antecedent (here *id*) see 1, 2. **prōpōnit**: for the tense see on 3, 10, and cf. **accusat**, 16, 15; **queritur**, 16, 19. **essenōnnullōs**, etc.; for **sunt nōnnullī**, etc. in dir. disc. Reconstruct the dir. disc. of this chapter.

4. **quī** ... **possint**, *who as private citizens possess more influence*, etc.

6. **nē** ... **cōferant**: **nē** (or **quōminus**) with its verb after a verb

of hindrance is conveniently translated by *from* with the pres. part. For the Subj. cf. 9, 12. **praestāre** etc.: a thought of these Gauls, sc. **hōs putāre**: (they think) *it is better to endure*. etc. **praestāre** is impersonal.

8, 9. **perferre**: used as a substantive, cf. 10, 3; what case has it here? **dubitāre**, sc. **hōs**. **quīn Aeduīs** ... **sint ereptūrī**, *that they will wrest from the* (hands of the)

1 libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem nostra consilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enuntiari: hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod necessaria re coactus Caesar enuntiaret, intellegere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.

*The influence of Dumnorix. His character and policy.*

18. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Diviciaci fratrem, designari sentiebat, sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res iactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solo ea, quae in 5 conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem

10. libertas, -tatis [liber, free], *a.*, freedom, liberty, independence. \*

11. coerceo, 2. [arceo, shut up], *a.*, shut up completely, restrain, check. 2

13. quantus, -a, -um [cf. interrog. quam, how?], *a.* interrog., how much? how great? how large? what? *b.* relative, as much, as great (large) as; tantum... quantum, as much (great or far) as: *in acc. as adv.*, how much: *in abl.*, as, as much as. \*

2. designo, 1. [signo, mark], *a.*, mark out, mean, indicate. 1

sensio, -ire, sensi, sensus, *a.*, perceive, feel, be sensible of; experience, undergo; think, observe, be aware; decide. \*

3. praesens, -entis [praesum, be before or at hand], present, immediate, at hand. \*

iactio, 1. [freq. of iacio, hurl], *a.*,

throw or hurl repeatedly, toss; (of words) talk about, mention, discuss. 3

celeriter [celer, quick], *adv.*, quickly, rapidly, speedily. \* concilium, -i [calo, call], *n.*, gathering, assembly, council. \*

4. dimitto, -ere, misi, missus [dis-, apart], *a.*, send apart or away, break up, dismiss; release, abandon, renounce. \*

retineo, 2. [teneo, hold], *a.*, hold or keep back, detain; restrain, hinder; retain, preserve, maintain. \*

quaero, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitus, *a.*, seek or look for, inquire, ask, examine, investigate. \*

solus, -a, -um, *gen. solius*, alone, only, the only. \*

5. conventus, -us [veniō, come], *m.*, coming together; meeting, assembly. \*

libere [liber, free], *adv.*, freely, without restraint; generously. 4

*Aeduans*, etc. For the mode see on *possent* 3, 20, but notice that this clause represents an accusative. *Aeduus*: for the Dative see A. 229; G. 345; H. 386, 2; B. 188 2 d).

10. ab eisdem: i. e. nonnullis l. 2; for case cf. 16, 17.

12. quin etiam, *nam even, in*

*fact.* quod: cf. 14, 11. How does this differ from the *quod* clauses in 14, 9?

13. fecerit: see on 12, 3; cf. *faciant*, 15, 5.

14. quam diu, *as long as*.

3. pluribus praesentibus, *when many were present*. Cf. 16, 11.

sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vērā: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberalitatem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūris annōs portōria reliquaue omnia Aeduōrum vēctīgālīa parvō pretiō redēmta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī au-<sup>10</sup> deat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et

6. sēcrētō [sēcernō, separate], *adv.*, separately, apart, privately, secretly. 2

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus [pariō, procure], *a.*, procure; find; find out, discover, ascertain. \* vērūs, -a, -um, true, real, genuine; *in neut. as subst.*, the truth. 4

7. audāciā, -ae [audāx, bold], *r.*, boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. 8

liberalitās, -tātis [liber, free], *r.*, freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. 2

9. portōrium, -ī [portō, carry], *n.*, toll, duty, tax, tariff on exports and imports. 2

vēctīgāl, vēctīgālīs [vehō, convey], *n.*, taxes or rents (conveyed to the publicāni), revenue, income. 3

parvus, -a, -um, *comp.* minor, *superl.* minimus, little, small, in-

significant. 5

pretium, -ī, *n.*, price, valuation. 2

10. redimō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus [emō, buy], *a.*, buy back, repurchase; buy up, purchase. 3

contrā, *adv.*, on the contrary, on the other hand. 4

liceor, 2. [liceō, offer for sale], *a.*, *n.*, bid for, bid (at an auction). 2

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *semi-dep.* *a.*, dare, risk, venture. \*

11. nēmō, *acc.* neminem [nē + homō, man], *m.*, no man; no one, nobody. \*

familiāris, -e [familia, household], pertaining to the household, personal, private; *as subst.*, intimate friend; rēs, personal property, estate. \*

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *a.*, *n.*, increase, augment, enhance, add to. \*

6. reperit ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, *that Dumnorix is, etc.*

6-24. Reconstruct the direct disc.

7. summā audāciā, (*a man*) of the utmost recklessness. Case? Cf. 7, 16.

8. cupidum rērum novārum, *eager for a revolution. rērum: for case cf. 14, 5.*

9. portōria: port duties, frontier duties, tolls paid for the privilege of crossing a country, etc. vēctīgālīa; the general term for all kinds of taxes. The custom prevailed at Rome of letting out the collection of the taxes to companies of *pūbli-*

*cānī*, for five years, for specified sums. This secured the state against loss, but left the tax gathering in the hands of rapacious and irresponsible agents. Thus the people were impoverished and their oppressors enriched. What modern country collects taxes in a similar way? parvō pretiō: thus defrauding the state. pretiō: For case see A. 252; B. 94; G. 404; H. 422; B. 225.

10. redēmta habēre, *he had (having been) bought up, see on actum habēbat, 15, 4. illi cente: for case cf. 1, 3.*

facultatēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnū numerum equitatūs suō sūptū semper alere et circum sē habere, neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs  
 15 largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā matrem in Bitūrīgibus hominī illic nobilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs collocāsse. Favere et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affinitatem, odiſse etiam suō  
 20 nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciacus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae

12. largior, 4. [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. 2

13. sūptus, -ūs, [sūmō, take, expend], M., expense, cost. 1

semper, adv., always, every time, constantly, ever. \*

alō, -ere, -uī, -itus, a., nourish feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. \*

15. largiter [largus, large], largely, freely, liberally; largiter posse, to have very great influence. 1

potentia, -ae [potēns, powerful], F., power, authority, influence, dominion. \*

māter, mātris, F., mother; matron. \*

Bitūrīgēs, -um, M., a tribe of Central Gaul in two branches, the Vibisci around Bordeaux, and the Cubi around Bourges. \*

16. illic [ille, that + -ce], in that place, there. 2

collocō, 1. [locō, place], a., place together, place, set, station; arrange; nūptum collocāre, to give in marriage. \*

17. uxor, -ōris, F., wife. \*

soror, ōris, F., sister. 2

18. nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, a., n., veil one's self; marry (of the bride. 1

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus, n., be favorable to, favor. 2

19. cupiō, -ere, cupīvi (ii), cupītus, a., n., long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. 5

affinitās, -tātis [finis, adjacent] F., alliance by marriage, relationship. 2

odi, odiſse, def. (pf. with signif. of pres.), a., hate, detest. 2

21. dē-minuō, -ere, minui, minūtus [minuō, lessen], a., lessen, diminish, impair. \*

antiquus, -a, -um [ante, before], former, old, ancient. 3

12. comparāsse: for the contraction of perfects see on 12, 11.

14. domī, at home. For case see A. 258, 2, d; B. 100; G. 411, R. 2; H. 426, 2; B. 232, 2.

15. causā following a Genitive and governing it is rendered, for the sake of, on account of.

17. ipsum: i. e., Dumnorix.

See 3, 14. ex matre, on his mother's side.

18. nūptum: form and use? See on 11, 5. Observe that the use is here metaphorical and not literal as in the reference.

19. Helvētiīs: cf. rēbus 9, 8. suō nōmine, on individual grounds. For case see on rēbus 2, 12.

atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Rōmānis, sum-  
mā in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō  
populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam  
habeat, grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō  
Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus  
esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque  
eius equitibus (nam equitātui, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aedui  
miserant, Dumnorix praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse  
equitatum perterritum.

30

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, cum ad hās suspici-  
ōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs  
Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs

*Caesar coun-  
sels with Divi-  
ciacus concern-  
ing his brother  
Dumnorix.*

22. **honōs** (honor), -ōris, m., hon-  
or, regard, glory, distinction. \*  
**restituō**, -ere, -ui, -ūtus [statuō,  
set up], a., set up again, re-es-  
tablish, restore. \*

25. **dē-spērō**, 1. [spēs, hope],  
a., n., cease to hope, despair. \*

26. **equester**, -tris, -tre [equēs,  
horseman], of or belonging to a  
horseman, equestrian; of cavalry,  
cavalry. \*

**ad-versus**, -a, -um [versus p. p. of  
vertō, turn], turned to or against;  
opposite, fronting; adverse, un-

favorable. \*

30. **per-terreō**, 2. [terreō, fright-  
en], a., frighten thoroughly, ter-  
rify greatly. \*

1. **cōgnōscō**, -ere, -nōvi, -nitus  
[cum + (g)nōscō, know], n.,  
know thoroughly; learn, ascer-  
tain; study, investigate. \*

2. **accēdō**, -ere, -essi, -essum,  
[ad + cēdō], to approach, draw  
near to, arrive at, come to; to be  
added; **accēdēbat**, it was added. \*

22. **si quid**: for form and trans.  
of *quid* cf. 7, 20.

23. **imperiō**, under the sover-  
eignty. The Ablative expressing  
both time and cause.

26. **quod** etc.: whereas an un-  
fortunate engagement of cavalry had  
occurred a few days before. **quod**,  
cf. 17, 12. **proelium equestre**, see  
15, 5-7 text. **ante diēbus**: *ante* is  
an adverb; *diēbus* is abl. of degree  
of difference.

27, 28. **esset factum**, for mood  
see on 8, 7. **Dumnorīge**, equiti-  
bus: for case cf. 17, 10. **equitātui**:

for case cf. 16, 13.

28. **auxiliō Caesarī**, as an aid  
to Caesar: for the datives see A.  
233, a; B. 67; G. 356; H. 390, I,  
II; B. 191, 2.

1, 2. **ad . . . certissimae rēs ac-  
cēderent**, the most clearly proven  
facts were added to these suspicions.  
These facts (*rēs*) are stated in the  
following *quod* clauses. **quod**, cf.  
14, 9: how do these clauses differ  
from that in 18, 26? In what  
are they?

3. **trādūxisset**: why Subj



inter eōs dandōs cūrāset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū  
 5 suō et civitātis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fēcisset, quod ā  
 magistratū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrā-  
 bātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem  
 animadvertere iubēret. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat,  
 quod Diviciaci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studi-  
 10 um, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam,  
 temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam, nē eius supplicio Diviciaci  
 animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam  
 cōnārētur, Diviciacum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotīdiānis inter-

4. in-iūssū, *abl. from iniūssus*, -ūs, [iubeō, order], without command or order. 2

5. in-sciēns, -entis [sciō, know], unaware, ignorant. 2

7. animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, (animus + ad + vertō), to turn the mind to; to notice; in: to punish. \*

8. re-pūgnō, 1. [pūgnō, fight], *n.*, fight back; resist, oppose. \*

9. studium, -i [studeō, be zealous], *n.*, zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm; feeling; good will, devotion; profession, occupation. \*

10. ēgregius, -a, -um [ē + grex, herd], *out of the common herd*; superior, eminent, remarkable. 4  
 iūstitia, -ae [iūstus, just], *f.*, justice, rectitude, uprightness. 4

11. temperantia, -ae [temper-

ans, temperate], *f.*, moderation, prudence, self-control. 1

supplicium, -i [sub + plicō, bend], *n.*, bending or kneeling in supplication or to receive punishment; supplication (rare); punishment. \*

12. of-fendō, -ere, fendī, fēnsus [ob + fendō, strike], *a.*, strike against, wound, harm: animum offendere, wound the feelings. 2  
 vereor, 2. *a.*, reverence; fear, dread. \*

prius, *adv.* [prior, former], before, sooner, previously; prius quam (priusquam), before. \*

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or quicquam, *indef. pron.*, some, any, any one, anything. \*

13. vocō, [vōx, voice], *a.*, call, summon; call upon, invoke. \*  
 interpres, -pretis, *m.*, interpreter. 2

4. eōs = *Helvētiōs et Sēquanōs*. cūrāset: uncontracted form? dandōs: what does the gerundive denote here? See on 13, 2.

5. suō: whose? inscientibus ipsis, *without their own* (Aeduans') knowledge.

6. magistratū: who? satis esse causae, *that it was a sufficient reason*. causae: for the Part. Gen. with adverbs (here satis) see A. 216, 4; B. 59, d; G. 369; H. 397, 4, footnote 3; B. 201, 2.

8. ūnum repūgnābat, *one fact opposed all these considerations*.

11, 12. cōgnōverat, *had learned* (knew well). For verbs used preteritively see A. 279 e; G. 241 R. H. 297 I, 2; P. 471 a. nē... verēbātur, *he feared that etc.* For the translation and use of nē with verbs of fearing see A. 331 f, N.; G. 550, 2; H. 498, III, 1; B. 296 2. Prius quam etc., *before he ventured on anything*.

13. cōnārētur: for the mode

pretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium<sup>15</sup> rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cōgnitā statuāt, vel cīvitatē statuere<sup>20</sup> iubeat.

20. Diviciacus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid grāvius

*Caesar spares Dumnorige but places him under guard.*

14. re-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [moveō, move], a., move back or away, remove, withdraw. \*

Valerius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: (1) Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, a Roman *lēgātus* in Aquitania before Caesar's proconsulship. (2) Gaius Valerius Caburus, a Gaul who received Roman citizenship, perhaps, from (3) Gaius Valerius Flaccus, *propraetor* in Gaul in 83 B. C. (4) Gaius Valerius Procillus, and (5) Gaius Valerius Donnataurus, sons of (2). (6) Gaius Valerius Troucillus, a prominent Gaul whose father had received Roman citizenship.

16. colloquor, -ī, locūtus sum [cum + loquor, speak], n., speak with, converse, confer. \*

simul, adv., at once, at the same time, together: simul . . . simul, both . . . and, partly . . . partly: simul atque, as soon as. \*

commonefaciō, -ere, fēcī, factus [moneō, warn + faciō], a., re-

mind forcibly, impress upon. 1

18. sēparātīm [sēparō, separate], separately, apart, asunder. 3

19. petō, -ere, -īvī (īi), -ītus, a., seek, aim at, make for, attack, try or go to get; ask, entreat: petere ut liceat, to ask permission. \*

hortor, 1. exhort, encourage, urge strongly, cheer. \*

offēnsiō, -ōnis [offendō, strike against], f., a striking against; hurting: offēnsiō animi, hurting one's feelings. 1

1. lacrima, -ae, f., tear. 2

2. com-plector, -ī, plexus sum [plectō, braid], a., embrace, clasp, enclose. 3

ob-secrō, 1. [sacer, sacred], a., implore (on sacred grounds), entreat, beseech. 3

gravis, -e, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe; serious, important, advanced (of age). \*

after *priusquam* see A. 327; B. 111, b; G. 574, 577; H. 520 in full; B. 292.

14-16. per . . . colloquitur: English order, *colloquitur cum eō per C. Valerium Troucillum*, etc. *prīncipem*: not necessarily a chief

but a prominent man. *cui . . . habēbat*, in whom he had the utmost confidence in all matters.

2. quid: form and me. See on 7, 20. *grāvius*: for

in frāterem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum  
 5 ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adolēscētiā posset, per sē crēvisset: quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūteretur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī  
 10 a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futurum, utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret,

3. sciō, 4. a., distinguish; know, understand. \*

6. adolēscētia (adul-) -ae [adō-lēscēns, a youth], f., youth. 1 crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētus [incept. of crēō, create], n., begin to create: grow or increase (in size, power, age, etc.); become famous or prominent. 2

7. ops, opis [Ops, the goddess of plenty], f., power, help, strength; pl., wealth, resources; authority, influence. \*

nervus, -ī, m., sinew, tendon, nerve; in pl., energy, power. 2 minuō, -ere, -uī, minūtus [minus, less], a., n., lessen, impair, dimin-

ish, violate (maiestatem) settle, (contrōversias). \*

8. perniciēs, -iēs, [per + nex, death], f., destruction, ruin. 2 amōr, -ōris [amō, love], m., love. 1

9. frāternus, -a, -um [frāter, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. 2

existimātiō, -ōnis [existimō, estimate], f., judging, opinion. 2

vulgus (volgus), -ī, n. and m., the common people, crowd, rabble, the masses: in abl. as adv., commonly, generally. \*

13. verbum, -ī, n., word. 4 flēō, -ēre, flēvi, flētus, a., n., weep, shed tears, lament. 5

see on 14, 16.

3. scire etc.: reconstruct the direct discourse. "I know that these things are true; and from this fact no one feels (takes) more (of) sorrow than I do, etc."

5. ipse, Diviciacus; so sē l. 6, suam l. 8. sēsē l. 8, ille, Dumnorix; so eī l. 9.

6. minimum posset, had very little influence; Cf. largiter posse, 18, 15. For case of minimum see A. 240 a; B. 75; G. 334 R. 1; H. 2; B. 176 3.

7. opibus, nervis: for case cf. frumentō 18, 6.

9. quod . . . accidisset: in dir. disc., "Now if anything too severe befalls (shall have befallen) him at your hands (from you)." quod sī, lit., as to which, if: quod is strictly an adverbial accusative, see on l. 6, but with sī has become a mere connective and is translated and, now, but, etc.

12. futurum (esse) utī . . . āverterentur, it will happen that etc. futurum esse utī (=fore ut)

Caesar eius dextram prēdit; cōsōlātus rogat, finem ōrandi faciat; tantū eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit, uti et rei publicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgē ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās queratur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciacō frātī condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scīre possit.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub mōnte cōsēdisse milia passuum

Caesar arranges to harass the Helvetians

14. **dextra**, -ae [dexter, right sc. manus], f., the right hand. \*  
**prēndō**, -ere, -dī, **prēnsus** [for **prehendō**=**prae**+**hendō**, hold] lay hold of, seize, grasp. 1  
**cōn-sōlor**, 1. [sōlor, comfort], a., comfort, cheer. 5  
**ōrō**, 1. [ōs, mouth], a., n., speak, plead, entreat. \*  
**con-dōnō**, 1. [dōnō, give], a., n., give freely; give up; pardon, forgive. 2  
**ad-hibeō**, 2. [habeō, have], a., have or bring to, bring in, summon, employ, use. \*  
**re-prehendō**, -ere, -dī, -hēnsus, [prehendō, seize] a., hold back or fast, seize hold of; criti-

- cise, blame, censure. 4  
**19. moneō**, 2. a., warn, advise, admonish, teach. \*  
**20. vitō**, 1. a., avoid, shun, evade. \*  
**praeter-eō**, ire, ivi (ii), itus [praeter, beyond+eō], a., n., go beyond or past, pass by; omit, neglect, reject: in p. p. as adj., past: as subst., the past. 4  
**21. custōs**, **custōdiā**, m., f., guard-ian, keeper, watchman. 5  
**loquor**, -i, locūtus sum, n., speak, talk, converse. \*  
**2. cōn-sidō**, -ere, **sēdī**, **sessus** [sidō, sit down], n., sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. \*

with the Subjunctive is here used for the future passive infinitive which rarely occurs. The same form is necessarily employed when the given verb has no future participle.

14, 15. **rogat (ut) ... faciat**, he asks him to make, etc. With what verbs is **ut (uti)** omitted in purpose clauses? A. 331 f Rem; B. 107, c; G. 546 Rem. 2; H. 499, 2; B. 295 8. **tanti**: For the case see A. 252 a; B. 58, b; G. 380; H. 404-5; B. 203 3.

21. **pōnit**=**adpōnit**, places over.

**agat, loquatur**: For the mode cf. 17, 13. Why did Caesar spare Dumnorix? His position was critical. He was getting farther and farther from his province. The Aedui were not true. It was not the time to be harsh. See Long, vol. I, p. 13; Mommsen vol. IV, p. 293.

1. **explōrātōribus**: these were scouting parties; the *sper* individual spies.

2. **hostēs ... cōsēdis**  
*the enemy had encamped*

ab ipsius castris octō, qualis esset nātūra mōntis et quā-  
lis in circuitū ascēsus quī cōgnōscerent, misit. Renūn-  
tiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgā-  
tum prō praetōre cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus, quī  
iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum mōntis ascendere iubet;  
quid suī cōsiliū sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem  
itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque om-  
nem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris peritissi-

3. octō (VIII), *indecl. num.*, eight. \*

qualis, -e [quis], *interrog.*, of what sort, kind or nature, what; *rel.* of such a sort, kind or nature, such as, as. 2

4. circuitus, -ūs [circumeō, go around], *m.*, going around; a winding path, circuit: in circuitū, all around. \*

ascēsus, -ūs [ascendō, climb up], *m.*, climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. \*

6. praetor, -ōris [for praetor fr. prae-eō, go before], *m.*, leader, chief, president; general, commander; praetor, judge. 1

dux, ducis [dūcō, lead], *m.*, *f.*, leader, guide, commander. \*

7. ascendō, -ere, -di, -cēsus [ad+scandō, climb], *a.*, *n.*, climb up to, ascend, mount, climb. \*

10. P., *abbrev. for Pūblius, a Roman praenomen or given-name.* 2

Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*, Publius Considius, one of Caesar's officers. 3

militāris, -e [milēs, soldier,], of a soldier, military, martial: rēs militāris, the science of warfare. \*

perītus, -a, -um, tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, accustomed to. 3

of the mountain. sub mōnte: in the vicinity of modern Toulon. milia passuum octō: how many miles? milia: for case see on 2, 17.

3. qualis . . . nātūra, what was the character.

4. quī cōgnōscerent misit, he sent men to learn. For the omission of the antecedent ('men') see on 1, 2. For the Mode and the equivalent of quī see on 7, 10.

5. tertiā vigiliā: see on 12, 8.

6. prō praetōre: the consul and praetor had *ex officiō* the right to command an army on expiration of their terms of office, and no other persons had this right except rarely by special grant. Such a grant had

been made to Labienus who is therefore called 'lieutenant with the powers of a praetor'. The military authority of ordinary *legātī* was merely temporary and provisional.

8. quid . . . sit: what (the essence of) his plan is, namely, that Labienus shall move to the rear of the Helvetii and at a preconceived signal, both he and Caesar shall attack them. sit: for mode cf. 20, 21. dē quartā vigiliā: about what hour?

9. equitātum: what were the duties of the cavalry, on the march? See Int. 141, 144.

10, 12. P. Cōnsidius . . . fue-

mus habebatur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

22. Primā luce, cum summus mons ā Labiēnō <sup>*His plans are frustrated by the mistake of Considius.*</sup> teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cōgnitus esset, Cōsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dicit mōtem, quem <sup>5</sup> ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī: id sē ā Gallicis armīs atque insignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās

11. **L.**, abbrev. for **Lūcius**, a Roman praenomen or given-name. \*

**Sulla**, -ae, m., a Roman family name; Lucius Cornelius Sulla the dictator, the bitter foe of Marius and leader of the aristocracy. \*

**postea**, adv., [post, after], after this, afterwards. \*

**Crassus**, -ī [crassus, thick], m., (1) M. Licinius Crassus, triumvir with Caesar and Pompey; (2) his son Publius Licinius, a lieutenant in Caesar's army; (3) a second son, Marcus Licinius, one of Caesar's questors. \*

1. **lux**, **lūcis** [lūceō, be light], f.,

light. \*

3. **captivus**, -ī [capiō, take], m., captive, prisoner. \*

4. **com-periō**, -ire, **perī**, **pertus**, a., find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. \*

5. **equus**, -ī, m., horse. \*

**ad-mittō**, -ere, **misī**, **missus** [mit-tō, send], a., send to; let in, admit; let go or loose; permit; incur. \*

**ac-currō**, -ere, **cucurrī** (**currī**), **cur-sus** [ad+currō, run], n., run or hasten to, run up or rush to. 2

6. **Gallicus**, -a, -um [Gallia], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. \*

**rat**: Caesar states these facts about Considius to excuse his own ready acceptance of Considius' statements below. **rei**: for case of. **rerum** 18, 8.

11. **Sullae**: the conqueror of Mithradates, 88-84 B. C. and opponent of Gaius Marius. See Int. 6. **Crassi**: more noted as a financier than a general. See Int. 20. He commanded in the Servile war, 71 B. C.

1. **primā luce**, at day break. **summus mons**, the summit of the ridge (the top of the mount). For

the adjective in agreement, where we should expect a noun ('top') followed by a genitive ('of the mountain') see A. 193; G. 291 R. 2; H. 440 2 N. 1, 2; B. 241, 1.

3. **passibus**: for case see on 15, 15. **ut**: what part of speech? Cf. 16, 3.

5. **equō admissō**, at full gallop. The Ablative Absolute is here equivalent to an Abl. of Manner.

7. **insignibus**: the decr on their helmets, shields, et

in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi  
 10 ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique  
 unō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, mōnte occupatō nostrōs  
 expectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per  
 explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et mōntem ā suis tenērī et  
 Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum,  
 15 quod nōn vidisset, prō visō sibi renūtiāsse. Eō diē, quō

8. collis, -is, *m.*, hill. \*  
 sub-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dū-cō, lead], *lead or draw from beneath; draw or lead up; lead or draw off, withdraw.* \*  
 aciēs, -ēī (old gen. aciē), [cf. ācer, sharp], *sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; prima, the van; media, the centre; novissima, the rear.* \*  
 in-struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus [struō, build], *a., build upon, build, construct; form, draw up, array.* \*

9. praeciō, -ere, cōpī, ceptus [capiō, take], *a., take or obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order.* \*

nisi, conj. [nē+si, if], *not if; if not, if . . . not, except, unless.* \*

11. impetus, -ūs [petō, attack], *m., attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence.* \*

12. abstinēō, 2. [teneō, hold], *a., and n., hold off, keep aloof from, refrain.* 2

dēnique, adv. [deinde, then + -que], *and then, thereupon, finally, at last.* 5

8. aciem instruit: Caesar concluded from the report of Considius that Labienus had been defeated, and expected that the victors would immediately attack him. aciem: how did it differ from the agmen?

9. erat . . . praeceptum, as he had been directed. The passive of intransitive verbs is often used impersonally ('it had been commanded to him') but the English idiom generally requires the personal construction in the translation. The subject is the following clause nē . . . committeret.

11. fieret: for mood cf. 5, 8; 3, 5.

12. multō diē, in broad day. Cf. l. 1.

14. timōre: this was probably due in part to the exaggerated no-

tion of Gallic prowess that prevailed in the Roman army. timōre perterritum, panic stricken.

15. quod . . . renūtiāsse, had reported to him as if seen what he had not seen. Caesar generously refrains from censuring Considius although the miscarrying of his well-laid plan must have been a great disappointment. eō diē: about two weeks had elapsed since Caesar crossed the Saone. It was now the end of June.

15, 16. quō intervallō: for eō intervallō, quō (sequi) consuevit, hostēs etc. For the position of the antecedent see on 12, 17; for the ablative see on 12, 3. The relative takes the place of the necessary limiting adjective.

cōnsuērat intervallō, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

**23.** Postridiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercitūi frūmentum mētīri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit: iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum,

*The Romans, marching toward Bibracte, are followed and harassed by the Helvetians.*

**16.** inter-vallum, -ī [vallum, in-trenchment], *n.*, the space between two palisades or the 200 feet between the rampart and tents; interval (of space or time). \*

**1.** postridiē, *adv.* [posterus, following + diēs], on the day following, the next day: postridiē eius diēi, on the next or following day. \*

bīduum, -ī [bis, twice + diēs], *n.*, space or period of two days, two days. \*

**2.** super-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus [super, over], *n.*, be over or above, be left, remain, survive. \*

**3.** Bibracte, -is, *n.*, the chief town of the Aedui, see note below. \*

**4.** cōpiōsus, -a, -um [cōpia,

abundance], abundantly or well supplied, wealthy. 1

**5.** frūmentārius, -a, -um [frūmentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; rēs, supply of grain, provisions: (loca) productive. \*

prōspiciō, -ere, spēxi, spectus [speciō, look], *n.*, look forward, look out; look to beforehand, see to, provide for. 3

**7.** fugitivus, -a, -um [fugiō, flee], fleeing, as *subst.* a runaway slave. \*

Aemilius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Aemilius, a Gaul in charge of a decuria of Caesar's cavalry. 1

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, [decem], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten. 1

**1.** postridiē: here has its original force as a noun and governs the Gen. diēi.

**2.** mētīri: what was the usual food allowance of the Roman soldier? In what form was it issued? What officer had charge of the commissariat? See Int. 116, 117. oportēret: for mode see on 4, 9. What is the subject? See on 16, 10.

**3.** Bibracte: as the Gauls used to place their towns on hills, Mont Beuvray seems to have the preference over Autun as the site of this place. It was the "holy city" of

the Druids; and the capital of the Aedui.

**4.** milibus: for the case cf. *passibus* 22, 3.

**5.** rei... prōspiciendum: that he must look out for supplies. rei: for case cf. 16, 13; 12, 18. prōspiciendum (esse): for form see on 7, 15; for the translation, on 22, 9.

**7.** fugitivōs, runaway slaves: *perfugae* and *transfugae*, sold: who as traitors pass over to enemy. decuriōnis: on the c officers, see Int. 101.



hostibus nūtiātur. Helvētīi, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis, quod pridie  
 10superiōribus locis occupātis proelium nōn commīsissent, sive  
 eō, quod rē frumentāriā interclūdī posse cōfiderent, com-  
 mūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō  
 āgmine īnsequī āc lacēssere coepērunt.

*Caesar pre-  
 pares for bat-  
 tle. The Hel-  
 vetians ad-  
 vance to the  
 attack.*

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās  
 Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitātum-  
 que, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsīt. Ipse

8. seu or sive, conj. [sī + ve or],  
 or if, if either; whether, either:  
 seu . . . seu, either . . . or, whether  
 . . . OR. \*

timor, -ōris [timeō, fear], m., fear,  
 alarm, dread. \*

9. pridie, adv. [pri- in prior +  
 diēs], on the day before. 5

11. interclūdō, -ere, clūdī, clū-  
 sus [claudō, shut], a., shut or  
 cut off, obstruct, hinder. \*

cōn-fidō, -ere, fīsus sum [fidō,  
 trust], n., trust completely, rely  
 on, feel confident, hope: in p. p.  
 as adj., trusting in, relying upon.\*

com-mūtō, 1. [mūtō, change], a.,  
 change or alter completely,  
 change; exchange. 5

12. con-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus  
 [vertō, turn], a., n., turn com-  
 pletely, turn or wheel around;  
 turn, change: itinere conversō,  
 altering his course; signa con-  
 vertere, to change front. \*

1. post-quam, conj., after that,  
 after, as soon as. \*

ad-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus [ver-  
 tō, turn], a., turn to, turn toward  
 or against: animum, observe,  
 notice. 2

3. sustineō, 2. [sub + teneō,  
 hold], a., hold up from below, up-  
 hold, sustain; hold or keep back,  
 check, restrain; hold out against,  
 withstand, endure. \*

9. existimārent: for mood see  
 on sublevētur 16, 17.

10. sive eō, or for this reason.

11. rē . . . posse (Rōmānōs): i.  
 e. by being hindered in reaching  
 Bibracte. rē: for case cf. 8, 16; 8,  
 12.

11, 12. commūtātō cōnsiliō:  
 If the Helvetii had held to their  
 plan of march, they might have  
 foiled Caesar. Their safety lay in  
 avoiding battle, which they could  
 do as long as they were in advance  
 of him, on account of the rugged

nature of the country. Their fatal  
 mistake lay in thinking that they  
 were strong enough to throw away  
 this advantage.

1. id . . . advertit, directed his  
 attention to this. For construction  
 of animum and id see on that of  
 partēs and flūmen 12, 6.

2. proximum collem: thought  
 to be some miles south-west of  
 Mont Beuvray near Toulon.

3. quī sustinēret: to check  
 temporarily the enemy's advance.

interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum<sup>5</sup> quattuor veterānārum, sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum mōntem hominibus complērī et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab hīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōstitērant, mūniri iussit. Helvētīi cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsi cōfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitatū phalange factā sub primā nostram aciem successērunt.

4. **medius**, -a, -um, in the middle or midst, in the middle of, intervening. \*

**triplex**, -icis [trēs + plicō, fold], three-fold, triple. 4

5. **veterānus**, -a, -um [vetus, old], old, veteran. 1

6. **proximē**, adv., last, lately. \*

7. **com-pleō**, -ēre, plēvi, plētus [plēō, fill], a., fill up or complete, complete. \*

**sarcinae**, -ārum [sarcīō, mend, restore], f., pl., baggage or luggage (of the individual soldier), packs. 4



*Sarcina.*

9. **mūniō**, 4. [cf. **moenia**, walls], a., defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect. \*

10. **impedimentum**, -ī, [impediō, hinder], n., hindrance, obstacle: pl. baggage or luggage (of an army), baggage-train (including the draught animals).

11. **cōfertus**, -a, -um [p. p. of cōferciō, crowd together], crowded or pressed together, dense, thick, compact. \*

**reiciō**, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, hurl], a., hurl or drive back, repel; cast down or off, reject. \*

**phalanx**, -ngis (Gr. acc. pl. phalangas), f., a compact band of troops, phalanx. 4

12. **succēdō**, -ere, cessī, cessus [sub + cēdō, go], n., go or come under; go or come up from beneath, come up to, advance, come close to, take the place of; succeed, prosper. \*

4. in colle mediō: midway up the slope. For the meaning of the adj. see on 22, 1. **triplicem aciem**: on the battle formation of the Romans, see Int. 145-147. **legiōnum** etc., consisting of four veteran legions. For the case see A. 214 e; B. 53; G. 368, R; H. 396, V; B. 197.

5. **veterānārum**: old, in distinction from the two that had but recently been levied. They were the VIIth, VIIIth, IXth, and Xth. in

**summō iugō**, on the very summit. cf. l. 4. **duās**: XIth and XIIth: cf. 10, 9. Caesar did not put the untroops in the fighting lines.

6. **auxilia**: these troops were raw and possibly not all well affected. See Int. 99.

7. **collocārī**, **complērī**, **cōferri** (l. 8.), **mūniri** (l. 9.), for the construction of these infinitives see A. 331 a; G. 546 N. 3; H. 535, II; B. 331, II.

**sarcinās**: packs or kits, which the soldiers carried: see Int. 11!

*The battle.  
The Helve-  
tians are  
forced to re-  
treat.*

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōn-  
spectū remōtis equīs, ut aequatō omnium periculō  
spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium com-  
misit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilis missis facile hostium

1. primum, *adv.* [prīmus, first], first, at first, in the first place: cum primum, as soon as. \*
- de-inde (dein), *adv.* [dē + inde, thence], from thence; thereupon, then; next. \*
2. aequō, 1. [aequus, equal], *a.*,

make even or equal, equalize. 2

3. co-hortor, 1. [cum + hortor, encourage], *a.*, encourage greatly, animate, rally. \*
4. pilum, -ī, *n.*, heavy javelin, pilum. \*

8. eum: *sc. locum.*

his: those last mentioned l. 5.

10. carris: the Celtic wagon had two disc-like wheels and no springs. impedimenta: their heavy baggage, carried on beasts of burden or wagons.

12. phalange: in the phalanx formation, the soldiers overlapped their shields, so as to form an impenetrable covering. The front rank held the shields vertically, the other ranks horizontally, "arranged like the tiles of a roof." On the Gallic methods of warfare, see Int. 176-187. sub, (also *in*, *subter*, *super*) is followed by the Accusative with a verb of motion. What case is used in relations of rest? successerunt, came up close to.

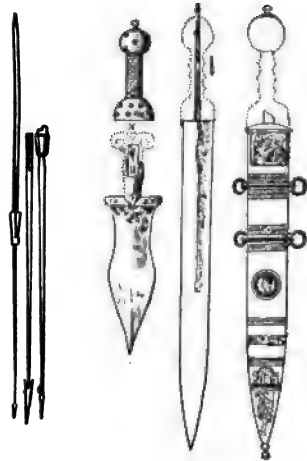
1. suō (equō remōtō), sending away his own horse. For case cf. 22, 5; how many like constructions in ll. 1-5? omnium, of all the mounted officers, his aids, etc. The tact and courage of Caesar are exhibited in the remark recorded by Plutarch that he "would mount again when the enemy fled."

2. remōtis equīs: Caesar did the same again at the battle of Munda in Spain (see Int. 42); and Sallust credits Catiline with a similar action in the battle that ended his career. aequatō periculō: officers of all ranks in the Ro-

man army seem to have done more fighting than is expected of the officers in modern armies.

3. cohortātus suōs: the allocutiō, or harangue, was customary at the beginning of a battle. A skillful orator like Caesar would be able to rouse his troops to a high pitch of enthusiasm.

4. ē locō superiōre: the higher position of the Romans gave them a decided advantage. What was it?



Pila.

Gladii.

pilis, gladiis: see Int. 109. pilis missis: this opening of the battle

phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallis māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō, quod plūribus eōrum scūtis ūnō ictū pīlōrum transfixis et colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō brāchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmit-10

5. per-fringō, -ere, frēgī, fractus [frangō, break], *a.*, break or burst through. 2

disiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, hurl], *a.*, hurl apart or aside; scatter, route, disperse. 3

gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword. \*

dē-stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus [stringō, bind, strip], *a.*, unbind, strip or draw off; unsheathe, draw (gladium). 2

6. pūgna, -ae [pūgnō, fight], *f.*, a fight, battle; contest, dispute. \*



Scūtum.



Clipeus.

7. scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield, buckler; oblong, convex ( $2\frac{1}{2} \times 4$  ft.), made of wood covered with leather (or iron plates), with a metal rim. \*

ictus, -ūs [icō, strike], *m.*, stroke, blow, thrust. 2

trans-fixō, -ere, fixī fixus [figō, fix], *a.*, thrust or pierce through, transfix. 3

8. colligō, 1. [cum + ligō, bind],

*a.*, bind or fasten together, unite, hamper. \*

ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron, steel; anything made of iron, axe, sword, spear-point, chain, etc. 3

in-flectō, -ere, flecti, flexus [flectō, bend], *a.*, *n.*, bend in, bend, curve, inflect. 2

ē-vellō, -ere, velli, vulsus [vellō, pluck], pull or tear out. 1

9. sinister, -tra, -trum, left; sub sinistrā, on the left; in fem. sing. as subst. (sc. manus), the left hand. \*

commodē [commodus, convenient], conveniently, readily, easily; nōn satis commodē, not very easily. \*

pūgnō, 1. [cf. pugil, a boxer], *n.*, fight, give battle, contend; oppose; strive. \*

10. brāchium, (bracch-) -ī, *n.*, the arm from the hand to the elbow, fore-arm. 2

prae-optō, 1. [optō, choose], *a.*, choose rather, prefer. 1

manus, -ūs, *f.*, the hand; in manibus, near at hand; as the instrument of war, force, courage; an armed troop, band, company. \*

ē-mittō, -ere, misi, missus [mittō, send], *a.*, let go, send out or forth, release; hurl, discharge. \*

corresponds to the heavy cannonade that usually introduces modern engagements.

5. gladiis dēstrictis, with drawn swords. cf. 22, 5.

6. Gallis . . . impedimentō it

was a great hindrance to the Gauls in battle. For the case see on 18, 28.

9. sinistrā impeditā: in what way? see Int. 109.

10. multi ut . . . praeoptār so that many preferred. For 1

tere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō mōnte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōi et Tulingī, quī hominum milibus circiter 15 XV āgmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ā latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre et id cōnspicātī Helvētīi, quī in mōntem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conver-

11. nūdus, -a, -um, naked, unclothed; unprotected. 3  
corpus, -oris, n., the body, person; a (dead) body.

tandem, adv. [tam, so + -dem (cf. idem)], just so far; at last, at length, finally; in interrog. claus-es to add emphasis, pray now, then, now. \*

vulnus (vol-), -eris, n., a wound; cut; calamity. \*

dēfessus, -a, -um [p. p. of dēfetis-cor, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. \*

12. re-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus [ferō, bear], bear or carry back; give back, restore; sē referre (or pedem referre), go back, retreat; grātiam referre, return thanks. \*

sub-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus [sub, under, near], n., be under or below; be near or close at hand. 4

13. eō [old dat. of is], adv., thither, there (in sense of thither), to the place (where etc.), to them

(it, him, etc.).

15. claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, a., shut, close; shut in, enclose; conclude, terminate. \*

16. latus, -eris [cf. lātus, wide], n., side; wing or flank of an army. \*

aperiō, -ire, -uī, apertus [ab + pariō, bring forth], a., bring forth from; expose; in p. p. as adj., exposed, unprotected. \*

circum-venio, -ire, vēnī, ventus [veniō, come], a., come around, surround, encompass; invest, circumvent. \*

17. cōnspicor, 1. [spec- in obsol. speciō, look], a. and n., look closely, observe, descry, perceive. \*

rūsus (rūsum), adv. [for reversus, from revertō, turn back], backwards; again, back again, anew. \*

18. redintegrō, 1. [re- + integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. \*

cf. 12, 4; 6, 13. multi, being emphatic, precedes ut, which usually stands first in its clause.

11. nūdō corpore, without a shield. For case cf. 22, 15.

12. pedem referre: they retreated in good order to a hill near by, on which they re-formed their phalanx. suberat, was . . . below. mille: for case cf. 2, 17.

15. āgmen . . . claudēbant:

they formed the van of the Helvetian army, which became the rear when the line of march was reversed. They were marching at some distance from the main body, which accounts for their coming up thus late in the battle.

16. ex itinere: i. e. without pausing to form a line of battle. latere apertō: i. e. the right flank, which was unprotected, the shield being carried on the left arm.

sa signa bipertitō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut vic-  
tis āc submōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret. 20

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācritēr pūg- *They are*  
nātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum im- *routed and*  
petūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in mōn- *see north-*  
tem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē con- *ward, Caesar*  
tulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad 5 *pursues.*

19. **signum**, -ī, *n.*, mark, sign; military standard, banner; signal, watchword; statue; seal; **signa sequi**, follow the standard; **ab signis discēdere**, withdraw from the ranks; **signa inferre**, advance; **signa convertere**, wheel about. \*

**bipertitō**, *adv.* [*bis + partior*, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. 2

**vincō**, -ere, *vici*, **victus** [*cf. vinco*, bind, restrain], *a.*, and *n.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; excel; prevail. \*

20. **sub** (*sum-*) -**moveō**, -ēre, *mōvi*, **mōtus** [*sub + moveō*, move], *a.*, move from beneath or near;

move or send away, remove, dislodge. 5

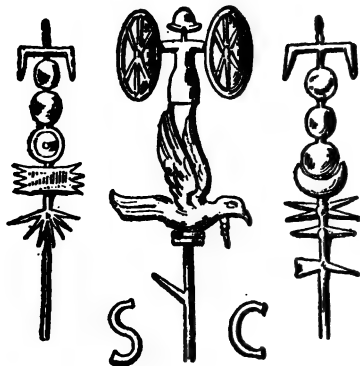
**resistō**, -ere, **stitī**, **stitum**, to halt, stop, stand still; to withstand, oppose; to continue, remain. \*

1. **anceps**, **ancipitis** [*ambō*, both + *caput*, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double; doubtful, wavering. 2

**ācritēr** (*ācer*, sharp), *adv.*, sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. \*

5. **hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night reckoning between sunrise and sunset*, varying in length according to the season. \*

18, 19. **conversa signa** etc.,



*Signum. Tropaeum. Signum.*

*lit., carried forward the standards*

*having been turned about. Translate: faced about and charged; the third line "faced about", and then moved obliquely to a position at right angles to that of the other two lines. On the signa see Int. 120-124. bipertitō, in two divisions, i. e. in two directions.*

20. *victis āc submōtīs, the conquered and dislodged (Helvetii); for the case cf. 18, 19; 9, 8. ut venientēs sustinēret, to withstand those who were advancing, i. e., Boii and Tulingi. The pres. part. is here equivalent to a relative clause.*

1. **ancipitī**: see note on **bipertitō** 25, 19. **pūgnātum** est, *they fought*. For rendering of impersonals see on 22, 9.

3, 4. **alterī** . . . **alterī**, *the party (Helvetii) . . . the other* ;

vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est propterea quod pro vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs  
 10 rotāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter milia hominum cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam  
 15 partem noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quar-

6. *vesper*, -erī, *m.*, evening; *sub vesperum*, towards evening. 5

7. *nox*, *noctis*, *f.*, night.

8. *vāllum*, -ī [*vāllus*, palisade], *n.*, wall or rampart of earth (set with palisades); entrenchments, earthworks. \*

*ob-iciō*, *icere*, *iēcī*, *iectus* [*iaciō*, throw], *a.*, hurl or place in the way, set against or in front; expose; throw up, in *p. p.* as *adj.*, opposed, lying in the way. \*

9. *con-iciō*, *icere*, *iēcī*, *iectus* [*iaciō*], *a.*, hurl or throw together; cast; let fall; put together logically, conjecture. \*

10. *rota*, -ae, *f.*, wheel. \*

*matarā*, -ae, *f.*, [*Celtic*] javelin, pike. 1

*trāgula*, -ae [*trāhō*, drag], *f.*, a light *Celtic* javelin or dart attached to a strap by which it was hurled. 4

*sub-iciō*, *icere*, *iēcī*, *iectus* [*iaciō*], *a.*, hurl or put under or near; discharge below; place below, subject; throw from beneath, throw up. \*

*vulnerō*, (vol-), 1. [*vulnus*, a wound], *a.*, wound, injure, hurt. \*

15. *inter-mittō*, -ere, *misī*, *missus* [*mittō*, send], *a.*, *n.*, send between, interrupt, discontinue, leave off. \*

*Lingonēs*, -um, *m.*, a *Gallie* tribe in the *Vosges* near the sources of the *Maas* and *Marne*; capital, *Andematunnum*, the modern *Langres*. \*

(Boii and Tulingi).

6. *pūgnātum sit*: for the *Subj.* see on 14, 17; for trans. cf. l. 1. *ab hōrā septimā*: about noon; the twelve hours of the day began at sunrise and ended at sunset.

7. *ad multam noctem*, till late at night.

8. *pro vāllō*, as a rampart: the *vāllum* strictly speaking, was the row of stakes on the walls of Roman camp. See Int. 131. *locō superiōre*: i. e. from the wagons packed in a circle.

9. *venientēs*: for rendering see on 25, 20.

10. *matarās*, *trāgulās*: *Gallie* javelins; the former heavy and thrown by the hand, the latter light and hurled by a strap. *vulnerābānt*, Plutarch says the women and children fought too and that they were massacred. *subiciēbant*, were hurling from beneath (the wagons).

14. *eāque tōtā nocte*, during the entire night.

15. *partem*: for the case see on 3, 12. *finēs Lingonum*,

tō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsīt, nē eōs frumentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse, trīduō intermissō, 20 cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī  
lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum  
eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prō-  
iēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque  
eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre 5  
iussisset, pārūrunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs,

*Surrender of  
the Helve-  
tians. Six  
thousand  
escape.*

17. sepultūra, -ae [sepeliō, bury], f., burial, sepulture. \*  
trīduum, -ī [trēs, three + diēs], n., three days. \*

morōr, 1. [mora, a delay], n., delay, tarry, linger. \*

18. littera (litera), -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet, a written sign, mark, or character; in pl., letter, epistle, missive. \*

nūntius, -ī, m., messenger, courier; message, tidings; command, injunction. \*

19. nēve (neu), conj. [nē + ve, or], and not, nor; nēve (neu) . . . nēve, neither . . . nor. 4

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, a., aid,

help, assist. 5

1. inopia, -ae [inops, needy], f., need, want, poverty, destitution. \*

2. dēditō, -ōnis [dēdō, give up], f., giving up; surrender, capitulation. \*

3. prō-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, throw], a., throw forward or away, project; cast; reject, abandon. \*

4. suppliciter [supplex, suppliant], adv., suppliantly, humbly. 1

6. pārēō, 2. [cf. pariō, bring forth] n., come forth, be clear; obey, submit, yield to, comply with, be subject to. \*

about 60 Roman miles in a north-westerly direction from the battle-field.

16-18. cum . . . potuissent, since they could not, etc. For mode see on 9, 3. Lingonas: Greek form of acc. pl. A. 63, f; G. 65; H. 68; B. 47, 3.

sepulturam: Long says that this is the only place in the Commentaries where Caesar speaks of burying those who had fallen.

19, 20. nē iuvārent, (ordering them) not to etc. What mode in direct disc.? Cf. 13, 18; 13, 15. sē eōdem . . . habitūrum (esse), he would regard them in the same position as the Helveti

2. quī cum, now when these (ambassadors). How is the relative at the beginning of a sentence to be translated?

5. quō . . . essent, in which the



arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum milia vi ēius pāgī, quī Verbigēnus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti, nē armīs trāditis supplicio afficerentur, sive spē salutis inducti, quod in tantā multitudīne dediticiōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

7. servus, -ī, m., slave, servant. \*

per-fugio, -ere, fūgī, fugitus [fugio, flee], n., flee for refuge, take refuge in; desert. \*

poscō, -ere, poposci [cf. precor, ask], a., ask, demand, request (stronger than petō, less strong than flagitō). 5

8. con-quirō, -ere, quisivī, quisitus [quaerō, search], a., seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. \*

9. Verbigēnus, -ī, m., one of the four clans of the Helvetii. 1

10. trā-(trāns-) dō, dere, didī, ditus [trāns + dō, give], a., give across or over, give up, surrender; intrust, confide; hand down, transmit. \*

11. salūs, salutis [salveō, be well], f., health, welfare; preservation, security, safety. \*

dediticius, -a, -um [dēdō, surrender], surrendered, subject; as subst., one surrendered (formally), prisoner. 4

12. occultō, 1. [freq. of occultō, hide], a., hide, secrete; keep secret, conceal. \*

ignōrō, 1. [ignārus, not knowing] a., not know, be ignorant of, be unacquainted with; fail to observe, overlook: pass., be unobserved, unrecognized. \*

13. ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus [gradior, step], a., n., step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (from a ship), disembark. \*

(the Helvetians) then were. For the mode see on 16, 2: This is called Informal (Implied, Virtual) Indirect Discourse.

7, 8. servōs: fugitive slaves from the Roman army; see 23, 7, fugitivōs. dum ... cōferuntur, while these were being sought out and brought together. For the tense after dum meaning while, see A. 276 e; B. 111, d; G. 570; H. 467 4; B. 293, f. Notice that it is translated here by a past tense. ea is used

inclusively for obsidēs, arma, servōs. What other gender could be used? A. 187 2, b N.; H. 439, 2, N; B. 235, 2, b, γ.

9, 10. timōre nē, by the fear that. For trans. of nē see on 19, 12.

14. finēs Germānōrum contendērunt: if the Verbigeni had reached German soil, they would have stirred up the Germans to cross the Rhine into Helvetia. This Caesar wished to avert.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciiit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrerent et reducerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit: reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditis in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, 5 Tulingōs, Latovicōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iūssit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iūssit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit 10 eum locum, unde Helvētīi discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimī Gal-

*These are re-taken and put to death. The remainder are compelled to return to Helvetia.*

1. re-sciscō, -ere, scivī, (scii), scītus [sciscō, inquire], *a.*, find out, learn, discover. 1

2. re-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead or bring back, draw back; restore, replace. \*

3. pūrgō, 1. [pūrus, clean+agō], *a.*, clean, clear, excuse, exonerate: *in p. p. as adj.*, freed from blame or suspicion, exonerated. 4

5. perfuga, -ae [perfugiō, flee for refuge], *m.*, refugee, deserter. \*

6. unde, *adv.*, (of place) from which place, from what (country etc.), whence (of substantives), from whom (what). \*

7. ā-mittō, -ere, misi, missum (ā+mittō), to send away, dismiss; to lose. \*

8. famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, want, famine. \*

tolerō, 1. [cf. tollō, lift up], *a.*, bear up under, bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support. 4

10. ratiō, -ōnis [reor, reckon], *f.*, reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, course, means; motive, principle, reason. \*

11. vacō, 1. *n.*, be empty, void or unoccupied; have leisure; lie waste. 4

12. bonitās, -tātis [bonus, good], *f.*, goodness, fertility (of lands). 1

2. sibi, before him (in his eyes): For case see A. 235; B. 68; G. 352; H. 384, 4, N. 3; B. 188.

3, 4. imperāvit: the indirect object is hīs; the direct object is utī . . . reducerent, to search them out and bring them back. Give other examples of *ut* clauses as object: 7, 13; 8, 13. in . . . habuit, he treated them as enemies, i. e. put them to death. They had broken a

military agreement.

5. in dēditionem accēpit: this act made them Roman subjects.

7. domī: for case see on 18, 14.

8, 9. ut iīs facerent, to provide them with.

12. bonitātem agrōrum: in western Switzerland, east of the Jura. "The cultivation there now is like that of a garden" (Moberl)

liae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus  
 15 Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in finibus suis  
 collocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt quōsque  
 postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiōnem, atque ipsi  
 erant, recēpērunt.

*Enumeration  
 of the Helve-  
 tians and  
 their allies.*

29. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae  
 sunt litteris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem re-  
 latae, quibus in tabulis nōminatim ratiō cōfecta erat, quī  
 numerus domō exisset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et  
 5 item sēparatim puerī, senēs, mulierēsq̄. Quārum omnium

17. p̄r, paris, equal, alike, equal  
 to, a match for: est, it is fit or  
 proper; p̄r atque, the same as.\*  
 condiciō, -ōnis, f., (condicō), con-  
 dition, quality, state; terms, stip-  
 ulation.

1. tabula, -ae, f., board, plank;  
 writing-tablet, writing; list. 2  
 2. Graecus, -a, -um, of or belong-  
 ing to the Greeks, Greek, Gre-

cian. 3

3. nōminatim, [nōminō, name],  
 by name, expressly, in detail. 4

5. puer, -erī, m., boy, child; son:  
 in pl., children (of both sexes);  
 ā puerō (pueris), from child-  
 hood. 5

senex, senis, adj., old: as subst., an  
 old man. 1

mulier, -eris, f., woman; wife. \*

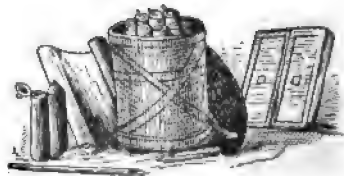
14-16. prōvinciae, Allobrogi-  
 bus: for the case cf. 9, 6. Bōiōs,  
 etc.: they were remotely related to  
 the Aeduans, and would be useful  
 in strengthening their protectors.  
 Bōiōs... concessit: English or-  
 der: concessit Aeduīs petentibus, ut  
 collocārent Bōiōs in suis finibus quod  
 cōgnitī erant ēgregiā virtūte (of  
 eminent valor). ut... collocā-  
 rent is the dir. obj. and Aeduīs  
 the indir. obj. of concessit. Bōiōs  
 is placed first for emphasis. vir-  
 tute: for case cf. 18, 7.

17, 18. parem... atque...  
 erant, such as they themselves enjoy-  
 ed. atque (āc) generally means as  
 or than after words of likeness and  
 comparison.

1. tabulae, muster-rolls.

2. litteris Graecis: Gallic words

written in Greek characters, the  
 Gauls having no alphabet of their  
 own. The Greek alphabet was  
 known to the Gauls through their  
 intercourse with Massilia, and was  
 used by the Druid priests. A large  
 number of Gallic inscriptions in  
 Greek characters have been dis-  
 covered in central France.



Tabulae.

3. quibus in tabulis, in which:  
 why omit tabulis in translation? cf.  
 16, 10; 6, 1.

rationum summa erat capitum Helveticorum milia CCLXIII, Tulingorum milia XXXVI, Latovicorum XIII, Rauricorum XXIII, Boiorum XXXII; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, censu habitō, ut Caesar im-<sup>10</sup>peraverat, repertus est numerus milium 0 et x.

30. Bellō Helveticorum confectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnerunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsi

*Deputations from the Gallic states congratulate Caesar and ask for a council.*

6. **summa**, -ae, [for **summa res**], *f.*, the main thing or point, sum total, whole amount, aggregate; general management, chief control. \*

**caput**, **capitis**, *n.*, the head (of men and animals); person, individual; a head or leader; a section or chapter; mouth (of a river): **capitis poena**, capital punishment. \*

9. **nōnagintā**, *indec. num adj.*, ninety. 1

10. **red-eō**, *ire, ivi (ii), itus* [re-+eō, go], *n.*, go or turn back, return; be brought or reduced; fall to, descend. \*

**census**, -ūs [censeō, estimate], *m.*, estimation, census. 1

3. **grātulor**, 1. [grātus, pleasing], *a, n.*, express joy. 1

**tametsi**, *conj.* [tamen+etsi, even if], although, though, notwithstanding; and yet. \*

6. **summa**, the aggregate. **rationum**, **capitum**: in careless contempt for the persons of the motley multitude.

9. **summa**, sum total. The total given by Caesar is considered too high by some commentators. One ancient authority gives 80,000, another 157,000. **fuerunt** agrees with the plural predicate. A. 204 b; G. 211 R. 1, Exc. 3; H. 462; B. 254 4.

11. **c et x**: adding the Boii to this number gives a total of 142,000 survivors, making the loss of the Helvetians and their allies 263,000. Caesar's conduct of this campaign—his first one in command of a large army—was characterized by great energy and ability. He exhibited a degree of caution which

was natural under the circumstances. The slow movement of the enemy and their lack of unity helped him greatly.

1. **confectō**: how long had the war continued? **Galliae**: Gallia Celtica probably is meant.

2. **principēs**: the most influential men, not necessarily the magistrates. **ad Caesarem**: he was with his army in an intrenched camp among the Lingones, probably in the place where he had received the submission of the Helvetii.

3. **grātulātum**: for form and use see on 11, 5. What active forms are common to deponent verbs?

3—11. Change to direct disc.

prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populi Rōmānī ab his  
 5 poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū  
 terrae Galliae quam populi Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod  
 eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvētīi reliquis-  
 sent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur  
 locumque domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex  
 10 omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructuōsissimum iūdicās-  
 sent, reliquāsque civitatēs stipendiāriās habērent. Petiērunt,

5. re-petō, -ere, petīvī (petiī),  
 petitus [pētō, seek], *a.*, seek or  
 ask again, exact, demand back;  
 inflict (poenās). 2

ūsus, -ūs [ūtōr, use], *m.*, use, ex-  
 perience, service, advantage;  
 ūsus est, it is necessary; ūsul  
 (ex ūsū) of advantage, of ser-  
 vice. \*

6. terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land, soil;  
*in pl.* earth, world: orbis terrā-  
 rum, the world, all nations. \*

7. flōrens, -entis [flōrēō, flower],  
 flowering, blooming; flourishing,

prosperous. 3

9. domicilium, -i, *n.*, a fixed abode  
 or residence, dwelling, home,  
 domicile. 4

10. opportūnus, -a, -um [ob+  
 portus, before the port], fit, con-  
 venient, opportune. \*

fructuōsus, -a, -um [fructus,  
 fruit], abounding in fruit, pro-  
 ductive. 1

11. stipendiārius, -a, -um [sti-  
 pendium, tribute], under, or  
 paying tribute, tributary: *in pl.*  
*as subst.*, tributaries. 3

4. Helvētiōrum iniūriis etc.,  
*the wrongs inflicted by the Helvetians  
 upon the Roman people.* (such as the  
 defeat of Cassius, 12, 15). For the  
 case of Helvētiōrum see A. 214; B.  
 53; G. 363, 1; H. 396, I; B. 199.  
 For the case of populi see *oncausae*  
 4, 4.

5. ex ūsū, *to the advantage:*  
 this was true in a far deeper sense  
 than the Gauls then understood it.  
 The victory of Caesar over the Hel-  
 vetii was fraught with vast conse-  
 quences to them.

7. flōrentissimis rēbus, *although  
 they were in a very prosperous con-  
 dition:* the Abl. Abs., equivalent to  
 a concessive clause. flōrentis-  
 simis: cf. Caesar's statements in  
 2, 12—15. It does not seem prob-  
 able that the Helvetii were led to

emigrate through motives of ambi-  
 tion alone.

8, 9. utī . . . dēligerent, *to wage  
 . . . and get control . . . and choose  
 etc.*, explaining the phrase eō cōn-  
 siliō and in apposition with it.  
 tōtī Galliae: for case cf. rei 23, 5.  
 imperiō: for case cf. 2, 6. domi-  
 ciliō: for case cf. impedimentō,  
 26, 6. ex māgnā cōpiā: all Gaul  
 lay before them.

11. stipendiāriās: the Gauls  
 already knew what submission to a  
 foreign invader meant. See Int.  
 66. petiērunt, etc., *they requested  
 permission to appoint.*

12. concilium: composed of  
 representatives from all the states  
 of central Gaul. Such councils  
 were a common device among the  
 Gauls and often used by Caesar for

ut sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere id-  
que Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: sēsē habēre quāsdam  
rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsensū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē  
permīssā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūreiūrandō, nē quis  
ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset,  
inter sē sanxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dimissō idem principēs civitā- *They implore  
him to aid  
them against  
the German  
king Ariovis-  
tus.*  
tum, quī ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt  
petiēruntque, utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque  
salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs  
flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id con-  
tendere et labōrāre, nē ea, quae dīxissent, ēnūntiārentur,

12. in-dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus  
[dīcō, say], a., say publicly, pro-  
claim, announce, appoint. \*

13. quīdam, quaedam, quoddam  
(subst. quiddam), indef. pron.,  
a certain, some; a certain one,  
somebody, something. \*

14. commūnis, -e [mūniō,  
serve], serving together; hence,  
common, general, universal, or-  
dinary. \*

cōnsensus, -ūs [cōnsentiō, think  
together, agree], m., united opin-

ion, agreement, coalition, con-  
sent. \*

15. per-mittō, -ere, misi, missus  
[mittō, send], a., send or let go  
through; let go; allow, permit,  
suffer; intrust, commit. \*

17. sancio, -ire, sānxi, sānctus  
[cf. sācer, sacred], a., ordain,  
ratify, sanction. 3

6. labōrō, 1. [labor, toil], n.,  
toil, work hard; be anxious, trou-  
bled, or perplexed; labor, suffer,  
be hard pressed. \*

his own purpose. tōtius Galliae:  
observe the repetition of this ex-  
pression, probably for the sake of  
definiteness.

13. voluntāte: the approval of  
Caesar was sought simply to avoid  
any misunderstanding on his part  
of the object of the conference.  
The Gauls were doubtless greatly  
impressed by his brilliant success,  
but did not as yet have any thought  
of political submission to him.  
licēret: for the clause cf. 7, 12. 13.

15—17. iūreiūrandō, nē quis  
... inter sē sanxērunt, they mutu-  
ally agreed under oath that no one

etc. quis: for trans. cf. 20, 2; 18, 22

1. eō conciliō dimissō: Caesar  
leaves it to be inferred from the  
fact that his permission was given  
(eā rē permīssā line 14 above) that  
the council was held. idem prin-  
cipēs: 30, 2.

3, 4. petiērunt, utī sibi . . .  
licēret: for the clause cf. 30, 11, 12.  
sēcrētō: this precaution indicates  
how great the dread of Ariovistus  
was. agere, to confer.

5. Caesarī ad pedēs, at Cae-  
sar's feet. Caesarī: for the Dat. of  
Reference instead of a Poss. Gen.

quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent, propterea quod, si  
 enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent.  
 Locutus est pro his Diviciacus Aeduus: Galliae totius  
 10 factiones esse duas: harum alterius principatum tenere Aedu-  
 os, alterius Arvernōs. Hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter  
 se multos annos contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernīs Sē-  
 quanisque Germāni mercēde arcesserentur. Horum primō  
 circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse: posteaquam agros et cul-  
 15 tum et copias Gallorum homines ferī ac barbari adamās-

8. cruciatus, -ūs [cruciō, crucify], m., crucifying, torture, torment. \*

10. factiō, -ōnis [faciō, make], f., making, doing; combination, party, faction. \*

11. Arverni, -ōrum, m., a people of Celtic Gaul, chief town Gergovia, now Auvergne. \*

tantopere [tantus, so great + opus, effort], with so great effort; so greatly, so fiercely. 1

potentatus, -ūs [potēns, powerful], m., chief power, supremacy. 1

13. mercēs, -ēdis [mereō, earn], f., earnings, pay, hire, wages. 1

arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itus [ar=ad + cēdō, go], a., cause to go to or approach; call for, summon.

primō, [abl. of primus, first], adv., at first, in the first place. \*

14. posteaquam (posteaquam), adv. [postea, afterwards], after that, after. \*

15. ferus, -a, -um, wild, fierce; fem. as subst., wild beast. \*

barbarus, -a, -um, foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, savage, barbarous; pl. as subst., foreigners, savages, barbarians. \*  
 ad-amō, 1. [amō, love], love exceedingly; covet. 1

see A. 235 a; G. 350, 1; H. 384 II 4 N. 2. nōn minus etc., they no less strove and were anxious that . . . should not be reported, than that etc. id., i. e. nō . . . enuntiarentur.

7. quam uti . . . impetrarent, than to obtain etc. For mood cf. 1. 4.

8. enuntiatum esset, if they were reported. For trans. of impers. cf. 26, 6; 23, 5. in . . . se venturos (esse), that they would meet with.

9. Diviciacus: see on 3, 15. Galliae totius: see on 30, 1. factiōnēs: see Int. on the political condition of Gaul at this time.

10. harum: sc. factiōnum. principatum: a preponderating influence exerted by one tribe over others, which amounted to a vir-

tual supremacy.

11. Arvernōs: they traced their origin back to Troy and therefore claimed kinship with the Romans. potentatū = principatū.

12. factum esse uti, it came to pass that. Sēquanis: they were at first clients of the Arverni, but seem to have succeeded them in the leadership of the faction opposed to the Aedui. Possibly they may have been the first to suggest the inviting in of the Germans, and this may have augmented their influence.

13. mercēde: the Germans were at first simply hired soldiers. primō: apparently in 72 B. C.

15. adamassent; uncontr. form?

sent, trāductōs plūrēs: nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum hīs Aeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmisisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque<sup>20</sup> frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitīō atque amicitīā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis et iūre iurandō civitātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs, quō<sup>25</sup> minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī civitāte Aeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn

16. *nunc, adv.*, now, at present, at this time. \*

17. *semel, adv.*, once, a single time; but once, once for all: *semel atque iterum*, repeatedly; *ut semel*, as soon as. 2

18. *iterum, adv.*, again, anew, a second time; for the second time; twice. 4

21. *frangō, -ere, frēgī, fractus, a., break, crush, subdue, discourage.* 2

*hospitium, -i* [*hospes, host or guest*], *n.*, the relation of host

and guest; friendship, hospitality. 5

25. *implōrō, 1.* [*plōrō, call out*], *a.*, beseech, entreat, implore. 4

*recūsō, 1.* [*re+causa, cause*], *a., n.*, make cause against or objection to; refuse, reject, repudiate, object to: *quōminus*, refuse to. \*

26. *perpetuō* [*perpetuus, continuous*], *adv.*, continuously, constantly; forever. 2

*diciō, -ōnis, f.*, dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3

17. *clientēs*: the smaller Gallic tribes naturally attached themselves to the larger for the sake of protection, giving in return tribute and military service. Some client states maintained a separate government and army; others did not.

19. *pulsōs accēpisse*, as they were beaten they suffered.

20. *omnem . . . āmisisse*: this was an exaggeration. The nobles and cavalry of the Aedui were very prominent in the campaigns of the Gallic war.

21. *hospitīō*: the Roman senate was strangely forgetful of its

engagements with the Aedui.

22. *plūrimum potuissent*: for the acc. see on 20, 6.

24, 26. *auxilium . . . implōrātūrōs*: a thing the Aedui would be likely to do on account of the *hospitium* with Rome. *neque recūsātūrōs (esse), quō minus essent, and would not refuse to be.* For the Subj. see A. 319 c; B. 108, d; G. 549; H. 499, 3 N. 2; P. 493 (2), a.

27, 28. *sē = Diviciacum.* *potuerit*: for mood see A. 320, b; B. 109; G. 631; H. 503 II, 1; B. 283, 2. cf. 5, 2, 3.



potuerit, ut iūraret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīuitātē prōfūgissee et Rōmam ad senātum vēnissee  
 30auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūreiūrandō neque obsidibus tenerētur. Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs accidisse, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset  
 35et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIV ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus āc sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent:

28. iūrō, 1. [iūs, right], n., affirm one's rights, make oath, swear. \*

29. prōfugiō, -ere, fugi, [fugiō, flee], n., flee from or before, run away, escape. \*

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome. 3

30. postulō, 1. [poscō, demand], a., claim, demand, call for, request. \*

31. male [malus, bad], badly, ill, adversely: 1 (comp. pēius (1); sup. pessimē). \*

victor, -ōris [vincō, conquer], m., conqueror, victor; as adj., victorious. \*

32. Ariovistus, -ī, m., king of the

German tribe, Suebi.

rēx, rēgis [rēgō, rule], m., ruler, monarch, king. \*

34. optimus, -a, -um [sup. of bonus], most excellent, best, very good. 4

35. dē-cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessus [cēdō, go], n., go from or away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake. 5

36. Harūdēs, -um, m., a German tribe from Jutland, which joined the army of Ariovistus. 3

37. sēdēs, -is [sedeō, sit], f., seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 5

30. auxilium postulātum: in which effort, however, he was unsuccessful. The senate, led by the consul, Cicero, was engaged in combating Catiline, and could not be induced to pay attention to the representatives of the Aeduan chief. Cicero, who was his host, speaks of him with admiration. postulātum: form? 30, 3.

31, 32. pēius accidisse, it had turned out worse. Germānōrum: probably the Suebi, the largest and strongest tribe in Germany.

33. cōnsēdisset: he had cross-

ed the upper Rhine from modern Baden, his former home. tertiam partem: "a common mullet in ancient times." (Moberly).

36. paucīs mēnsibus ante, a few months before. For case cf. 18, 26.

38. futūrum esse, the result would be, cf. factum esse, l. 12. omnēs: not the Sequani only, but all the tribes of central Gaul.

39. omnēs . . . trānsīrent: as the Cimbri and Teutones had done fifty years before,

neque enim cōferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum<sup>40</sup> agrō, neque hanc cōsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbē et crudēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque liberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua<sup>45</sup> rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinēre. Nisi sī quid in Caesare populōque Rōmāno sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētiī fēcērint, ut domō ēmigrēt, aliud domicilium,<sup>50</sup>

41. cōsuētūdō, -inis [cōsu-  
-ēscō], *r.*, habit, custom, practice.\*  
victus, -ūs [vivō, live], *m.*, living,  
life; provisions, food. 4  
comparō, 1. [com-par, equal to],  
*a.*, set in pairs, place in compar-  
ison, compare. 2  
43. Admagetobriga, -ae, *r.*, a  
Gallic town (location unknown). \*  
superbē [superbus, proud], *adv.*,  
proudly, haughtily. 1  
44. crudēliter [crudēlis, cruel],

- adv.*, cruelly. 2  
45. ē-dō, dere, didi, ditus [dō,  
give], *a.*, give, inflict. 1  
46. nūtus, -ūs [nuō, nod], *m.*,  
nod, sign, command. 3  
47. irācundus, -a, -um [ira,  
wrath], irritable, passionate. 1  
temerārius, -a, -um [temerō, by  
chance, rashly], rash, imprudent,  
reckless. 2  
50. ē-migrō, 1. [migrō, depart],  
*n.*, depart, remove, migrate. 1

40. Gallicum: *sc. agrum.*

41. hanc = Gallicam victūs:  
what is the quantity of the vowel u  
in the perf. part. of vincō?

42. ut semel: see vocab. I. 17.

43. proelium factum sit: in  
61 B. C., three years before this.  
Admagetobrigae: the location of  
this town is unknown. It was  
probably near the upper Arar. The  
word is said to mean "great moun-  
tain." For case see A. 258 c 1, 2;  
B. 100; G. 411; H. 425, II; B. 232, I.

44. cūiusque: the forms of  
quisque, each, with superlatives

and ordinals have the force of *all*  
or *every*.

45. omnia exempla cruciātūs-  
que, *every form of cruelty*, *lit.*, *all*  
*forms and cruelties* (Hendiadys);  
see A. 385, 1; G. 698; H. 636, III, 2;  
B. 374 4.

48, 49. nisi sī, *unless perhaps*.  
*Nisi* is here an adverb. quid au-  
xilii, *some help*. quid: what kind  
of a pronoun? cf. 30, 15; 20, 2.  
auxilii: for the case see A. 216, 3;  
B. 56; G. 369, 371; H. 397, 3; B.  
201, 2. Gallis: for case see on  
*sibi* 11, 15.

50. ut domō ēmigrēt etc.,  
*viz. leave home etc.*, explaining *idem*.

aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fōrtūnamque, quae-  
cumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō  
sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum  
sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōri-  
55tate suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī  
Rōmānī dēterrere posse, nē māior multitudō Germānōrum  
Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā  
posse dēfendere.

*The bearing  
and condition  
of the Sequani.*

32. Hāc orātiōne ab Diviciacō habitā omnēs,  
quī aderant, māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare pete-  
re coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sē-  
quanōs nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēteri facerent, sed  
5 tristēs, capite dēmīssō, terram intuērī. Eius rei quae causā  
esset, mirātus ex ipsis quaeiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondere,  
sed in eādē tristitiā tacitī permanere. Cum ab hīs saepius

51. remōtus, -a, -um, *partic. adj.*,  
[removeō], distant, remote. 4  
quicumque, quaecumque, quod-  
cumque, *indef. rel.*, whoever,  
whichever, whatever; whatsoever;  
every possible, all, all who, every  
one who, no matter who. \*  
52. experior, -periri, -pertus  
sum, prove, try, test, experience.\*

2. flētus, -ūs [fleō], *m.*, a weep-  
ing, lamentation. 2

4. cēterus, -a, -um (*in pl. only in  
Caesar*), the rest of, the remain-  
der; *as subst.*, the rest, remaining,

others. \*

5. tristis, -e, sad, sorrowful. 1  
dē-mittō, -ere, misi, missus [mit-  
tō, send], *a.*, send away or down,  
cast or thrust down: sē, descend;  
sē animō, lose courage; *in p. p.*  
*as adj.*, low; dejected, downcast.\*  
in-tueor, 2. *a.*, look upon. 1

6. miror, 1. *a.*, *n.*, wonder or mar-  
vel at, admire, be astonished. 3  
7. tristitia, -ae [tristis, sad], *f.*,  
sadness, dejection, sorrow. 1  
per-maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsus  
[maneō, remain], *n.*, stay through  
or to the end; hold out, endure. \*

53, 54. quīn . . . sūmat, *that  
he would inflict*. Cf. 17, 8-10.

1. habitā, *delivered*.

2. māgnō flētū: Caesar often  
mentions the demonstrative man-  
ners of the Gauls. flētū: for cause  
cf. 25, 11. auxilium petere: the  
Gauls failed to see that they were

simply changing masters in ap-  
pealing to Caesar against Ariovis-  
tus.

4. eārum rērum: supplications  
and tears.

6, 7. esset: for mood cf. 21, 9;  
20, 21. respondere, permanere:  
form and equivalent? See on 16,  
2. in eādē tristitiā: their de-

quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Diviciacus Aeduus respondit: Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fōrtūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē<sup>10</sup> in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlītatem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā, quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eiūs essent, omnēs cruciā-<sup>15</sup> tūs essent perferendī.

33. His rēbus cōgnītīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōfirmāvit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem cūrae futūram: māgnam sē habēre spem, et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem

*Caesar promises to undertake their defence. His reasons.*

8. vōx, vōcis [vocō, call], *v.*, voice, cry, call, sound; word; *pl.*, words, language, speech. \*
- exprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressus [premō, press], *a.*, press out, extort, elicit; raise. 2
9. miser, misera, miserum, wretched, miserable, unfortunate. 3
11. occultus, -a, -um [occulō, cover up], covered, concealed, secret; in occultō (locō), in a secluded or secret place. \*
12. absēns, -entis [*pr. p.* of absum], absent, at a distance. 5

- crūdēlītās, -iātis [crūdēlis, cruel], *f.*, cruelty, harshness. 2
- velut, *adv.*, [vel + ut, as], as, as if. 1
- cōram, *adv.* [cum + ōs, face], face to face, in person. 3
13. horreo, -ēre, -ui, *a.*, shudder at, dread. 1
14. vērō, *adv.* [vērus, true], in truth, truly, in fact, assuredly; but, however; but in fact, indeed. \*
- intrā, *prep.* with *acc.* [for interā, *sc. parte*], within, into. \*
3. cūra, -ae [cf. caveō, take care], *f.*, care, anxiety, attention. 3

meanor was intended as an appeal to the pity of Caesar.

9. hōc, *the*; for case cf. eō 14, 3.

10. reliquōrum: *sc. fōrtūnam*.

12. absentis, *even when absent*. cf. the use of the *pres. part.* for a clause in 25, 20.

14. Sēquanīs: for case cf. Gal-lis 31, 49.

2, 3. sibi ... futūram, *that this business would receive his atten-*

*tion*; *lit.*, would be a care to him. For cases of *sibi* and *cūrae* cf. Gal-lis, impedimentō 25, 6. māgnam sē etc., *he confidently expected that Ariovistus would end (make an end of) his outrages*.

4. beneficiō suō: the titles "*rēx*" and "*amicus*" had been conferred upon Ariovistus by the Senate, in Caesar's consulship, possibly at his suggestion. auctōritāte: no doubt the Gauls were greatly impressed by Caesar's confident bearing.

- 5 iniūriis factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur, quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, imprimis, quod Aeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumērō ā senatū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum  
 10 tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et rei pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitudinem venīre populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent,

6. secundum, *prep. with acc.* [sequor, follow], by, along; after, next to; in accordance with, according to. 4

7. cōgitō, 1. [cum + agitō, put in quick motion; consider], *a.*, *n.*, consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. \*

im (in-) -primis, *adv.* [abl. pl. of primus], among the first; in the first place, particularly. \*

8. saepenumērō, *adv.* [saepe,

often + numerus], oftentimes, repeatedly, frequently. 5

11. turpis, -e, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful. \*

12. rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae [rēs, matter + pūblicas], public affairs; state, commonwealth. \*

paulātim [paulum, a little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. \*

14. periculōsus, -a, -um [periculum, danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. 2

5. iniūriis: for case see A. 225; B. 60; G. 345; H. 384, II; B. 187, 1. concilium: i. e. the private conference; see 30, 12.

6, 7. ea: the arguments of Diviciacus. quārē... putāret, to think that he must consider this business carefully and set about it. sibi: for case cf. Sequanis 32, 14.

8, 9. frātrēs... appellātōs: see on 11, 6. Germānōrum: the word is derived by some authorities from *ger* = lance, spear; hence it means lancers, spearmen: see Int. 189.

11, 12. turpissimum... ar-

bitrābātur: Caesar saw this now more clearly than he did at Rome. His point of view was different. sibi: for case cf. 28, 14; 9, 6. paulātim etc., to gradually get in the habit of crossing and come was dangerous: obj. of vidēbat.

14. periculōsum: because it would advance the German frontier from the Rhine to the northern boundary of the Roman Province.

15-18. sibi temperātūrōs (esse) etc., would restrain themselves... from passing... and again hastening from thence. sibi: for case cf. 25, 20; 18, 19; 9, 8. exirent,

ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fēcissent, in prōvinciam exirent atque inde in Ītaliā contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus<sup>20</sup> tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

34. Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum medium utrīusque colloquīō delige-

*Ariovistus haughtily rejects Caesar's proposal to confer with him.*

17. Cimbri, -ōrum, m., a Celtic people from the Cimbric Chersonese (Jutland). Having invaded Italy they were defeated by C. Marius near Verona, 101 B. C. 5

Teutoni, -ōrum (or -um), m., a Celtic people from Jutland, who with the Cimbri overran Gaul, 113 B. C., and also suffered defeat from Marius. 5

20. mātūrē [old abl. of mātūrus], adv., early, speedily. 5

occurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursus [ob + currō, run], n., run in the way of, run to meet, meet; happen upon, encounter; suggest itself, occur, oppose. \*

21. spīritus, -ūs [spīrō, breathe],

m., breath, spirit; pride, presumption, haughty mien or bearing. 2 ar (ad)-rogantia, -ae [arrogāns, arrogant], f., arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. 3

1. quam-ob-rem, adv. interrog. and rel., wherefore, why. \*

placeō, 2. [cf. placō, appease], n., please, satisfy; often impers., seem good, be decided, resolved or determined. \*

3. uterque, utraque, utrumque [uter, which (of two) + -que], each (of two), both. \* colloquium, -i [colloquor, talk together], n., talking together, conversation; conference, parley; communication, interview. \*

contenderent: what constructions follow quin? ut (conj.)? ut (adv.)? Cimbri Teutonique: these tribes came from Jutland and the coasts of the Baltic. On their invasion and defeat, see Int. 63.

19. Rhodanus divideret, only the Rhone divides. Caesar's statement of the reasons for espousing the cause of the Gauls is candid and convincing. No doubt the enterprise fell in with his bold and ambitious spirit; but it appealed also to the statesman and the lover of his country. Gaul must cer-

tainly yield to the barbarism of the German or the civilization of the Roman. No half-way ground was possible. quibus rēbus etc., that he must face these difficulties. For trans. see on 22, 9. rēbus: for case cf. sibi l. 15. quam: how trans. with the superl.? See on 3, 3.

1. ad Ariovistum: who was with his army on the Rhine, near modern Strasburg.

2. quī... postulārent, to demand of him. For quī and mode cf. 21, 4; 15, 5; 7, 10.

ret: velle sēsē dē rē publicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum  
 5 eō agere. Eī lēgatiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā  
 Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille  
 sē vēlit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque  
 sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Cae-  
 sar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque  
 10 mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mī-  
 rum vidēri, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vicisset, aut Cae-  
 sarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtīi esset.

6. opus, indecl. [cf. opus, work, deed], need, necessity; used in the predicate with the Nom. of the thing needed: opus est, it is necessary. \*

7. praetereā, adv. [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. \*

9. possidē, -ēre, sēdī, -sessus [potis, able + sedēō, sit], a., sit as master; hold possession of, occupy, hold, possess. 3

commeātus, -ūs [commeō, go and return, make a trip], m., communica- tion, trip; supplies, provis-

ions, (military) stores. \*

10. mōlimentum, -ī [mōlior, endeavor], n., exertion, difficulty. 1  
 con-trahō, -ēre, trāxī, tractus [trahō, draw], a., draw or bring together, assemble; draw into smaller compass, contract. 5

mīrus, -a, -um [mīror, wonder at], strange, astonishing. 2

12. negōtium -ī [nec + ōtium, leisure], n., want of leisure; business, occupation, affair, concern: negōtium dare, employ, assign a matter: quid negōtīi, what business. \*

4. velle etc.: Caesar was anxious to secure his end without a war and probably thought that the diplomatic relations which had been maintained with Ariovistus could be kept up; see 33, 3, 4, beneficiō, etc. His army had just ended one campaign and was not yet thoroughly to be relied upon, as was shown later on. summīs . . . rēbus, matters of greatest importance to both.

5. quid: what kind of a pronoun? cf. 31, 48. ipsī, for case cf. 11, 13.

6, 7. sī . . . velit: velit governs

two accusatives like verbs of asking or demanding (see on 16, 1), if he wished anything of him.

8, 9. quās . . . possidēret: i. e., the land of the Aedui, which Ariovistus assumes that Caesar has conquered.

11, 12. quid . . . esset (subject of vidēri), what business either Caesar or the Roman people in general (omnīnō) had in his (part of) Gaul etc. Caesari, populō: for case cf. ipsi l. 5. negōtīi: for case cf. 31, 49. Notice that the partitive genitive is usually separated by several words from the word that govern it. esset, for mode cf. 32, 6; 21, 3.

35. His respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātis iterum *Caesar sends him an ultimatum.*  
 ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātis mittit:  
 Quoniam tantō suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus,  
 cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus  
 esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in colloquium venīre invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē  
 dicendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae ab  
 eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinē hominū am-  
 plius trāns Rhēnum in Galliā trādūceret: deinde obsidēs,  
 quōs habēret ab Aeduīs, redderet Sēquanisque permitteret,  
 ut, quōs illi habērent, voluntāte eius reddere illis liceret;  
 nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacēsseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bel-  
 lum inferret. Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō per-  
 petuam grātiā atque amicitiam cum eō futūrā: sī nōn,

3. quoniam, adv. [quom = cum + iam, now], when now; since. \*  
 4. cōsulātus, -ūs [cōsul, consul], m., consulship. 1  
 6. invitō, 1. a., invite, summon. 4  
 gravor, 1. [gravis, heavy], dep., be unwilling, object. 1  
 10. reddō, -dere, reddidī, reddi-

tus [re + dō, give], a., give back, return, restore; make or cause to be, render. \*

13. per-petuus, -a, -um [perpetuō, cause to continue], continuous, uninterrupted, perpetual, permanent; entire; in perpetuum, forever. \*

1. iterum: see 34, 1, 2.  
 2. mandātis: the defiant reply of the king no doubt seemed to Caesar the height of impertinence.  
 3. beneficiō affectus: the German was shrewd enough to estimate the *beneficium* at its true value.  
 4. cōsulātū: see on 33, 3—5.  
 5. hanc grātiā referret, ut etc., since he was making (direct, you make) such a requital as to be reluctant . . . and not think it necessary to discuss and learn etc.  
 7, 8. haec postulāret, the following were the demands he made of him.

9. trādūceret: what mode in dir. disc.? See on 13, 15.

10, 11. Sēquanisque . . . licēret, and grant permission to the *Sequani* to return with his (*Ariovistus*) approval those (*hostages*) which they (*Sequani*) had (ab *Aeduīs*). redderet, permitteret: for mood in direct form see on 7, 20.

12. hīs, sociīs: for case cf. 12, 18.

13. sibi etc., he (*Caesar*) and the *Roman people* would have etc. sibi, populō, for case cf. 34, 11.

- 14—19. sī nōn impetrāret . . . sē . . . nōn neglētūrum (*esse*), :



16 **impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus senātus cēnsuisset, utī, quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblīcae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum.**

*Ariovistus responds defiantly.*

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī, ut, quī vicissent, iīs, quōs vicissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperārent: item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet, quemadmodum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportere sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. Aeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī

16. **cēnsēō, -ēre, -uī, -sus, a.,** estimate, reckon; be of opinion, think, decide. \*

17. **commodum, -ī [commodus, convenient], n.,** convenience, interest, advantage. \*

19. **neglegō, -ere, lēxī, lēctus [nec + legō, pick out, choose], a.,** not heed, disregard, neglect. \*

2. **quem-ad-modum, adv.,** in

what way or manner, just as, as, how. 3

4. **praescriptum, -ī [praescribō, direct], n.,** direction, dictates. 1 **arbitrium, -ī [arbiter, judge], n.,** decision or judgement (of the arbiter); opinion, discretion, pleasure. 3

5. **prae-scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus [scribō, write], a.,** write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe. 4

he (Caesar) did (direct, I do) not obtain (such assurances), he would (direct I will) not disregard etc. **M. Messālā ... cōsulibus:** in 61 B. C.

17. **quod ... posset,** (a common formula in the decrees of the Senate) so far as he could do it in accordance with the interests of the state. **quod: (=quantum),** for case cf. *minimum* 20, 6. **commodō:** for case cf. 32, 2; 25, 11; what takes the place here of the limiting adjective?

18. **dēfenderet:** the purpose of this decree was to induce the tribes of central Gaul to oppose the emigration of the Helvetii. It was

passed in the interest of Rome, not Gaul, and Ariovistus knew this.

1—5. Note the forms of the verbs in dir. disc.: **est—vicerint vicerint—velint (volunt)—imperant—cōnsuēvit.** Change to dir. disc. throughout the chapter. **iīs imperārent, shall rule those. iīs:** for case cf. 33, 15; 2, 4.

6. **quemadmodum ... ūterētur, how they (populus Rōmānus) should exercise their rights. nōn opōrtēre etc., he (Ariovistus) ought not to be opposed.**

7—9. **sibi stipendiāriōs esse factōs, had become tributary to him.**

förtünam temptässent et armīs congressī āc superātī essent, stipendiārīōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vēctigālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Aeduīs<sup>10</sup> sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque iīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent, quod convēnisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctū<sup>15</sup> rum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congredērētur: intellēctūrum, quid invictī Germānī,

8. **congregior, -gredi, -gressus** sum [gradior, step], *a., n.*, step or come together, meet, encounter; engage in conflict, contend. \*

10. **deterior, -ius, comp. adj.**, less, worse. 1

12. **maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānus, n.**, remain, continue, abide, stay. \*

13. **stipendium, -ī** [stips, gift + pendō, weigh], *n.*, impost, tax, tribute (paid in money, while the vēctigal was paid in kind); pay, stipend; term of military service. \*

**quot-annis** [quot, how many. every + annus, year], *adv.*, every year, yearly. 4

**pendō, -ere, pependi, pēnsus, a.**, weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out (as money was weighed in payment); suffer (punishment). \*

15. **dē-nūntiō, 1.** [nūntiō, announce], *a.*, announce (officially, by a herald, etc.), declare; give or send notice, warn, threaten. 3

17. **in-victus, -a, -um** [vincō, conquer], unconquered, invincible. 1

**stipendiārīōs**: they paid tribute in money, not in produce.

10. **quī vēctigālia . . . faceret**, since he (you make) made his (my) revenues less valuable. Caesar may have instructed the Aedui and Sequani not to pay tribute any longer. In any case his mere presence gave the Aedui hope and made them less careful to fulfill their engagements as to tribute.

11, 12. **iīs sociīs illātūrum** (esse), would make upon etc., **sociīs**: for case cf. 35, 12. **iniūriā**, without just cause. **sī . . . convēnisset**, if they adhered to the terms that had been agreed upon.

13. **stipendium**: among the Gauls a war-tax imposed upon the

conquered.

14. **longē āfutūrum** (esse), would be of no value to them. **frāternum nōmen**: a gibe at the pleasant relations between the Aedui and the Romans. **quod . . . dēnūntiāret**, whereas Caesar threatened him. **quod**: for the clause cf. 18, 26; 17, 12; 14, 11.

16. **cum** etc., let him encounter him when he would (direct, when you're ready, come on).

17—19. **quid virtūte possent**, how effective in valor. For trans. see on 3, 20. **inter annōs xiv**: i. e. ever since they crossed the Rhine in 72 B. C. This is an exaggeration, but a very natural one. The two messages of Ariovistus, though

exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.

*Caesar, urged  
by his Gallic  
allies, marches  
against  
Ariovistus.*

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēveris veniēbant: Aeduī questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Arovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmen-

18. exercitātus, -a, -um [*p. p. of exercitō, train or practise well*], well trained, skilled, versed. 2 tēctum, -ī [tegō, cover], n., covering, roof; house. 2

4. trāns-portō, 1. [portō, carry], a., carry across or over, convey, transport. \*

6. Trēverī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe on the Moselle about modern Treves. \*

Suēbī, -ōrum, m., a powerful people

*of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. \**

8. Nasua, -ae, m., 1 and Cimberius, -ī, m., chiefs of the Treveri. 1

9. vehementer [vehemēns, violent], adv., violently, impetuously, zealously; strongly, powerfully. \*

11. con-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tus [iungō, join], a., join with or together, connect, unite. \*

they doubtless owe very much to the literary skill of his rival, breathe a bold and frank spirit of defiance which is all his own. The candor of Caesar is evident in his presenting with so much point the other side of the case.

1. tempore: about the beginning of August.

3. questum (sc. veniēbant), were coming to complain. For form cf. 31, 30; 30, 3. Harūdēs: see vocab. 31, 36.

4, 5. populārentur: for mood see on sublevētur 16, 17. obsidi-

bus datīs, by giving hostages.

6. Trēverī... pāgōs, and further the Treveri (kept coming to complain) that (the people of) a hundred cantons. Suēbōrum:

This seems to have been an emigration like that of the Helvetii, not merely a movement in support of Ariovistus.

7. trānsire: somewhere north of where Ariovistus was; probably near modern Mayence.

9. mātūrandum sibi: that he must make haste. sibi: for case cf. 33, 6.

11. minus etc., resistance could

tāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.



COUNTRY AROUND VESONTIO.

38. Cum tridui viam prōcessisset, nūntiatum *He occupies Vesontio.*  
est eī, Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum  
Vesontionem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum,

1. prō-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus  
[cēdō, go], n., go forth or forward, proceed, advance. \*

3. Vesontio, -ōnis, m., the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern Besancon. 2

be made less easily. rō frūmentāriā: see Int. 116, 117.

12. māgnīs itineribus: see Int. 143.

13. contendit: Caesar intended to strike Ariovistus before he could effect a junction with the Suebi. He started from the country of the Lingones, where he had received the surrender of the Helvetii and where his army had been encamped near Tonnere pending the result of

the negotiations with Ariovistus.

1. tridui viam: this would bring him to the vicinity of modern Langres. tridui: for case see on 5, 8; what takes the place of the necessary adjective? viam: for case see on 2, 17.

2. Ariovistum: while Caesar had been marching northeast, toward the Rhine, Ariovistus had been slowly advancing south. Cf

contendere, trīduīque viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse. Id nē  
 5 accideret, māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat.  
 Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant, summa  
 erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā loci sic mūniēbatur  
 ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea  
 quod flūmen Dūbis ut circinō circumductum paene tōtum  
 10 oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius  
 pedum mille sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns  
 continet māgnā altitūdine, ita, ut rādicēs mōntis ex utrāque  
 parte ripae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus  
 arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnis

5. prae-caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus  
 [caveō, take care], *n.*, take pre-  
 cautions. 1

6. namque [nam, for + -que],  
*conj.*, for indeed, for; more *em-*  
*phatic than nam.* 5

7. sic, *adv.* [sī + demonstr. parti-  
 cle -ce], so, thus, in this manner.\*

9. Dūbis, -is, *m.*, the Doubs, a  
 tributary of the Saone. 1

circinus, -ī, [cf. circum, around],  
*m.*, a pair of compasses. 1

circum-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus  
 [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead or draw  
 around. 2

10. cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctus,  
*a.*, encircle, surround, invest, en-  
 compass. \*

12. rādix, -icis, *f.*, root; *in pl.*

with mōntis or collis, foot, base. 5

13. contingō, -ere, tigī, tāctus  
 [tangō, touch], *a.*, and *n.*, touch,  
 reach; extend to, attain to; con-  
 cern; befall, happen to. \*

circum-dō, dare, dedī, datus [dō,  
 give], *a.*, give or put around, en-  
 compass, surround. \*

14. arx, arcis [arceō, shut up,  
 ward off], *f.*, citadel, fortress,  
 stronghold. 2

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ex +  
 faciō], *a.*, make or do complete-  
 ly, complete, perform, accom-  
 plish, effect. \*

hūc, *adv.* [old form for hōc, *fr.*  
 hic,], to this place or point,  
 hither, here. \*

sar now turned toward the south-  
 east from Langres and moved with  
 allspeed toward Vesontio. See map.

2. occupandum: gerund or  
 gerundive? See on 1, 9.

3. quod: the relative generally  
 agrees with an appositive or pred-  
 icate noun (here *oppidum*) in its own  
 clause rather than with an anteced-  
 ent (here *Vesontionem*) of different  
 gender and number.

4. id: the capture of Vesontio.

7. sibi: for case cf. 37, 9.

ūsuī: for case cf. 33, 3; 25, 6.  
*summa facultās*, a very full sup-  
 ply. *nātūrā loci* etc. note the  
 lucid description.

8. ut...*facultātem*, so that it fur-  
 nished admirable opportunities etc.  
*dūcendum*: Gerund or Gerundive?  
 Cf. 1. 2. ad...*bellum*: Ariovis-  
 tus made a great mistake in not  
 holding Vesontio as he did other  
 Sequanian towns.

9. ut: what part of speech?  
 Cf. 22, 3; 16, 3.

nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupatōque 15  
oppidō, ibi praesidium collocat.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontionem rei *Panto in the Roman army from fear of the Germans.*  
frumentariae commeātusque causā moratur, ex  
percontatiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac  
mercātōrum, quī ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs,  
incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitatiōne in armis esse praedicā- 5  
bant (saepenumērō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem  
atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō

15. nocturnus, -a, -um [nox, night], at night, nocturnal. \*  
diurnus, -a, -um [diēs, day], of the day, by day, daily. 4

3. percontatiō, -ōnis [percontor, inquire], r., inquiring, asking; question, inquiry. 2

4. ingēns, -entis [in, neg. + gēns, race, kind; lit. not of the kind, i. e., out of proportion], enormous, huge, vast, great. \*  
māgnitūdō, -inis, [māgnus, great], r., greatness, great size, extent,

stature (corporum). \*

5. exercitatiō, -ōnis [exercitō, freq. of exerceō, exercise], r., exercising, training; practice, experience. \*

prae-dicō, 1. [dicō, proclaim], a., proclaim publicly or before others; publish, state, declare. 5

6. vultus, -ūs [volō, wish], m., wish shown by the expression of the countenance; looks. 2

7. subitō, adv., [subitus, sudden, fr. subeō, come up secretly], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden.\*

11. pedum: cf. tridui line 1.

12. altitudine: for case cf. 6, 12.

14, 15. māgnis . . . contendit: as it turned out, Caesar's hasto was unnecessary. Ariovistus was considerably farther away than he had supposed. Hearing that Caesar had reached Vesontio, he now paused in his advance, thinking it best to remain where reinforcements could be more easily obtained from across the Rhine and where the open country was adapted to the movements of his large force of cavalry.

1, 2. ad Vesontionem, in the vicinity of Vesontio rei frumentariae commeātusque: observe how frequently Caesar refers to the

procuring of supplies. His care for the physical well being of his men was constant and had much to do with his success. He kept them in the very best condition. In the hand-to-hand conflicts of ancient warfare this was an essential element in the success of the undersized Italians.

3. vōcibus, replies.

4, 5. mercātōrum: the hucksters who sold supplies in the camp. māgnitūdine, virtūte, exercitatiōne: for case cf. 38, 12; 28, 15; 18, 7.

6. sēsē=Gallōs only, not the traders, because congressōs refer hostile encounters.

7. aciem oculōrum, fla the eyes.

timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium  
mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc primum ortus est ā  
1 otribūnis militum, praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbeamīcitiāe  
causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnam in rē militārī ūsum habē-  
bant: quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficiscen-  
dum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat, ut ēius voluntātē  
discēdere licēret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspi-  
1 5ciōnem vitārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque  
interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculis aut

8. *mediocriter*, *adv.* [*mediocris*, moderate], in small degree.

9. *mēns, -entis, r.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought, purpose, determination. \*  
per-turbō, 1. [*turbō*, disturb], *a.*, disturb greatly, throw in confusion, confound, embarrass, disturb. \*

10. *tribūnus, -ī* [*tribus*, tribe], *m.*, tribune, a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; *tribūnus militum (militāris)*, a military tribune. \*

*praefectus, -ī* [*praeficiō*, set over], *m.*, overseer, commander, officer, general (*equitum*); governor of

a province. \*

14. *pudor, -ōris* [*pudet*, it shames], *m.*, shame, modesty, sense of shame or honor. 2

15. *re-maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus* [*maneō*, remain], *n.*, stay or remain behind, remain. \*  
*figūrā, -ae, fīnxi, fictus* [*cf. figūra*, form], *a.*, form, shape, devise, invest. 3



*Tabernāculum*

16. *tabernāculum, -ī* [*taberna*, hut], *n.*, hut, tent. 3

8, 9. *ut . . . perturbāret*, so that it made all unusually anxious and dispirited.

10. *tribūnis militum*: see Int. 89. *praefectis*: see Int. 101. *urbe, the city, i. e. Rome. amicitiae . . . secūtī*: Caesar puts the matter delicately. The probability is that these men had attached themselves to him for personal gain, as was the Roman fashion. In giving them commissions, he was simply paying his political debts.

11. *nōn . . . habēbant*: they were "holiday soldiers". *nōn . . . num ūsum*, little experience.

For the figure see on 1, 8.

12. *quōrum . . . illātā*, and one of these alleging one reason, another. another (reason). For the elliptical use of *alius* see, A. 203 c; G. 319; H. 459, 1; B. 253 2.

13, 14. *ut . . . licēret*, his permission to leave; for the clause cf. 31, 3, 4; 30, 12, 13.

15. *vultum fingere*: that they might thus conceal their fear.

16. *lacrimās*: quite in keeping with the excitable temperament of the Italian. *tabernāculis*: see Int. 137.

suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne periculum miserābantur. Volgō tōtis castris testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulatim etiam ii, quī māgnū in castris ūsum habēbant, milites centuriōnēsq<sup>20</sup> quīque equitatūi praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et māgnitudinem silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōnnulli eti<sup>21</sup> am Caesarī nūntiārant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs milites neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōn- *Caesar encourages his troops.*  
siliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs

17. fātum, -ī [for, speak], n., what is spoken *once for all*; fate. 1

18. miseror, 1. [miser, wretched], a., bewail, lament over, deplore. 2

volgō (vul-), adv., [volgus, the common people], commonly, generally, everywhere, publicly, openly. \*

testāmentum, -ī [testor, make a will], n., will, testament. 1

19. ob-signō, 1. [signō, mark; seal], a., seal, seal up; sign, execute. 1

20. centuriō, -ōnis [centum, a hundred], m., centurion; the com-

mander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. \*

22. timidus, -a, -um [timeō, fear], fearful, affrighted, cowardly, afraid. 5

25. sup (sub-) -portō, 1. [portō, carry], a., carry or bring up from beneath; bring or convey to; furnish. 5

27. dictum, -ī, n., a word, command, saying. 5

audiō, 4. a., hear, hear of: *in pr. p.* as *adj.*, obedient. \*

2. ōrdō, -inis, m., row, order, arrangement, series, rank. \*

18. testāmenta: legal instruments, sealed and deposited with the quaestor.

20, 21. quī... habēbant... perturbābantur: even the experienced soldiers and officers were affected by vague fears. centuriōnēs: on their soldierly qualities, see Int. 93. quī... praeerant: the praefecti. See Int. 101.

23. angustias itineris: the val-

ley of the Doubs is narrow and very rough.

24. ut, that not (after verbs of fearing): contrast nē, 19, 11.

26. signa ferri: see Int. 124.

27, 28. nōn... audientēs, would not be obedient to his orders. neque signa lātūrōs (esse), *ar* would not advance. Cf. 25, 18,

2. omnium ōrdinum: to the



centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: primum quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum  
 5 aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populi Rōmānī amicitiam appetisse: cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iudicāret? Sibi quidem persuādēri, cōgnitis suis postulātis atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā eum neque suam neque populi Rōmānī  
 10 grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentīā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē

3. incūsō, 1. [causa, cause or case], *a.*, bring a case or charge against, complain of, upbraid, blame. 2

6. appetō (ad-), -ere, -ivī (-iī), petitus [petō, seek], *a.*, seek for, aim at, encroach upon, approach. \*

cūr (quōr = quārē), *rel. and interrog. adv.*, why, for what reason. 4  
 temerē, *adv.* [cf. temeritās, chance], by chance, rashly, blindly, causelessly. 4

7. officium, -i [opus, work + faciō], *n.*, service, function, allegiance, duty; official duty, business. \*

8. aequitās, -tātis [aequus,

equal], *r.*, equality, uniformity; impartiality, fairness, justice, equity. 2

9. perspicio, -ere, spēxi, spectus [obsol. specio, look], *a.*, look or see through, discern, perceive; view, examine, inspect. \*

10. repudiō, 1. [repudium (fr. re- + pudet), divorce, rejection], divorce, reject. 1

furor, -ōris [furō, rage], *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. 3

āmentia, -ae [mēns, mind], *r.*, bewilderment of mind, folly, insanity. 2

impellō (in-), -ere, puli, pulsus [pellō, drive], *a.*, drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. \*

dinary council of war, only the ten chief centurions (*primi ordinēs*) of each legion were summoned. This however, was a special gathering of all the officers of the army to listen to Caesar's admonitions; so all of the centurions were present. See Int. 97.

3. incūsāvit: Caesar's rebuke is put in the form of indirect discourse. Review the principles in your grammar (7, 10, footnote) and give the direct form in both Latin and English.

4, 5. dūcerentur: for mood cf. 34, 12; 32, 6. quaerendum (esse) cōgitandum (esse), that they ought to inquire or consider. The gram-

matical subject is the clause *... dūcerentur*, cf. 22, 8. putārent: for mood cf. 37, 4; 23, 9. sē cōnsule: when was Caesar consul?

6. hunc etc., that this man (Ariovistus) would deviate from the path of duty so causelessly.

7, 8. sibi quidem persuādēri, in fact he was convinced. The passive of intransitive verbs which govern the dative is used only impersonally and the Dative is then retained. The subject of *persuādēri* is *eum* ... *repudiātūrum*. postulātis, aequitāte: for trans. and constr. cf. 25, 5; 22, 5; 19, 5.

10, 11. quod sī, but if; for case

suā virtūte aut de ipsius diligentia dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonīs a C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritis vidēbatur; factum<sup>15</sup> etiam nūper in Italiā servili tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplina, quam a nobīs accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iudicārī posse, quantum habēret in sē boni cōstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuis-

12. *diligentia*, -ae [*diligēns*, heedful], *f.*, heedfulness, painstaking, care. \*

14. *C.*, abbreviation for the praenomen *Gaius*.

*Marius*, -i, *m.*, Gaius Marius (157–56 B. C.) the conqueror of the *Cimbri* and *Teutones* and champion of the popular party in Rome. 1

*laus, laudis*, *f.*, praise, merit, credit, commendation. \*

15. *imperator*, -ōris [*imperō*, command], *m.*, commander-in-chief, general. \*

16. *servilis*, -e [*servus*, a slave], of or like a slave, servile. 2

*tumultus*, -ūs [*tumēō*, swell], *m.*,

disturbance, commotion, uproar; revolt, uprising. \*

17. *disciplina*, -ae [*contr. of discipulina*, *fr. discipulus*, learner], *f.*, learning, instruction, drill, discipline. \*

*ego, mei*, etc., *pers. pron. I*; *pl. nōs*, we, us, etc. \*

18. *cōstantia*, -ae [*cōstāns*, firm], *f.*, firmness, steadfastness. 2

19. *aliquamdiū* *fem. acc. of aliquis* (sc. *partem*)+*diū*, a long time], for a while, for some time, awhile. 2

*inermus*, -a, -um [*arma*, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed, defenseless. 1

and use of *quod* see on 20, 9. *quid vererentur*, what were they afraid of? For mood see A. 338; B. 118, e; G. 651; H. 523, II, 1; B. 315.

Contrast carefully with *posse* 14, 11.

12. *suā*, refers to the subject of *dēspērārent* and avoids the repetition of the same word in the following phrase. *ipsius*, Caesar.

13. *periculum*, a test.

15. *vidēbatur*: what mode is regularly employed in dependent clauses in indirect disc.? For the indicative see A. 336 d, p. 373; H. 524 2, 2); B. 314 3. G. 628 R. (a).

14. *Cimbris et Teutonīs*: German tribes. See Int. 63. *C. Ma-*

*riō*: Caesar's uncle. "What the uncle has done, can not the nephew do" would be the thought suggested to his hearers.

15. *factum* (*esse*): sc. *periculum*.

16. *nūper*: in 73–71 B. C. *servili tumultū*: the Servile War. The slaves were largely Gauls and Germans. The *tumultus* was a hostile outbreak in Italy itself or in Cisalpine Gaul. *quōs*: the antecedent is implied in the adjective *servili* which is equivalent to *servorum*.

18. *posse*: the subject is *quantum . . . cōstantia*, what *gr* value is in steadfastness.

19. *inermōs*: referring to

20 sent, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōdem quibuscum saepenumērō Helvētiī congressī nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus plērumque superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitū nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, 25 hōs, sī quaerent, reperire posse, diūturnitāte bellidē fatigātis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castris sēlac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantes iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cū ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs 30 atque imperitōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in rei frumentāriae simulatiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperatōris dēspērāre

20. armō, 1. [arma], arm, equip; in p. p. as adj., armed; as subst., armed men. \*

22. plērumque, adv. [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, commonly, frequently. \*

25. diūturnitās, -tātis [diūturnus, prolonged], f., long duration. 2

dē-fatigō 1. (defet-), [fatigō, weary], a., completely weary, tire out, exhaust. 5

26. palūs, -ūdis, f., marsh, morass, swamp. \*

28. dispersgō, -ere, spersī, spersus [spersgō, scatter], spread, scatter: in p. p. as adj., dispersed, scattered. \*

contrā, prep. with acc., contrary to, against, opposite to. \*

30. imperitus, -a, um [peritus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. \*

32. simulatiō, -ōnis [simulō, make like], f., simulation, deceit, pretence. \*

33. arroganter adv. [arrogāns, arrogant], presumptuously. 1

poorly equipped hordes of Germans and Gauls whom Marius had conquered.

20. postea: i. e., in the Servile War.

26. Gallis: i. e., the Aedui and their supporters.

27. suī potestātem, a chance at him.

29. ratiōnī, translate with hāc

in next line and omit here; for its position cf. 22, 16; 12, 17.

30, 31. hāc (ratiōne) . . . posse, not even (Ariovistus) himself hoped that our armies could be caught by this stratagem: referring to cum . . . vicisse, lines 26-29.

33. dē . . . dēspērāre, to lack confidence in the general's performance of duty.

aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae: frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse<sup>35</sup> in agris frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iudicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī: scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fōrtūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam<sup>40</sup> esse convīctam: suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiorum bellō esse perspectam. Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam

35. Leucī, -ōrum, m., a *Gallie* tribe on the *Moselle*. 1

sub-ministrō (summ-), 1. [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, afford, give. 3

36. brevis, -e, *adj.* short, transitory, brief. \*

40. dē-sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be wanting, be absent from, fail. \*

facinus, -oris [faciō, do], n., deed, misdeed, outrage, crime. \*

avāritia, -ae [avārus, greedy], f.,

greed, covetousness. 2

41. con-vincō, -ere, vici, victus [vincō, conquer], a., conquer completely; prove or make good a charge, convict. 1

innocentia, -ae [innocēns, harmless], f., harmlessness, integrity. 1  
fēlicitās, -tātis [fēlix, happy], f., happiness, good success or fortune. 2

43. re-praesentō, 1. [praesēns, present], a., make present, exhibit; do at once. 1

34. haec ... cūrae, he was (direct: I am,) looking after these matters; cūrae: for case cf. 38, 6; 33, 3; 25, 6.

34-36. frūmentum, frūmenta: difference in meaning? See on 16, 4. ipsōs, they themselves (direct: you yourselves), i. e., the soldiers. mātūra: it was now the month of August.

37. quod etc., he was (direct: I am) not at all disturbed by their (your) statement that they (you) would not be subject to his (my) orders nor advance.

38. scīre etc., for he knew (di-

rect: I know) that because of an unsuccessful battle good luck had failed, or from some manifested crime greed had been proven, in the case of any whose orders the army had not obeyed.

41. innocentiam, integrity, opp. to avāritia. perpetuā vitā, throughout his life.

42, 43. sē ... repraesentātūrum (esse), he would (direct: I will) perform immediately what he had intended (I intended) to defer until some future time.

44. dē quartā vigiliā: aboi what hour?

45 primum intellegere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium, an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huīc legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtutem cōfidēbat māximē.

*They respond to his rallying and advance.*

41. Hāc orātiōne habitā, mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est, princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iudiciū fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et primōrum ordinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent: sē nec umquam dubitāsse neque

45. *utrum, conj. [uter, which of two], only translated with indirect and alternative questions (which of the two) whether: followed by an or nec in alternative questions: utrum ... an, whether ... or.* 3

46. *an, conj., used as second member of alternative questions, or, or rather.* \*

47. *decimus, -a, -um [decem, ten], tenth.* \*

48. *praetorius, -a, -um [praetor, commander], relating to the praetor or commander, praetorian: cohors, the commander's body guard.*

*cohors, -rtis, f., enclosure; cohort, the tenth part of a legion, numbering from 300 to 600 men.*

49. *indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -duls-*

*tus [in + dulcis, pleasant], be pleasant or indulgent to, treat with favor or kindness, favor; yield or be addicted to. praecipuē [praecipuus, special], adv., especially, particularly, chiefly.*

1. *modus, -ī, m., measure, quantity, manner, method, style.*

2. *alacritās, -tātis [alacer, active], f., activity, spirit, eagerness.*

3. *in-nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum [nāscor, be born], n., be born in, be begotten or engendered in, spring up, arise. P. p. as adj., inborn, ingrained.*

8. *umquam (unq-), adv. usually with negatives, sometimes with interrog. and conditional clauses, at any time, ever.*

46, 47. *quod sī, and if; for quod cf. l. 10. dē quā, about which he had no doubts.*

*grātiās ēgit, expressed their thanks.*

5. *sēque esse parātissimam, and that it (decimam legiōnem) was entirely ready.*

6-8. *cum ... ēgērunt, utī satisfacerent, conferred with ... in order to make apology. primō-*

timuisse, neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperā-  
tōris esse existimāvisse. Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et  
itinere exquisītō per Diviciacum, quod ex Gallīs eī māximam  
fidem habēbat, ut milium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs  
apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quartā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, pro-  
fectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab  
explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs  
mīlibus passuum quattuor et xx abesse.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lē-  
gātōs ad eum mittit: quod antea dē colloquiō pos-  
tulāisset, id per sē fieri licēre, quoniam propius  
accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse  
existimāre. Nōn respuit condiōnem Caesar iamque eum ad

*Ariovistus  
asks for a  
conference  
and stipulates  
conditions  
which Caesar  
grants.*

10. satisfactiō, -ōnis [satisfactiō, give satisfaction], *v.*, satisfaction, amends; excuse, apology.

11. exquirō, -ere, quisivī, quisitus [quaerō, seek], *a.*, seek earnestly, seek or ask for, inquire after, learn by inquiry, investigate. 2

12. quīnquāgintā, indecl. num., fifty. \*

3. propius, compar. adv. [prope, near], nearer. \*

5. re-spuō, -ere, spuī [spuō, spit], *a.*, spit out; spurn, refuse. 1

rum ordinum: the primipili or chief centurions. See Int. 92.

9, 10. neque . . . existimāvisse, and they had not thought that the decision regarding the conduct of the war was theirs but the commander's.

11, 12. itinere: the route by which to reach Ariovistus. ex . . . habēbat, because of (all) the Gauls he had the greatest confidence in him. circuitū: by marching around to the northwest he would avoid the rough country along the Doubs. This was a wise concession to the fears of his men (cf. 39, 23, angustias . . . silvarum).

13. ut dixerat: in 40, 44.

14. septimō diē: the army in a seven days march at the usual

rate (see Int. 143) would cover about one hundred miles, and reach a position near Cernay, not far from the Rhine. cum . . . intermitteret, since the march was without interruption; for mode see on 9, 3.

2. postulāisset: *sc.* Caesar.

3. id . . . licēre, this might be done as far as he was concerned.

4. accessisset: Ariovistus' reason for refusing a conference (see 34, 7-9) no longer held good. Caesar's prompt advance had surprised him and he was more inclined to confer. sine pericu<sup>12</sup>. Ariovistus wanted to avoid seer

to be forced into a conference  
5, 6. ad sānitātem, *t*  
senses. petentī, when he req

sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id, quod antea petenti dēnegāsset, ūltrō pollicērētur, māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantis populique Rōmānī in eum beneficiis cōgnitis suis postulātis fore, utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō  
 10 dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe ūltrō citrōque cum lēgātī inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: verērī sē, nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur: uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod ne-  
 15 que colloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātū committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallis equitibus dētractis eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam māximē

6. **sānitās, -tātis** [sānus, sound (in mind or body)], *r.*, soundness of body, good health; soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. 2

7. **dē-negō, 1.** [negō, say no], say not, deny, refuse. 1

**ūltrō, adv.** [ūlterior, farther], on the farther side, beyond; of one's accord, willingly. \*

9. **pertinācia, -ae** [pertināx (fr. *pertineō*, hold through), *that holds fast*], *r.*, perseverance; obstinacy, pertinacity. 2

10. **citrō, adv.** [cis, on this side],

hither; ūltrō citrōque, back and forth, hither and thither. 1

12. **pedes, peditis** [pēs, foot], *m.*, foot soldier: *pl.*, infantry, foot. \*

15. **inter-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus** [pōnō, place], place between, insert, interpose. \*

17. **dē-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus** [trahō, draw or drag], *a.*, draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove; disparage, detract. 5

18. **legiōnārius, -a, -um** [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. \*

*it.* Cf. use of perf. part. in 31, 19 and of pres. part. in 25, 20.

7. **māgnamque** etc., and he began confidently to expect that he would abandon his obstinate course.

8. **beneficiis**: from Caesar's point of view, Ariovistus was showing great ingratitude.

2. **nē quem**: for the pronom-  
 uce after *nē* cf. 34, 5; 31, 48;

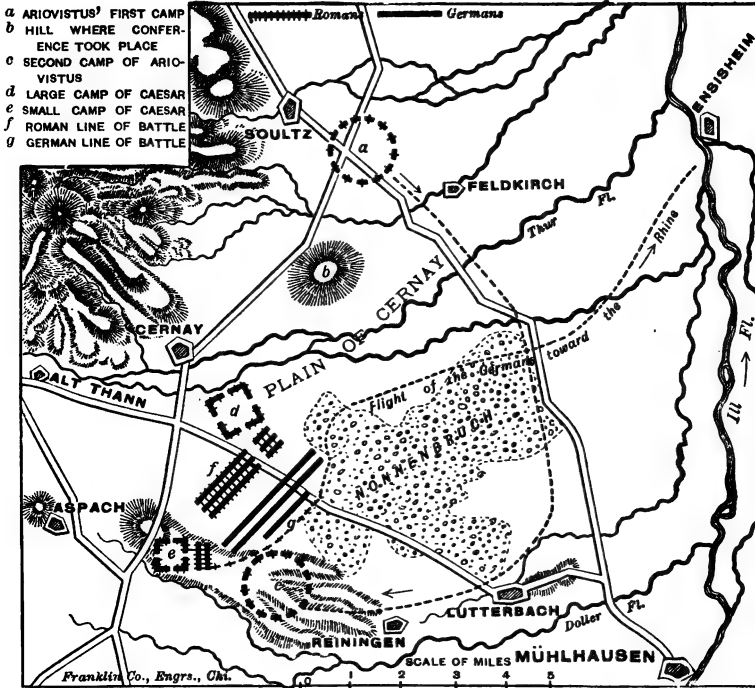
30, 15; 20, 2. For mood of *addūceret* cf. 39, 14; 31, 4; 30, 13.

14. **aliā ratiōne**, on other terms.

15, 16. **salūtem . . . audēbat**: Caesar's natural distrust of the Gallic cavalry (see 18, 26-28, text) may have been increased by Ariovistus' demand that cavalry only should escort him.

18. **eō, adv.** = *in eōs*.

cōfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdīculē quīdam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit: plūs quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere: pollicitum sē in cohortis



BATTLE BETWEEN CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS.

19. *impōnō, -ere, posuī, positus* [*pōnō, place*], place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount; embark. 5

20. *irrīdīculē (inr-), adv.* [*rīdīculē, humorously*], without humor or wit. 1

19, 20. *sī... esset*, if there should be any occasion for their service. *factō*: a participle, not the noun; for the case see A. 243 e, N.; B. 83, d; G. 406 *ad fin.*; H. 414, iv, N. 3; B. 218, 2, c. When a thing (not

an act) is needed Caesar uses only the construction found in 34, & *nōn irrīdīculē, wittily*. What future? Cf. 39, 11.

22, 23. *cohortis praetōrii* see 40, 48. *ad equum resc*



praetoriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.

*Place of the Conference, Caesar's address and demands.*

43. Plāniciēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus  
terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequō ferē  
spatiō ā castris utriusque aberat. Eō, ut erat  
dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam  
5 equīs vēxerat, passibus ducentis ab eō tumulō cōstituit.  
Item equitēs Ariovistī pari intervallō cōstitērunt. Ariovis-  
tus, ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad  
colloquium addūcerent, postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar  
initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemo-  
10 rāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod

23. re-scribō, -ere, scripsī, scrip-  
tus [scribō, write], write again,  
transfer (by writing), re-enlist. 1

1. plāniciēs (plānit-), -eī [plā-  
nus, level], f., level ground, flat  
surface, plain. \*

tumulus, -ī [tumeō, swell], m.,  
swelling; mound, hill, hillock. \*

2. terrēnus, -a, -um [terra,

earth], of earth, earthen. 1

grandis, -e, great, large, bulky. 4

aequus, -a, -um, even, level, equal;  
equitable, impartial, just. \*

5. vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus, a.,  
carry, convey, bring. 1

7. dēnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.,  
[decem, ten], ten each, ten at a  
time, by tens. 2

bere: this phrase means (1) to transfer to the cavalry, a part of the army looked down upon by the soldiers of the legion, and (2) to raise to the rank of knights, held in high honor at Rome. The jest consists in pretending to consider the first act as the second.

1. plāniciēs māgna: near Cernay. Belfort, some distance southwest of Cernay is thought by some authorities to be the place near which these negotiations were carried on; but there is no large plain near Belfort. erat, there was; for use of the expletive see on 6, 1.

3. spatiō: the verb aberat im-

plies comparative distance, for the ablative therefore see A. 257 b; B. 92; G. 403, N. 1; H. 423, N. 2; B. 223.

5, 6. equīs: for case cf. nāvibus 16, 6. passibus, intervallō: for case cf. spatiō above.

8. postulāvit: Caesar does not say that he made any objection to this request, or demand. Probably he agreed to it at once, being desirous to let nothing prevent a meeting. ventum est: (=vēnērunt) for trans. cf. 31, 8; 26, 6; 23, 5.

9. sua . . . commemorāvit, reminded him of his own (avors) and the senate's favors to him.

10. amicus: sc. appellātus esset.

mūnera amplissimē mīssa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et  
 prō māgnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum,  
 cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret  
 beneficiō ac liberalitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōsecūtum.  
 Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae neces-  
 sitūdinis ipsīs cum Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta  
 quotiēns quamque honorifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī  
 tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Aeduī tenuissent, prius  
 etiam, quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populī Rōmānī  
 hanc esse cōnsuetūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo  
 suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs

11. mūnus, -eris, n., duty, burden; present. 3

amplē [amplus, large], largely, widely, liberally; comp. amplius; superl. amplissimē. 1

12. doceō, -ēre, -ui, doctus, a., show, teach, instruct; inform. \*

13. aditus, -ūs [ad + eō, go], m., going to, approach, means of approach, access. \*

iūstus, -a, -um [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, righteous, reasonable, valid, just. \*

14. praemium, -ī [prae-ēmō, buy or get before others], n., advantage, distinction, prize, reward. \*

15. necessitūdō, -inis [necesse,

necessary], f., close or necessary connection, intimacy. 1

16. cōnsultum, -ī [cōnsulō, deliberate], n., result of deliberation; decree, enactment, decision. 2

17. quotiēns [quot, how many], how many times, how often, as often as. 2

honorificus, -a, -um [honor + faciō], conferring honor, honorable. 1

21. dē-perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditus [perdō, destroy], a., destroy utterly, ruin; lose entirely, forfeit, lose. 3

dignitās, -tātis [dignus, worthy], worthiness, merit, rank. \*

auctus, -a, -um, partic. adj., (augeō), increased. 1

11, 12. mūnera: these were a crown and a goblet of gold, a curule chair, an ivory scepter and embroidered robes. quam . . . tribuī, a mark of respect which, he showed, had come to few (persons) and was usually bestowed in recompense for men's important services.

13. aditum, (right of) access. habēret: for mode see on 14, 16; cum is concessive.

14. praemia, honors.

15. quam etc., how ancient and

how reasonable were the occasions for an alliance between them (the Romans) and the Aeduī.

16, 17. intercēderent, essent: for mode cf. 40, 4; 34, 12; 32, 6. ut, how; here an interrogative adverb, introducing an indirect question. In what other sense has the adverb ut been used? Cf. 38, 22, 3.

18. Galliae, i. e. Celtic Gaul 20-22. esse cōnsuetūdine ut velit, the practice was to

velit esse: quod vērō ad amicitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iis ēripi quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātis dederat: nē aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs  
 2 bellum īferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur.

*Ariovistus justifies his own course and makes counter demands and proposals.*

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis; nōn sine māgnā spē  
 5 māgnisque praemiīs domum propinquōsque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntate datōs; stipendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitatēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse  
 10 ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē unō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūti velint, inīquum esse dē

22. *afferō (ad-), ferre, attulī, allātus, a., bring, take or carry to, present, occasion, cause, bring forward, allege. \**

26. *re-mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus [mittō, send], a., send or drive back, return, restore; remit, release, relax. \**  
*at, conj., but, at least. \**

etc. For the Subj. 31, 50; 5, 3; 4, 4. *sed auctiōrēs esse, but rather to be advanced.* grātiā etc.: for case see on 1, 3.

23, 24. iis: for case see on 17, 9. posset: for mode see on 40, 11. dederat: in 35, 2.

1, 2. pauca, multa (sc. verba), briefly, much. His reply is in indirect discourse. Give the direct form in both Latin and English.

3, 4. suā sponte: cf. 9, 3. ātum et arcessitum = quod

rogātus esset et arcessitus esset; what force have the participles? Gallis: i. e., the Sequani and Arverni; see 31, 12.

6, 7. ipsīs: sc. Gallis. iūre: for case see on mōribus 4, 2. victis: for case cf. 36, 11; 35, 12; 23, 5; so Gallis and sibi in l. 8.

9. oppūgnandum: Gerund or Gerundive? Cf. 38, 8; 38, 3.

10. castra habuisse, had encamped. unō proeliō: see 31, 42, 43.

12, 13. pāce: for case cf. 20,

stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerit. Amicitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn detrīmentō esse oportēre, idque sē eā spē petisse.<sup>13</sup> Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dediticiī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amicitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impūgnandae causā facere: ēius rei testimoniō esse<sup>20</sup> quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam<sup>25</sup> hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item nōs

12. *dē-certō*, 1. [certō, contend], n., fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. \*

*iniquus*, -a, -um [aequus, even, just], uneven, unjust, unfair, unfavorable. \*

14. *ōrnāmentum*, -ī [ōrnō, adorn], n., mark of honor, distinction. 2

15. *detrīmentum*, -ī [dē-terō, rub or wear out], n., rubbing or wasting away; harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. \*

17. *sub-trahō*, -ere, trāxī, trac-

*tus* [trahō, draw], draw or carry off, take away, withdraw. 2

*libenter* [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 3

20. *impūgnō*, 1. [in+ pūgnō, fight], a., fight against, attack, assail. 2

*testimoniūm*, -ī [testor, be a witness], n., witness, testimony, proof; testimonial. 4

23. *numquam* (nun-) *adv.* [nē+umquam, ever], never. 4

26. *sic-ut* (sicutī) [ut, as], so as, just as, as. \*

7; 16, 6 (*frūmentō*): 5, 10. *dē* ... *recūsāre*, make objections to.

14. *sibi ōrnāmentō*: for cases cf. 40, 34.

15. *id*: neuter because it refers to the phrase *amicitiā populī Rōmānī*. Of what gender is any phrase, clause, or term, when used substantively? *id* ... *petisse*: the king admits that he had sued

for the honor.

24, 25. *sibi*: = *Caesarī*; for case see on 28, 2. *suās* refers to Ariovistus. *vellet*, *veniret*: for mood cf. 43, 23. *prōvinciam suam*: i. e., his right of possession was as clear as that of the Romans to the Roman Province.

26, 27. *hanc Galliam*, part of Gaul. *ut* ... *oport*

esse iniquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frā-  
trēs ā senātū Aeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barba-  
30 sorum neque tam imperitum esse rērum, ut nōn scīret, neque  
bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse  
neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī sēcum et cum  
Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dē-  
bēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amicitīā, quod exercitum  
35 in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi  
dēcēdat atque exercitum dēducāt ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē  
illum nōn prō amicō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī  
eum interfecerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populī  
Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum: id sē ab ipsis per eōrum nūn-

28. interpellō, 1. *a.*, interrupt, hinder, interfere with. 1

32. contentiō, -ōnis [contendō, stretch out, struggle], *r.*, stretching out, striving, struggle, contest. \*

34. suspīcor, 1. [suspīciō, suspect], *a.*, suspect, distrust. \*

simulō, 1. [similis, like], make like, counterfeit, pretend. 2

35. opprimō (obp-), -ere, pressī, pressus [premō, press], *a.*,

press against or down; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. \*

36. dē-ducō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [ducō, lead], *a.*, lead down or away, withdraw, conduct, induce, influence; launch (nāvēs). \*

regiō, -ōnis [regō, direct, mark (by a line)], *r.*, direction, line; boundary; quarter, district, region, country. \*

39. grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable, welcome. 2

*just as there ought to be no yielding to him (lit. to be yielded to etc. ought not). For use of concēdi and constr. of ipsī see on 40, 7, 8.*

28, 29. *in, in the exercise of.* quod: for the clause cf. 36, 14; 18, 26; 17, 12. diceret, i. e., Caesar (direct: you).

30. imperitum rērum, *ignorant of political matters.* For the Gen. cf. 21, 10; 18, 8; 14, 5.

31. bellō Allobrogum: see on 6, 7.

33, 34. auxiliō ūsōs esse, *had the assistance, for case cf. l. 12.* Ariovistus here lays his finger upon weak point in Caesar's argument.

dēbēre sē suspicārī, *he had a right (legal and moral) to suspect.* simulātā amicitīā, *although he made a pretense of friendship.* Note the concessive force of the Abl. Abs. State other uses of this construction.

36, 37. sēsē . . . amicō, habitūrum (esse), *he would not regard him (Caesar) as a friend.* quod sī: cf. 40, 46; 40, 10. It is entirely possible that Caesar's enemies at the capital, embittered by his acts as consul (see Int. 20-24) had indicated to the king their desire to have him put out of the way.

39, 40. id compertum habēre, *he had ascertained this.* For the

tiōs compertum habēre, quōrum omnium grātiā atque amī-  
citiam ēius morte redimere posset. Quod sī discessisset et  
liberam possēssiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē illum  
praemiō remūnerātūrum et quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine  
ullō ēius labōre et periculō cōnfectūrum.

**45.** Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta <sup>Caesar insists on Roman rights in Gaul.</sup>  
sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset; neque suam  
neque populi Rōmānī cōnsuetūdinem pati, utī optimē merentēs  
sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre, Galliam potius esse Ario-  
vistī quam populi Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et  
Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus Rōmānus īg-  
nōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium

**42.** liber, -era, -erum, unre-  
strained, free; undisputed. \*

**43.** remūneror, 1. [mūnus, gift],  
a., repay, reward, requite. 1

**44.** labor, -ōris, m., toil, effort,  
striving; labor, hardship. \*

**1.** sententia, -ae [sentio, think]  
f., way of thinking, opinion, a  
sentiment, feeling, purpose; de-  
cision, verdict. \*

**3.** bene [bonus = bonus, good],  
well, rightly, successfully: comp.  
melius; sup. optimē. 2

**4.** dē-serō, -ere, serui, sertus  
[serō, join], a., disjoin, disunite,  
abandon, desert: in p. p. as adj.,  
deserted, solitary. \*

potius, [neut. sing. acc. of potior  
comp. of potis, able], comp. adv.,  
rather. \*

**6.** Rutēnī, -ōrum, m., a Celtic  
people bordering on the Province.\*  
**Q.**, abbreviation for Quintus, a Roman  
praenomen. 2

**Fabius**, -i, m., a Roman gentile  
name: Quintus Fabius Maximus,  
conqueror of the Arverni and Ru-  
teni on the Rhone, 121 B. C. \*

ignōscō, -ere, -nōvi, -nōtus [in-  
+ (g)nōscō, know], n., forgive,  
pardon. 5

**7.** redigō, -ere, ēgi, āctus [agō,  
put in motion], a., drive or bring  
back; get together, collect; ren-  
der, reduce. \*

use of the participle compertum cf.  
redēpta 18, 10; coāctum 15, 4.

**2.** posset: for mood cf. 43,  
17; 40, 4; 34, 12; 12, 3.

**3, 4.** pati, uti dēsereret, al-  
loded him to abandon. For the ut  
clause cf. 42, 12; 39, 14; 31, 4.  
Galliam etc., that Gaul belonged to  
Ariovistus rather than to the Roman  
people. This was the real question  
between Caesar and Ariovistus.  
**Ariovisti.** Note the possessive

force of the Predicate Genitive.  
What other Gen. is common in the  
predicate?

**5, 6.** bellō superātōs esse: in  
the year 121 by Quintus Fabius the  
consul, who killed 120,000 men and  
carried off the king and his son as  
captives.

quibus ignōvisset,  
whom had pardoned: for case of  
quibus cf. 33, 19; 25, 20; 18, 10

**7.** in prōvinciam redēf  
as the Cevennes formed the  
boundary of the Roman P

imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam dēbere esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

*The conference is broken up by an attack from the German cavalry.*

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumultum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit sēque ad suos recēpit suisque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlectae cum equitatū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dicī posset eōs ab sē per

10. ob-servō, 1. [servō, give heed], a., heed, observe, mark, regard, celebrate. \*

3. ad-equitō, 1. [equitō (fr. eques), ride], n., ride up to or

towards. 1

lapis, lapidēs, m., stone; collectively, stone, stones. \*

6. et-sī, conj., even if, although, though. \*

this was probably the real reason for the forbearance of the Romans. Notice that *redēgisset* is transitive and that from *quibus* standing next to the intransitive *ignōvisset* we must supply *quōs*.

8. *antiquissimum quodque tempus*, all the past, i. e. priority of time. For force of *quisque* with the superl. see on 31, 44. See 44, 22, where Ariovistus claims priority of conquest. Caesar's answer is that the defeat of the Arverni and Ruteni give the Romans the first claim.

11. *lēgibus*: for case cf. 44, 33; 20, 7. *voluisset*, had allowed. The subject is *senātus*.

1. *geruntur*: for rendering with *um* see on 27, 8.

2. *propius tumultum*, nearer

the hill. For the Acc. with *propius* see A. 261, a; G. 416, 22; H. 437, 1; B. 141 3,

4. in *nostrōs*: notice the repetition of the pronoun.

5. 6. *nē . . . rēicerent*, not to hurl in return etc. *quod*, any; what kind of a pronoun? For *quod* instead of *quid* see A. 104 a; B. LIX, 6; G. 107; H. 190 N. 1; B. 90 2. *legiōnis dēlectae*, to the chosen legion. Which legion? See 40, 47-50.

7. *committendum* (*esse*) ut etc., that he ought to permit it to (be able to) be said. For trans. of the impersonal cf. 43, 8; 31, 8; 26, 6. For the *ut* clause cf. 13, 18, but notice that here the verb *committendum* is passive, and the clause is therefore subject.

8. *nōn putābat*, etc.: Caesar

fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Posteaquam in volgus militum elātum est, quā arrogantia in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus<sup>10</sup> omnī Galliā Rōmānis interdixisset, impetumque in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs colloquium ut dirēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercitū iniectum est.

47. Biduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: Velle sē dē hīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō: uti aut iterum colloquiō diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suis aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendi Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius diēi Germānī retinēri nōn potuerant, quā in nostrōs tēla conicerent. Lēgātum ē suis sēsē māgnō cum periculō ad

*Ariovistus again requests a conference in person or through envoys. He seizes the envoys of Caesar.*

11. inter-dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus [dicō, say], a., say among other things; intervene by an order; prohibit, exclude, interdict. \*
12. dirimō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus

[dis+emo, take], a., take apart interrupt, break off. 1

14. in-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, hurl], a., throw or cast into or upon, put or place on; put into, inspire, infuse, inject. 5

would have his readers believe that Ariovistus was the aggressor. As the whole expedition was of doubtful legality, the Roman general would naturally put prominently in view the plea of necessity. *pulsis hostibus*, in case of the defeat of the enemy. Case?

10. quā arrogantia ūsus, with what insolence. *arrogantia*: for case cf. 45, 11. The participle of *ūtor* may often be translated by the prep. *with*.

11. omnī . . . interdixisset, had forbidden the Romans all Gaul. *Galliā*: for case cf. 23, 11; 8, 16; 8, 12. *Rōmānis*: for case cf. 45, 6; 33, 19.

12. eaque . . . dirēmisset, and how this circumstance etc. *ut*: see

on 43, 17 and explain mode of *dirēmisset*. What part of speech is *ut*?

2, 3. quae agī coeptae essent, which had begun to be discussed. The passive forms of *coepti* are used when the dependent infinitive is in the passive voice.

5, 6. colloquendi . . . est, there did not seem to Caesar to be any occasion for a conference. *eō*: for case cf. *hōc* 32, 9; *multō* 16, 18.

7, 8. retinēri quā conicerent: for the constr. of *quā* after expressions of hindrance and refusal see A. 319 d.; G. 554; H. 504, 4; B. 295, 3. Translate *quā* with its Subj. by *from* with the present participle: kept from casting. *māg'* cum periculō, at a great risk.



eum missurum et hominibus feris obiecturum existimabat.  
 10 Commodissimum visum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri  
 Caburī filium, summā virtute et humanitate adulescentem  
 cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitate donatus erat, et prop-  
 ter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā  
 iam Ariovistus longinquā consuetudine utebatur, et quod in  
 15 eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittere, et M.  
 Metium, quī hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. His mandavit, ut,  
 quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad se referrent.  
 Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitū  
 suō praesente conclamavit: quid ad se venirent? an specu-

10. **Procillus**, -ī, m., a Roman family name. E. g., a Gaul sent to Ariovistus by Caesar. 2

11. **Caburus**, -ī, m., Caius Valerius Caburus, a Celt honored with Roman citizenship by C. Valerius Flaccus, father of (C. Valerius) Procillus and Domnotaurus. 2

**adulescens** (ado-), -entis, [adulescō, grow up], m., f., youth; young man or woman, from seventeen to forty years of age. \*

12. **Flaccus**, -ī, m., a Roman cognomen. Caius Valerius Flaccus, praetor in Gaul, 83, B. C. 1

**dōnō**, 1. [dōnum, gift], a., give, bestow, endow with. 2

13. **scientia**, -ae [sciō, know],

f., knowledge, science, experience, skill. \*

14. **longinquus**, -a, -um [longus, long], far off, distant; long continued, protracted. 5

15. **peccō**, 1. a., miss or fail (doing one's duty), mistake; transgress, do wrong, sin. 1

16. **Metius**, -ī, m., Marcus Metius, an envoy of Caesar to Ariovistus. 2

18. **conspiciō**, -ere, spēxi, spec-tus [speciō, look], a., look at attentively, observe, descry, perceive. \*

19. **conclāmō**, 1. [clāmō, cry out], a., n., shout or cry out together, call aloud, cry or shout out. \*

10. **visum est**, seemed best. The subject is C. Valerium ... mittere, lines 10-15.

12. **civitate donatus erat**, had been presented with citizenship.

13, 14. **quā multā utebatur**, which Ariovistus spoke fluently; lit., much of which A. used. et etc., and because in his case the Germans did not have any grounds for doing wrong.

15. **Germanis**: for case cf. 34, 2; 34, 5; 11, 13. **esset**, did not

have (as he thought) any grounds; for mood cf. 37, 4; 23, 9; 16, 17.

19. **conclāmavit**, cried aloud. Ariovistus' course can be accounted for only on the theory that he had expected Caesar to accede to his suggestion for a second personal interview, and was disappointed and angry. **quid**, why? For case see the refs. on *minimum* 20, 6.

20. **conantia**, while they were attempting: cf. use of pres. part. in 25, 20.

landī causā? Cōnantis dīcere prohibuit et in catēnāszo conīecit.

48. Eōdem diē castra prēmōvit et milibus pas- *He advances*  
suum sex ā Caesaris castris sub mōnte cōnsēdit. *toward Cae-*  
Postridiē ēius diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cō- *sar's camp.*  
piās trādūxit et milibus passuum duōbus ūltrā eum castra *Cavalry*  
fēcit eō cōnsiliō utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēqua- *skirmishes.*  
nis et Aeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō  
diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās  
prōdūxit et aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus  
proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus his

20. catēna, -ae, f., chain, fetter.  
speculor, 1. [speciō, look], a., n.,  
observe, reconnoitre, spy. 1

1. prō-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus  
[moveō, move], a., n., move for-  
ward, advance; extend, enlarge;  
put off. 4

4. ūltrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond,

on the farther side of, past. 2

7. continuus, -a, -um [contineō,  
hold together], holding together,  
unbroken, uninterrupted, contin-  
uous. 5

prō-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus  
[dūcō, lead], a., lead out or  
forth, bring forth, produce; draw  
up (cōpiās); prolong, protract. \*

1. milibus: for case cf. 43, 6;  
43, 3.

2. sub mōnte: at the foot of  
the Vosges and north of Caesar's  
camp, from which he was separated  
by a heavy forest.

3. praeter castra: why Caesar  
did not attack him on the flank  
while executing this maneuver does  
not appear. Probably the forest  
protected him from observation.

5, 6. fēcit = *posuit*. utī...  
interclūderet: this skilful move-  
ment was embarrassing to Caesar  
and made him anxious to fight, as  
Ariovistus knew it would. ex  
Sēquanīs: this route led up from  
the south. The communications  
with the Leuci and Lingones far-  
ther north, were not affected, so  
that Caesar was not entirely cut off  
from supplies; but only a small

part of his supplies came from  
that quarter.

6. interclūderet: for mode cf.  
30, 8.

7. diēs continuōs quīnque:  
for the case see on 3, 12. prō cas-  
tris: the Romans preferred to fight  
with the camp in the rear as a  
place of retreat in case of necessity.

8. aciem: what was the ordin-  
ary arrangement of the cohorts in  
line of battle? See Int. 87. sī  
vellet, etc. As a matter of fact, it  
was Caesar who wished to fight;  
but he was naturally reticent on  
this point, knowing that his oppo-  
nent had scored an advantage over  
him.

9. eī... deesset, he would not  
be without an opportunity. All  
compounds of *esse* (except *abesse*  
and *posse*) govern the dative.

- 10 omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proelio cotidiē contendit. Genus hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vėlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singuli singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant: cum his in proeliis  
15 versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant: hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut

11. **genus**, -eris [gen- in gīgnō, beget], *n.*, descent, origin; race, class, tribe; sort, kind, nature. \*  
12. **exerceō**, 2. [arceō, ward or drive off], *a.*, drive forward, engage busily; practice, train, exercise. \*  
**totidem**, indecl. *adj.* [tot, so many + idem], just as many, the same number. \*  
13. **vėlōx**, vėlōcis, swift, rapid. 2  
15. **versō**, 1. [freq. of vertō, turn], *a.*, *n.*, turn frequently, change; *pass. as dep.*, remain, dwell, stay; be engaged in, busy, associated, or employed with, occupy, act. \*  
16. **dūrus**, -a, -um, hard, rough, difficult; severe, inclement, unfavorable. 4

- con-currō**, -ere, curri, cursus (currō, run], *a.*, *n.*, run or rush together; encounter, engage in conflict; concur, happen together. \*  
**dēcidō**, -ere, cidi [cadō, fall], *n.*, fall from or down, fall off. \*  
17. **circum-sistō**, -ere, stiti [sistō, stand], *a.*, stand, flock or rally around, surround, hem in. \*  
**quō** [old *dat.* of quī], *adv.*, (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.* whither, to or into which, as far as; (3) *indef.* (after sī, nō, etc.) if any whither, if to any place. \*  
**prōd-eō**, -īre, -iī, itus [prō+eō, go], *n.*, go or come forth, go forward, advance. 4

10. **exercitum** . . . **continuit**: Ariovistus was perfectly satisfied with his position and hoped to compel Caesar to retreat in order to secure his communications with the Sequani and Aedui.

11. **genus** etc. English order; *genus pūgnae, quō . . . exercuerant, erat hōc* (was as follows). The tactics here described were not really original with the Germans, but a common device among many ancient peoples. See Int. 194

12. **numerō**: for case see on 3.

13, 14. **singuli singulōs**: the pairs were composed of close friends.

15, 16. **hī . . . concurrēbant**, *these (peditēs)*, if there was anything too hard (for the cavalry to accomplish) quickly ran (to their aid).

17, 18. **sī . . . recipiendum**, if it were required to advance anywhere for a considerable distance (*longius*) or to withdraw quite rapidly. **longius, celerius**: for trans. see on 14, 16. **sī quō**, if anywhere. The adverbs derived from *quis*, as well as the pronoun itself, are indefinite if preceded by *sī, nisi, num, nē*.

celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubis sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ūltrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab iis, castris idōneum locum dēlēgit aciē-  
que triplici instrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciē in armis esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim milia expedita cum omni equitātū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpia nostrōs perterrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sēcūs Caesar, utī ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnitis castris duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et

18. celeritās, -tātis [celer, swift], *f.*, swiftness, quickness, speed. \*

19. iuba, -ae, *f.*, mane. 1

cursus, -ūs [currō, run], *m.*, running, speed; course, career; passage. \*

ad-aequō, 1. [aequō, level or equal], *a., n.*, make level with or equal to, equalize, equal, keep up with. \*

4. idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable, adapted. \*

10. sēcūs (sēt-), *adv. comp.*, less, in a less degree. Only with negatives: nihilō sēcūs, never the less. 4

11. prōpulsō, 1. [freq. of prōpellō, drive forth or away], *a.*, drive forth or back, repel. 2

1. eum = Ariovistum.

2. prohibērētur: Ariovistus was in a position to cut off Caesar completely from his base of supplies by a further advance. ūltrā, beyond, from the point of view of the camp of Caesar, and between Ariovistus' camp and the road along which Caesar's supplies from the south came

4. passūs sexcentōs: how many English feet? castris: for case cf. 33, 12; 28, 14; 9, 6. idōneum locum: about two and one half miles south of his other camp. What did the Romans consider a fit site for a camp? see Int. 129. aciē triplici:

see Int. 145.

5. vēnit; Caesar at first advanced towards the German camp as if to offer battle as usual, then moving to the right he marched past Ariovistus to the site chosen for the new camp.

6. in armis: to repel the expected attack.

8. circiter . . . expedita, light armed troops numbering about sixteen thousand. hominum = pedum. numerō: for case cf. 48, 12.

9. perterrērent: what was the German method of attack? see Int. 192.

partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

*Ariovistus  
assaults this  
without de-  
cisive result*

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsq̄e cōpiās suās ēdūxit paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem instrūxit, hostibus pūgnandī potestātem fēcīt. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdire intellēxit, circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret, mīsīt. Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex capitivīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō non dēcertāret, hanc reperīebat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōsuētūdō esset, ut matrēsfamiliae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārarent, utrum proe-

10 *Superstition  
of the Ger-  
mans.*

2. paulum, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat. \*  
3. prōgredior, gredi, gressus sum [gradior, step], *n.*, step or go forward, come or march out, advance, proceed, go. \*  
5. meridiēs, -ēi [for medīdiēs, from medius, middle + diēs], *m.*, the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. \*  
7. utrimque (utrin-), *adv.* [utrumque, both], on both sides. 5

- usque, *adv.* [us = ubs *fr.* ubi, where], all the way to, even to, as far as, even, till. \*  
12. matrēsfamiliae, *f.*, (*nom. pl.*, only), matrons.  
13. sors, sortis, *f.*, lot; casting or drawing of lots; chance, fate.  
vāticinātiō, -ōnis [vāticinor, predict], *f.*, prediction, prophesying, divination.  
dēclārō, 1. [clārus, clear], *a.*, make clear or plain, declare.

13. redūxit: although Caesar's forces were divided, he had regained the control of the communications and was in a position to fall upon Ariovistus's flank if he should attack either of the Roman camps.

1. diē: for case cf. 16, 10; 15, 1. institūtō suō: for case cf. 44, 7; 4, 2.

6, 7. quae oppūgnāret, to storm; for the relative (= ut ea) and the mode cf. 34, 2; 21, 4; 15, 5.

8. pūgnātum est: for trans. see on 22, 9.

10. quam ob rem, why. How does its use here differ from that in 34, 1?

12. ut matrēsfamiliae etc., that the matrons indicated whether or not it was advantageous to engage in battle.

13. sortibus, by casting lots. The 'lots' were wooden rods with magic marks cut upon them. These were tied in a bundle and when dried a

lium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō conten-  
dissent.

51. Postridiē ōiūs diēi Caesar praesidium *Caesar arrays his troops for battle.* utrīsq; castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, reliquit, omnīs ālārīōs in cōspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōstituit quod minus multitudīne mīlitum legiōnārīōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālārīis ūteretur; <sup>6</sup>

14. necne, conj. [nec, nor + nē] or not (used in alternative questions).

15. fās [fari, to speak], n., (only nom. and acc. sing.), divine sanction or law (opp. to iūs, human law), divine will; right.

lūna, -ae [for luc-na fr. lūcēō,

give light], f., the moon.

3. ālārīus, -a, -um [āla, wing], on the wings: in pl. as subst., ālārīi, the auxiliaries, who occupied the wings of the army.

5. speciēs, -ēi [obsol. speciō, see], f., seeing, sight, look, appearance. \*

slight shake would cause one to drop out. The mark upon this one gave the answer. vaticinātiōnibus: other methods of prophesying, such as observations of the whirling of water in eddies, the sounds of the waves, etc. utrum, necne: for the use of these particles in Double or Alternative questions see A. 211; G. 459; H. 353 N. 3; B. 162 4.

15. fās, the will of the gods. novam lūnam: Tacitus says that the Germans considered the days of the new moon and full moon lucky days, and so, were wont to begin important undertakings on these days. The Greeks had the same notion, as is shown by the refusal of the Spartans to march to the help of the Athenians until after the full moon. Moberly quotes Winer in explanation of this superstition: "For simple nations the first new light of the moon is most cheering and joyful. From its appearance they obtain the order of the months, and, in the absence of astronomical observations, that of

the whole civil and religious year."

1. postridiē: September 10 is a probable date. diēi: for case see on 23, 1.

2. quod . . . vīsum est, (a gar- rison) which seemed to be sufficient.

3. ālārīōs: the socii were called ālārīi from their position in the line of battle: see Int. 146. in cōspectū hostium: to conceal the fact that the two legions had been withdrawn. At a distance the Germans could not tell the difference between auxiliaries and legionaries. Meanwhile the two legions marched out by the rear gate of the camp and secretly joined the four other legions in the larger camp. By this clever ruse, Caesar concealed his weakness in legionaries and concentrated those he had for the battle that he was determined to force.

4. 5. minus prō hostium numerō valēbat, he was weak compared with the enemy's forces. ālārīis, case?

ipse, triplici instructa acie, usque ad castra hostium accessit.

*Array of the  
Germans.*

Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt generatimque constituerunt paribus intervallis, Harudes, Marcomani, Triboci, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusi, Osii, Suebi, omnemque aciem suam rediis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes passis manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent.

*A close and  
furious con-  
flict.*

52. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quis-

7. *necessario*, adv. [abl. cf., *necessarius*], unavoidably, under compulsion. \*

8. *generatim* [genus, race or tribe], adv., by tribes, nation by nation. 2

9. *Marcomani* (-manni), -orum, m., a German tribe on the upper Maine. 1

*Triboci*, -um (-i, -orum), m., a German tribe on the Rhine about modern Strasburg. 2

*Vangiones*, -um m., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine about modern Worms. 1

*Nemetes*, -um, m., a German tribe on the Rhine about modern Speier. 2

*Sedusi*, -orum, m., a German tribe between the Maine and Neckar. 1

10. *reda*, -ae, f., a wagon (with four wheels). 2

12. *pandō*, -ere, *pandī*, *passus* (*pāsus*) [cf. *pateō*, extend], a., n., spread or stretch out, extend: *passis capillis*, with dishevelled hair; *passis manibus*, with outstretched hands. 4

2. *quaestor*, -oris [quaerō, seek], m., a quaestor, one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army; quartermaster. \*

6. *triplici... acie*: see Intr. 145.

7. *necessario*: the camp of the Germans was not entrenched (see Int. 196, 197) and its slight defences would not have availed long against the vigorous attack of the Romans.

8. *constituerunt*: the Germans faced west, the Romans east. There were probably about 50,000 men under Caesar and a much larger number under Ariovistus.

10. *rediis et carris*: the former had four wheels, the latter two. *circumdederunt*: i. e., the rear and on both flanks.

11. *eō*: i. e., on the wagons and carts. What part of speech? Cf. 42, 18.

1, 2. *legionibus*: for case cf. 44, 8; 23, 5; 16, 13. *legatos et quaestorem*: as there were six legions, Caesar must have had five *legati* in this campaign. The *quaestor* probably commanded the legion with which Caesar stationed himself. What were the ordinary duties of the quaestor? See Int. 94, 95.

que virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostrī ācritē in hostēs signō datō impetum fecērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pila in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectis pilis, comminus gladiis pūgnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī milītēs, quī in phalan-<sup>10</sup> gas insilirent et scūta manibus revellerent. Cum hostium

3. **dexter, -era, -erum, and -tra, -trum**, right, on the right.\*

**cornū, -ūs, n.**, a horn; the wing (of an army.) \*

6. **repente, adv.** [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 5

**prō-currō, -ere, currī, cursus** [currō, run], *n.*, run or rush forward, rush out, charge. \*

8. **com-minus, adv.** [manus,

hand], hand to hand, in close contest. 3

9. **ex-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus** [capiō, take], *a.*, take out, off, or up, catch, receive; take up (in turn), succeed; intercept. \*

11. **insiliō, -ire, silui**, leap in or on, mount. 1

**re-vellō, -ere, vellī, vulsus (vol-)** [vellō, pluck], *a.*, pluck or tear away, pull or tear out. 2

3. **ā dextrō cornū**: it was Caesar's usual practice to open a battle with his right wing. He mentions a special reason for doing so on this occasion. **eam partem**: i. e., the enemy's left wing.

4. **minimē firmam, weakest**: for the figure cf. 42, 20; 39. 11.

5. **signō datō**: the signal was given upon the *tuba*, or trumpet. See Int. 125. **impetum**: see Int. 148, 149, for the details of the usual mode of attack.

7. **pila coniciendī**: what was the usual effect of the shower of *pila*? (Owing to the speed of the enemy's advance, the Romans lost this advantage (*spatium nōn darētur*). This fact may in part account for the length of the battle. **rēiectis**, cast aside, because useless at close quarters.

8. **comminus gladiis**: the favorite method with the Roman soldier.

See Int. 149. The short sword of the Romans was a better weapon for hand-to-hand fighting, than the long sword of the Germans.

9. **phalange**: i. e., a phalanx formation, hence the singular number Below (line 10) *phalangas* is used because the different groups are referred to. These were composed of three or four hundred men each, who stood on the defensive against the attacks of the legionaries.

10. **phalangas**: for the form of the Acc. pl. see on *Lingonas*. 26, 18.

11. **insilirent**: i. e., sprang bodily upon the "shield-wall". **scūta manibus**: grasping the tops of the shields and uncovering the bodies of their antagonists. On the *scūtum* see Int. 106, 107. The usual method was to push the shield under that of the enemy and wound him from beneath.



aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitudīne suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, 15 quī equitātūī praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam iī, quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidio mīsit.

*The Germans  
are defeated  
and flee to  
the Rhine.*

53. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīque pervēnerunt. Ibi perpaucī aut viribus 5 cōfisi trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem repperērunt; in hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēli-

13. premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, a., press, oppress, burden, annoy, press upon, press hard. \*

16. subsidium, -ī [subsidiō, sit near or in reserve], n., sitting in reserve, reserves; help, aid, assistance. \*

2. tergum, -ī, n., the back; the rear: terga vertere, to flee. \*  
vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, a., n., turn, turn around or about. \*

fugiō, -ere, fugī, n., flee, fly, run away; escape. \*

5. trānō, 1. [trāns+nō, swim], a., n., swim across or over. 1

in-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [veniō, come], a., come upon, meet, find out, discover. \*

6. nāvicula, -ae [dim. of nāvis, vessel], f., skiff, small vessel. \*

dē-ligō, 1. [ligō, bind], a., bind or tie down, fasten, moor. 4

12. ā sinistrō cornū: this was the weakest part of the enemy's line, as stated above (line 3).

13, 14. vehementer... premēbant: does this show that Caesar made a mistake in not taking the command of his left wing? adulēscēns, the young man as distinguished from his father, Marcus Crassus, the triumvir. Many of Caesar's best officers were young men. expeditior: as the cavalry was not engaged in the battle, Crassus was, "freer to act", or had a "more unrestricted" view of the field than any of the other officers.

16. tertiam aciem: which, in accordance with Roman military tactics, was being held in reserve.

labōrantibus nostrīs subsidio, to the assistance of our men who were engaged in a hard struggle. nostrīs subsidio: for case cf. 44, 14.

1. omnēs: as the Germans had no reserves, they fled en masse when the phalanx was broken.

4. quīque: It seems probable that the Germans in flight followed the route by which they had advanced, viz., the valley of the Ill, and reached the Rhine near Rhein-an. See map. viribus, trusting in (confident because of) their strength. The case here is doubtful as cōfido takes either dative or ablative.

6. Ariovistus: he died shortly after this, possibly from wounds received in the battle.

gātā ad ripam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs equitātū cōsecūtī nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, *Fate of the household of Ariovistus.* 10 altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Gal- liā dūxerat, ā frātre mīssam: utraque in eā fugā periit. Fu- ērunt duae filiae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostīs equitātū perse- quentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem 15 quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod ho- *Rescue and tale of Caesar's envoys.* minem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium sibi re- stitūtum vidēbat, neque ēius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et

7. **nanciscor**, -ī, **nactus** (**nactus**) **sum**, *a.*, get, obtain; meet with, find. \*

9. **Suēbus**, -a, -um, of or pertaining to the Suevi (Suebi), Swabian. \*

**nātiō**, -ōnis [**nāscor**, be born], *f.*, race, tribe, people, nation. Usually applied to a distant and barbarous people. \*

10. **Vocciō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a king of Noricum. 1

11. **per-eō**, -ire, *ii*, **itus** (**per+eō**, go], *n.*, go through, pass away, be destroyed, perish. 4

13. **trīni**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.* **adj.** [**trēs**, three], by threes;

threefold, triple. 4

14. **vinciō**, -ire, **vinxi**, **vinctus**, *a.*, bind, fetter. 1

**trahō**, -ere, **trāxi**, **tractus**, *a.*, drag, draw; drag along or in. 2

15. **in-cidō**, -ere, **cidi**, [**cadō**, fall], *n.*, fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, befall. 5

16. **voluptās**, -tātis [**volō**, wish], *f.*, what one wishes; pleasure, delight, enjoyment, satisfaction. 3

17. **honestus**, -a, -um [**honor**, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. 3

18. **hospes**, -itis, *m.*, *f.*, host, entertainer; guest, friend. 3

7. **eā**, in this (*nāviculā*); for the case cf. 17. 6. **reliquōs**: it is stated by Plutarch that 80,000 men were killed in the battle and retreat.

8. **duae uxōrēs**: among the Germans polygamy was permitted in the case of the nobles only.

9. **Suēba nātiōne**, a Swabian by descent. **nātiōne**, for case cf. 49, 8; 1, 12.

11. **dūxerat**, **mīssam**: sc. in *mātrimōnium*.

13. **Procillus**: see 47, 10.

14. **persequentem**, who was pursuing.

16. **voluptātem attulit**: these generous words do credit to Caesar's heart and let us into the secret of his wonderful influence over all who came into close contact with him. See Int. 26.

19. **neque etc.**, nor had Fortune, by injury to him, abated, in any degree (*quicquam*) his great (cause for) satisfaction and rejoicing.

20grātulatiōne quicquam fōrtūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōsultum dicēbat, utrum ignī statim necārētur, an in aliud tempus resevārētur: sortium beneficiō se esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

*Fate of the  
Suebi. Win-  
ter arrange-  
ments.*

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubīi, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perteritōs īnsecūtī māgnūm ex iīs numerum occidērunt. Caesar, 5 ūnā aestāte duōbus māximīs bellīs cōfectīs, mātūrius paulō, quam tempus annī postulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitū dēdūxit; hibernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

20. grātulatiō, -ōnis [grātulor, express joy], *F.*, expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 3

21. ter, *num. adv.* [trēs, three], three times, thrice. 1

statim [stō, stand], *adv.*, as one stands; forthwith, immediately. \*

necō, 1. [nex, death], *a.*, put to death, slaughter, kill. \*

22. re-servō, 1. [servō, save, keep], *a.*, keep back, save up, reserve. 4

23. in-columis, -e, unhurt, uninjured, safe. \*

3. Ubīi, -ōrum, *M.*, a German tribe on the east bank of the lower Rhine, near Cologne. \*

5. aestās, -tatis, *F.*, the hot season: summer. \*

7. prae-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], place or put before or over, put in command of

20. quicquam: for case cf. 35, 17; 31, 22; 20, 6. sē praesente, while he was standing by.

21. ter: a sacred number. sortibus: see on 50, 13. utrum, an: for use in double questions cf. 50, 13. ignī: see 4, 3.

2. domum: for case see on 5, 7.

3. proximī Rhēnum, next to the Rhine. Rhēnum: see on 46, 2, contrast Germānis, 1, 10.

5. ūnā aestāte: usually but one campaign was conducted each year. mātūrius paulō, a little earlier: about the middle of September. The army needed rest after such arduous labors.

6. hiberna: on the winter camp see Int. 139. in Sēquanōs: the stationing of the army on Gallic soil signified Caesar's intention to assume a protectorate over Gaul.

7. Labiēnum: see on 10, 8. He had the rank of *prōpraetor*.

8. ad conventūs agendōs, to hold the *proconsular courts* which Caesar held each year in Cisalpine Gaul. In them he decided such cases as came before him on appeal from the local courts, or were directly within his jurisdiction as *procōsul*. Caesar had another object, for which see Int. 34; also Plutarch's Caesar. For the use of the Gerundive cf. 44, 9; 38, 8.

## BOOK II.—THE CONQUEST OF NORTH- WESTERN GAUL.

---

The transfer of central Gaul from German to Roman control was quietly effected, and the victorious legions were quartered for the winter in the newly acquired territory. The Belgae, alarmed at the turn of affairs, and perhaps affected through their close relations with the Germans, formed during the winter a league of defense, and levied a force of three hundred thousand men, which they massed on the southern frontier. Early in the spring Caesar moved against them. At his approach the Remi, ambitious to gain supreme power in Belgica as the Aedui had in Celtica, came to terms with him, and furnished valuable information regarding the strength of the allied army. At first he did not venture to attack with his greatly inferior force an enemy so noted for daring and warlike skill as the Belgae, but established himself in a strong position on the Axona (*Aisne*) river, and despatched a force of the Aedui under Diviciacus to ravage the territory of the Bellovaci. He hoped by this means to hasten the dissolution which the rivalry and jealousy existing among the allies made inevitable. After an unsuccessful assault upon Bibrax, the chief town of the Remi, the army of the league attacked Caesar's outposts on the Axona, but was defeated in a sanguinary engagement. The coalition at once collapsed, and Caesar was left free to deal with the separate tribes.

Sweeping through western Belgica, he quickly subdued the Suessiones, Bellovaci, and Ambiani. The eastern tribes, however, still remained unconquered and defiant. Forming a second and closer union, the Nervii, Viromandui, and Atrebates assembled a numerous army in the forests near the Sabis (*Sambre*) river, and informing themselves accurately as to the movements of the Roman army, planned to surprise and destroy the legions in turn. When the Roman van reached the stream and began to stake out a camp, the barbarians suddenly burst out of the coverts near by and fell upon it. Caesar was evidently taken unawares. So fierce was the conflict and so imminent the danger, that he seized a shield and fought in the foremost rank. After long uncertainty, Roman tactics and discipline prevailed. The enemy lost heavily, especially the Nervii, who made the last desperate stand and were slain almost to a man.

The battle of the Sabis was decisive. Only the Aduatuci dared to raise a brave but ineffectual opposition. They were quickly subdued, and on account of an attempt at treachery were sold into slavery.

Meanwhile, the coast tribes had submitted to Publius Crassus and the conquest of Belgica was complete. With his customary moderation, Caesar was content with a general disarmament and the furnishing of hostages. The treacherous Remi were elevated to supreme power in Belgica, and were thus more firmly attached to the Roman interest. With the exception of the country of the Menapii and Morini, all of central and northern Gaul was now in the grasp of Rome.

This is one of the most interesting of the Gallic campaigns in its presentation of the strong qualities of the Roman leader. His tactical skill, celerity of movement, energy and courage are seen at their best. Political sagacity and personal power enabled him to secure the submission of many tribes with very little fighting. The surprise at the Sabis on the other hand, was due to his failure to observe the most common rules of prudence in the presence of the enemy. That it was not a disastrous defeat must be attributed entirely to the excellence of his soldiers. The withdrawal of his troops from the *oppidum* of the Aduatuci was a military mistake, and the postponement of the reception of the German envoys was a political one.

---

#### REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.

FROUDE: Caesar, a Sketch, pp. 189-195. (Harper's ed.).

TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. III. (Ancient Classics Series).

MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. IV. pp. 300-304.

MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. I. pp. 265-286.

NAPOLÉON: Julius Caesar, vol. II. pp. 106-131.

## COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita uti <sup>League of the Belgian tribes against the Romans.</sup> suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. 5 Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur, nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōnnūllis Gallis sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut

2. crēber, -bra, -brum [creō, crēcō], thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent; *comp.* crēbrior; *superl.* crēberrimus. \*
- rŭmor, -ōris, m., hearsay, report, rumor, common opinion, reputation. \*
3. afferō (ad-), ferre, attulī, allātus, a., bring, take, or carry to, present, occasion, cause, bring forward, allege. \*
4. contrā, *prep.* with acc., con-

trary to, opposite to, against. \*

6. con-iūrō [iūrō, swear], 1. n., swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. \*

8. sollicitō [sollus = tōtus + cieō, rouse], 1. a., move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. \*

partim, *adv.* [acc. of pars], partly, in part; partim . . . partim, some . . . others. \*

1. esset: for mode cf. I, 23, 2. citeriōre Galliā: Caesar's province south of the Alps, divided by the Padus river into *Gallia Trāspadāna* and *Gallia Cispadāna*.

2. suprā: in I, 54. dēmōnstrāvimus, the rhetorical *we*. Caesar the writer is spoken of in the first person, Caesar the general in the third.

3. certior fiēbat, *was informed from time to time*. The imperfect of repeated action. So in afferēbantur, I, 2.

4. Belgās: they were essentially Celts with some admixture of German blood. "The Belgian is the German grafted on the Gaul." *quam . . . partem, who, we had*

*said*, (see I, 1, 1, 2) *constituted the third part of Gaul*. For *quam* instead of *quōs* (i. e. Belgās) see on I, 38, 3.

6. verērentur: for mood cf. I, 47, 15; 23, 9; 16, 17. nē: meaning after verbs of *fearing*? See on I, 19, 11.

7. omnī Galliā: i. e., *Gallia Celtica*. pācātā: the arrogant Romans looked upon opposition to them as wrong; hence "any war against Rome was a 'conspiracy,' and a nation enslaved by Rome was 'pacified'" (Moberly).

8. Gallis: the Gauls were startled by the quartering of Roman soldiers in Gaul. partim quī, *some of whom*; i. e. the opponents of all foreigners.

Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rō-  
 10mānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā moles-  
 tē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs im-  
 periīs studēbant, ab nōnnūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā  
 potentiōribus atque iis, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facul-  
 tātēs habēbant, volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile  
 15eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant.

Caesar makes  
 preparations  
 and moves  
 against them.

2. His nūntiīs litterisque commōtus Caesar  
 duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit

9. versō [*freq. of vertō, turn*], 1.  
*a., turn or move often, change;*  
*in pass. as dep., dwell, live, be;*  
*be occupied or engaged.*

10. in-veterāscō, -ere, veterāvī  
 [in-vetus, old + -scō], *n., grow*  
*old, become settled or established.*

molestē [molestus], with trouble  
 or difficulty: molestē ferre, be  
 annoyed or vexed.

11. mōbilitās, -tātis [mōbilis,  
 movable], *r., movableness, activ-*  
*ity, speed; changeableness, fick-*  
*leness, inconstancy.*

levitās, -tātis [levis, light], *r.,*  
*lightness, restlessness, incon-*  
*stancy, levity.*

14. volgō (vul-) [vulgus], *adv.,*  
*commonly, everywhere, publicly,*  
*universally.*

10. inveterāscere: how are in-  
 ceptives or inchoatives formed?  
 What action of the verb is implied?  
 A. 167 a; G. 133, V; H. 337; B. 155 1.

11. partim quī, others of whom:  
 cf. l. 8. Caesar probably had in  
 mind the Aeduan faction headed by  
 Dumnorix. novīs imperiīs etc.,  
 desired a new government. impe-  
 riīs: for case cf. I, 25, 20; 18, 19;  
 9, 8.

12. nōnnūllis (sc. sollicitāban-  
 tur); such as Orgetorix, I, 2, Casti-  
 cus, I, 3, and Dumnorix, I, 18.

13. ad... hominēs, for em-  
 ploying mercenaries. For use of  
 Gerundive cf. I, 54, 8; 5, 8; 3, 6.

14. minus facile: the absence  
 of political unity exposed the va-  
 rious tribes to the intrigues of

ambitious chiefs. A centralized  
 government, jealously guarding  
 its own interests and those of the  
 people at large and insisting upon  
 the subordination of the tribe to  
 the nation, was what these petty  
 tyrants most dreaded to see estab-  
 lished in Gaul.

15. imperiō nostrō, under our  
 rule. See for case on I, 18, 23.

2. duās legiōnēs: the XIII and  
 XIV. These, like the two levied  
 the spring before, were raised by  
 Caesar upon his own responsibil-  
 ity: see Int. 32. The eight legions  
 and the auxiliary forces now under  
 Caesar's command had an effective  
 strength, according to Napoleon  
 III, of at least 60,000 men. ūteri-  
 ōrem Galliam: the land of the  
 Sequani.

et initā aestāte, in ūlteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus 5 reliquīsque Gallis, quī finitimī Belgis erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit, quin ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā 10

3. in-eō, ire, ivī (īi), itus, *a., n.*, go into, enter upon, begin; adopt, undertake, form (cōsiliū), estimate (numerus). \* aestās, -tātis, *r.*, (the hot season) summer. \*

dē-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *a.*, lead down or away, withdraw, induce, conduct; (with nāvēs) launch; (with mulierem) marry; unfurl or set (vēla); bring (rem in periculum or aliquem in sententiam). \*

Q. abbreviation for the praenomen Quintus. 3

4. Pedius, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. *E. g.*, Q. Pedius, a nephew of Caesar and one of his legati. 2

5. incipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capiō, take], *a.*, undertake, begin, commence. \*

negōtium, -i [nec + ōtium, leisure], *n.*, concern, business, undertaking, matter; negōtium dare, employ, assign a matter; quid negōtīi, what business. \*

Senonēs, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe about modern Sens. \*

8. cōstanter [cōstō, stand together, be consistent or steadfast], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. 2

9. vērō, *adv.*, [vērus, true], in truth, truly, in fact, assuredly; but, however; but in fact, indeed. \*

3. initā aestāte, after the beginning of summer. For the Abl. cf. I, 40, 8; 25, 5; 16, 11. quī (eās) dēdūceret, to bring them: probably by the pass of Great St. Bernard.

3, 4. Q. Pedium: nephew of Caesar and one of his heirs. He was consul with Octavius in 43. lēgātum: Caesar's lieutenants during this year were T. Labienus, C. Fabius, Q. Cicero, L. Roscius, L. Munatius Plancus, C. Trebonius, Q. Titurius Sabinus, L. Arunculeius Cotta and Quintus Pedius. M. Crassus was his quaestor. cum primum: in the early part of May or June.

5. inciperet: for mode of 1, 1. ad exercitum vēnit: at Vesontio

(Besancon). See map and I, 38.

6. Belgis: for case cf. I, 49, 4; 28, 14; 9, 6; 1, 10. utī ea etc., to find out... and inform him about...

7. gerantur: for mode see on I, 8, 7. cōgnōscant: for mode see on I, 30, 8; so faciant in l. 8.

8. manūs cōgī, that armed bands were gathering. What is the relation of this clause (also the following) to nūntiāvērunt?

9, 10. (sibi) dubitandum... quin... proficīscerētur, that he ought not to hesitate to set out to them. For dubitandum (esse) see on I, 7, 15; for mode of proficīscerētur I, 3, 20.



comparatā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārūm pervēnit.

*Submission of the Remi.*

3. Eō cum de imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opiniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecombogium, prīmōs cīvitatīs, mīsērunt, quī dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in  
5 potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reli-

2. opiniō, -ōnis [opinor, think], *f.*, way of thinking, opinion, reputation, impression, expectation. \*

Rēmūs, -a, -um, belonging to or one of the Remi, as *subst. pl. m.*, the Remi, a Belgic tribe between the Marne and the Aisne. \*

3. Iccius, -ī, *m.*, the name of one of the leaders of the Remi. 3

Andecombogius, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Remi. 1

6. per-mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus [mittō, send], *a.*, let go or loose; give up or over, entrust, commit. \* cōsentīō, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsus [sentīō, feel], *a., n.*, think together, agree, combine; conspire. 3

7. imperātum, -ī, *n.*, order, command. \*

8. cēterus, -a, -um (*nom. sing. m. not in use*), the rest of, the remainder: *in pl.*, the rest, remaining, others. \*

11. ad finēs: Caesar marched in a northwesterly direction from Vesontio to the Belgian frontier, about 145 miles, in fifteen days, including stops for rest. Part of the way he followed the route he had taken the year before when moving upon Vesontio (I, 38, 14 *hūc ... contendit*).

1. eō: to the Belgian frontier. dē imprōvisō, *unexpectedly, suddenly. omnium opiniōne, than any one had anticipated* (lit. *than [the general] opinion*). For case cf. I, 22, 3; 15, 15.

2. Rēmī: they were next to the Aedui in power, having occupied a part of the territory of the Sequani, when the latter fell under the sway of Ariovistus. proximī Galliae, *the nearest of the Belgae to Gaul.*

*i. e.*, on the line of Caesar's march toward the Belgian frontier. ex Belgīs: the Abl. with *ex* or *ē* (also *dē*) is sometimes used instead of the partitive Gen.

4. quī dicerent, etc., *to say that they entrusted themselves and all their possessions to the protection, etc.* The subj. acc. sē is omitted to prevent its concurrence with the object sē. The Remi were impressed by the decision of Caesar's movements. They had not committed themselves to the Belgian coalition, and were able to give Caesar full information of the enemy's designs before they should be carried out.

6. coniūrāsse: for the contraction see on I, 12, 11.

8. recipere: *sc. eōs, i. e., Rōmānōs.*

quōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrere potuerint, quā cum hīs cōsentirent.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitatēs quataeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse sōlōsque esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā omnī Galliā vexā-

*Origin and number of the Belgic tribes.*

9. *cis*, *prep.* with *acc.*, on this side of. 2

10. *con-iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus* [iungō, join], *a.*, join together, unite. \*

11. *furor, -ōris* [furō, rage], *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. 3

*Suessiōnēs, -um, m.*, a Gallic tribe about modern Soissons. 5

2. *sic*, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner.\*

3. *plērique, -aeque, -aque, adj. pl.*, very many, the most of. \*

4. *antiquitus, adv.*, [antiquus, ancient], from early or ancient times, long ago, anciently. \*  
*fertilitās, -tātis, f.*, fertility, fruitfulness. 1

5. *ex-pellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus* [pellō, drive], *a.*, drive out or forth, expel. \*

9. *cis Rhēnum*, on this (the Gallic) side of the Rhine.

10. *sēsē coniūnxisse*, had united: *esse*, was (direct: is).

11. *nē . . . quidem*, not even etc. The words enclosed by these particles are emphasized by such position. *Suessiōnēs*: according to Strabo they ranked next to the Bellovaci in point of valor.

12. *iūre, lēgibus*: for case cf. I, 46, 10; 20, 7; 16, 6.

13. *ūtantur*, possessed, enjoyed.

14. *quā cōsentirent*: for the constr. with *quā* after words of hindrance and trans. see on I, 47, 7.

1. *hīs*: who are meant? See 3, 2.

2. *essent, possent*: for mode cf.

I, 45, 2; 21, 8; 12, 3. For the tense foll. a secondary tense see A. 286; B. p. 243; G. 510; H. 493, 1. *quid possent*, how powerful they were. Cf. a like use of *posse* in I, 3, 20; for case of *quid* cf. I, 53, 20; 20, 6.

3. *plērōsque Belgās*, that most of the Belgae, for the use of the adjective see on I, 22, 1. These (*plērōsque Belgās*) were especially the Nervii and Treviri, who, according to Tacitus, claimed descent from the Germans. *ortōs ab Germānīs*: see on 1, 4.

6. *memoriā*: about 50 years before. For case cf. I, 50, 1; 12, 15. *omnī Galliā*: in the widest use of the word, including the Province.

tā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā finēs suōs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri, uti eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē  
 10 numerō eōrum omnia sē habere explōrāta Rēmī dicēbant, prop-  
 terea quod propīnquitātibus affinitātibusque coniūcti, quan-

7. Teutonī, -ōrum (*gen. pl. some-  
times -um*), *m., a Celtic people of Jut-  
land, who with the Cimbri overran  
Gaul, 113 B. C., and also suffered  
defeat from Marius. 5*

Cimbri, -ōrum, *m., a Celtic people  
from the Cimbric Chersonese (Jut-  
land). Having invaded Italy they  
were defeated by C. Marius near  
Verona, 101 B. C. 5*

intrā [*interior, inner*], *adv. and  
prep. c. acc., inside, into, within. \**

ingredior, gredi, gressus sum  
[*gradior, step, go*], *a., n., go or  
walk into, march or advance up-  
on, enter. 2*

9. spīritus, -ūs [*spirō, breathe*],  
*m., breath, air; high spirit, haugh-  
tiness, pride (mostly in pl.). 2*

10. ex-plōrō, 1. [*plōrō, weep,  
flow*], *a., cause to flow out,  
search or find out, investigate;  
spy out, reconnoitre. \**

11. propīnquitās, -tātis [*pro-  
pinquus, neighboring, near*], *f.,  
nearness, vicinity; nearness of  
blood, relationship. \**



Gallic Warrior.

7. Teutonōs Cimbrōsque: on  
this invasion see Int. 63, and Mom-  
sen, III, pp. 232-235. ingredi  
prohibuerint: hindered from enter-  
ing. The Subj. with nē or quōmi-  
nus is commonly used with verbs of  
hindering but with prohibere Caesar  
always employs the Infīn. or the  
Acc. with Infīn.

9, 10. sūmerent: for mode cf.  
I, 46, 8; 2, 13. dē numerō: i. e., the

numerical strength of the Belgian  
soldiery. omnia... explōrāta, that  
they had ascertained everything. For  
the participle with habeo cf. I, 44,  
40; 18, 10. What one word would  
almost express the meaning of the  
two?

11, 12. propīnquitātibus af-  
fīnitātibusque, relationship by  
blood and marriage. quisque: sc.  
lēgatus, delegate.

tam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārū conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre: hōs posse cōficere armāta milia centum; pollicitōs ex eō nu-15 merō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessionēs suōs esse finitimōs; lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciacum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis hārū regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium ob-20 tinuerit: nunc esse rēgem Galbam: ad hunc propter iūstiti-

12. **commūnis**, -e [mūniō, serve], serving together, hence common, general, universal, ordinary. \*

13. **Bellovaci**, -ōrum, *m.*, a *Belgic* tribe between the *Sequana*, *Samarā*, and *Isara*. The modern city *Beauvais* derives its name from it. Their town *Bratuspantium* (II, 13) is the ruin *Bratuspante* near the modern *Breteuil*. \*

15. **armō**, 1. [arma, arms], *a.*, equip, arm: in *pf. part.*, armed (men, etc.) 1

16. **ēligō**, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctus* [lēgō, choose], *a.*, choose or pick out, select: in *pf. part.*, picked (men, etc.) 1

**sexāgintā**, *ind.*, *num. adj.*, sixty. 1  
**postulō**, 1. [poscō, demand], *a.*, request, ask, demand. \*

17. **ferāx**, -ācis [ferō], productive, fertile. 1

18. **possideō**, -ēre, *sēdī*, *sessus* [potis, able + sedeō, sit], *a.*, to sit as master; hold possession of, occupy, possess. 3

**rēx**, *rēgis* [rēgō, rule], *m.*, ruler, monarch, king. \*

20. **regiō**, -ōnis [regō, direct, mark (by a line), *f.*, direction, line; boundary; quarter, district, region, country. \*

**Britannia**, -ae, *f.*, Britain, Great Britain (*England and Scotland*). \*

21. **nunc**, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. \*

**Galba**, -ae, *m.*, (1) a king of the *Suessiones*. (2) *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a *legatus* of *Caesar* in *Gaul*, said to have been one of his assassins. \*

13, 14. **pollicitus sit**: for mode cf. 4, 2; I, 34, 12; 21, 8; 15, 5. **plūrimum valēre**: almost equivalent to *plurimum posse* cf. I, 31, 22. For case of *plūrimum* cf. *quid* 1.2. **virtūte, auctōritāte, numerō**: for case cf. I, 18, 20; 14, 6 (*eō*). **hōs**: who?

16. **sexāgintā**: *sc. milia*.

17. **suōs finitimōs**: whose neighbors? See line 10, and the map.

19, 20. **Diviciacum**: of course not the *Aeduan* mentioned in Bk. I. The historian *Dio Cassius* gives the *Belgian* King another name, and it may be that *Caesar* is mistaken in the name *Diviciacus*. **cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also. **Britanniae**: not the whole of Britain, but only parts lying opposite to the *Belgian* coast. This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature.

am prūdentiamque summam tōtius bellī omniū voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī milia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs  
 25 habebantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim milia Atrebatēs, Ambiānōs decem milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs VII milia, Caletōs x milia, Velocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduātucōs XIX milia; Condrusōs, Eburōnēs, Caeroesōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL somilia.

22. prūdentia, -ae [prūdēns *contr. fr. prōvidēns*, foreseeing], *f.*, foresight, discretion, prudence. 1

23. dē-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *a.*, bring from or down, convey; confer, bestow. \*

24. quīnquāgintā, *indecl. num.*, fifty. \*

totidem [tot, so many + idem], *indecl. adj.*, just as many, the same number. \*

Nervii, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe, between the (modern) Sambre and Schelde in Namur and Hennegau. \*

ferus, -a, -um, wild, fierce: *fem. as subst.*, wild beast, *cf. ferōx*. \*

25. Atrebas, -bātis, *m.*, an Atrebatian; Atrebatēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), the Atrebates, a Belgic tribe. The name survives in Artois and Arras. \*

26. Ambiānī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgian tribe, chief town Samarobriva, now Amiens. 3

Morinī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe,

near the channel, in Picardy. \*

Menapii, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe between the Meuse and Scheldt. \*

27. Caletī, -ōrum (-ēs, -um), *m.*, a Belgic tribe near the mouth of the Seine. 2

Velocassēs, -um, *m.*, a Belgic tribe on the Seine. 2

Viromandui, -ōrum, *m.*, the Viromandui, a Gallic tribe in the modern Dept. de l'Aisne. 3

Aduātucī, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Belgic Gaul, descended from the Cimbri and Teutones. \*

28. Condrūsī, -ōrum, *m.*, clients of the Treveri, east of the Meuse about modern Condroz. 3

Eburōnēs, -um, *m.*, clients of the Treveri, living between the Meuse and Rhine. \*

Caeroesi, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe in Belgic Gaul. 1

Paemānī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe. 1

29. Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Celtic word meaning "hill-folk." 1

22. summam: the noun; not the superl. adj.

25. longissimē, absint: i. e., from the southern frontier. Their territory extended to the ocean on the northeast.

29. Germānī: this is a Celtic word meaning "hill-folk," and having no reference to Germanic origin. On the formation of leagues among the Gauls see Int. 68, 96.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōratiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre principum-  
que liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae Caesar secures the alliance of the Remi.  
omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciacum Aeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere rei  
pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium disti-  
nērī nē cum tantā multitudīne ūnō tempore cōfligendum sit.  
Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum  
intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs

1. liberāliter [liberālis], graciously, generously, kindly. \*
- prō-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum [sequor, follow], follow (in a friendly or hostile manner), accompany, attend, continue, pursue. 5
4. diligenter [diligēns], adv., carefully; with exactness, pains or care. \*
5. doceō, 2. a., show, teach, instruct, inform. \*

- rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae [rēs, matter + pūblicus], public affairs; state, commonwealth; republic.
6. distineō, -ere, tinuī, tentus [teneō, hold], a., hold or keep apart; sunder, divide, isolate. \*
7. cōn-fligō, -ere, flixi, flictus, a., n., strike or clash together, dash against, contend, fight. \*
9. intrō-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus [intrō, within], lead or bring in, march in, introduce. 3

1, 4. liberāliter...prōsecūtus, and accompanying (his exhortation) with courteous words. liberāliter, diligenter: how are these adverbs formed? A. 148, b; H. 304 iv n. 1; B. 76, 1. senātum: a Roman term used to describe a Gallic institution. obsidēs: Caesar follows his 'gracious speech' by a demand for hostages. diligenter ad diem: the Remi felt that Caesar was not to be trifled with.

5, 6. quantō opere...intersit, how greatly it concerns etc. For the Subj. cf. 4, 13. rei pūblicae salūtis: for the genitive with interest (and refert) see A. 222; B. 59; G. 381; H. 406, III; B. 211. commūnis salūtis: of both Aeduans and Romans. Caesar poses as the champion of Gallie as well as Rom-

an interests.

7. nē...cōfligendum sit, for fear that they (the Romans and Aedui) be compelled to fight. For mode cf. I, 17, 6; 9, 12. For trans. of impers. cf. I, 50, 8; 31, 8; 26, 1; 23, 5.

8. in finēs Bellovacōrum: the Bellovaci were already disaffected because they had not obtained the leadership of the league (see 4, 16 and 22) and the ravaging of their territory would probably draw them away home. Diviciacus and the contingents of the Aedui, Remi and Senones moved northwest from the Roman position (possibly near Chalons on the Marne).

9. intrōdūxerint, coeperint: for future perf. indic. indirect form.

- 10 mandātis, eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vidit neque iam longē abesse ab iīs, quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit.
- 15 Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpis flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum quae essent, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitatibus ut sine periculō ad eum portāri possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi

10. **mandātum**, -ī [mandō, enjoin, command], n., charge, injunction, order, command. \*

13. **Axona**, -ae, m., a river of Gallia Belgica (now the Aisne) a tributary of the Isara (Oise). 2

16. **tūtus**, -a, -um [p. p. of tueor, protect], protected, safe, secure. \*  
**red-dō**, -ere, reddidī, redditus [re-+dō], a., give back, re-

turn, restore; make or cause to be, render. \*

**commeātus** (con-), -ūs [commeō, go and return, make a trip], m., communication, trip; supplies, provisions, (military) stores. \*

18. **ef-ficiō**, -ere, fecī, fectus [faciō], a., make or do completely, complete, perform, accomplish, effect. \*

11, 12. in ūnum locum: somewhere to the north and west of the Axona (Aisne). coāctās venīre, had been gathered and were coming. For the use of the perf. part. see on I, 5, 13. neque... abesse etc., and learned from the scouts whom he had sent and from the Remi that they were not far distant.

13, 14. flūmen... exercitum trādūcere: for the two accusatives cf. I, 24, 1, and see on I, 12, 6. castra: the excavations made by the engineers of Napoleon III. have fixed beyond question the site of this camp. It is the hill of Mauchamp situated on the north bank of the Aisne, between that stream and a little tributary, the Miette, flowing through low, marshy ground which formed an excellent defense in front. The hill is eighty

feet above the river, with gentle slopes well adapted to the deploying of the Roman army.

15. quae rēs, this position. For the relative cf. I, 27, 2; 14, 4. et, correlative with the et after mūniēbat and the et in l. 16; what case therefore is latus? Do not translate the first et. latus ūnum: i. e., the rear. It would seem to be a mistake to have the stream in his rear, but his camp was fortified with great strength and the bridge gave him uninterrupted communication with the country from which his supplies came.

16. essent: for mode see on I, 3, 3. post... reddēbat, rendered safe from the enemy (all) that was behind him.

18. possent: for mode cf. I, 25, 10; 13, 17; 12, 4; I, 6, 5.

praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titurium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in 20 altitudinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine *Assault of the Belgians upon Bibrax.* Bibrax aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnā-

19. Q., abbreviation for praenomen Quintus. 3

Titurius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. \*

20. Sabinus, -ī, m., a Roman cognomen: Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. \*

cohors, -rtis, f., a cohort. The tenth part of a legion, numbering from 300 to 600 men. \*

21. duo-dē-vigintī, card. num. indec., eighteen.

2. Bibrax, -ctis, f., a town of the Remi, supposed to be the modern Bievre. \*

3. aegrē, adv., (aeger), hardly, with difficulty, scarcely; comp. aegrius, sup. aegerrimē. \*

4. sustentō, 1. a. n., (sustineō), to hold up, support, sustain, maintain; to hold out, endure, suffer. 4

op-pūgnātiō, -ōnis [oppūgnō, storm], f., a storming, besieging, assault, attack. \*

19. praesidium: here a 'bridge-head,' defending the north end of the bridge. in alterā parte, on the other side, i. e., at the other end of the bridge thus completing the arrangements for the defense of the bridge, the preservation of which was essential to the safety of his army. The bridge was at Berry-au-Bac, not immediately in the rear of the camp. Although nothing is said about it, it seems probable that a castellum was constructed at the south end of the bridge for the protection of the detachment under Sabinus.

20. sex cohortibus: how many soldiers? See Int. 87 for details about the cohort. castra: the main camp on the hill of Mauchamp. pedum: for case see on

I, 5, 8.

21. duodēvigintī pedum: i. e., in width. When Caesar mentions only one dimension he always means the width, as it was the more important. The depth was about ten feet.

1. nōmine: for case cf. I, 53, 9; 48, 12; 1, 12.

2. Bibrax: this place was north of Caesar's camp, on the present hill of Vieux Laon. ex itinere: i. e., without making any formal disposition of their troops.

3, 4. impetū: for case cf. I, 32, 2; 25, 11. aegrē . . . sustentātum est, translate personally: (the Remi) held out etc. eadem atque: (being) the same as that of the Belgae; for atque=as see on I, 28, 17.



5. *tiō* est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudīne hominū tōtis moenibus undique in mūrū lapidēs iaci coepti sunt mūrūque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā succēdunt mūrūque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōn-

5. *circumiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus* [*iaciō*], *a.,* hurl, set or place around. \*

6. *moenia, -ium, n. pl., [mūnio,]* defensive walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses, a walled town. 4

*lapis, -idis, m.,* a stone. \*

*iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, a.,* make or cause to go; throw, cast, fling; throw up, construct. \*

7. *dēfēnsor, -ōris [dēfendō] m.,* one who wards off or averts; defender, protector. \*

*nūdō, 1. a.,* strip, expose, lay bare, deprive of. \*

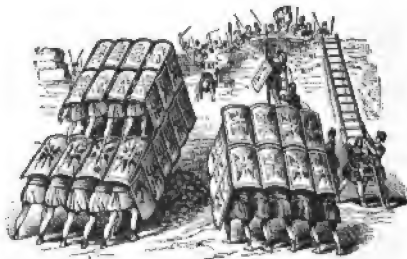
*testūdō, -inis, f.,* a tortoise; a covered column; a shed. \*



*Testūdō fossāria.*

*porta, -ae [portō, carry], f.,* the place left for an entrance, over which the plough was carried marking the limits of a city, hence gate. \*

8. *sub-ruō, -ere, ruī, rutus [ruō, fall], a.,* cause to fall from beneath, dig under, undermine. 2



*Testūdīnēs.*

5. *haec, as follows.* Such bits of information are found frequently in the *Commentaries* and add greatly to their interest and value to the reader. *ubi* etc.: translate the ablative absolute by a coordinate clause, *when a great number of men had been stationed around all the walls, (AND) stones* etc.

6. *moenibus:* for case see on

I, 6, 8. What word is omitted? *iaci coepti sunt:* *began to be thrown.* Why not *coepērunt*? See on I, 47, 3.

7. *dēfēnsōribus:* for case cf. I, 46, 11; 23, 11; 8, 16. Signification of the *-sor (-tor)*? See on I, 9, 4. *testūdine:* see Int. 166.

9. *tanta multitudō:* what was the total number of soldiers? see

sistendī potestās erat nullī. Cum finem oppugnandī nox<sup>10</sup> fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex iīs, quī <sup>Caesar's aid</sup> <sup>is sought.</sup> lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

15

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et

14. **subsidium**, -ī, [subsideō], N., sitting in reserve, reserve; help, aid, assistance. \*  
**sub-mittō**, -ere, mīsi, mīssus, a., send up, send to one's assistance, reinforce. \*

2. **Numidae**, -ārum, M., the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers. 3  
**Crētēs**, -um, M., the Cretans, the people of Crete, modern Candia. 1  
**sagittārius**, -ī [sagitta, an arrow], M., bowman, archer. \*

4, 24-30. **conicerent**: for mode cf. I, 41, 14; 26, 18. 9, 3; plural from the individuals composing the subject, *multitūdō*. This "construction according to the sense" is called *Synesis*. **consistendī**: gerund or gerundive? See on *bellandī* I, 2, 14.

10. **erat nullī**, no one had. for case of *nullī* cf. I, 47, 15; 34, 12; 11, 13.

11. **nōbilitāte, grātiā**: (a man) of the highest etc. for case cf. I, 39, 5; 28, 15; 18, 7.

12. **oppidō**: for case cf. I, 52, 1; 44, 7; 23, 5; 12, 18. **ūnus ex iīs**, one of those. The adj. *ūnus* is used as a substantive in apposition (see on I, 3, 11) with *Iccius*: for *ex iīs* see on 3, 2. **lēgātī**: relation to quī? I, 3, 11.

13, 14. **nūntium . . . mittit . . . nōn posse**, sends word that he cannot.

1, 2. **eō**: to what place? **dē**, about. **isdem . . . vēnerant**, employing the same persons as guides who had come as envoys etc. **isdem**,

for case cf. *lēgibus*, 3, 12. **ducibus**: relation to *isdem*? Cf. *ūnus* 6, 12; so also *nūntiī*. **Numidās**: allies



*Arcus et sagitta. Sagittārius.*

of Rome since the Punic Wars. In earlier times they had belonged to the cavalry, but in Caesar's army they were light infantry. On the *auxilia*, see Int. 99.

*The Belgae, driven from Bibrax, ravage the country and attack Caesar.*

- 5 funditorēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī omnibus vicīs aedificiisque, quō adire potuerant, incēnsīs ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab milibus passuum 10 minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque

3. funditor, -ōris [funda, a sling], m., slinger. 4

Baleāris, -e, Balearic. *The inhabitants of the Balearic isles, Majorca, Minorca, and three others in the Mediterranean, off Spain, were famous slingers.* 1

oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidum], of or pertaining to a town: in pl. as subst., townspeople, *Funda.*



inhabitants of a town. 5

4. dēfēnsiō, -ōnis [dēfendō], f., a defending, defence. 2

5. prō-pugnō, 1. n., fight forth. make sallies; fight for, defend. 3

6. paulisper, adv. [paulum, a little], a short time, a little while. \*

8. ad-eō, ire, ii, itus [eō, go], a. n., go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. \*

10. fūmus, -ī, m., smoke. 2

3. subsidiō oppidānis: for the two datives cf. I, 52, 16; 40, 34; 25, 6. mittit: the auxiliaries probably entered the town on the south side, where the slope of the hill was very steep. The Belgae could not attack effectively on that side and would be likely to leave it unguarded.

4, 5. quōrum ... accessit, by their arrival there came (was added to) the Remi along with the hope of (making a successful) defense, a desire for making sallies (against the enemy). The addition to the defense, though small, was sufficient to give the Remi hope; and the Belgae, not being used to siege operations, were easily discouraged. Caesar showed wise caution in keeping his force of legionaries intact.

7, 8. agrōs: the region north of the Axona. Bibrax was probab-

ly a frontier stronghold of the Remi. morātī, dēpopulātī: What Latin verbs only have a perfect participle with an active meaning? What do morātī and dēpopulātī agree with? Why does not incēnsīs agree with the same? vicīs etc.: the Gallic houses were built of light materials, and had roofs thatched with straw.

9, 10. ab ... duōbus, less than two miles away (from Caesar's camp); ab is here an adverb, and milibus is abl. of degree of difference. castra posuērunt: on the slopes across the Miette and facing southeast. The various contingents probably encamped without much regard to order. In striking contrast was the compact Roman camp, with its impregnable defences, the product of the best military science of the age. ut: part of speech? Cf. I, 22, 3; 16, 3.

ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cōtidiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā oportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plāniciē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat, quantum loci aciēs

*He fortifies his position and prepares for battle.*

1. **significō**, 1. [signum + faciō], a., make signs, show, indicate. \*

1. **primō**, adv., (abl. of primus), at first. \*

2. **eximius**, -a, -um [ex-imō, take out], taken from the mass; hence choice, superior, eminent. 1

3. **super-sedeō**, -ēre, sēdī, sessus, n., sit alone or over (rare); hence refrain or desist from. 1

4. **periclitōr**, 1. [periculum, trial, danger], a., try, test, prove; endanger, risk. \*

6. **oportūnus**, (opp-), -a, -um [ob + portus, before the port], fit, convenient, opportune.

**idōneus**, -a, -um, fit, suitable, adapted.

7. **paululum**, adv. [paululus, very little], a very little; somewhat.

**plāniciēs** (-itiēs), -ēī [plānus, level], f., level ground, plain.

**ē-dō**, dere, didī, ditus [ex + dō, give], give or place forth; raise, elevate.

1. **milibus**: for case cf. 3, 2.

1. **multitudinem**: the total was 296,000: cf. chap. 4.

2. **eximiam . . . virtūtis**, their extraordinary reputation for valor. See I, 1, 6. For the Gen. cf. I, 30, 4; 14, 8. **proeliō**: a pitched battle.

3. **supersedere**: great generals combine caution with daring. **quid** etc., what the enemy could (do) by valor; for case of **quid** cf. 4, 13; 4, 2.

4. **posset**: for Subj. cf. 5, 6; 4, 13. **nostrī**: especially his Gallic cavalry. The Belgae were thought to be better fighters than the Celts. **periclitābātur**, attempted to ascer-

tain by experiment.

5, 6. **locō . . . idōneō**, since the place was etc. The Abl. Abs. for a causal clause. **locō prō castris**: the ridge on which the camp was pitched is two or more miles in length, extending northeast and southwest. The camp was at the northeast end, facing southwest. The Roman army was drawn up along the ridge, facing northwest, with its right wing resting on the camp. **atque idōneō**, and also well adapted. **atque (ac)** gives prominence to that which follows.

7. **paululum . . . ēditus**: about eighty feet.

8. **tantum, quantum loci**, as

instructa occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris  
 10 deiectūs habēbat et in frōntem lēniter fastigātus paulātīm ad  
 plāniciem redībat, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam

9. *uterque, utraque, utrumque*  
 [uter, which of two + -que],  
 both, each.

10. *deiectus, -ūs, m.*, a throwing  
 or casting down, felling; slope,  
 declivity, descent.

*frōns, frontis, f.*, the forehead,  
 brow, front.

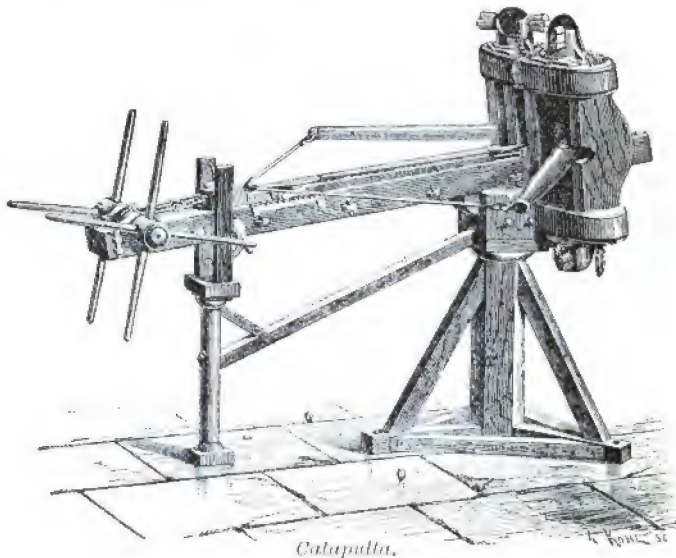
*lēniter* [lēnis], *adv.*, softly, smooth-

ly, gently, gradually.

*fastigatus, -a, -um* [fastīgō, slope],  
 inclined, sloping.

*paulatim* [paulum, a little], *adv.*,  
 little by little, by degrees, grad-  
 ually.

11. *trans-versus, -a, -um* [vertō,  
 turn], turned across, athwart,  
 transverse, at right angles.



Catapulta.

*much space as. loci*: Part. Gen. limiting *quantum*, the obj. of *occupāre*, and put into the relative clause while the English idiom takes it with *tantum*. *quantum loci*: How long would the front of an army of six legions be? See Int. 146.

9. *ex utraque parte*: i. e., on

either side of the ridge at the north-east end, where the camp was.

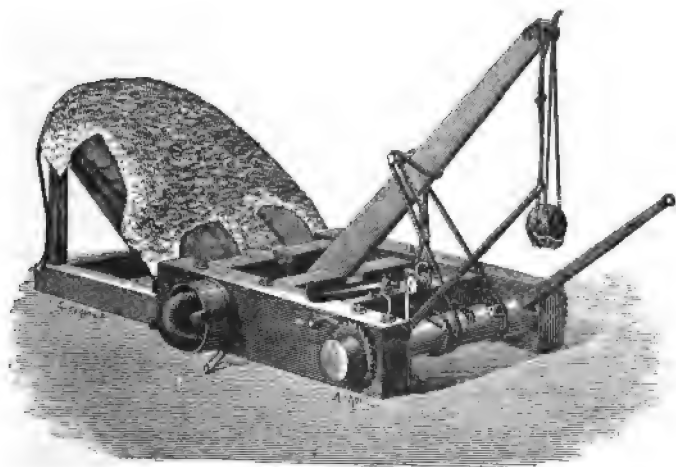
10. *in frōntem*: i. e., the portion of the ridge extending north-east from the camp.

11. *transversam, at right angles* to the ridge. One ditch ran from the camp to the Miette, the other from the camp to the Aisne.

fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitudīne poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō,<sup>15</sup> duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōscripserat, in castris

12. ob-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *α.*, lead forward or towards; prolong, extend.  
13. tormentum, -ī [torqueō,

twist], *ν.*, means of twisting; an engine for hurling missiles, (c. g. *Catapulta* and *Ballista*); *fig.* torment, torture. \*



*Ballista.*

12. ad extrēmās fossās: at the ends of the ditches, i. e., at the ends nearest the two streams. For the force of the adj. cf. *plērōsque* 4, 3. castella: the redoubts were earthworks surmounted by palisades and usually more or less circular in form.

13. tormenta: see Int. 167-169. The enemy could not now take the Roman army in the flank, as the ditches and redoubts effectually closed up the gaps between the

camp and the two streams.

14. quod . . . poterant, because they had such numerical strength. multitudīne: for case cf. 6, 1; I, 48, 12. ab, on; with circumvenire.

15. pūgnantēs: join with suōs and trans. while fighting.

16. proximē: i. e., in the previous spring; see note, 2, 2. Why did Caesar reserve these particular legions?

relictis, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidio dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxerant

*The Belgians attempt to cross the Axona.*

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostrī trānsirent, hostēs expectābant; nostrī autem, si ab illis initium trāseundi fieret, ut impeditōs aggredierentur, parātī in armīs erant.
- 6 Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi neutri trāseundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum proeliō nostris Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum

17. quō [*old dat. of qui*] *adv.*, (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what (place)? (2) *rel.*, whither, to or into which, as far as; (3) *indef.*, (after si, nē, etc.), if any whither, if to any place. \*

opus, *indecl.*, n., [cf., opus, work, deed], need, necessity; used in the predicate with the Nom. of the thing needed; opus est, it is ne-

cessary. \*

1. palūs, -ūdis, f. marsh, swamp; bog, fen. \*

6. neuter, -tra, -trum (*gen.* -trius, *dat.* -tri) [ne+uter], neither: in pl., neither side, neither party. 2

7. prōtinus, *adv.* [tenus, *prep.* fr. teneō, hold], continuously; forthwith, immediately. 5

17. si . . . esset (*sc. dūcī*) in case there should be need of (their being lead) anywhere. subsidio: observe the care with which Caesar provided for contingencies.

18. sex legiōnēs: is this an exact statement? See 5, 20, sex cohortibus etc. prō castris: see note to line 5. The Belgae were drawn up on the opposite side of the Miette.

1. palūs: the marshy ground along the course of the Miette. nōn māgna: figure of speech? cf. I, 52, 4; 42, 20; 1, 8.

2. si: for use see on I, 8, 14.

4. ut aggredierentur parātī, ready to attack. For mode cf. I,

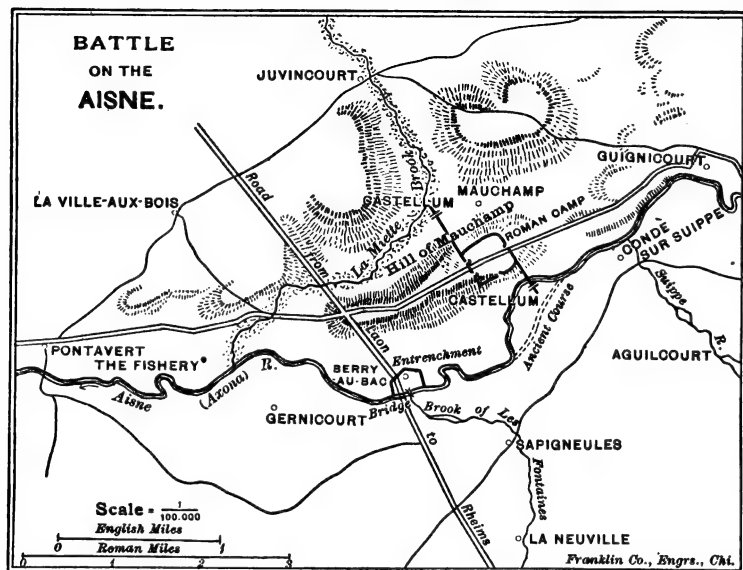
22, 11; 5, 8. impeditōs: i. e., thrown into disorder during the crossing of the stream.

5, 6. inter duās aciēs: on the low ground. secundiore, rather favorable etc.

7, 8. nostris: for case cf. 2, 6; I, 49, 4; 28, 14. ex eō locō: i. e., the place where they had been drawn up in line for battle. contendērunt: Caesar did not perceive this movement, probably because of an intervening forest.

9. vadis repertis: these were on each side of a sharp bend in the Aisne between Pontavert and Gernicourt. It seems strange that Caesar was not aware of their existence.

cōpiārum trādūcere cōnatī sunt eō cōnsiliō ut, sī possent,<sup>10</sup> castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expūgnārent pōn-



temque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum

12. *inter-scindō, -ere, scidi, scissus* [scindō, cut, destroy], *a.*, cut through, tear or break down, cut off (between two points). 2

13. *ego, mei, etc., pers. pron. I;*

*pl. nōs, we, us, etc. \**  
*ūsus, -ūs* [ūtor, use], *m.*, use, experience, service, advantage;  
*ūsus est*, it is necessary; *ūsui* (ex ūsu) of advantage, of service. \*

10. *eō cōnsiliō, ut, etc., with this design, to storm, if they could, etc.* *possent*, represents a future indicative in the mind of the Belgae: "we will storm if we can etc."

11. *castellum*, see on 5, 19. *cui*, for case cf. 6, 12. *expūgnārent*, for mode cf. 2, 7. *pōntem*, see 5, 18.

12, 13. *interscinderent*, in the same construction as *expūgnārent*. *minus, not*, as always after *sī* (cf.

prefix *mis-* in words of French origin). *potuissent*, represents a future perfect indicative in the minds of the Belgae: "if we are not able etc." Why the future perfect idea instead of the future, as in l. 10? *agrōs ... populārentur*: thus at one stroke they would be able to punish the traitorous Remi and to cut off Caesar's supplies. *populārentur*, governed by *ut* in l. 10 and therefore parallel with what



erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

*They are driven back and determine to return home.*

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūrīō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittariōsque pōntem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine
- 5 aggressī māgnū eōrum numerum occidērunt: per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; primōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfecērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellē-

2. *levis*, -e, light (in weight), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant. \*  
armātūra, -ae [armō], f., armor,

equipment; armed soldiers, always with adjective *levis*. 4  
9. *fallō*, -ere, *fefelli*, *falsus*, deceive, cheat, disappoint. 3

two verbs? *māgnō* . . . *ūsui*, of great value to us. For case cf. 7, 3; I, 52, 16.

14. *commeātū*: see Int. 117.



*Funditor. Miles levis armātūrae*

1. *ab Titūrīō*: the lieutenant was about a mile nearer the fords

where the Belgae were crossing the river than was Caesar.

2. *equitātum*: see Int. 100, 101.  
*levis armātūrae*: see Int. 99. For case cf. *legionum* I, 24, 4. *Numidās*: see on 7, 2.

3. *pōntem trādūcit*: the Belgae and Romans were both north of the Aisne. Caesar crossed the bridge to the south bank to oppose the crossing of the enemy.

4. *eō locō*: i. e., where he met the enemy. Probably many had already passed the stream and were advancing toward the bridge. Caesar was not a moment too soon. *impeiditōs*: trans. by a rel. clause, *who were* etc.

5. *aggressī occidērunt*, attacked and slew.

6. *corpora* . . . *trānsire*: the heaps of bodies forming a sort of bridge. *audācissimē*: Caesar often mentions with admiration the valor of the Gauls.

7. *equitātū*: for case cf. I, 53, 7; 16, 6.

8. *hostēs*: the main body of the Belgian army.

xērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredi pūgnandī<sup>10</sup> causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō convocātō, cōstituērunt optimum esse, domum suam quemque reverti et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et<sup>15</sup> domesticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciacum atque Aeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appropīnquāre cōgnōverant. His persuādēri, ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat. 20

10. inīquus, -a, -um [aequus, even], uneven, unequal, unfavorable. \*

prōgredior, gredi, gressus sum [gradior, step], n., step or go forward, come or march out, advance, proceed, go. \*

11. dēficiō, -ere, feci, fectus [faciō], a., n., fail, fall away, desert. \*

12. optimus, -a, -um [superl. of bonus], very good, best, most excellent. \*

15. potius [acc. neut. sing. of po-

tior, comp. of potis, able], adv. rather. \*

dē-certō, 1. [certō, contend], n., fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, contend,, vie. \*

16. domesticus, -a, -um [domus], of or belonging to the home, home, domestic. 2

sententia, -ae [sentio, feel, think], f., feeling, opinion, view, sentiment; decision, sentence. \*

18. ap- (ad-) propīnquō 1. [propinquus, near], n., come near or close to, approach. \*

10. neque nostrōs prōgredi, and that our men did not advance. locum inīquiōrem: the marsh along the Miette. For the reference see 9, 1.

11. ipsōs: the Belgae. rēs... dēficere: see Int. 184. coepit, etc.: the figure *Alliteration*, i. e., the concurrence of words beginning with the same letter or syllable.

12, 13. optimum esse, that it was best. The subj. of esse is the clause *domum... reverti*. reverti: thus dissolving the coalition.

18. Diviciacum: the Aeduan noble. finibus Bellovacōrum:

see on 5, 8. finibus: for case cf. 9, 11; 6, 12.

19, 20. his persuādēri nōn poterat, these could not be persuaded. (lit., it could not be persuaded to them). See on I, 40, 7, 8. neque=et nōn as in line 10. poterat: for trans. of verbs used impers. 5, 7; I, 46, 7; 31, 8; 26, 1. For the *ut* clause as its subj. cf. 4, 9; I, 46, 8; 2, 12. Give the principal parts of occiderunt (5), repulserunt (7), fefellisse (9), reverti (13), cōgnōverant (19). Give the constr. of Tituriō (1) pōntem (3), oppidō (9), sē (9), domum (12), cōpiis (16), his (19).

*They are pursued with great slaughter.*

- 11 Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressi nullō certō ordine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt, ut  
 5 cōsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmatā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum āgmen morārētur, 10 praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefecit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hī novissimōs adorti et multa milia pas-

2. **strepitus**, -ūs [strepō, make a noise], *m.*, noise, rattle, uproar 3 **tumultus**, -ūs [tumeō, swell], *m.*, uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult.\*

3. **ōrdō**, -inis, *m.*, row, order, arrangement, series, rank. \*

4. **properō**, 1. [properus, quick], *a., n.*, hasten, accelerate; make or do with haste. 3

5. **cōn-similis**, -e, very like, just like. 3

**statim** [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately. \*

6. **speculātor**, -ōris [speculor,

spy out], *m.*, scout. 2

7. **perspicio**, -ere, **spēxi**, **spec-tus** [obsol. specio, look], *a.*, see through, discern, perceive; view, examine, inspect. \*

10. **Aurunculēius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. *E. g.*, **L. Aurunculēius Cotta**, one of Caesar's lieutenants. 5

**Cotta**, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. See above. \*

12. **sub-sequor**, **sequi**, **secutus**, *a., n.*, follow closely, follow up or on, succeed to. \*

1. **secundā vigiliā**: about what time of night? See Int. 138.

3. **ordine . . . imperiō**, not in orderly array or under orders. For the Abl. cf. 6, 3; I, 32, 2.

4, 5. **peteret**: for mode cf. 6, 9; I, 26, 18; 9, 3. **fecerunt ut vidērētur**, they made their departure seem. For the mode cf. I, 13, 20; 9, 11 (dent). **fugae**: for case cf. 9, 7; 2, 6.

6. **speculātōrēs**: these were spies, while the **explōrātōrēs** (below, line 8) were regular cavalry detailed for this special service.

7. **exercitum**: i. e., the infantry.

8. **castris** **continuit**: another

instance of Caesar's caution.

9. **quī . . . morārētur**, to delay the rear (of the Belgians). For the mode cf. I, 50, 7; 21, 4; 15, 5. **novissimum āgmen**: the rear guard as a whole, while **extrēmum āgmen** (line 14, below), is the hindmost line of troops. For the order of march see Int. 140-144.

11. **Labiēnum**: see on I, 10, 8. **lēgātum**: name the officers of the legion. **legiōnibus tribus**: how many men? See Int. 86.

12. **subsequi**: to support the cavalry and attack the enemy when overtaken.

suum prösecütī māgnam multītūdinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt, cum ab extrēmō āgmīne, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinē-<sup>15</sup> rent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur, neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multītūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium, sub occā-<sup>20</sup> sumque sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

12. Postridiē ēius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē <sup>Caesar marches against the stronghold of the Suessiones.</sup> hostēs ex terrōre āc fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum

13. fugiō, -ere, fugī, *a., n.*, flee, fly, run away; escape. \*

15. fortiter [fortis, brave], *adv.*, bravely, stoutly, courageously. \*

16. prior, prius, *comp. adj.* [*superl. primus*], former, previous, prior, first: *in pl. as subst.*, those in advance. \*

17. necessitās, -tātis [necesse, necessary], *f.*, necessity, constraint, compulsion. 5

ex-audiō, 4. hear (*from a distance*), discern. \*

clāmōr, -ōris [clāmō, cry out], *m.*, outcry, noise, din, clamor. \*

18. per-turbō, 1. [turbō, disturb], *a.*, disturb greatly, throw in confusion, confound, embarrass, disturb. \*

2. terror, -ōris [terreō, frighten], *m.*, fright, alarm, panic, terror. 5

13. fugientium, *who were fleeing.*

14, 15. cum ... cōnsisterent, *since those in the rear of the (Belgian) army, whom (our men) had overtaken, were making a stand. ventum erat: impersonal. Trans. personally; cf. 10, 20; 6, 7.*

16, 17. priōrēs: *sc. et;* hence pōnerent (l. 18) is in the same constr. as cōnsisterent and sustinērent. vidērentur, continērentur: *for mode of. 1, 8; 1, 6.*

19, 20. tantam ... spatium, *as great a number as the length of the day permitted.*

1, 2. priusquam ... recipere: Caesar's plan for separating the Belgic tribes having been carried out successfully, it only remained for him to subdue them one by one. For mode of *recipere* see on I, 19, 13.

3. Suessiōnum: *for this people see on 3, 11.*

dūxit et māgnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum con-  
 5 tendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab  
 dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae  
 mūrīque altitudinem paucīs dēfendentibus expūgnāre nōn  
 potuit. Castrīs mūnītis, vīneās agere quaeque ad oppūgnan-

4. **Noviodūnum**, -ī, n., (1) *the capital of the Suessiones, the modern Soissons*, (2) *a city of the Bituriges, now Nouan*; (3) *a city of the Aedui, now Nevers*. 5  
 5. **vacuus**, -a, -um, [**vacō**, be empty,], empty, void, free, destitute, unoccupied.

6. **audiō**, 4., a., hear, hear of: *in pr. p. as adj., obedient.*

8. **vīnea**, -ae [vīnum, wine], f., a vineyard, vine arbor, *hence a shed (for the defence of a besieging party).*



Vallum et Fossa.

a b c d. fossa fastigata, 9 ft. wide and 7 ft. deep.

f m n o. vallum, 6 ft. high and 6 ft. wide at top.

p p. palisades. s to r, ascending steps.

4. **māgnō itinere**: about 28 miles. **Noviodūnum**: Caesar marched west along the south bank of the Aisne.

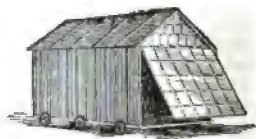
5. **ex itinere**: **ex** is here employed to denote the immediate succession of events: i. e. Caesar began the assault immediately at the end of the march, although it was late in the day and his troops were very tired from the long march.

6. **lātitudinem** etc.: Gallic towns did not often have such strong fortifications. Possibly Caesar is here plausibly accounting for this, his first reverse in Gaul.

7. **paucīs dēfendentibus**: the

Abl. Abs. for a concessive clause. Trans., *although but few were defending it.*

8. **castrīs mūnītis**: see Int. 130-132, and cut of *vallum* and *fos-*



Vīnea.

sa. **vīneās**: see Int. 160. **quaeque** = *et quae* (not from *quisque*). For siege operations see Int. 158-163.

dum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessionum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit.<sup>10</sup> Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōstitūtīs māgnitūdine operum, quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur, impetrant.

15

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primīs civitātis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duobus filiīs armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem Suessionēs accēpīt exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē

*Caesar proceeds against the Bellovaci, who sue for peace.*

11. **agger, -eris** [ad + gerō, carry], m., materials for a mound or earthwork; a mound, rampart; embankment.

**turris, -is, f.**, tower.

12. **māgnitūdō, -inis** [māgnus great], f., greatness, great size,

extent, stature (corporum).

13. **celeritās, -tātis** [celer, quick], f., quickness, swiftness, speed, promptness.

15. **cōservō, 1. [servō, save], a.**, save, spare; protect, maintain.

9, 10. ūsuī, for case cf. 9, 13. **omnis multitudō**: how many? See 4, 24. They probably crossed the Aisne and entered the town on the north side, which Caesar had not had time to invest. Had he been able to do so, it seems certain that he would have prevented their entrance. **ex fugā**: see on *ex itinere* line 5. The Suessiones ended their flight and at once entered the town.

11. **āctīs, moved up. aggere iactō, after an earthwork had been constructed.** See vertical section of *agger*. **vineīs, aggere, turribus**: state the use of these Ablatives Absolute. **turribus**: see Int. 163.

12, 13. **quae ... audierant**: these Gauls had not hitherto come in contact with the Romans. See I, 1, 6-9

14, 15. **petentibus ... cōserv-**

**vārentur, since the Remi** (whose allies they had been) *asked that they be spared. Rēmīs*: case? For the ut clause as obj. cf. I, 45, 4; 39, 14; 7, 13; 3, 13. **impetrant, they** (the Suessiones) *obtain their request. cōservārentur*: i. e., should be granted life and liberty.

1. **primīs**: the foremost citizens, not necessarily the public functionaries.

2. **Galbae**: the former head of the league; see 4, 22.

4. **in Bellovacōs**: west of the Suessiones. **dūcit**: Caesar probably followed the south bank of the Aisne to its junction with the Oise and there crossed the latter stream. See map. **quī cum, now when these**. For the use of the Rel. cf. 5, 15; I, 27, 2.

See Int. 158-166.

**A F, Represents the enemy's wall.**

*A B C D E*, Section to be filled.

**A B E**, Part especially exposed to the enemy's missiles to be filled at last in any way possible.

**qq D, Part already constructed.**

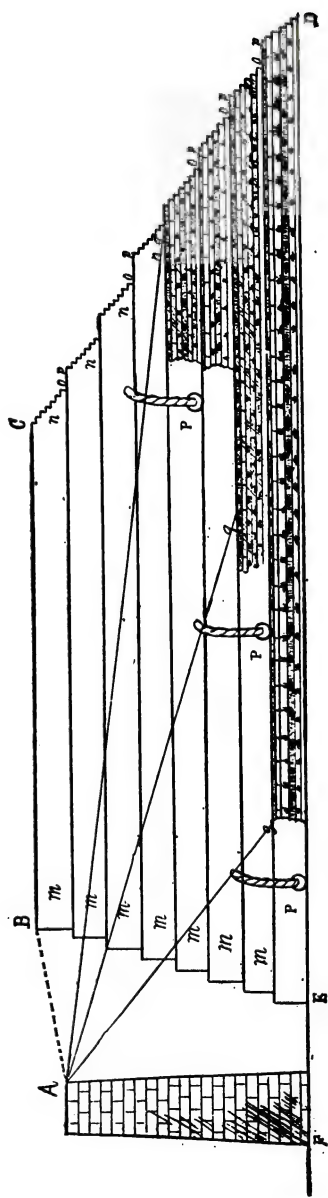
*m n*, Covered passages through which material is carried.

**Stairs leading from one story to another.**

**Step 1. Steps.**

**P P P.** Lines of *plutei* protecting the men at work.

The lines of direction show the spaces protected by the *plutei*.



suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Diviciacus (nam post discessum Belgārū dīmīssis Aeduōrū cōpiīs ad eum re-  
Diviciacus  
pleads for the  
Bellovaci.  
 verterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē

5. **Bratuspantium**, -ī, n., a town of the Bellovaci, now Breteuill. 1

7. **nātus**, -ūs [nāscor, be born], m., birth: **māiōrēs nātū**, greater by birth; elders, ancestors. 3

8. **tendō**, -ere, **tetendī**, (tentus), **tēnsus**, stretch, stretch out, extend. 4

**vōx**, **vōcis**, f., voice, cry, sound: word: pl. words, language,

speech; **māgnā vōce**, with a loud voice. \*

11. **pandō**, -ere, **pandī**, **passus** [cf. **pateō**, extend], spread or stretch out, extend: **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands. 4

1. **discessus**, -ūs, [discēdō, go asunder], m., a going asunder, departure, withdrawal; defec-tion. \*

5. **Bratuspantium**: see map. Caesar would march northwest from the crossing of the Oise to reach it.

6. **milia**: for case see on I, 2, 17. **circiter** here is not a preposi-tion.

8, 9. **vōce**: i. e. cries of suppli-cation in an unknown tongue. in **fidem ac potestātem**, under his protection and power; a form of submission for which cf. 3, 4.

11, 12. **pueri**, children (of both sexes). **ex**, (standing) on. **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands. What does the abl. abs. here ex-press? **mōre**: for case cf. I, 50, 1 (**īnstitūtō**); 44, 7 (**iūre**); 4, 2 (**mō-ribus**).

1, 2. **prō hīs**, in behalf of these

(Bellovaci). **discessum Belgā-rum**: described in chap. II.

3, 4. **facit verba**, speaks. Give the direct form in both Latin and English. **omni . . . fuisse**, had (di-rect: have) always been under the protection and friendship of the Aeduan (direct: our) state. **fidē at-que amicitia**: cf. the formula in 13, 9; the Bellovaci were clients of the Aedui, retaining, however, their independence and the control of their own army. Another class of client peoples existed in Gaul, which had ceased to form separate states and whose soldiers were in-corporated into the armies of the states under whose control they were. **principibus**: the leading citizens.



atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae fuisse: impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicerent Aeduos a Caesare in servitum redactos omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Aeduis defecisse et populo Romano bellum intulisse. Qui eius consilium principes fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Aeduos, ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificatum; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustinere consueverint.

*Caesar grants terms to the Bellovac.*

15. Caesar honoris Diviciaci atque Aeduorum causam sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservare

4. *impellō* (in-), -ere, *pulī*, *pulsus* [pellō, drive], *a.*, drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. \*  
 5. *redigō*, -ere, *ēgi*, *actus* [agō, put in motion], *a.*, drive or bring back; get together, collect; render, reduce. \*  
 6. *indignitas*, -tatis [indignus, unworthy], *r.*, unworthiness, outrage, disgrace. 2  
 9. *pro-fugiō*, -ere, *fūgi*, [fugiō, flee], flee from or before, run away, escape. \*

11. *clēmētia*, -ae [clēmēns, gentle], *r.*, gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. 2  
*mānsuetūdō*, -inis, [mansuetus, tame], *r.*, tameness; gentleness, compassion. 2  
 12. *amplificō*, 1. [amplus, full all around + facio], *a.*, extend, enlarge, increase, expand. 2  
 13. *incidō*, -ere, *cidī*, [cadō, fall], *n.*, fall into or upon; fall in with, meet, happen, occur. 5

5. *dicerent*: for the mode see on I, 7, 12. Point out the other illustrations of this principle in this speech. *Caesare*: direct, by you. For case cf. I, 17, 10; 16, 17.  
 6. *indignitates*, etc.: under the vigorous military rule of Labienus (cf. I, 54, 7) the Aedui had already largely lost their independence. *Aeduus*: for case cf. 6, 7.

7. *populō*: for case cf. 10, 18; 9, 11; 6, 12. *quī*, those who; *sc.* eos, subject of *profugisse* line 9.

9. *Britanniam*: the relations between the Belgae and Britons were quite close. See 4, 19-21.

10, 11. *ut ... utatur*, to exer-

cise his (well known) clemency etc. For the mode cf. 12, 15: for the Abl. cf. 7, 1; 3, 12. Notice carefully the change to primary tenses in ll. 11-14, and see on I, 7, 13. Give the regular tense for each verb.  
 13. *si qua*, if any, may be translated *whatever*.

14. *consueverint*: *sc.* Aeduī.

1, 2. *honoris ... causā*: for meaning see on I, 18, 15. Caesar desired to strengthen the Aeduan power. *Diviciaci*: for case cf. 8, 2. *conservatum*: see on 12, 14. What must be supplied to complete the verb?

tūrum dixit; quod erat civitās mǎgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitudine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātis, 5 ab eō locō in finēs Ambianōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdēdērunt. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nullum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vinī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxu-10 riam pertinentium inferri, quod iis rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtutem existimārent: esse hominēs ferōs mǎgnaeque virtūtis, increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs

*The Ambiani  
surrender.  
Situation of  
the Nervii.*

4. sexcentī, -ae, -a [centum, a hundred], six hundred. 3

7. mora, -ae [moror, delay], *f.*, delay. 4

dē-dō, -ere, didi, ditus [dō, give], *a.*, give up or over, yield, surrender; sē dēdere, submit, surrender. \*

9. aditus, -ūs [eō, go], *m.*, going to, access, approach. \*

10. vinum, -i, *n.*, wine. 1

lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, luxury, high living. 1

11. re-languēscō, -ere, languī [languēō, be faint], *n.*, grow faint or weak. 1

12. re-mittō, -ere, misi, missus, *a.*, send or drive back, return, restore; remit, release, relax. \*

13. increpitō, -āre [freq. of increpō, chide], *a.*, call or cry out to, chide, taunt, banter, blame. 2

incūsō, 1. [causa], *a.*, bring a charge against, complain of, upbraid, blame. 2

3. auctōritāte: for case cf. 6, 11.

4. multitudine: for case cf. 8, 14; 6, 1. sexcentōs obsidēs: Caesar combines mercy and firmness in his treatment of the Belgae.

6. eō locō: Bratuspantium. finēs Ambianōrum: north of the Bellovaci: Trace on the map Caesar's route from Berry-au-Bac to this point.

8. Nervii, they occupied the basin of the Sambre River; Bagacum, now Bavay, was their capital.

9, 10. nūllum etc.; change to dir. disc. aditum... mercātōribus, that traders had no access to them. Cf. I, 1, 8. For case of mercātōribus cf. 6, 10. nihil patī vinī:

the most of the Gauls were addicted to the use of intoxicants. The temperate habits of the Nervii were a mark of their Germanic origin. vinī, rērum: for case cf. 8, 8.

11. relanguēscere: for signif. of the ending -scō see on 1, 10.

13. mǎgnae virtūtis, of great valor. For the case see A. 216; B. 58; G. 365; H. 396 V; B. 203. What special use of this genitive has already occurred in 5, 21; I, 38, 1; 5, 8? Could the ablative have been used here? increpitāre, they kept chiding. For the formation and signification of *Intensives* or *Iteratives* (*Frequentatives*) see A. 167 b; G. 191 A, 1; H. 336; B. 155 2.

Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque vir-  
 15 tūtem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs  
 neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

*The Nervii  
 encamp at the  
 Sabis, pre-  
 pared for bat-  
 tle.*

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset,  
 invenīebat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ab castris  
 suis nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse: trāns id  
 flūmen omnēs Nervīōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmā-  
 6 nōrum expectāre ūnā cum Atrebatibus et Viromanduis, fi-  
 nitimīs suis (nam hīs utrīque persuāserant, utī eandem belli  
 fōrtūnam experirentur); expectārī etiam ab hīs Aduātucō-  
 rum cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs, quīque per aetā-  
 tem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum conīēcisse,  
 10 quō propter palūdēs exercitū aditum nōn esset.

14. patrius, -a, -um, of a father,  
 paternal, ancestral. 1

2. in-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus,  
 a., come upon, find out, dis-  
 cover. \*

Sabis, -is, m., a tributary of the  
 Meuse, now the Sambre. 2

7. experior, perirī, pertus sum,  
 a., prove, try, test, experience. \*

8. aetās, aetātis [contr. of aevi-  
 tās, fr. aevum, age], f., period  
 of life, age. \*

9. in-ūtilis, -e [ūtilis, useful], use-  
 less, worthless, unserviceable. \*

14. dēdidissent: this verb (and  
 prōiēcissent l. 15) would have the  
 subjunctive in the direct form also:  
 see A. 320 e Note; G. 626; H. 517;  
 B. 283, 3, a.

15. cōfirmāre . . . missūrōs,  
 asserted that they would not etc.  
 Give the principal parts of prae-  
 stābat (4), poposcit, trāditis, col-  
 lātis (5), attingēbant (8), quaere-  
 ret (9), patī (10).

1. trīduum, for three days: for  
 the case of I. 1, 26, 15; 3, 12. What  
 other case might have been used?  
 Cf. I, 38, 1.

2. Sabim: see map for its  
 course. Crossing the river Samara  
 (Somme) at Amiens, Caesar turned  
 to the northeast and marched to  
 Bavay. Here he halted to ascer-  
 tain the whereabouts of the Nervii.

castris: at Bavay.

3, 4. trāns flūmen: i. e., on  
 the south bank. cōnsēdisse: prob-  
 ably at Hautmont, a few miles  
 southwest of Maubeuge.

5, 6. Atrebatibus: for case see  
 on I, 10, 12. hīs utrīque, both  
 of these. For case cf. imperiis 1, 11.

7, 8. experirentur: for mode  
 cf. 14, 11; 12, 15. ab hīs: i. e.,  
 the Nervii. quīque: and (the men)  
 who; sc. eōs (the men) as object of  
 conīēcisse line 9. Cf. quī 14, 7.

9, 10. eum locum quō, a place  
 where: either Thuin, a short dis-  
 tance northeast of Hautmont, or  
 Mons, ten miles north. quō, to  
 which; the relative adverb instead  
 of the relative pronoun with ad  
 (=ad quem). exercitū . . . esset:  
 for trans. and case cf. mercātoribus  
 15, 10.

17. His rebus cōgnitis explōrātōrēs centuriō- <sup>Plans of the Nervii.</sup>  
nēsque praemittit, quī locum idōneum castris dēligant.  
Cum ex dēditiciis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Cae-  
sarem secūtī unā iter facerent, quīdam ex his, ut postea ex  
captivis cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine itineris 5  
nostri exercitūs perspectā nocte ad Nervios pervēnerunt at-  
que his dēmōstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimētō-  
rum māgnū numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam  
negōtīi, cum prima legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiō-  
nēs māgnū spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adoriri; 10

1. centuriō, -ōnis [centuria a division of one hundred], M., a centurion, the commander of a century; a captain.

4. quī-dam, quae-dam, quod- (subst. quid-) dam, indef. pron. used of that which is possible, but not clearly known; a certain,

a certain one, somebody, something: in pl., some certain.

5. cōsuētūdō, -inis [cōsuēscō, become accustomed], F., habit, practice, custom, prevalent form or usage; intimacy, companionship.

1. explōrātōrēs: see on 11, 6.  
centuriōnēs: see Int. 91-93.



Centuriō.

Licitor.

2. quī dēligant, to select: see Int. 129. For the use of the rel.

and the mode cf. 11, 9. castris: for case cf. 11, 5; 9, 7; 2, 6.

3, 4. dēditiciis: what tribes had submitted? Caesarem... facerent, followed Caesar and were marching along (with him). secūtī: trans. as a coordinate verb, cf. 5, 11. facerent: for mode cf. 11, 4; 6, 9.

5, 6. eōrum... perspectā, having noticed our army's usual plan of march during these days. A noticeable accumulation of genitives. diērum and exercitūs limit itineris. cōsuētūdine: for order of march see Int. 140.

7. inter singulās legiōnēs, between every two legions. impedimētōrum: see Int. 118, 119.

8, 9. neque... negōtīi, and it was no trouble (not anything of difficulty). For the case cf. 15, 10; 8, 8. in castra: i. e., to the place selected for the site of the camp.

quā pulsā impedimentisque direptis futūrum, ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Adiuuābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium, quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiis) quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs enātis et rubis sentibusque

11. diripiō, -ere, ripuī, repta [rapiō, seize], a., rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. \*

12. ad-iuvō, -āre, iuvī, iūtus [iuvō, aid], a., aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. 5

15. quisquis, quaequae, quod-quod or quidquid, or quicquid, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whatever, each, all. 2

pedester, -tris, -tre [pēs], on foot, pedestrian; pedestres cōpiae, infantry. \*

16. praedor, 1. [praeda, booty],

a., make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. \*

17. tener, -era, -erum, soft, tender; of tender age, young. 1

arbor, -oris, r., tree. \*

incidō, -ere, cidi, cīsus [caedō, cut], a., cut into, notch. 1

18. rāmus, -ī, m., branch, bough, twig. 3

ē-nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, n., be born from, spring or sprout up. 1

rubus, -ī, m., bramble. 1

sentēs, -ium, pl. m., briers, thorns. 1

11. futūrum (esse) ut, the result would be.

12. adiuuābat etc., the fact that the Nervii... assisted the design of those who reported the matter. The clause quod... effecerant (l. 19) is the subject of adiuuābat, which is here used impersonally.

13, 14. cum... possent, since they had no strength in cavalry. equitātū: for case cf. 15, 4; 8, 14. nihil possent: for trans. cf. quid possent. 4, 2. ei rei, this branch of the service, i. e. cavalry. For case cf. imperiis with same verb 1, 11.

15. quicquid... cōpiis, what-

ever strength they have consists in infantry. quō etc., in order to check the more easily etc. For quō in final clauses cf. I, 14, 14; 8, 7. What case is quō?

17. teneris arboribus, etc.: the trees were notched and bent when young and the branches were trained to grow out sideways. In the spaces not filled by this method thorn-bushes were planted and by these means an impenetrable hedge was made. Napoleon remarks that hedges very similar to those here described are to be found at the present day in this part of France

interiectis effecerant, ut instar mûri hae saepēs mûnimenta praebèrent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quī-  
dem posset. His rēbus cum iter āgminis nostrī impedirētur,  
nōn omittendum cōsiliū Nervii existimāvērunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī <sup>Position of  
the two  
armies.</sup> castris dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequaliter  
dēclivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergē-  
bat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitāte collis nāscēbātur, ad-  
versus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus 5

19. intericiō, -ere, iēcī, iectus  
[iāciō], *a.*, throw or hurl be-  
tween; put, set or place between;  
interpose, interject. \*

efficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [faciō],  
*a.*, make or do completely, com-  
plete, perform, accomplish, ef-  
fect. \*

instar, *n.*, indecl., likeness; with *gen.*,  
like, in the manner of. 1

saepēs, -is [saepiō, hedge in], *f.*,  
hedge. 2

mûnimentum, -ī [mûniō, fortify],  
*n.*, fortification, bulwark, protec-  
tion, defence. 1

20. praebēō, 2. [prae + habeō],  
*a.*, hold out, proffer, offer, fur-  
nish, present. 5

intrō, 1. *a.*, go or walk into, enter,  
penetrate. 3

22. omittō, -ere, misi, missus  
[ob], *a.*, let go or fall; give up,  
neglect; pass over, omit. 3

2. aequaliter [aequalis, equal],  
equally, uniformly, regularly,  
evenly. 1

3. dē-clivis, -e [clivus, a slope],  
sloping downwards, declining;  
*as subst.*, slope. 4

nōminō, 1. [nōmen, name], *a.*, call  
by name, name, mention, give a  
name to. 3

4. ac (ad)-clivitās, -tātis [accli-  
vis, rising], *f.*, a rising or as-  
cending upwards, an acclivity,  
ascent. 1

nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum, *n.*, be  
born or produced; rise, spring  
up, proceed. \*

5. contrārius, -a, -um [contrā],  
lying over against, opposite,  
facing. 4

īferus, -a, -um, below, beneath:  
*comp.*, inferior, lower, further  
down, inferior: *sup.*, infimus, or  
imus, lowest, at the foot or  
bottom. \*

20, 21. quō . . . posset: change  
from the passive and impers. con-  
str. and trans., into which one not  
only could not penetrate but could  
not even see. quō is the rel. adv.  
for *in quae*, cf. 16, 10.

1. locī: on the north bank of  
the Samore, opposite Hautmont.  
locum: omit in translation; cf. I,  
29, 3; 16, 10; 6, 1.

2, 3. collis: called Neuf-Mesnil,

on the north bank. ab . . . dēcli-  
vis, with a uniform descent from the  
summit. summō: the abl. sing.  
neut. of summus, used as a noun.

4. parī acclivitāte, of equal  
steepness (to that of the other hill).  
For the case cf. 15, 3; 6, 11. col-  
lis: called Hautmont, on the south  
bank. huic: the height on the  
Roman side of the river. contrā-  
rius: parallel to the other hill.

apertus, ā superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum 10 trium.

*Arrangement  
of the forces.*

19. Caesar equitatū praemissō subsequēbatur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque āgminis aliter sē habebat, āc Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostī appropinquābat, cōsuetūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proxumē cōscriptae erant, tōtū

6. *silvestris*, -e [*silva*, forest], of a wood or forest, wooded, woody.

*intrōrsus* [*contr. of intrōversus*], *adv.*, into the interior, into, inside, within.

7. *occultus*, -a, -um [*occulō*, cover up], covered, concealed, secret: in *occultō* (*n. as subst.*), in a secluded or secret place.

8. *secundum*, *prep. with acc.* [*sequor*, follow], of place, by, along:

of time, rank, etc., after, next; *fig.*, agreeably or according to.

*statiō*, -ōnis [*stō*, stand], *r.*, a standing or stationing; a military post or station; sentries, pickets, outposts.

2. *aliter* [*alius*, another], otherwise, in a different manner, differently; *with atque (āc)*, *quā* otherwise than, different from what.

6, 7. *apertus*: as the slope of the hill began at the river bank (cf. *ab flūmine*, etc. l. 4) this must mean that the hill was bare of trees for two hundred feet up the slope. *ut . . . posset*: for trans. cf. 17, 20: for the mode cf. I, 25, 10.

8, 9. *stationēs equitum*: these drew the attention of the Roman van away from the woods and prevented their discovery of the presence of the foe. *pedum*: for case cf. 5, 21; I, 38, 1; 5, 18.

1. *praemissō*: i. e., from Bavy. Caesar, after describing the disposition of the Nervian forces, takes up the thread of his narration of events where he had dropped it in 17, 2.

2, 3. *omnibus cōpiis*, with all his troops. The Abl. of Accompaniment often omits *cum* in military expressions: for the regular form cf. 16, 5. *sē habēbat āc*, was different from what the Belgae had reported to the Nervii (lit., had itself otherwise than). For the number see on *dividit* I, 1, 5. *dētulerant*: see 17, 6 ff.

4. *cōsuetūdine*: for case cf. 13, 12; I, 50, 1; 44, 7. *expeditās*: see Int. 119.

6. *duae legiōnēs*: the XIIIth and XIVth, see 2, 2; 8, 16. As the enemy was known to be in front, the rear guard would not be brought into battle and these new legions were stationed there. On the order of march in general see Int. 140.

āgmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāsgressi cum hostium equitatū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rursus ex silvā in 10 nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs insequi auderent, interim legiōnēs sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs, quī in silvis abditī *The Nervii suddenly attack the Roman camp.* 15 latēbant, visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convenerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ordinēque constituerant atque ipsi sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus

8. trāsgredior, -ī, gressus, a., n., (trans + gradior), to go or pass over; to cross.

10. identidem, again and again. 1

12. porrigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus [por=prō+rēgō, rule] a., reach or stretch forth, extend. 1

cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessum, to yield,

withdraw, retreat, retire.

14. di-mētiōr, -iri, mēnsus sum,

a., measure out or off, measure. 2

16. lateō, -ēre, -ui, n., escape notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. 2

18. subitō [subitus, sudden, fr.

subeō, come up secretly from under], adv., suddenly, of a sudden.\*

7. praesidiō, impedimentis: for cases cf. 9, 13; 7, 3. equitēs: see Int. 100, 101.

8. funditōribus, sagittāriis: see Int. 99.

10. reciperent: for the mode cf. 4, 1; 2, 5; 1, 1; so facerent l. 11 and auderent l. 13.

11. longius quam etc., further than the limit to which the (stretch of) open ground extended.

12. ad finem: the antecedent attracted into the relative clause: cf. I, 40, 29; 22, 16; 12, 17. From our idiom we should expect ad finem ad quem. porrēcta, lit. stretched out, agrees with loca and is pleonastic, having the same meaning as pertinēbant; it may be omitted in English or translated as above.

cēdentēs, acc. pl., the cavalry of the enemy; trans. as (or when) they retreated.

14. opere dimēnsō, the work having been measured off. What kind of a verb is the participle derived from? For its use here see on I, 11, 10. The work had been done before the arrival of the legions. See Int. 130. castra mūnīre: the IXth and Xth began digging on the left of the site of the camp, the XIth and VIIIth in front and the XIIth and VIIth on the right. prima impedimenta: i. e. the head of the baggage train.

16, 17. quod ... convenerat, the time which had been agreed on etc. tempus: attracted into the relative clause very much as finem l. 12 above; trans. as if tempus, quod etc. For the meaning of convenerat cf. I, 36, 12. ut intrā silvas etc., as they had arranged their line and ranks within the forest and had pledged each other etc.



cōpiis prōvolāverunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt.  
 20 His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātis, incrēdibili celeritāte ad flū-  
 men dēcurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore ad silvās et in  
 flūmine et iam in manibus nostris hostēs vidērentur. Eā-  
 dem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs,  
 quī in opere occupāti erant, contendērunt.

*Critical con-  
 dition of the  
 Romans.*

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda:  
 vēxillum prōpōnendum, quod erat insīgnē, cum ad

arma concurrī oportēret, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere re-

19. prō-volō, -āre, -āvī. [volō, fly], *n.*, fly or rush forth. 1

20. prō-turbō, 1. [turbō, disturb], *a.*, drive in confusion, dis- lodge, repulse. 2.

21. dē-currō, -ere, curri (cucur- ri), cursus [currō, run], *n.*, run. from or away, hurry off; run down 4

2. vēxillum, -ī [*dim. of vēlum*], *n.*, standard, banner, flag. 3

3. con-currō, -ere, curri, cursus [currō, run], *n.*, run or rush to- gether, run to, hasten; rush against, charge. \*

tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. 3  
 re-vocō, 1. *a.*, call back, recall, call off, withdraw. 5

21. ūnō tempore: it is esti- mated however, that the actual time was about twenty minutes. The Ro- man camp was three quarters of a mile from the river and there was some delay in fording the river. Caesar was too busy to note the flight of time.

22. vidērentur, *seemed*. For the mode cf. 18, 7.

23. adversō colle: *up the hill* (lit., *the hill being against them*). i. e., up the hill facing them as they dashed down to the stream. castra: i. e., the site of the camp.

24. opere: i. e. of fortifying the camp. contendērunt: the attack was a complete surprise. The Ro- man *speculātōres* had not scouted properly and Caesar himself was apparently careless in not having troops in line of battle to repel the attack, as was the usual method.

1. Caesarī: for case cf. I, 38, 5; 37, 9; 11, 15. omnia . . . erant agenda, Caesar had to do everything

at once. Supply *erat* or *erant* with each of the following nominatives, thus completing the second peri- phrastic conjugation.

2. vēxillum: see Int. 123.



Vēxillum.



Tubae.



3. sīgnum tubā dandum (*erat*) the signal (to form ranks) had to be given with the trumpet. opere in the meaning of 19, 24.

vocandī militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prō-  
cesserant, arcessendī, aciēs, instruenda, militēs cohortandī, 5  
signum dandum. Quārum rerum māgnam partem temporis  
brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. His difficultāti-  
bus duae res erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus <sup>Value of their discipline.</sup>  
militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fieri  
oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere, quam<sup>10</sup>  
ab aliis docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legiō-  
nibus singulōs legātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castris  
vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium

4. paulō, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat. \*  
prō-cēdō, -ere, cessī, *n.*, go forward, advance, proceed. \*  
5. arcessō, -cre, -ivī, -itus [ar = ad + cēdō], *a.*, cause to approach, call for, summon. \*  
7. brevitās, -tātis [brevis, short], *f.*, shortness, brevity. 2  
successus, -ūs [succēdō], *m.*, an advance, approach, onset. 1  
difficultās -tātis [difficilis, difficult], *f.*, difficulty, trouble, em-

- barrassment. \*  
8. scientia, -ae [sciō, know], *f.*, knowledge, science, skill, expertness. \*  
9. exercitātus, -a, -um [*p. p.* of exercitō, train or practise well], well trained, practised, skilled, versed. 2  
10. prae-scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus, *a.*, *n.*, write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe. 4  
13. vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *a.*, forbid. 3

4. paulō longius, a little too far; the soldiers often had some distance to go to procure timbers, etc. paulō: for case cf. I, 16, 18; 14, 3; 14, 1. aggeris: here the materials used in the building of the rampart. See Int. 131; also vertical section of agger, p. 216.

5. cohortandi: this was always attended to, if possible.

6. signum dandum: here the signal for the attack, made by the horns and trumpets together.

7. brevitās: the time was indeed scant for getting into line of battle 30,000 men, many at a distance, all with helmets and arms laid aside, busily engaged in the work of fortification.

8. duae res: first, the training of the soldiers; second, the assigning of a legātus to each legion.

subsidiō: for case cf. 19, 7. atque, and also, cf. 8, 6, shows that ūsus, experience, was more valued by Caesar than scientia, knowledge (of military tactics).

9-11. quid fieri oportēret, what ought to be done. For the mode cf. 8, 4; 5, 6; 4, 13. nōn... poterant: English order ipsi poterant praescribere sibi nōn minus commodē quam docērī ab aliis. praescribere: this is high praise, but well deserved.

12. singulōs legātōs: see I, 52, 1, for a similar instance. The fact is here mentioned by Caesar because the legātī at this time did not have permanent commands; see Int. 95. nisi etc., until the camp had been fortified; lit. unless (they departed) after the camp etc. castris: for case cf. 2, 3.

nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē quae  
15 vidēbantur administrābant.

*Caesar hastily  
rallies and di-  
rects his  
troops.*

21. Caesar, necessariis rēbus imperātis, ad  
cohortandōs militēs, quam in partem fōrs obtulit,  
dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvenit. Militēs nōn  
5 longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam uti suae pristināe virtūtis  
memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque  
impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs ab-  
erant, quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proelii committendī sig-  
num dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā

15. administrō, 1. a., to serve,  
attend, wait upon, manage,  
guide. \*

2. fōrs, fōrtis [ferō], f., chance:  
fōrte, abl. as adv., by chance, per-  
chance. 5

offerō (obf-), offerre, obtulī, oblā-  
tus, a., bring in one's way,  
present, offer, exhibit; proffer,  
bestow. \*

3. decimus, -a, -um, ord. num.,  
[decem], tenth. \*

dē-veniō, -ire, venī, ventus, n.,  
come down, go or come to. 2

5. • neu, (nēve) conj. [nē + ve,  
or], and not, nor; nēve(neu)...  
nēve, neither... nor. \*

7. adigō, -ere, ēgī, āctus [agō],  
a., drive or bring by force; thrust,  
plunge (of weapons); bind (by an  
oath). \*

14, 15. persē: usually the lēgā-  
tī undertook no independent op-  
erations. quae vidēbantur, what-  
ever seemed proper.

1. necessariis: such as recall-  
ing the distant soldiers and form-  
ing all in line of battle.

2. cohortandōs: no formal har-  
rangue was possible, so Caesar  
hurried from place to place giving  
such encouragement as the time  
permitted. quam in partem etc.,  
to that part (of his troops) which  
chance brought in his way; quam  
in partem = in (eam) partem, quam.

3. ad legiōnem decimam:  
Caesar's favorite legion: see I, 40,  
49. It was on the extreme left of  
the line. Next to it was the IXth,  
then the XIth, VIIIth, XIIth, and

lastly the VIIth, on the extreme  
right.

4. longiōre etc., with a speech  
no longer than (this:) that they  
should etc. virtūtis: for case cf.  
iniuriarum I, 14, 8.

5. retinērent, perturbārentur:  
subj. of purpose, standing for im-  
peratives in his actual speech. So  
sustinērent in I. 6.

6, 7. quod... aberant, gives  
the reason for the following signum  
dedit. quam quō etc., than (the  
distance) to which (quō) a pike  
could be thrown. The adverb is  
often used for a pronoun (in the  
acc.) with a preposition: cf. 17, 20;  
16, 10. Here it stands for quem  
ad finem: cf. 19, 11. The distance  
was about 60 feet. posset, is subj.  
of characteristic.

8. alteram partem: to the  
right wing.

profectus pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmīcandum animus, ut nōn<sup>10</sup> modo ad īnsignia accommodanda, sēd etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque pīma signa cōspēxit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pūgnandī tempus dimitteret. 15

22. Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra *The result, at first, indecisive.* dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut

9. oc-currō, -ere, currī (cucurrī), cursus [ob + currō, run], *n.*, run in the way of, run to meet, meet; happen upon, encounter; suggest itself, occur, oppose. \*

exiguitās, -tātis [exiguus, scant], *f.*, scantiness, meagerness, want. 5

10. dī-micō, 1. [micō, brandish], *n.*, brandish (*one's weapons*) in different directions; hence fight, struggle, contend. \*



Galea.



Cassis.

11. galea, -ae, *f.*, a helmet (usually of leather strengthened with brass).

*The cassis, for horsemen, was of metal. 1*

accommodō (adc-), 1. [commodō, adjust], *a.*, adjust or adapt to one's self, fit or put on. 2

in-duō, -ere, duī, dūtus, *a.*, put on: sē induere, fall into or upon, become entangled in. 3

12. tegimentum, -ī [tegō, cover], *n.*, a covering. 2

dē-trūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus [trūdō, thrust], *a.*, thrust from or off, strip off, remove. 1

dē-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *n.*, be from, lacking or wanting, fail. \*

14. cōspiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus [speciō, look], *a.*, look attentively, observe, descry, perceive. \*

9. pūgnantibus: *he finds them (already) fighting.* For the case cf. 14, 7; 10, 18; 9, 11.

11. insignia: the ornaments on the helmets, etc., to distinguish the officers and perhaps the several legions. galeās induendās: they would be laid aside while the soldiers were working on the fortifications.

12. scūtis: for case cf. 14, 6;

6, 7. tegimenta: leather coverings for the protection of the metal work of the shields. These were removed before the soldiers went into action.

13. quam in partem, *to whatever division each man came etc.*

14. suis: *sc. signis.*

1. ut: *adv. or conj.?* Cf. 7, 10; I, 22, 3.

rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepi-  
 5 busque dēnsissimis, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectis prōspectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque, quid in quāque parte opus esset, prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum iniquitāte fōrtūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

*The Nervii  
 attack the ex-  
 posed Roman  
 camp.*

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōstitēbant pilis ēmissis cursū

3. **dīversus**, -a, -um [*p. p. of divertō*, turn in different directions], facing different ways, opposite, contrary; diverse, different. \*

5. **dēnsus**, -a, -um, closely set or packed, thick, dense. 4

**prōspectus**, -ūs [*prōspiciō*, look forth], m., a lookout, view, prospect. 3

7. **prō-vidēō**, -ēre, vidī, visus [*vidēō*, see], a., n., see beforehand, foresee, care for, provide. \*

9. **iniquitās**, -tātis [*aequus*, equal], f., unevenness; unfairness,

unfavorable position. \*  
**ēventus**, -ūs [*veniō*, come], m., out-come, issue, result, consequence. \*

**varius**, -a, -um [*cf. vertō*], variegated, diverse; changing, manifold, various. 2

1. **nōnus**, -a, -um [*novem*], ninth. \*

2. **cursus**, -ūs [*currō*, run], m., running, speed; course: **cursum adaequāre**, keep up with: **māgnō (incitātō) cursū**, at full speed: **cursum tenēre**, keep a straight course. \*

3. **cum** etc., since the legions were resisting the enemy separately, some in one place, others in another. **dīversae**, for the adjective (*separate*) translated by the adverb (*separately*) see A. 191; B. 18; G. 325 R. 6; H. 443. B. 239.

4. **aliae**, for its elliptical use see on I, 39, 12; **saepibus** etc., by the interposition of very thick hedges etc.

5. **ut**, as in l. 1 above. **ante**: see 17, 17-21.

6. **certa subsidia**, the reserves could not be stationed definitely (= in definite places). For the adverbial force of the adj., see on l. 3. **subsidia**, collocārī: i. e., the regular

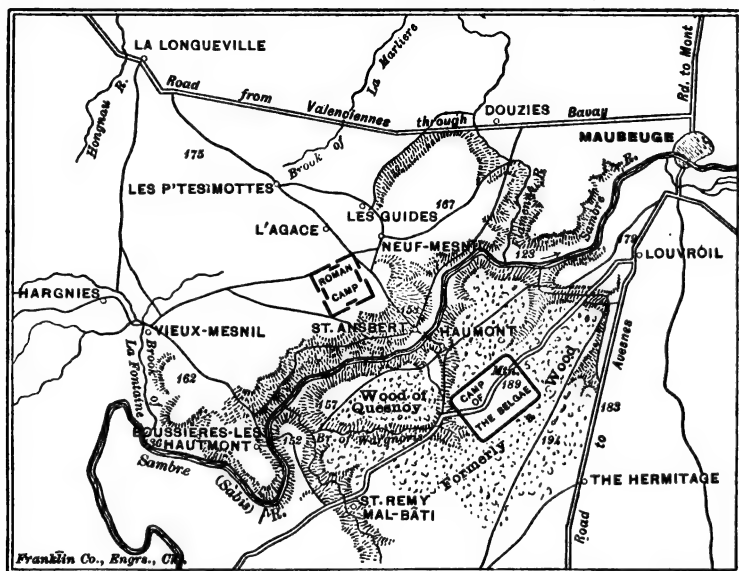
reserve could not be stationed so as to be counted on with certainty for needed aid.

7, 8. **prōvidērī**, **administrārī**: the intervening hedges made it impossible for the commander (ab ūnō) to exercise any general oversight. **tantā**, such. The narrative in resumed from *signum dedit*, 21, 7, 8.

1. **nōnae et decimae**: Labienus was in command of these legions.

2. **aciē**=*aciēi*; A. 74 a; G. 69, 2; H. 120; B. 52, 3. **pilis ēmissis**: see Int. 149. **cursū**: they had run as much as a mile, besides fording the river.

āc lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebatēs (nam hīs ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō supe-



BATTLE ON THE SAMBRE (SABIS)

riōre in flūmen compulērunt et trānsire cōnantēs īsecūtī 5  
gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ip-

3. lassitūdō, -inis, [lassus, weary],  
f., weariness, faintness, exhaus-  
tion, lassitude. 2

exanimō, 1. [animus, breath], a.,  
deprive of breath or life, render  
breathless, exhaust: in p. p. as  
adj., breathless, exhausted. \*

4. ob-veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus

[veniō, come], n., come in the  
way, come to, meet; fall to one's  
lot. 3

5. compellō, -ere, pulī, pulsum  
[con+pellō], to drive together,  
assemble, collect; to force, com-  
pel, constrain. \*

3. exanimātōs, breathless. Con-  
strue with Atrebatēs, the obj. of  
compulērunt.

4. hīs: the Atrebatēs. ea pars:  
the Roman left wing.

5. cōnantēs: introduce with  
'as': as they (the Atrebatēs) were at-  
tempting.

6. ipsī: the soldiers under Lab-  
ienus.

sī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūn-  
 10 decima et octāva, prōfligātis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē ā frōnte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātis castris, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōfertissimō  
 15 āgmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiō-

9. ūndecimus, -a, -um [ūnus], eleventh. 2.

10. octāvus, -a, -um, [octō], eighth. 2

prō-fligō, 1. [obsolet. fligō, strike], a., strike to the ground; overcome; put to flight. 2

11. congredior, gredi, gressus sum [gradior, step], a., n., step or come together, meet, encounter; engage in conflict, contend. \* proelior, 1. [proelium, battle], n.,

join or engage in battle, fight. \*

12. at [cf. atque] conj., (strongly adversative) but, yet, on the other hand, at least. \*

13. dexter, -tera, (-tra), -terum (-trum), on the right hand. \* cornū, -ūs, n., a horn; the wing (of an army). \*

duodecimus, -a, -um [duodecim], twelfth. 3.

15. Boduōgnātus, -ī, m., a leader of the Nervii. 1

7. locum inīquum: the slope of the hill of Hautmont up which they were charging. This gave the enemy the advantage in position and they quickly utilized it (rūrsus resistentēs).

8. resistentēs: see on cōnantēs, line 5. in fugam: the Romans drove the Atrebatas back through the forest on the hill of Hautmont and captured the Belgian camp.

9. dīversae: connect with proeliābantur l. 11 and translate as in 22, 3. These legions held the centre of the Roman line (aliā in parte).

11. ex locō superiōre: construe with prōfligātis. proeliābantur, were still fighting.

12. ā frōnte: by the advance of the XIIth and VIIIth legions. ab

sinistrā parte: by the advance of the troops under Labienus. tōtis nūdātis castris: trans. as a Causal Clause. ā, ab, in, on.

13, 14. cum ... cōstitisset, since ... had taken its (their) stand. intervāllō, at no great distance. omnēs Nervii: 60,000 in number.

15. duce, under the leadership of. summam imperiī, the chief command. What part of speech is summam here? summum l. 17?

16. ab ... latere, on the (left) flank left exposed (by the withdrawal of the IXth and Xth legions). apertō latere: the Nervii crossed the stream, scaled the steep bank and swept around the right flank of the Roman right wing.

nēs cīrcumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra recipere, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respēxissent et hostēs in nostris castris versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simuleōrum, quī cum impedimentis veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliique aliam in partem

*They get possession of the camp. Flight of the Roman auxiliaries.*

2. pedes, -itis [pēs, foot], m., footman, foot soldier: *in pl.* footmen, infantry. \*

5. cālō, -ōnis [cāla, a log of wood], m., a soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. \*

decumānus, -a, -um [decimus, tenth], of or pertaining to the tenth; decuman: decumāna porta, the rear gate. 3

6. porta, -ae, f., a gate, entrance. \*

6. victor, -ōris [vincō, conquer] m., one who conquers, victor. \*

7. respiciō, -ere, spēxi, spectus [obsol., speciō, look], a., look back or about; have respect to, regard. 4

8. praiceps, -cipitis [caput, head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous; hasty, precipitate. 3

10. fremitus, -ūs [fremō, murmur], m., murmuring, a confused noise, din. 3

17. summum locum: the height on which the camp was situated. petere coepit, tried to reach.

1, 2. equitēs: see Int. 100, 101. levis armātūrae peditēs: i.e. the slingers and bowmen, cf. 19, 8. iīs: refers to equitēs. fuerant: prior to their repulse. quōs=equitēs et peditēs.

3. dixeram: see 19, 20.

4. adversis hostibus: the Roman auxiliaries may have taken a circuitous route back to the camp. At any rate they entered it from the left side just as the Nervii, who had turned the Roman right flank,

poured into it from the right.

5, 6. fugam petēbant, took flight. cālōnēs: see Int. 102. decumānā portā: see Int. 132 and plan of Roman camp, p. 30. summō iugō: i. e. the rear of the camp was higher than the front; see Int. 129. victōrēs, as victors, in predicate relation with nostrōs.

8. versārī, were busy.

9. eōrum: the muleteers. It cannot refer to the soldiers of the XIIIth and XIVth legions, who had not yet arrived upon the scene.

10, 11. aliique . . . ferēbantur, and fled (were carried) in great terror (thoroughly terrified) in all



perterriti ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliū causā ab civitāte ad Caesarem missi vēnerant, cum multitudīne hostium castra complēri nostra, legiōnēs  
 15 premi et paene circumventās tenēri, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās diversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, dēspērātis nostris rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs civitāti renūtiāvērunt.

*In their desperate situation, the Romans are re-animated by Caesar's valor.*

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgēri signisque in unum locum collātis duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs milites sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impe-

12. Trēverī (irī), -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people on the Moselle about the modern Treves. \*  
 13. singulāris, -e [singulī], one at a time, one by one, single, alone; singular, unique, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. \*  
 14. com-pleō, -ēre, plēvi, plētus [pleō, fill], *a.*, fill up or completely; finish, complete. \*  
 15. premō, -ere, pressi, pressus

*a.*, press, oppress, harass; press upon, press hard. \*

16. dis-sipō, 1. [obsolet. supō = iaciō], *a.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. 3

1. cohortātiō, -ōnis [cohörtor, exhort], *r.*, exhortation, encouragement, cheering. 1

2. urgeō (urgueō), -ēre, ursi, *a.*, press, press hard, impel, urge. 2

directions or some in one direction etc. For trans. of forms of *alius* cf. 22, 4; I, 39, 12.

12. virtūtis opīniō, reputation for bravery. virtūtis: for case cf. 21, 4; 15, 1; 8, 2.

13. ab civitāte missi: Caesar obtained most of his cavalry in this way: see Int. 100.

16. Numidās: see 19, 8. diversōs dissipātōsque, separated and scattered.

17. domum: for case cf. I, 54, 2; 5, 7.

18. pulsōs, superātōs: why so. esse? castris, impedimentis: for case cf. I, 30, 8; 2, 6.

Caesar resumes the narrative of

the main action of the battle.

1-15. Caesar . . . prōcessit: note the periodic structure of the Latin sentences, bringing into view the various circumstances of the action before the result is announced. The long sentence with numerous particulars well represents the rapid succession of events.

1. cohortātiōne: see 21, 3 ff. and Int. 148.

2, 3. signis collātis: the standards by which the different maniples and cohorts were kept at their proper distances were too close together, hence the soldiers were too much crowded to fight effectively. urgēri, overpowered.

4. sibi . . . impedimentō, were

dimentō vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occisis 5  
signiferōque interfectō, signō amissō, reliquarum cohortium  
omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occisis, in his  
primipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravibus-  
que vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinere nōn posset, reli-

5. quartus, -a, -um [quattuor], fourth. \*

6. signifer, -ī [signum + ferō], m., standard-bearer. 1

8. primipilus, -ī [primus + pilus, a century or maniple], m., the first or chief centurion. 4

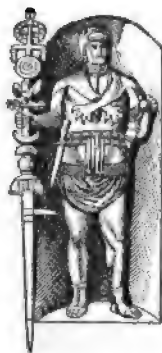
Sextius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. E. g., (1) Titus Sextius,

one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2)

P. Sextius Baculus, a centurion. \*

Baculus, -ī [baculum, a staff], m., cognomen of Publius Sextius, a centurion of Caesar's army. 2

vir, viri, m., man; husband; a man of distinction or honor: cf. homō, a human being; generic man. \*



Signiferi.

a hindrance to one another. For the cases cf. 20, 8; 19, 7; 9, 13.

5. quartae cohortis: this was the one farthest to the left in the front line and suffered the heaviest loss. omnibus centuriōnibus: see Int. 91-93. How many centurions were there in a cohort?

6. signiferō: see Int. 122.



Aquila.

signō: that of the first maniple: see Int. 122.

7. centuriōnibus occisis etc: translate these absolute constructions as if the Acc. with the infin. after vidit.

8. primipilō: see Int. 92. Baculō: he appears again in the next campaign.

10 quōs esse tardiōrēs et nōnnūllōs ab novissimis dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere āc tēla vitāre, hostis neque ā frōnte ex infēriōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō vidit neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod submitti posset, scūtō ab novissimis militi dētrac-

15 tō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātis reliquōs cohortātus militēs sīgna inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius

10. tardus, -a, -um, tardy, sluggish, slow. 2

dē-serō, -ere, serui, sertus [serō, join], a., disjoin; abandon, forsake, desert. \*

11. ex-cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessus [cēdō, go], n., go out or away, withdraw, retire. \*

14. dē-trahō, -ere, trāxi, tractus [trahō, draw or drag], draw off,

take away; take off, remove; disparage, detract. 5

17. manipulus, -i, [manus + pleō, fill], m., a handful (of hay, about a pole, anciently used as a standard), a company (of two centuries, the third of a cohort), maniple. 3

laxō, 1. a., n., stretch out, extend, open; loose, relax. 1

10. tardiōrēs: for trans. of the Comparative see on I, 14, 16. ab novissimis, in the rear. dēsertō locō, leaving their posts.

11. hostis etc., that the enemy did not stop their advance (coming up) . . . and were pressing on both flanks and affairs were in a critical situation. ā frōnte: construe with intermittere. ex infēriōre locō: the lower ground in front of the Roman position.

12. utrōque latere: i. e., both flanks had been turned by the Nervii.

13. vidit: a repetition of vidit in line 4 because of the length of the sentence. subsidium: usually the third line of cohorts formed the reserve but on this occasion all the soldiers were forced to defend themselves and no reserve was possible.

14. ab novissimis: as in I. 10, above. militi: for case cf. I, 43, 23; 17, 9.

15. primam aciem: i. e., the first line of cohorts: see Int. 145.



Signa.

17. sīgna inferre: see Int. 124. manipulōs laxāre: see Int. 145. By assuming the offensive the soldiers could get space in which to use the gladius. quō: for use cf. 17, 15.

gladiis ūti possent. Cūius adventū spē illatā militibus āc redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet,<sup>20</sup> paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā *The Romans begin to act on the offensive.* cōstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum monuit, ut paulātim sēs legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste cir- 5 cumvenīrentur, audācius resistere āc fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim militēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō āgmine praesidiō impedimentīs fuerant, proeliō *They are reinforced by the reserves.* nūntiātō cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus<sup>10</sup>

19. imperātor, -ōris [imperō, command], *m.*, commander-in-chief, general. \*

20. opera, -ae [fem. of opus, work], *f.*, work, service, pains, attention. \*

nāvō, 1. [nāvus, zealous], *a.*, do or perform zealously, act with energy. 1

21. paulum, *adv.* [paulus, little],

a little, somewhat. \*

tardō, 1. [tardus, slow], *a.*, make slow, hinder, obstruct, check. \*

1. iūxtā, *adv.*, [iūgis, joined + ista], next, next to, near, near by. 1

2. tribūnus, -ī [tribus, a tribe], *m.*, a tribune, an officer in the Roman army. \*

18, 19. gladiis: for case of. 14, 11; 7, 1; 3, 12. cūius adventū: see Int. 54. spē... animō, hope was inspired and courage renewed.

20. etiam... cuperet, even at the greatest personal risk, desired to do his part well.

1. iūxtā: sc. duodecimam legiōnem.

2, 3. tribūnōs militum: see Int. 89-90. coniungerent: so that the two legions might support each other. For mode cf. 16, 17; 14, 11; 12, 15. The clause is a secondary acc. after monuit.

4. conversa signa: this probably means that the two legions were placed back to back. quō factō: i. e., conversis signis. alius etc., cf. 24, 10; 22, 4.

5. nē: for trans. cf. I, 27, 10; 19, 11. timērent: plural to agree with militēs implied in alius. āversī: i. e., with their backs turned towards the foe.

7. duārum: the XIIIth and XIVth: see note on 19, 6.

9. cursū incitātō, moving more rapidly. summō colle: on the higher ground behind the camp. T. Labiēnus: see note on 23, 1.

et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur, cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārē-  
 15 tur, cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrūm adventū tanta rērum commutātiō est facta, ut nostrī etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuis-  
 sent, scūtīs innixī proelium redintegrārent; tum  
 cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs  
 5 armātis occurrērunt, equitēs vērō, ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte

*The Nervii,  
 after a despe-  
 rate conflict,  
 are beaten  
 with great  
 slaughter.*

2. prōcumbō, -ere, cubui, cubitum [cubō, lie down], *n.*, lean or fall forwards, sink or lie down, fall. 5

3. in-nitor, -i, nīsus (nīxus) sum [nitor, lean upon], lean or rest upon, support one's self. 1

4. inermis, -e [arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. 3

5. turpitudō, -inis [turpis, ugly, disgraceful], *r.*, ugliness; baseness, disgrace, infamy. 1

11. locō superiōre: on the hill of Hautmont, where the Belgian camp was situated: see on 18, 4. castris: cf. 24, 18.

12. quī: the soldiers of the tenth legion.

15. nihil . . . fēcērunt, *they made all possible haste* (lit. *nothing of a remainder in regard to quickness*). reliquī: for case cf. 17, 9; 15, 10; 8, 8. celeritātem: about how far did the tenth legion have to go? See note on 19, 21. It fell upon the rear of the Nervii.

1. adventū, *appearance*. For the case cf. 1, 15; I, 18, 23.

2. quī: what is supplied? Cf. I, 21, 4; 17, 2. vulneribus cōfecti: stronger than *vulnerati*.

3. scūtīs: for cases see on I, 13, 17.

5. armātis: for case cf. 21, 9; 14, 7; 10, 18.



*Legionārius.*

dēlerent, omnibus in locis pūgnārunt, quō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtutem praestitērunt, ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectis et coacervātis cadāveribus, quī superessent,<sup>10</sup> ut ex tumultō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtutis hominēs iūdicārī dēberet ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere

6. *dēleo*, -ere, *lēvi*, *lētus* [*linō*, rub over], *a.*, rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. \*

*legiōnārius*, -a, -um [*legiō*], of or pertaining to the legion, legionary: *pl. as subst.* legionary soldiers. \*

7. *prae-ferō*, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [*prae+ferō*], *a.*, place before, esteem above, prefer to (*quam*): *sē alicui* (show one's self better than). 2

*in-sistō*, -ere, *stīti* [*sistō*, place, stand], *a.*, *n.*, stand upon; stand firm; press on, pursue. \*

10. *coacervō*, 1. [*acervō*, heap

up], *a.*, heap or mass together, pile one upon another. 2

*cadāver*, -eris [*cadō*, fall], *N.*, a fallen or dead body, carcass, corpse. 2

11. *tumulus*, -ī, [*tumeō*, swell], *m.*, swelling, mound, hill. \*

*intercipiō*, -ere, *cēpi*, *ceptus* [*capio*, take], *a.*, take or catch between (one point and another); interrupt, intercept, cut off. 4

12. *nē-quiquam* (*quic(d)quam*), *adv.* [*quī(d)quam*, any one, anything], not in any way, in vain, to no purpose. 1

6, 7. *omnibus in locis*: the ground was unfavorable for cavalry fighting, a fact which made the valor of the horsemen the more conspicuous. *quō... praeferrent*, to prove themselves superior to the legionaries; for mode cf. 25, 18; 17, 17; notice that *praeferrent* implies comparison (see the translation) and hence *quō* is used instead of *ut*. *legiōnāriis*: for the significance of the adj. ending -ārius (-āris), English -ary, see A. 164 h; G. 189, 44; H. 330; B. 151 2.

9. *proximī... insisterent*, those who were nearest stood on those who were prostrate. For the Dat. cf. I.

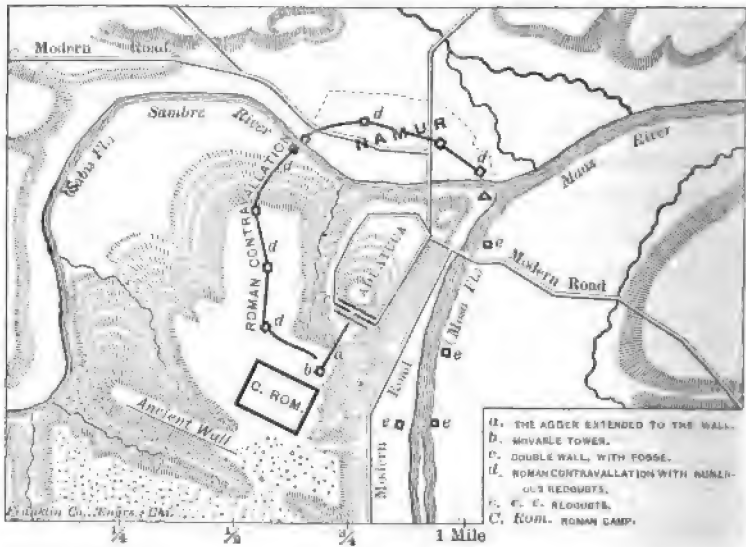
5 above. *ex corporibus*: i.e., from the tops of the heaps of dead bodies.

10. *hīs dēiectis*, when these (*proximī*) were cut down. *quī*, (that those) who survived threw their spears at our men as from a hill. Before *quī* repeat *ut* (l. 8) and supply the antecedent *eī*, cf. l. 2.

11. *ut*: the adv. *tumulō*: formed by the dead bodies. *pīla*: see Int. 110, 111.

12, 13. *ut iūdicārī dēberet*, so that it ought not to be considered. *tantae virtutis*, of such valor. For the Gen. see on 15, 13.

altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex  
 15 difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.



The survivors  
 submit to  
 Caesar.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciō-  
 nem gente āc nōmine Nerviorū redāctō māiōrēs  
 nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria āc  
 palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victō-  
 5 ribus nihil impeditū, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omni-

2. gēns, gentis [genō, old form  
 of gignō, beget], f., race; clan,  
 tribe, people. \*

3. aestuārium, -ī [aestus, an un-  
 dulating], n., low marsh-land,  
 tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. 2

14, 15. altissimās: the north  
 bank of the Sambre has a steep slope  
 of from 20 to 30 feet at the point  
 where the Nervii crossed it. inī-  
 quissimum: the slope of the hill  
 on which the Romans were posted.  
 quae facilia redēgerat, had  
 rendered these (bold deeds) easy.  
 ex, from having been, a common  
 meaning with adjectives.

1, 2. hōc ... redāctō: render  
 by a temporal clause, after etc.

3. puerīs: used here of both  
 sexes.

4, 5. victōribus ... tūtum,  
 that nothing was an obstacle to the  
 victors and nothing secure for the  
 conquered. arbitrārentur: for  
 mode cf. 17, 4; 11, 4; 6, 9.

um, quī supererant, cōsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sē-  
que eī dēdiderunt et in commemorandā civitātis calamitāte ex  
sexcentis ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quin-  
gentōs, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redactōs esse dixerunt. Quōs  
Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, 10  
diligentissimē cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidis ūti  
iūssit et finitimis imperāvit, ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē  
suosque prohibērent.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā scripsimus, cum *The allied A-*  
omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nervii venirent, hāc pūgnā *duatuci retire*  
nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctis oppidis castel- *to their*  
lisque dēsertis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā *stronghold.*

6. cōsēnsus, -ūs [cōsentiō, think together, agree], m., united opinion, agreement, coalition, consent. \*

8. senātor, -ōris [senex, an old man], m., elder, senator. 1

10. miser, -era, -erum [maereō, be sad], wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate, sad. 3

supplex, -plicis [plicō, bend], suppliant: *as subst.*, a suppliant. 1  
misericordia, -ae [misereō, pity

+ cor, the heart], f., pity, sympathy, mercy, compassion. 4

1. scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus, a., write, describe by characters or in writing. 5

3. cūctus, -a, -um [contr. for coniūctus, joined together], all together, all. 3

4. ēgregiē [ēgregius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. 5

8. LX: the Nervii had promised 50,000 men at the opening of the war. quingentōs: there is certainly some exaggeration in the statement, as the Nervii were strong enough to revolt in 54 B. C. and to send 5,000 men to the relief of Alesia in 52 B. C.

9. possent: for mode cf. 16, 9; 5, 16.

10. ut ... vidērētur, *that he might appear to have shown (ūsus esse) mercy etc.*

11. cōservāvit: see on cōservārentur 12, 15.

12. finitimis, *the neighboring (tribes).*

13. prohibērent: for mode cf. 26, 3; 16, 7; 14, 11.

1, 2. suprā: in 16, 7. cum venirent, *although they were on their way.* cōpiis: for case cf. 19, 2. How does this differ from the equivalent construction 16, 5? auxiliō Nervii: for case cf. 25, 4; 20, 8; 19, 7; 9, 13.

3. domum: for case cf. 24, 17. castellis: they were smaller than the oppida.

4. oppidum: it is with great probability placed on the plateau now occupied by the citadel of the city of Narnur, in the angle formed by the junction of the Sambre and Meuse. The distance from the battle field was about 35 miles and the direction northeast. The name of the oppidum is not given.



- 5 mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte leniter acclivis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquebātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant: tum māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in
- 10 *Their origin.* mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iīs impedimentīs, quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs custōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā reliquērunt. Hī post eō-
- 15 rum obitum multōs annōs ā finitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bel-
6. rūpēs, -is [rumpō, break], *r.*, rock, cliff. 1
7. acclivis (ad-), -e [clivus, a slope], sloping upwards, rising, ascending. 3
8. duplex, plicis [plicō, bend, fold], two-fold, double. 3
9. pondus, -eris [pendō, weigh], *n.*, weight. 4
- saxum, -i, *n.*, a large stone, rock. \*
- prae-acūtus, -a, -um, sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed. \*
- trabs, trabis, *r.*, timber, beam. \*
11. prō-gnātus, -a, -um [nāscor,
- be born], born, descended, sprung. 2
13. custōdia, -ae, *r.*, custody, guard (*state of being guarded*).—*Plur.* guards, keepers. 5
15. obitus, -ūs [obeō, go in the way of], *m.*, going to (death); destruction, overthrow. 1
- ex-agitō, 1. [*freq. of agō*, set in motion], *a.*, drive out or away, stir up, rouse, disturb, harass, persecute. 2
- aliās, *adv.* [alius, another], at another place, elsewhere, at another time. aliās ... aliās, at one time ... at another. 4

5, 6. quod cum habēret, *now while (=although) this had.* For trans. of the relative cf. 13, 4; 5, 15. ūnā ex parte: on the south.

8. pedum: for case cf. 18, 9; 5, 21. duplici: commonly explained as meaning two parallel walls. Another view is that it means a wall of double the usual thickness, so built on account of its exceptional height. mūrō: see Int. 154.

9. ponderis: for case cf. 27, 12; 15, 13.

10. Cimbrīs, Teutonīs: this re-

puted origin of the Aduatuci is adduced to show that they were no mean foes.

11. iter: see Int. 63-64.

12, 13. iīs ... dēpositīs, *having placed those incumbrances which they could not drive etc.* citrā: i. e., the west side. custōdiam: persons charged with the care of the *impedimenta*.

14. praesidium: the 6,000. eōrum: the Cimbri and Teutoni

15. obitus: see Int. 64.

lum inferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās <sup>They scorn the Roman preparations for attack.</sup> ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendēbant; postea vāllō passuum in circuitū xv mīlium crēbrisque castellis circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vineis āctis aggere exstrūctō turrim procul cōstituī vīdērunt, primum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instrue-

17. **domiciliū**, -ī [**domus** + **cēlō**, conceal], n., a fixed abode or residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 4

2. **excursiō**, -ōnis [**excurrō**, run forth], f., a running out or forth, sally, sortie. 2

**parvulus**, -a, -um [*dim. of parvus*, little], small, insignificant, slight: **ab parvulis**, from childhood. 5

4. **circum-mūniō**, 4. a., fortify

around, fortify, protect. 1

5. **ex-struō**, -ere, strūxī, strūctus [**struō**, build], a., build or pile up, rear, construct, build. \* **procul**, adv., afar off, from afar, aloof. \*

6. **irrideō** (inr-), -ēre, risī, risus [**rideō**, laugh], a., laugh at, jeer. 1

7. **māchinātiō**, -ōnis [*māchinor*, contrive], f., a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derriek. 3

16. **illātum** (sc. *bellum sibi*), *warded off the war which was waged upon themselves.*

17. **hunc . . . locum**: i. e., the tract of country occupied by the Aduatuci at this time. **sibi domiciliō**, as *their home*. For the Dat. cf. *auxiliō Nervii* l. 2.

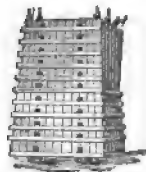
2. **excursiōnēs**: see Int. 165. **parvulis**: for the significance of the Diminutive ending -lus (-ulus, -olus) see A. 164 a; G. 189, 6; H. 321; B. 148, 1.

3. **vāllō**, etc. English order: *vāllō XV mīlium passuum*. For case of *passuum* cf. 26, 15; 17, 9; 15, 10. For case of *mīlium* cf. 29, 8; 18, 9. On the *vāllum* see Int. 156. in *circuitū*: apparently only from the Sambre to the Meuse.

4, 5. **oppidō**: the preposition is omitted in this (military) expression because of the instrumental (rather than locative) idea. Cf.

I, 49, 1; 48, 10; 40, 26. **sēsē continēbant**, remained. **vineis āctis**: see Int. 160. **aggere**: see Int. 158, 159. **turrim**: Int. 162, 163.

6. **irrīdēre**: i. e., by means of gestures. In distinction from *vōcibus*. **irrīdēre**, **increpitāre**: for the infn. see on I, 16, 2.



*Turris  
ambulatória.*

7. **ab tantō spatiō**, so far away (from the point of attack). For *ab* see on 7, 9. Notice that it does not govern *spatiō* as a preposition. For case of *spatiō* cf. 7, 9; I, 48, 1; 43, 3. **instruerētur**: I, 16, 15, 17.

rētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plerumque hominibus Gallis 10 prae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitas nostra contemptuū est) tanti oneris turrim mōtūrōs sēsē cōfiderent?

*They propose a conditional surrender.*

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvinā bellum gerere, 5 quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritātē prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittēre dīxērunt. Unum petere ac dēprecārī: sī fōrte prō suā clēmētiā ac

8. quisnam, quāenam, quidnam, *interrog. pron.*, who, pray? which, pray? what, pray? *The nam has the force of pray.*

9. tantulus, -a, -um [*dim. of tantus*, so great], so small or little, of such diminutive (stature). 4 statūra, -ae [*status, fr. stō, stand*], *r.*, a standing upright, size or height of the body, stature. 2 plerumque, *adv.* [plerusque, the greater part], for the most part, commonly, frequently. \*

10. prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of: in comparison with; in *comp.*, before, on account of, surpassing, very. 2 contemptus, -ūs [*contemnō, despise*], *m.*, a despising; an object of contempt. 1

11. onus, -eris, *n.*, load, burden. 5

2. in-ūsitatus, -a, -um [ūtōr], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. 3

species, -ei [*absol. specio, see*], *r.*, seeing, sight, appearance. \*

3. modus, -i, *m.*, measure, quantity, manner, method, style. \*

4. divinus, -a, -um [divus, divine], of the gods, celestial, divine. 3

5. prō-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [moveō, move], *a.*, move forward, advance, extend, enlarge; put off. 4

7. dē-precor, 1. [precor, pray], pray against, pray for deliverance, beseech, entreat, plead for. 5

8. quibusnam manibus, etc; for (as they reasoned) by what hands or strength did men, especially of such small stature, hope, etc.

9, 10. tantulae: see Int. 85. For the ending see on line 2. statūrae: for case cf. 29, 9; 27, 12. Gallis contemptui; for case cf. 29, 2; 25, 4. prae, in comparison with.

11. oneris: cf. statūrae, line 9.

1. movērī (sc. the subj. turrim), that the tower moved. moenibus: for case cf. 27, 9.

3. ad hunc modum, as follows.

4. nōn existimāre etc.: put their speech into the direct form.

7. ūnum, one favor. petere, dēprecārī, we beg and pray. Caesar uses two synonymous verbs for special emphasis.

mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditis armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fōrtūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitatē cōservātūrum, sī prius, quam mūrū ariēs attigisset, *They submit to Caesar's terms but stealthily retain part of their arms.*

9. dē-spoliō, 1. [spoliō, rob, spoil], a., strip off, plunder. 1

10. in-vidēō, -ēre, vidī, visus [vidēō, see], a., look at [with evil intent], be jealous of. 1

12. qui-vis, quaevis, quidvis (quod-) [volō, wish], indef. pron. who or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. 3

13. cruciātus, -ūs [cruciō, cru-

cify], m., crucifying, torture, torment. \*

14. dominor, 1. [dominus, master], a., n., be lord or master, have dominion. 1

3. ariēs, arietis, m., a ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls, one end of which was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, buttress. 3

8. quam . . . audirent: probably the report of Caesar's treatment of the remnant of the Nervii had reached them: see 28, 12.

9. nē . . . dēspoliāret, he should not (direct: do not deprive us) deprive them of their arms. The clause explains *unum*, line 6. For the mode cf. 9, 12; 9, 11; 2, 7. armīs: for case cf. 21, 12; 14, 6; 6, 7.

10. inimicōs: see 29, 15.

11. trāditis armīs: trans. by a cond. clause, if they should etc. sibi praestāre, they preferred (it were better for them). The subject is quamvis . . . patī, to suffer any fortune whatever.

12. cāsum, extremity.

13. ab hīs, by the people.

1. cōnsuētūdine: it was Caesar's policy in this campaign to in-

duce the Belgae to submit. Their fidelity was secured by the surrender of their arms and the giving of hostages. The strong tribal feeling among them made the latter an especially effective means of curbing them.

2. meritō: they had tried to bring succor to the Nervii, see 29, 1-3. cōservātūrum (esse), would spare.

3. sī etc., direct: if you surrender before the battering ram touches your wall. ariēs: see Int. 162, 163. attigisset: as soon as the battering ram touched the wall, the besieged place was looked upon as already captured and offers of submission were then too late. attigisset and dēdidissent (l. 4) represent future perfect indicatives in the direct form.

sē dēdissent: sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiōnem nisi  
 5 armīs trāditīs. Sē id, quod in Nervii fēcisset, factūrum fī-  
 nitimisque imperātūrum, nē quam dēditiōis populī Rōmānī  
 iniūriam inferrent. Rē renūtiātā adsuōs, quae imperārentur,  
 facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitudine dē mūrō in  
 fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sic ut prope summam  
 10 mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et  
 tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est, cēlātā  
 atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactis eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

10. **acervus**, -ī [acer, sharp, pointed], m., a heap. \*

**ad-aequō**, 1. [aequus, even, equal], a., make level with or equal to, equalize, equal: **cursum adaequāre**, keep pace with. \*

11. **cēlō**, 1. a., keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal: *in pass.*, escape observation, be unnoticed. 3

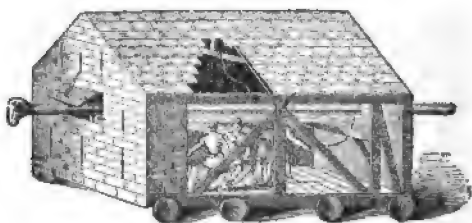
12. **patefactiō, facere, fēcī, factus** [pateō, open], a., make or throw open, open. 3

5. **sē ... factūrum (esse)**, he would do this which he had done with the Nervii. **finitimis**: see 28, 12.

8-8. **nē ... inferrent**, not to inflict any evil upon etc. **quam**:

9. **ante oppidum**: i. e., on the side where the Roman approaches were. **iactā**: construe with **multitudine**.

10. **mūrī**: the wall of the town: see 29, 8. **aggeris**: the end of the



*Vinea et Ariēs.*

for signif. cf. I, 42, 12; 30, 15; 20, 2; 18, 22. **quae ... (se) facere**, that they would immediately execute his orders: the pres. tense is here employed to denote an immediate future.

mound, which had reached the outer edge of the fosse.

12. **pāce sunt ūsī**, remained quiet. **pāce**: for case cf. 25, 18; 14, 11.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlītēsque ex oppidō exīre iūssit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ab mīlītibus iniūriam acciperent. Illi ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōsiliō, quod dēditionē factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim sūmptīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repentinō ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, īgnibus significātiōne factā ex proximīs castellis eō

*They renew the contest, are defeated and sold as slaves.*

5. **indiliger**, *adv.* [indiligēns, careless], carelessly, heedlessly. 1

**servō**, 1. *a.*, save, preserve, maintain, keep; keep guard, watch. \*

6. **crēdō**, *dere*, didi, dītus [*Sanscrit* krat, trust + dō], *a.*, give trust or confidence, trust, entrust, believe, suppose. \*

7. **cortex**, *corticis*, *m.*, *r.*, bark. 1 **vīmen**, *-inis* [vieō, bend or weave together], *n.*, a pliant twig, switch, wither, osier. 3

**in-texō**, *-ere*, *texui*, *textus* [texō,

weave], weave in or together. 1

8. **pellis**, *-is*, *r.*, a hide, a skin (either on or off the body of an animal): **sub pellibus** (in tents, i. e. in the field). \*

9. **arduus**, *-a*, *-um*, high, steep, difficult. 2

10. **repentinō**, *adv.*, suddenly. 1

11. **ēruptiō**, *-ōnis* [rumpō, break out], *r.*, a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. \*

12. **significātiō**, *-ōnis* [signum, sign + faciō], *r.*, making of signs, signal, indication, notice. 5

1. **sub**, just before, towards (in expressions of time).

2. **nē quam** etc.: a humane action, but dangerous to the supremacy of the Romans. **quam**: as in 32, 6.

4. **ante initō cōsiliō**, according to a plan previously formed.

5. **praesidia**: the detachments holding the castella mentioned in 30, 4.

7. **factīs**: trans: by a rel. clause.

9. **quā**: the adv. **quā minimē arduus**: this passage seems to show that the Roman lines were on high ground. **tertiā vigiliā**: what time of night?

11. **ut...imperārat**: Caesar had foreseen the possibility of an attempt at treachery.



Fire-signal Tower.

12. **īgnibus**: signals to give the alarm. **ex proximīs castellis**: those nearest the point where the attack on the Roman works was being made. These **castella** are the towers mentioned in l. 15 below.

concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut  
 ā viris fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis iniquō locō contrā eōs,  
 15 quī ex vallō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum  
 in unā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōsisteret. Occīsīs ad  
 hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt.  
 Postridiē ēius diē refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet  
 nēmō, atque intrōmissīs militibus nostrīs sectiōnem ēius op-  
 20 pidi ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab hīs, quī ēmerant, capi-  
 tum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne unā

18. refringō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus  
 [frangō, break], a., break in or  
 open; break, destroy. 2

19. intrō-mittō, -ere, mīsi, mīs-  
 sus [intrō, within], a., send into  
 or in, let go in, introduce.

sectiō, -ōnis [secō, cut], f., a cut-

ting or parcelling out (of booty)  
 booty.

20. ūniversus, -a, -um [ūnus +  
 vertō, turn], turned into one, all  
 together, whole, universal.

vēndō, dēre, didī, dītus [vē-  
 num, sale + dō], a., put to sale,  
 sell at auction.

13. *concursum est*: i. e. by  
 the Romans: Caesar repulsed the  
 Helvetians in the same way: cf. I,  
 8, 15. *concursum est, pūgnātum  
 est*: for trans. cf. 11, 14; 10, 20.  
*ut etc.*, lit., *as the fight ought to have  
 been carried on by brave men etc.*  
 For the sake of English idiom  
 trans.: *as brave men ought to have  
 fought etc.*

15. *pūgnārī*: used impersonal-  
 ly, cf. *persuādērī* 10, 19. Notice  
 carefully that the present tense is  
 to be represented in English by a  
 perfect. After past tenses the Latin  
 employs the present infn. with  
 verbs of necessity and possibility  
 (as *dēbeō*, *possum* etc.) instead of the  
 perfect of the English idiom.

16. *in . . . cōsisteret*, depend-  
 ed on valor alone. *ad*: used adverb-

ially with numerals = *circiter*.

19. *sectiōnem*: a perfectly  
 justifiable procedure, according to  
 ancient ideas, as a punishment for  
 treachery. Caesar's firmness gained  
 for him the respect of the Gauls.

20. *hīs*: see Int. 102. The slave  
 market at Rome was supplied by  
 these *mercātōrēs*. *capitum*: as in  
 I, 29, 6.

1. *eōdem tempore*: i. e. when  
 the stronghold of the Aduatuci fell.  
 As the 7th legion was detached  
 from the Roman army just after  
 the battle of the Sambre to reduce  
 the western tribes to submission it  
 is clear the siege must have lasted  
 a long time, probably over a  
 month. *P. Crassō*: see note on  
 I, 52, 14.

miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esubiōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritumae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque 5 populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.

*Crassus subduces the Veneti and other maritime tribes.*

35. His rēbus gestīs omnī Galliā pācātā tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātīōnēs 5

*German envoys offer submission. Caesar quarters his troops and goes to Italy. Supplicatio in his honor.*

2. Venetī, -ōrum, m., a *Gallie people in modern Brittany near modern Vannes.* \*

Venellī, -ōrum, m., a *Gallie people in modern Normandy.* 4

Osismī, -ōrum, m., a *Gallie people in modern Brittany.* 3

Coriosolitēs, -um, m., a *Gallie people in modern Brittany near modern Corseult.* 4

3. Esublī, -ōrum, m., a *Gallie people near the Veneti, near modern Essey.* 3

Aulercī, -ōrum, m., a *Gallie people divided into four branches; (1) Aulerci Ebuovices, in modern dept. de l'Eure, in Normandy; (2) Aulerci Cenomani; (3) Aulerci Brannovices, in modern dept. le Briennois; (4) Aulerci Diablin-*

*tes, in modern dept. de la Sarthe.* \*

Redonēs, -um, m., a *Gallie people in Brittany near the modern Rennes.* 2

maritimus, (-umus) -a, -um, *adj.*, of the sea, sea-, maritime, naval, on the sea: *aestus* (in the sea); *ora* (the sea shore). \*

5. diciō, -ōnis [dicō, say], f., saying (*with authority*), jurisdiction, dominion, sway. 3.

2. barbarus, -a, -um, foreign (*to Greeks and Romans*), uncivilized, savage, barbarous: *as subst.*, foreigners, savages, barbarians. \*

3. nātiō, -ōnis, [nāscor, be born], f., race, tribe, people, nation: *usually applied to a distant and barbarous people.* \*

2. Venetī, etc., the student will note here, as in many other instances, that the Gallic names have been retained, in a modified form, in many of the *departments* and towns of France. A further account of these tribes is given in III, 7-19.

3, 4. Coriosolitas: notice the quantity of the termination and see on I, 26, 18. cīvitātēs, tribes.

5. diciōnem: i. e. a nominal submission, probably accompanied by the surrendering of hostages.

2. perlāta est, spread.

3. nātiōnibus: the German tribes, the Ubii in particular. incolerent: for mode cf. 16, 9; 5, 16.

4, 5. sē datūrās (not datūrōs) (*esse*), that they would give. What is the antecedent of sē?



Caesar, quod in Ītaliā Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iūssit. Ipse in Carnūtēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitatēs propinquae hīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hibernācula dēductīs in Ītaliā profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nullī.

6. **Īllyricum**, -ī, n., Illyria, *lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province.* 3

7. **Carnūtēs**, -um, m., a Gallic people between the Seine and Loire, about modern Chartres. \*

**Andēs**, -ium, m., a Gallic people in modern Anjou about modern Angers. 3

8. **Turonī**, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people on the Loire about modern Tours. 3

9. **hibernāculum**, -ī, [hibernō, pass the winter], n., a wintering-place; in pl. huts or tents for wintering, winter quarters. 1

11. **supplicātiō**, -ōnis, [supplex, supplicating], f., public prayer in humiliation for misfortunes, but esp. in thanksgiving for successes, thanksgiving.

**dē-cernō**, -ere, **crēvī**, **crētus** [cernō, decide], a., decide, appoint, decree.

6. **Īllyricum**: see Int. 23.

7. in **Carnūtēs** etc., constr. with **dēductīs**.

9. **hibernācula**: see Int. 139.

11. **supplicātiō**: a public thanksgiving, decreed by the Senate in honor of a victory. The number of days in the festival was in proportion to the importance of the victory. At first the *supplicatio* lasted only one day, later three or

four. Pompeius' victory over Mithradates was honored by a twelve days fete. The honor of a fifteen days' *supplicatio* was therefore unprecedented. **quod**, (an honor) *which*. The antecedent is the preceding clause **diērum ... est**. Of what gender are phrases, terms, or clauses when used substantively? A. 29, 2 c; G. 20, III; H. 42 N.; P. B. 247, I, b *ad fin.*

### BOOK III.—VARIOUS OPERATIONS IN THE ALPS AND IN WESTERN GAUL.

---

The great and growing importance of Roman interests in Transalpine Gaul made it necessary that a shorter route be secured from thence into Italy. Caesar accordingly sent Galba, in the fall of this year (57 B. C.) to take possession of the passes over the Pennine Alps and suppress the hostility of the natives. Having apparently accomplished this, Galba went into winter quarters in a little town at the foot of the northern slope of the mountains. Here he was attacked by an overwhelming force of mountaineers, whom, however, he succeeded in driving off after a sharp engagement. He then retreated to a less exposed position, abandoning for a time the object of the campaign.

During the winter of 57-56 B. C., Caesar was in Illyricum, the extreme eastern portion of his vast province. Whatever confidence he may have felt in the permanence of the arrangements he had made in Gaul, was rudely dispelled by the news of a widely extended sedition in the lately subdued Armorican states. Though they had submitted to Publius Crassus and given hostages, they wore the yoke lightly, ready to be thrown off when the time came for action. Confidence in their own prowess and ignorance of the power and resources of the foe they were dealing with, led them to take the fatal step of arresting the Roman officers sent among them to levy contributions of corn for the support of the legions quartered in that region. This virtual declaration of war was followed by the formation of a powerful league of all the coast tribes between the Loire and Seine. The Britanni (here mentioned for the first time in Roman history) sent supplies of men and ships, and the sympathy and secret support of the Belgic tribes were assured.

Early in the spring Caesar hastened to Gaul and issued orders for an extensive campaign. In order to prevent any effective co-operation on the part of his enemies, he divided his forces. Titus Labienus, with part of the cavalry, was sent north to check the threatened uprising of the Belgae and to prevent the Germans from crossing the Rhine. Quintus Titurius Sabinus penetrated the country of the Venelli to cut off communications between the eastern and western portions of the confederacy. Publius Crassus went south into Aquitania to prevent help reaching the insurgents from that quarter. Caesar himself, with the assistance of a strong fleet under Decimus Brutus undertook the conquest of the Veneti, the most powerful Armorican state and the forefront of the confederacy.

The Veneti skilfully utilized the advantages of their position. The country was wild and barren and the Venetan strongholds were erected on the extremities of narrow promontories which the daily tides cut off from the main land. Hence supplies for the campaigning army were obtained with difficulty and siege operations were greatly hindered. The Veneti, on the other hand, had control of the sea and could supply their towns at will with provisions and defenders, or in case of necessity could transport the garrisons to other places, leaving the foe only a barren victory. The co-operation of the Roman fleet—which would have prevented this—was made impossible by the prevalence of stormy weather during most of the summer. When it finally appeared, the Veneti confidently gave a challenge to battle. Their fleet was far superior both in size and equipment to that of their adversaries; yet in the conflict that ensued, Roman valor and ingenuity won the day, and the great naval armament, at once the pride and hope of the allies, was almost entirely destroyed. The submission of the Armorican states soon followed. The prominence of the Veneti in the revolt marked them out for severe punishment as a warning to the Celtic nation. Accordingly the senate was put to the sword and the people were sold as slaves.

The lieutenants of Caesar were as successful as himself. Labienus overawed the Belgae. Sabinus easily defeated Viridovix, the general in command of the land forces of the league. Crassus, after much fighting, subdued Aquitania. The Roman eagles now dominated the seacoast of Gaul from the Pyrenees to the Seine and beyond. Only the Menapii and Morini, far to the north, held out in the impenetrable morasses. Even thither Caesar's daring spirit led him; but after making strenuous efforts to reach the foe, the approach of winter warned him to desist. Quartering his legions upon the conquered tribes as in the previous winter, he proceeded to Italy.

In the two previous campaigns Caesar had proved his skill in directing the operations of a single large army. The present one showed that he was a master of "grand strategy" as well. With forces much smaller than those opposed to him, but directed by experienced subordinates with reference to a well considered plan, he struck his enemies at many points and with complete success. The contrast to this policy presented by the jealousy and lack of unity that prevailed among the Gauls is very instructive. The political constitution of Gaul bound her hand and foot in a contest with the centralized power of Rome.

#### REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.

FROUDE: Caesar, a Sketch, pp. 223-226. (Harper's ed.)

TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. iv. (Ancient Classics Series).

MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. iv. pp. 304-308.

MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. i. pp. 286-297.

NAPOLÉON: Julius Caesar, vol. ii. chap. vi.

## COMMENTARIUS TERTIUS.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne XII et parte equitātūs in Nantuātis, Varagrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, quō māgnō cum periculō māgnisque cum portōriis mercātōrēs ire cōsuērant, patefierī volēbat.

*Caesar sends Galba to seize the passes of the Alps. He overcomes the neighboring tribes and occupies Octodurus.*

1. **Servius**, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.  
 3. **Nantuātēs**, -um, m., a Gallic people on the Loire about Nantes.<sup>4</sup>  
**Varagrī**, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people on the Pennine Alps. 3

**Sedūnī**, -ōrum, m., a Helvetican people about modern Sitten. 3

7. **patefiō**, fierī, factus sum, pass. of patefaciō, make or lay open. 3

The narrative of the campaign of Galba, given in the first six chapters of this book, belongs chronologically to Book II.

2. **XII**: see note on II, 2, 2.

3-5. **Nantuātis**, etc.: fix the location of these tribes by the map. The two legions raised by Caesar in Cisalpine Gaul for the Belgian war (see II, 2, 1) were, according to Strabo, attacked by these mountaineers, and this expedition was planned to check them. As Roman interests north of the Alps grew in importance, it became more and more necessary to maintain an uninterrupted communication with Italy. **quī pertinent**, whose country extends. **summās Alpēs**: the

peaks Mt. Blanc and the Great St. Bernard. For trans. cf. I, 22, 1.

6. **iter per Alpēs**: by the pass of the Great St. Bernard, leading from Martigny (*Octōdūrus*) to Aosta (*Augusta Praetoria Salassorum*) or by the Simplon, farther east. There was another route opened by Pompeius in 77 B. C. over Mt. Genevre; but this was not convenient for reaching northern Gaul. **periculō**: owing to the hostility of the natives.

7. **portōriis**, with heavy imposts, levied by these Alpine tribes upon all merchandise carried through their country. **mercātōrēs**: Caesar makes frequent reference to this class; see I, 1, 8; 39, 4; II, 1' 10.

Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba secundīs aliquot  
 10 proeliis factīs castellisque complūribus eōrum expūgnātīs  
 mīssīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce fac-  
 tā cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse  
 cum reliquīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Varagrōrum,  
 quī appellātur Octōdūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle  
 15 nōn magnā adiectā plāniciē altissimis mōntibus undique  
 continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dividerētur, al-  
 teram partem ēius vicī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuum ab  
 hīs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum lo-  
 cum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

9. aliquot [alius + quot], indecl. num. adj., some, a few, several. 3

14. Octōdūrus, -ī, m., a town of the Varagri, now Martigny. 1

vallis (vallēs), -is, f., valley, vale. \*

15. adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus

[ad-iacio], a., throw to: tēlum adicī (reach); aggerem (throw up).—Fig., add: adiecta plāniciēs (with the addition of). \*

18. attribuo (ad-), -ere, -uī, -ūtus [tribuo, assign], a., assign, allot. \*

8, 9. huic: i. e. Galba. utī... collocāret: for mode cf. II, 28, 13; 26, 3; 16, 7.

10, 11. castellis: these were strongholds permanently occupied, but distinct from the oppida. obsidibus datis: this method of securing submission was especially effective with the Gauls among whom the tribal form of government prevailed.

12. cohortēs duās: how many men? in Nantuātibus: probably at St. Maurice, on the Rhone between Martigny and Lake Lemman. ipse: sc. cōstituit.

14. quī vicus etc. trans. as a principal clause. valle: this is comprised in the Swiss canton called Valais.

15. nōn... plāniciē, with a little level ground adjacent. For the

Figure cf. II, 9, 1; I, 52, 4; 39, 11; 8, 1. altissimis mōntibus; the Bernese and Pennine Alps, the highest mountains in Europe.

16. flūmine: Dranse, a mountain torrent merely, which empties into the Rhone near Martigny. dividerētur: for mode cf. II, 28, 5; 17, 4; I, 26, 18.

17. alteram partem: the part on the eastern side of the Dranse, which here flows north. alteram: i. e., the western portion of the village. By fixing the camp here, Galba placed himself within easy supporting distance of the two cohorts at St. Maurice.

18, 19. eum locum: i. e., alteram... relictam. vāllō, fossā: see Int. 130, 131. The vāllum often, as here, meant the rampart, comprising both agger and palisade.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsīs- *The Gauls secretly with-*  
 sent, frūmentumque eō comportārī iūssisset, subi- *draw and*  
 tō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte *seize the*  
 vicī, quam Gallis concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse mōn- *neighboring*  
 tēsque, qui impendērent, ā māximā multitudīne Sedūnōrum *heights.* 5  
 et Varagrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut  
 subitō Galli bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsi-  
 lium caperent: primum, quod legiōnem neque eam plēnissi-  
 mam dētractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillatim,  
 quī commeātūs petendī causā missi erant, propter paucitatem 10  
 dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitatem locī, cum  
 ipsi ex mōntibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē  
 primum quidem posse impetum suum sustinērī existimābant.  
 Accedēbat, quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs obsidum nō-

7. re-novō, 1. [novus, new], *a.*,  
 renew. 2  
 opprimō (ob-), -ere, pressi,  
 pressus [premō, press], *a.*, press  
 against or down; overwhelm,  
 overpower, destroy; surprise. \*  
 8. plēnus, -a, -um [pleō in com-  
 pleō, fill], full, complete. 4

9. singulātīm (-illatīm) [singuli, single], singly, one by one. 3  
 10. paucitās, -tātis [paucus, few], *r.*, fewness, scarcity, small number. \*  
 14. abs-trahō, -ere, -āxi -ac-  
 tum, to drag away, carry away  
 by force. 3

2, 3. eō: i. e., to *Octodurus*.  
 explorātōrēs: see on II, 11, 6.

4. concesserat: why not subj.  
 according to the rule for dependent  
 clauses in indir. disc.? A. 336, 2 b,  
 p. 372; H. 524, 2, 1; B. 314 3. mōn-  
 tēs: the foot-hills, bordering on the  
 valley.

5. multitudīne: for case cf. II,  
 14, 5; I, 17, 10; 16, 17.

6-8. acciderat: this verb here,  
 as usual, denotes the event as un-  
 foreseen or unfavorable. ut...  
 caperent: relation to *id*? Cf. I,  
 43, 20; 5, 2; 4, 3. neque eam  
 plēnissimam, and that not at its  
 full strength, explained by the ff.  
 and in II, 25.

9. dētractīs etc.: trans. by a  
 causal clause. complūribus, mas-  
 culine, not agreeing with *cohortibus*,  
 as does *duābus*; trans. *many men*  
 etc.

11-13. tum... quod... exis-  
 timābant: the second reason. inī-  
 quitatem locī: the Romans usually  
 avoided placing the camp on a  
 site commanded by an elevation.  
 Galba had departed from the rule,  
 for some reason not stated. ipsi;  
 i. e., the Gauls.

14, 15. accedēbat... dolē-  
 bant, a further reason was, that  
 they were indignant etc. obsidum  
 nōmine: see on 1, 11. They were  
 really reduced to the condition of  
 slaves.

mine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possēssionis culmina Alpiū occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

*Galba's forces, in council, resolve to defend their camp.*

3. Hīs nūntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōēsque plēnē essent perfectae, neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celesiter convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentinī periculī praeter opiniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudīne armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō veniri neque com-

16. perpetuus, -a, -um [perpetuō, cause to continue,] continuous, uninterrupted, perpetual, permanent; entire: in perpetuum, forever. \*

culmen, -inis (cont. from columen) [columna, column], n., top, summit, ridge, height. 1

17. ad-iungō, -ere, -ūnxī, -ūnctus,

join to, attach; apply to: p. p. as adj., adjoining; suitable to. \*

2. plēnē [plēnus, full], adv., fully, completely, entirely. 1

6. exquirō, -ere, quīsivī, quīsitus [quaerō, search], a., seek or search out, inquire, investigate. 2

15. itinerum: the frequent traversing of the route is indicated by the use of the plural.

17, 18. finitimae: the Roman province bounded them on the west. sibi persuāsum habēbant, had persuaded themselves (that) etc; lit., had it (= Rōmānōs ... adiungere) persuaded to themselves. For gender of persuāsum see on II, 35, 11.

2. opus hibernōrum: a general expression for the winter camp. mūnitiōēs: special term describing the fortifications themselves. perfectae: refers both to opus and mūnitiōēs. For the gender see A. 187, a 2; G. 290; H. 439, 1; B.

235 b γγ.

3, 4. neque satis esset prōvisum, and he had not taken sufficient precautions. For the trans. cf. II, 33, 18; 5, 7; I, 50, 8; 23, 5. dēditiōne: a complete submission without conditions.

5. cōnsiliō: a council of war, composed of the military tribunes and the centurions of the first rank, i. e., the highest in his rank in each cohort.

7. repentinī: trans. adverbially, since suddenly such great peril etc. periculī: for case cf. II, 26, 15; 17, 9, I, 14, 2; 11, 14.

9. veniri: used impersonally. Trans. neither could (any) come to their assistance etc.

meātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam<sup>10</sup> dēspērātā salūte nōnnūllae hūiusmodī sententiae dicēbantur ut impedimentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā isdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō interim rei ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

4. Brevē spatiō interiectō, vix ut rēbus, quās cōstituissent, collocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum conicere. Nostri primō integrīs viribus fortiter repūgnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, ut quaeque

15

*The Gauls in great numbers attack the camp. The Romans are hard pressed.*

10. sup-portō (sub-) 1. [portō, carry], a., bring up, carry or convey to. 5

14. placeō, 2. please, satisfy; *often impers.*, seem good, be decided, resolved, or determined. \* re-servō, 1. [servō, save, keep], a., keep back, save up, reserve. 4

1. brevis, -e, short (of time or

space), brief. \*

4. gaesum, -i, n., a heavy iron javelin (of the Gauls). 1

5. integer, tegra, tegrum [tangō, touch], untouched, intact, whole, fresh, unimpaired. \*

6. frūstrā, adv. [fraus, deceit], in deception or error; without effect, in vain. 5

10. interclūsīs itineribus: particularly the road west, along the left bank of the Rhone. This road connected Octodurus with the place where the two cohorts were stationed.

11. hūiusmodī, of this sort, to this effect; really two words, a genitive of quality.

13, 14. maiōrī . . . cōnsiliō, the majority determined to reserve this plan for a last resort, (and) in the meantime etc.

15. experīrī . . . dēfendere: relation to placuit? Cf. I, 17, 8; 10, 3; 7, 12; 3, 18.

2. cōstituissent: for mode cf. II, 35, 3; 16, 9; I, 6, 4; 6, 2.

4. dēcurrere, conicere, etc., for

mode cf. II, 30, 6; I, 32, 7; 16, 2. So also repūgnāre (l. 5), mittere (l. 6), occurrere (l. 7), ferre and superārī (l. 8). dēcurrere: see superiōra loca 3, 8. gaesa: javelins of great weight and length, which seem to have been peculiar to the Alpine Gauls. They had a thick shaft and a barbed iron head. Varro says that two gaesa were carried by each soldier. vāllum: here the palisade crowning the agger; see Int. 131.

5. viribus: while their strength was fresh, an abl. abs.

6. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart of the camp, which was higher than the plain into which the Gauls had descended. Cf. dēcurrere, line 4. ut quaeque, as each (whenever any).



pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant, quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo defessus ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem eius loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facultas dabatur.

*Galba's centurions decided on a sortie.*

5. Cum iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela nostras deficerent atque hostes acrius instarent languidiorebusque nostris vallum scindere et fossas complere coepissent,

8. diuturnitas, -tatis [diuturnus, prolonged], *v.*, long duration or continuance. 2

12. saucius, -a, -um, wounded, hurt. 2

3. languidus, -a, -um, spiritless, faint, languid. 1

4. scindo, -ere, scidi, scissus, a., split, cleave; tear down, destroy. 2

7. defensoribus: for case cf. II, 31, 9; 21, 12; I, 23, 11; 8, 12.

8. hoc superari, in this they were overmatched, explained by quod ... succedebant.

9, 10. alii ... succedebant, others with fresh energies took their places. viribus: for case cf. II, 18, 4; 6, 11; I, 39, 5; 28, 15. Contrast the construction carefully with that of the same words in l. 5. nostris: for case cf. 2, 5.

11. ac etc., and not only was an opportunity not given to an exhausted (man) of retiring from the fight, but not even to a wounded (man) of leaving etc. Notice that the second 'not,' printed in small capitals above, is not expressed in the text: see A. 149 e; G. 482 5, R. 1; H. 552 2; B. 343 2 a. excedendi, the gerund: read the reference given on I, 2, 14, and explain the case.

12. saucio: the care of the wounded was entrusted to surgeons who, at first slaves, later free men,

were released from all other service. The wounded were carried or led to the rear, or to the camp, where their wounds were attended to. It was considered disgraceful to leave the wounded without protection. constiterat, had taken his stand. relinquendi, the gerundive: read the reference on I, 1, 9, and give the gender, number and case.

13. sui recipiendi, of recovering, i. e., attending to his wounds.

1. horis: for case cf. II, 7, 11; 3, 2; I, 22, 3.

3, 4. languidiorebusque nostris, and, as our men were quite faint. vallum scindere: i. e., to tear up the valli forming the breast-work (lorica: Int. 131) and thus to gain an entrance to the camp. fossas: the plural is used because the operation of filling the ditch was going on at several points at the same time.

rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius 5  
Baculus, primī pilī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūri-  
bus cōfectum vulneribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tri-  
būnus militum, vir et cōsiliī māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam  
accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptione  
factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocātis 10  
centuriōnibus celeriter militēs certiōrēs facit, paulisper inter-  
mitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sē-  
que ex labōre reficerent, post datō signō ex castris ērumpe-  
rent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

6. Quod iūssī sunt, faciunt ac subitō omni- *The Gauls are  
driven back  
with loss.*  
bus portis ēruptione factā neque cōgnōscendī,

6. pilus, -ī, m., century, centurion;  
primī pilī centuriō, chief cen-  
turion. 3

Nervicus, -a, -um, of or with the  
Nervii, Nervian. 1

7. C., abbreviation for the prae-  
nomen Gaius. \*

Volusēnus, -ī, m., a Roman gentile  
name. Gaius Volusenus Quad-  
ratus, a tribune of Caesar's army,  
afterward commander of cav-  
alry. 5

12. tantummodo, adv. [tantum

+ modo], so much only; only,  
merely. 1

excipio, -ere, cōpī, ceptus  
[capiō, take], a., take out, off,  
or up, catch, receive; take up (*in  
turn*), succeed. \*

13. labor, -ōris, m., labor, toil,  
hardship, trouble. \*

reficio, -ere, fēcī, fectus [faciō],  
a., remake, renew, refresh, re-  
oruit (*body or mind*). \*

ē-rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus [rum-  
pō, break], n., break out or forth,  
sally. 1

5, 6. cāsum, *extremity*. primī  
pilī: see Int. 92. quem etc., in II,  
25, 7, 8.

10. extrēmum auxilium: see  
on cōsiliō 3, 14. experirentur:  
for the tense see on I, 3, 13.

11. centuriōnibus: how many  
were there in the eight cohorts?  
militēs... facit, *directs the sol-  
diers*. intermitterent, *to leave off*;  
for the mood see on I, 20, 14: so  
also the three following verbs.

12. exciperent, *intercept*. i. e.,  
*shield themselves from*.

13. post, afterwards: an adv.=  
*deinde*.

1. quod: for omission of the  
antecedent (what?) cf. I, 17, 2.

2. portis: abl. instr. cōg-  
nōscendī etc., *of finding out what  
was going on or recovering them-  
selves*. The sortie was a complete  
surprise to the enemy, who had in-  
ferred an early surrender from the  
cessation of fighting on the part of  
the Romans. On the Gallic mode  
of attack, see Int. 181-8.

quid fieret, neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relin-  
quunt. Ita commūtātā fōrtūnā eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum  
5 castrōrum vēnerant, undique circumventōs interficiunt et ex  
hominum mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum  
ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reli-  
quōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem  
superiōribus cōsistēre patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium  
10 cōpiīs fūsis armisque exūtīs sē in castra mūnitiōnēsque suās  
recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fōrtū-  
nam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiber-  
na cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus viderat,  
māximē frūmentī commēātūsque inopiā permōtus posterō diē,  
15 omnibus ēius vicī aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam reverti

Galba retires  
for the win-  
ter.

3. colligō (con-), -ere, lēgī, lēc-  
tus [lēgō, gather], a., gather to-  
gether, collect, assemble; recover  
one's senses or courage, rally. \*  
7. cōn-stō, stāre, stitī, stātus  
[stō, stand], n., stand together or  
still, stand firm, be steadfast;  
agree, correspond; be settled or  
established: cōnstat, impers., it

is evident.

10. fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, a.,  
pour, discharge, scatter; over-  
throw, rout. 2

exuō, uere, uī, ūtus, draw out or  
off, put or strip off, divest, de-  
spoil. 4

13. memini, -isse, def. a., n., re-  
member, recollect. 2

3. suī colligendī: this con-  
struction deserves careful study.  
Read A. 298 a, Note; G. 428, R. 1;  
H. 542, I N. 1; B. 339 5. What  
kind of a pronoun is suī? Give  
its gender, number, and case, and  
the reasons therefor. Is colligendī  
gerund or gerundive? How does  
this construction differ from suī  
recipiendī in 4, 13?

5. castrōrum: i.e. that part of  
the town which was being used as  
a camp. circumventōs: trans. by  
a coordinate clause: cf. II, 17, 4;  
5, 11; I, 5, 13.

6. XXX: the number would  
seem to be exaggerated, in view of  
the fact that Galba's force was  
hardly in excess of 4,000 men.

10. fūsis . . . exūtīs, routed and

disarmed. armīs: for the case cf.  
4, 7; II, 31, 9; 21, 12. What does  
exūtīs agree with? The outcome  
of this combat illustrates a funda-  
mental defect in the Gauls as war-  
riors. They were exceedingly  
brave, but lacked staunchness and  
could not rally from a reverse.

11. saepius etc.: Galba felt  
that it would be foolish to court  
another attack by remaining in so  
dangerous a position. The com-  
plete victory which he had gained  
made it possible for him to retire  
with honor.

12, 13. aliō cōnsiliō: what  
was it? see 1, 5-7. aliīs . . . vide-  
rat, (but) had found the situation  
(rēbus) unfavorable (aliīs). rēbus:  
for case cf. II, 27, 5; 21, 9; I, 23,  
5; 16, 13.

contendit ac nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante incolumem legionem in Nantuatis, inde in Allobrogēs perduxit ibique hiemavit.

7. His rebus gestis cum omnibus de causis *Crassus sends officers to various Armorican states for supplies.* Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita inita hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. Eius belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulescens cum legione septima proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemabat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimae civitates frumenti causa dimisit; quo in numero est 10

16. *dē-moror*, 1. [*moror*, delay], a., delay, restrain, hinder. 1 *incolumis*, -e, unhurt, uninjured, safe. \*

4. *hiems* (*hiemps*), *hiemis* [*Sanscrit*, *himas*, snow], f., winter time, winter. \*

5. *subitus*, -a, -um [*subeo*, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden. 2

6. *co-orior*, *oriri*, *ortus sum* [*cum* + *orior*, rise], n., arise,

spring up, rise with force, break forth. \*

7. *adulescens* (*ado-*), -entis [*adolēscō*, grow up], m., f., youth; young man or woman, from seventeen to forty years of age. \* *mare*, -is, n., sea; *mare Oceanum*, the ocean. \*

9. *praefectus*, -i [*praeficiō*, set over], m., overseer, commander, officer, general (*equitum*); governor of a province. \*

17. *inde in Allobrogēs*: Galba marched west along the south shore of Lake Leman and probably wintered at Vienna, the capital of the Allobroges.

The events recited in the following chapters belong to the year 56 B. C.

1. *omnibus de causis*: explained by the following abl. abs.

2, 3. *pacatam*, subdued. See on II, 1, 7. *existimaret*: for mode cf. I, 43, 13; 26, 6; 14, 17. *superatis Belgis* etc.: trans. by causal clauses: cf. II, 1-33. *expulsis Germanis*: the army of Ariovistus (I, 30-54.)

*Sedunis*: they were the most influential of the Alpine tribes and are mentioned as representing all of them.

4. *inita hieme*: for trans. cf. II, 2, 3. *profectus esset*: from Cisalpine Gaul, whither he had repaired in the fall of 57 B. C.; see II, 35, 9; III, 1, 1. For mode cf. *existimaret* l. 2. *eas*: i. e. of *Illyricum*.

7, 8. *proximus . . . Oceanum*: i. e., nearer than any other of the officers of the army. For the case see on *propius*, I, 46, 2.

9. *praefectos*: see Int. 101. *tribunos*: see Int. 90, 91.

T. Terrasidius missus in Esubiōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

*These tribes, led by the Veneti, unite and demand their hostages from Crassus.*

8. Hūius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis orae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū nauticārum rerum reliquōs antecēdunt et in magnō impetū maris atque apertō paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē, quī eō mari ūtī cōsuērunt, habent vēctigālēs. Ab his fit initium retinendī Siliī atque Velāniī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recipērātūrōs existimābant.

11. Terrasidius, -ī, m., a Roman name. E. g. Titus Terrasidius, a military tribune. 2

Trebius, -ī, m., a Roman family name: Marcus Trebius Gallus, a military tribune. 2

12. Velānius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Quintus Velanius, a military tribune. 2

Silius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Titus Silius, a military tribune. 2

1. *amplus*, -a, -um, of large extent, spacious, large. \*

2. *ōra*, -ae, f., border, margin; coast, shore. 4

4. *nāvigō*, 1. [*nāvis* + *agō*, put in motion], n., set sail, sail; proceed. \*

*nauticus*, -a, -um [*nauta*, sailor], of a sailor, naval, nautical. 1

5. *ante-cēdō*, -ere, cessī [*cēdō*, go], a, n., go before, precede, excel, surpass. \*

6. *portus*, -ūs [*portō*, carry; cf. *porta*], m., harbor, haven, port. \*

7. *vēctigālis*, -e [*vēctigal*, revenue], paying revenue or tribute, tributary. 2

9. *recipērō* (*recup-*), 1. a., recover. \*

1, 2. *hūius . . . eārum*, the power of this tribe (the Veneti) is very great along the whole sea coast in these parts. *longē*: the superlative with *longē* in Caesar, is commonly the superlative absolute.

3. in *Britanniam*: the Veneti seem to have monopolized the traffic between the continent and the southeastern coast of the island.

4. *scientiā, ūsū*: for case cf. II, 17, 14; 15, 4; I, 53, 9; 1, 12. *nauticārum*: the adj. ending -icus (-acus) signifies of or belonging to. A. 164, c; G. 185, i; H. 330; B. 151 2.

What other endings have the same signification?

5, 6. in *magnō*. . . *apertō*, in (consequence of) the great impetuosity of the open sea. What emphasis belongs to the word following *atque*? *magnō impetū*: this part of the Atlantic has always been the terror of mariners.

7. *habent vēctigālēs*, they treat all as tributaries. i. e., the ship masters paid a tax for the privilege of using these ports as harbors of refuge. *ab his* etc., these began (hostilities) by arresting Silius etc.

Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita 10 et repentina cōnsilia, eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrant, nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fōrtūnae exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitatēs sollicitant, ut in eā libertāte, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, per-15 manēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre māllent. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem legātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt, sī velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior <sup>Caesar equips a fleet to attack them.</sup> factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligere, quod influit in Oceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā institui, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī 5

14. **exitus**, -ūs [eō, go], *m.*, going out, exit; issue, result, end. \*

15. **per-maneō**, -ēre, **mānsi**, **mānsus** [maneō, remain], *n.*, stay through or to the end; hold out, endure. \*

16. **mālō**, **mālle**, **mālui** [magis + volō, wish], *a., n.*, wish more or rather, prefer. 2

3. **aedificō**, 1. [aedēs, building

+ faciō], *a.*, build, construct; erect, establish. 3

**Liger**, -eris, *m.*, the river Loire. \*  
**rēmex**, -igis [rēmus, oar + agō], *m.*, rower, oarsman. 1

4. **nauta** (contr. of **nāvita**), -ae [nāvis], *m.*, sailor, seaman, mariner. 2

**gubernātor**, -ōris [gubernō, steer or pilot], *m.*, steersman, pilot. 2

10. **finitimī**: the *Esuvii* and *Coriosolites*. *ut, as, in fact.* *Ut* here, as frequently, introduces what is asserted as a general truth in connection with some illustration. **subita**, etc. On this characteristic of the Gauls, see II, 1, 11.

13. **commūnī cōnsiliō**: see Int. 68. (**sē**) **āctūrōs** (*esse*), *that they would do.*

18, 19. **velit, remittat**: form in direct discourse?

2. **aberat longius**: in Illyricum.

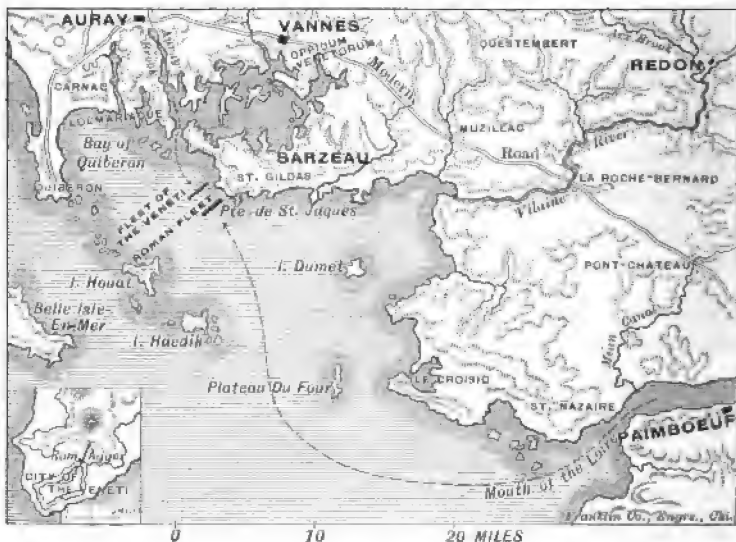
**nāvēs longās**: see Int. 170.

3, 4. **rēmigēs, gubernātōrēs**: see Int. 172. **nautās**: they managed the sails exclusively. Why would it be difficult for Crassus to procure *nautae* and *gubernātōres* in sufficient numbers?

5, 6. **cum . . . potuit**, *as soon as the time of year permitted.* Caesar was at Lucca in Cisalpine Gaul in April, (see Int. 28), and probab' did not join the army on the Lo until sometime in May.

*The Veneti  
prepare for  
attack and  
summon al-  
lies.*

reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris adven-  
tū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīssissent,  
intellegābant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nā-



10tīōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē  
et in vīcula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine periculī bellum parā-

8. **facinus, -oris** [faciō], n., deed;  
misdeed, outrage, crime. \*

10. **sānctus, -a, -um** [sanciō,  
make sacred], sacred, holy, in-

violable. 3

in-violātus, -a, -um [violō, in-  
jure], uninjured, unharmed, in-  
violable. 4

8. **quantum . . . admīssissent**,  
*how great a wrong they had done.*  
For the mode cf. II, 20, 10; 5, 6; I,  
45, 2; 21, 8.

9-11. **lēgātōs . . . coniectōs**  
(esse), *that ambassadors had been*  
*arrested etc.*, in appos. to **facinus**.  
These (lēgātōs) were not envoys in  
any proper sense. Cf. the state-  
ment in 7, 8-10, relative to the ob-

ject of Crassus in sending them  
out. However, from Caesar's  
point of view, they were his *lēgātī*,  
charged with a highly important  
duty. **quod nōmen**, *a name which*.  
When the antecedent (*nōmen*) of the  
relative is in apposition with the  
main clause, or with some word of  
it (lēgātōs), it is always put in the  
relative clause (*quod nōmen* not *nō-  
men quod*).

re et m̄ximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, prōvidēre instituunt, hōc māiore spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvīgatiōnem impeditam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque por-  
15  
tuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōfidēbant: ac iam ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nā-

13. **multum** *adv.* [*acc. of multus, much*], much, very, greatly, especially.

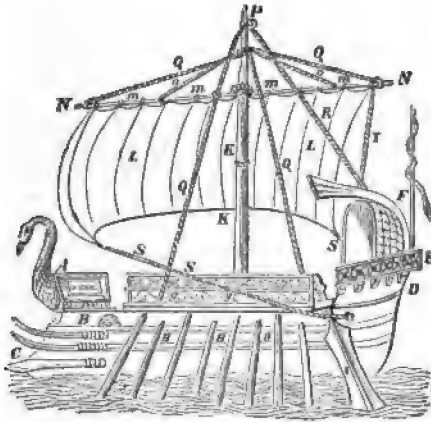
sail], *℞.*, sailing, voyage, navigation.

15. **īnscientia, -ae**, [*īnsciēns*, not knowing], *℞.*, want of knowledge, ignorance.

14. **nāvīgatiō, -ōnis** [*nāvīgō*,

14. **aestuāriīs**: inlets in which the tide (*aestus*) rose and fell.

bant. **ut**, *although, even if*. For the concessive use of *ut* see A. 313,



A. *prōra*.  
B. *oculus*.  
C. *rostrum*.  
E. *puppis*.  
F. *aplustre*.  
H. *remi*.

I. *gubernāculum*.  
K. *mālus*.  
L. *vēlum*.  
M. *antenna*.  
N. *cornua*.  
S. *pedēs*.

15. **impeditam** (*esse*), *was difficult*.

17. **apud ... posse**, *would not be able to stay among them*. The future idea is contained in *cōfidē-*

a; G. 610; H. 515, III; B. 308.

18, 19. **plūrimum posse**: for trans. see on I, 3, 20. **facultātem**, *a sufficient number*.



vibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium  
 20 neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs,  
 insulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō  
 marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciebant.  
 His initis cōsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs  
 in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prī-  
 25 mum bellum gestūrum cōstābat, quam plūrimās possent,  
 cōgunt. Sōciōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Nam-  
 netēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt;  
 auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est,  
 arcessunt.

*Caesar plans  
to prevent  
their union.*

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās  
 suprà ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad

21. insula, -ae, f., island.

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, a., learn,  
 become acquainted or familiar  
 with; in pf., have learned (and  
 hence) know.

conclūdō, -ere, clūdī, clūsus  
 [claudō, close], a., shut up, im-  
 prison, close, confine: conclū-  
 sum mare, an inland sea.

22. vāstus, -a, -um [vāstō, lay  
 waste], waste; vast, boundless,  
 immense.

24. Venetia, -ae, f., the territory  
 of the Veneti.

26. Lexovii, -ōrum, m., a Gallic  
 tribe southwest of the Seine; capi-  
 tal, Noviomagus, now Lisieux. \*

Namnetēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe  
 about modern Nantes. 1

27. Ambiliātī, -ōrum, m., a Gal-  
 lic people about modern Abber-  
 ville in Picardy. 1

Diablintēs, -um: see Aulerci, II,  
 34, 3. 1

20. locōrum: limits vada, etc.

21, 22. longē aliam...atque,  
 that navigation was a very different  
 thing...from (what it was) etc.  
 See on atque, I, 28, 17. conclūsō  
 marī: in allusion to the Mediter-  
 ranean, the "Roman Lake."

23. his initis cōsiliis: refer-  
 ence is made to the preparations  
 mentioned in lines 11 and 12,  
 above. frūmenta: meaning in  
 pl.? see on I, 16, 4.

24. Venetiam: the fleet of the  
 confederates probably rendezvous-

ed in the Bay of Quiberon at the  
 mouth of the Auray river.

25. quam plūrimās: for trans.  
 of. I, 33, 19; 7, 3; 3, 3.

26. Osismōs, etc.: coast tribes  
 reaching as far north as the mouth  
 of the Rhine.

28. ex Britannīā: the Gauls  
 were accustomed to draw support  
 in their wars from their kinfolk in  
 Britain.

2. ostendimus: in 9, 13-20.  
 multa, many considerations.

id bellum incitabant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānō-  
rum, rebellio facta post deditiōnem, defectiō datīs obsidibus,  
tot civitātum coniūratiō, imprimis, nē hāc parte neglēctā reli- 5  
quae natiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrarentur. Itaque cum  
intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bel-  
lum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nā-  
tūrā libertāti studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, prius-  
quam plūrēs civitātēs cōspirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius 10  
distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

4. **rebelliō, -ōnis** [rebellō, renew war], *v.*, renewal of war or hostilities. 3  
**defectiō, -ōnis** [dēficiō, fail], *v.*, falling away, desertion, revolt. \*  
 5. **tot, indecl. num. adj.**, so many.  
**imprimis** (inpr-), *adv.* [in + *abl. pl. of primus*], among the first, especially, chiefly. \*  
**neglegō, -ere, lēxi, lēctus** [nec + legō, pick up, choose], *a.*, not heed, disregard, neglect. \*  
 8. **mōbiliter** [mōbilis, movable],

- adv.*, rapidly, easily. 1  
**excitō, 1.** [citō, rouse], *a.*, call or rouse forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). \*  
 10. **cōn-spirō, 1.** [spīrō, breathe], *n.*, breathe or agree together, combine, unite; plot, conspire. 1  
**partior, 4.** [pars, part], *a.*, part, share, divide, distribute. 5  
 11. **dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** [tribuō, assign], *a.*, assign apart, divide, distribute. \*

3. **iniūria**: the outrage of having retained Roman Knights. The wrong had not been done to them, but to the Roman state through them. **equitum**: i. e., the *tribuni militum*; see Int. 89. For the case see A. 214 f; G. 361; H. 396, VI; B. 202.

4. **post deditiōnem**: see on II, 34, 5. **datīs obsidibus**: the stability of Caesar's conquests in Gaul would be seriously shaken if this breach of good faith were not speedily punished.

5, 6. **imprimis nē, and particularly** (the apprehension) *that*. For trans. of *nē* cf. II, 1, 6; I, 19, 11. **hāc parte neglēctā**: The Abl. Abs. is here equivalent to a conditional clause; *if he should not attend to etc.* **parte**: i. e., the part of Gaul which

was in open revolt. **reliquae natiōnēs**: such as the Belgae. **sibi idem licēre**: since they had all likewise submitted and given hostages to Caesar.

7. **intellegeret**: for mode cf. 1, 16. **rēbus**: for case cf. II, 16, 6 *his*; 1, 11; I, 45, 6; 25, 20. So also **libertāti** l. 9.

10. **cōnspirārent**: translate its clause after the principal clause, and for mode cf. II, 12, 2; I, 19, 13. **partiendum**: remember that the gerundive of deponent verbs is always passive in meaning; hence **partiendum and distribuendum** are parallel. **sibi**: for case cf. II, 20, 1; I, 38, 5; 11, 15.

11. **distribuendum**: so as to occupy the country and overawe the Gauls.

*He sends troops to the neighboring tribes and marches against the Veneti.*

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō
- 5 ā Belgīs arcessitī dicēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriis XII et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexov-
- 10 ōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum

4. officium, -ī [opus, work + faciō], n., service, function, allegiance, duty; official duty, business. \*

11. D., abbreviation for the praenomen Decimus. 1  
Brūtus, -ī, m., a Roman family name. E. g., Decimus Junius

2. cum equitātū: Caesar had no need of the cavalry in his projected maritime operations against the Veneti.

3. Rēmōs: this tribe may have needed military support at this time in view of the unrest prevailing among the Belgae. adeat, to visit: for mode cf. 5, 11. What conj. is omitted? Notice that Caesar's directions to Labienus are put in the indirect form.

4. Germānōsque etc., and to stop the Germans (who were said to have been sent for as aid by the Belgae), in case (sī) they tried etc. auxiliō: for case cf. II, 30, 10 contemptui; I, 25, 6 impedimento.

5. Belgis: they were repeating the mistake of the Sequani (see Int. 79), with, however, more justification, since they sustained closer relations with the Germans (II, 1, 3). arcessitī: sc. esse, and for the case see A. 271 c; H. 536 2 1); B. 332, c). dicebantur: not part of Caesar's directions to Labienus, but inserted by way of ex-

planation to the reader. All such clauses take the indicative: cf. 2, 4. flūmen: the Rhine.

6. cōnentur: part of his instructions to Labienus. Why therefore the mode? prohibeat: for mode cf. l. 3. What other verb in the sentence is a parallel? cohortibus: see Int. 87, 88. legiōnāriis: i. e., Roman infantry in distinction from the cavalry mentioned above, which was drawn from the Gauls and other allies. XII: about 4,000 men.

8. nātiōnibus, i. e., the Aquitanians. auxilia mittantur: there was little danger of this, on account of the lack of race sympathy between the Aquitanians and Celts; but Caesar probably knew nothing of this at the time. Galliam: i. e., Celtic Gaul, in the western part of which the main operations were to be carried on.

10. tribus: how large a force? See Int. 86.

11. quī... cūret, to see that these troops be kept away (from the

adulēscēntem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iūsserat, praeficit et, cum primum posset, in Venetōs proficiscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

15

12. Erant ēiusmodī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiisque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod bis accidit semper hōrārū XXIII spatiō, neque nāvibus,

*Situation of the strongholds of the Veneti.*

Brutus Albinus, one of Caesar's legati in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompeius. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed in Gaul by order of Antonius. 4

12. classis, -is, f., class, division; army, called out for duty; esp. fleet, including the marines. 5

Pictonēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe, south of the Loire. 3

1. ēiusmodī [for ēius modī, a genitive of quality], of such a kind or sort, such.

situs, -ūs [sinō, let (be in a place or condition)], m., situation, site, position. 5

2. lingula, -ae [lingua, tongue], f., a little tongue, a tongue of land. 1

prōmunturium, -ī [prō-mineō, be prominent, project], n., head-land, promontory. 1

3. aestus, -ūs, m., heat, boiling, surging; tide. minuenta aestū, at ebb tide. \*

4. bis, num. adv. [for duis, fr. duo, two], on two occasions, twice. 4

Veneti). *distinendam*: for this use of the gerundive see on I, 13, 2. *cūret*: for mode cf. II, 17, 2; 11, 9; I, 50, 7; 21, 4.

12. classī: where was it? See 9, 3. classī, nāvibus: for the case cf. II, 14, 7; I, 52, 1; 12, 18.

14. cum primum: as in II, 2, 4.

15. eō: Caesar probably visited the fleet first, then moved along the coast, laying siege to the towns in succession. After the distribution of troops described above, Caesar had left three legions and eight cohorts (see on II, 2, 2), supposing Galba to have joined his chief with his one legion. One legion was probably assigned to the fleet, leaving Caesar a force of

two legions and eight cohorts, or about 10,000 men, with which to operate against the Veneti.

1. sitūs oppidōrum: see map of the campaign against the Veneti, p. 264, small plan.

2. extrēmīs lingulīs: for trans. cf. II, 8, 12. For the ending -ulus see on II, 30, 2. prōmunturiis: Compare the ending -urium (-ārium, -ōrium) with the English ending -ury, -ary, -ory, in designations of place.

3. pedibus, on foot, i. e., by land. At high tide the low ground behind the towns was overflowed ex altō, from the deep (sea). incitāvisset, had rushed in.

4. nāvibus: sc. aditum habē

5 quod rûrsus minuenta aestû nâvēs in vadis afflictarentur. Ita utrâque rê oppidôrum oppugnatiô impediēbatur; ac sî quandô mâgnitûdine operis fôrte superâtî, extrûsô mari aggerē ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidî moenibus adaequâtis, suīs fôr-tûnīs dēspērâre coeperant, mâgnô numerô nâvium appulsô, 10 cûius rei summam facultâtem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant: ibi sē rûrsus isdem oportunitâtibus loci dēfendēbant. Haec eô facilius mâgnam partem aestâtis faciēbant, quod nostrae nâvēs tempestâtibus dētīnēbantur, summaque erat vâstô atque apertô mari, mâgnis 15 aestibus, rârīs ac prope nûllis portibus, difficultās nâvigandî,

5. afflictô (ad-), 1. [*freq. of affligô, strike against, damage*], a., damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. 2

7. quandô, *adv., indef.*, at any time, ever. 1

ex-trûdô, -ere, trûsî, trûsus [*trûdô, thrust*], a., thrust or push out, shut out, drive away. 1

8. mōlēs, -is, f., mass; massive structure; dam, pier, dike, mole. 1

9. appellô, -ere, puli, pulsus, drive or force to; bring to or in, land. 3

10. dē-portô, 1. [*portô, carry*],

a., carry off or away, remove. 1

12. oportunitās (oppor), -tâtis [*opportûnus, fit*], f., fitness, convenience, suitableness; fit time, favorable position or opportunity; advantage. \*

13. tempestās, -tâtis [*tempus, time*], f., time, season; weather; esp. bad weather, storm, tempest. \*f

14. dē-tineô, -ēre, -uî, tentus [*teneô, hold*], a., hold off or back; hinder, detain. 2

15. rârus, -a, -um, loose, thin; scattered, far apart; few. \*

5, 6. minuenta aestû, when the tide ebbs. For case cf. II, 2, 3; I, 40, 8; 25, 5. utrâque rê: both by high and low tide, making united effort impossible.

7, 8. mâgnitûdine, extent. operis: explained by extrûsô etc. extrûsô mari, his . . . adaequâtis: trans. by causal clauses: cf. II, 12, 14, 15. his i. e., aggerē mōlibus. Caesar's method of attack was to extend two parallel moles across the low ground towards the town. When these moles had nearly reached the walls,

the besiegers, taking advantage of low tide, completed them hastily, thus shutting the water out of the space between the dikes.

9. mâgnô . . . appulsô: trans. by a principal clause and insert a connective.

10. cûius rei = *quârum*: a common circumlocution in Caesar. facultâtem: see 9, 19.

12. eô: for case cf. II, 20, 4; I, 32, 9; 16, 18.

13. partem: for case cf. II, 16, 1; I, 26, 15; 3, 12.

14, 15. summa: construe with

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum *Description of their ships.*  
factae armataeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam  
nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs ex-  
cipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs  
5 ad māgnitudinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodatae,  
nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbre ad quamvis vim et contumēliam  
perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitudinem trabibus

1. **namque** [nam, for + -que],  
conj., for indeed, for; more em-  
phatic than nam. 5

2. **carīna**, -ae, f., hull, bottom of  
a ship. 1

**aliquantō**, adv. [alius + quan-  
tus], in some degree, somewhat,  
a little. 1

**plānus**, -a, -um, even, level, flat,  
plain.

3. **dēcessus**, -ūs [dēcēdō, with-  
draw], m., withdrawal, departure;  
ebbing or fall (aestūs). 1

4. **prōra**, -ae, f., the fore part of  
a ship, prow. 1

**ad-modum**, adv. [modus, meas-  
ure], up to the measure or de-  
gree; very much, very; with num.,

fully; with neg., at all. \*

**ērigō**, -ere, rēxi, rēctus [regō,  
direct], a., lift or raise (up); p. p.  
as adj., standing upright, high. 2

**puppis**, -is, f., stern or poop of a  
ship. 2

5. **fluctus**, -ūs [fluō, flow], m.,  
flowing, billow, flood, wave. 4

**ac(ad)-commodātus**, -a, -um, fit,  
adapted to, appropriate. 1

6. **rōbur**, -oris, n., oak, oak tim-  
ber. 1

7. **trānstrum**, -ī [trāns], n.,  
crossbeam or timber; bench for  
rowers, thwart. 1

**pedālis**, -e [pēs, a foot], of a foot  
in thickness or diameter. 1

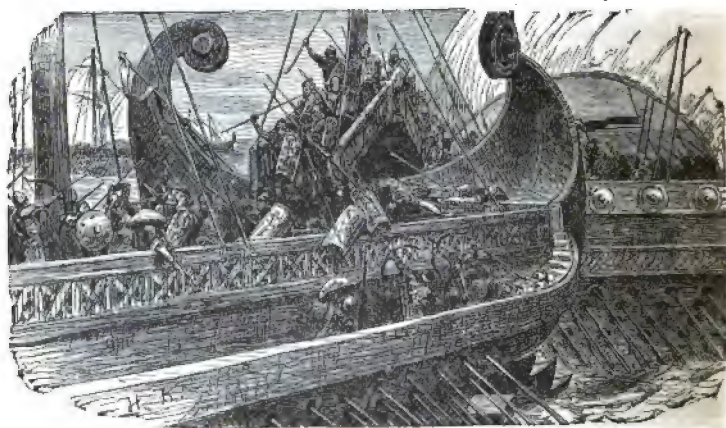
**difficultās**. **vāstō**... **portibus**:  
for case see on l. 7, 8 above.

1. **namque**: the superiority of  
the Veneti over the Romans in these  
waters is explained by reference to  
the construction of their ships.

2, 3. **aliquantō**... **nāvium**,  
(were) considerably flatter than (the  
hulls of) our ships. **quō facilius**,  
to meet the shallows better at ebb  
tide. **excipere**: lit., to meet some-  
thing coming, to withstand some-  
thing. The word belongs rather to  
dēcessum than to vada, with which  
a corresponding verb must be un-  
derstood.

4. **possent**: for mode cf. II,  
25, 18; 17, 17; I, 14, 14. **prōrae**,  
**puppēs**: see Int. 170.

6, 7. **tōtae**, entirely. How is  
the adj. used? Cf. II, 23, 9; 22, 6.  
**ad**... **perferendam**, to withstand  
any violent shocks. What does the  
phrase denote? Cf. II, 1, 13; I,  
54, 8; 5, 8. **trānstra**: here the  
beams supporting the deck, not the  
rowers' benches, because the Veneti  
had no oarsmen. **pedālibus**...  
**trabibus**, (made) of timbers a foot in  
thickness (in altitudinem). For case  
of trabibus see A. 244, 2; B. 84; G.  
396; H. 415, III; P. 405, c, Note.



cōfixa clāvis ferreīs digiti pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revinctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sive propter linī inopiam atque eius<sup>10</sup> ūsūs inscientiam, sive eō, quod est magis vērisimile, quod tantās tempestātes Oceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eiusmodi congressus erat, ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum<sup>15</sup> praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illis

8. cōn-fīgō, -ere, fīxī fixus [fī-gō, fix], *a.*, fix, fasten or nail together; fasten. 1

clāvus, -ī [claudō, close], *m.*, nail, pin, spike (*usually of metal*). 1

ferreus, -a, -um [ferrum, iron], of iron, iron. 3

digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger; *as measure of length*, an inch, the 16th part of a Roman foot; digitus pollex, the thumb. 2

pollex, pollicis [polleō, be strong], *m.*, the thumb. 1

crassitūdō, -inis [crassus, thick], *f.*, thickness. 2

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor. \*

9. fūnis, -is, *m.*, cable, rope. 4

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain, fetter. 4

re-vinciō, -ire, vinxi, vinctus [vinciō, bind], *a.*, bind back or fast, fasten, bind. \*

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil; sail; vēla dare or facere, set sail. 3

alūta, -ae [alumen, alum, used in tanning], *f.*, tanned leather, leather. 1

10. tenuiter [tenuis, thin], thinly, slightly. 1

linum, -ī, *n.*, flax, linen, canvass. 1

11. vērisimilis, -e [vērum, truth + similis], like the truth; probable, likely. 1

12. ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind. \*

13. regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus, guide, direct, control.

15. congressus, -ūs [congre-dior, meet], *m.*, meeting; hostile meeting, encounter, conflict. 1

pulsus, -ūs [pellō, strike], *m.*, stroke, beat: pulsus rēmōrum, rowing. 1

rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar. \*

8. crassitūdine: for case cf. 4, 9: what takes the place here of the adjective? prō, instead of.

9, 10. pellēs... cōnfectae, raw hides and thinly dressed leather (served) as sails. It has been suggested that the Veneti used sails of leather, so as to use them as tents when lying at anchor.

12. tantās... ventōrum, so tempestuous a sea and such raging winds.

13, 14. regī nōn posse, could not be managed.

14. nostrae etc.: our fleet had a conflict of such a nature that it had the advantage merely in etc. classi: for case cf. II, 15, 10; 6, 10; I, 47, 15; 11, 13.

15. pulsū rēmōrum: the Gallic vessels were not propelled by oars.

16. reliqua, all other things. prō, such as.



essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim hīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in iīs erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādē dē 20causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdebat, ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōsisterent tūtius, et ab aestū relictāe nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

*Encounter of the fleets. The enemy's sail-yards are out away.*

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iīs

17. aptus, -a, -um [*p.p. of obsol. apō, fasten, fit*], fitted, suited, adapted: illīs aptiōra, more favorable to their side. 3

18. rōstrum, -ī [rōdō, gnaw, consume], n., beak of a bird; mouth of an animal; beak or prow of a ship. 2

noceō, -ēre, -uī, n., injure, hurt. \* firmitūdō, -inis [firmus, strong], f., strength, firmness, solidity. 2

20. cōpula, -ae [cum + obsol. apō, fasten], f., bond; grappling-hook; grapnel, hold-fast. 1

21. saevio, -ire, -iī, -itus [sae-

vus, raging], n., rage; be fierce or violent. 1

22. tūtō [tūtus, safe], abl. as adv., safely, securely. 3

23. cautēs, -is [akin to cos, cotis, whetstone], f., a sharp or pointed rock, reef. 1

24. ex-timēscō, -ere, timui [*incept. fr. timeō, fear*], be afraid or in a panic, fear much or greatly, dread. 1

3. reprimō, -ere, pressi, pressus [premō, press], a., press or keep back, curb, check, restrain. 2

17. hīs: i. e., the ships of the enemy. For the case cf. 10, 7; nostrae: sc. nāvēs.

19. facile adigēbātur: turn into the active form in English: it was not easy etc.

20, 21. accēdebat, ut, there was the additional (advantage) that. What verbs does ut introduce? Explain their mode. ventō: the noun is employed instead of ei as ventō sē dare, to run before the wind, was a familiar nautical phrase. For similar repetitions cf. II, 19, 10; I, 48, 1, 2.

22. cōsisterent tūtius: for the reason, see line 2 above, carinae . . . plāniōrēs.

23, 24. quārum etc., our ships had to dread peril from all these circumstances. nāvibus: for case cf. 10, 10; II, 20, 1.

1. expūgnātīs: by the method described in 12, 6. ff.

2-4. neque . . . posse, nor could they be injured. For case of iīs cf. hīs 13, 17. What voice is nocēri? Is it a trans. or intrans. verb? How are such verbs used in the passive? Cf. 3, 4. exspectandam: Caesar encamped on the heights of St. Gildas. ubi: join with primum and trans. like cum primum.

nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem; Quae ubi con-  
 vēnit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter COXX nāvēs eō- 5  
 rum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnatissimae  
 profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt; neque satis  
 Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs militum centuriōni-  
 busque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōstābat,  
 quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō 10  
 enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant: turribus autem excitātis  
 tamen hās altitudō puppiū ex barbaris nāvibus superābat,  
 ut neque ex īferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent  
 et mīssa ab Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī  
 rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtāe īsertae affixaeque 15

6. genus, -eris [gen- in gignō, beget], n., descent, origin; race, class, tribe; sort, kind, nature. \*

ōrnō, 1. adorn, furnish, equip: in p. p. as adj., equipped, furnished, fitted out. 2

15. prae-parō, 1. [parō, prepare], a., prepare beforehand, provide. 3

falx, falcis, f., sickle, pruning-hook, falchion. \*

īn-serō, -ere, seruī, sertus [serō, entwine], a., thrust in or into, insert. 1

af(ad)-figō, -ere, fixi, fixus [figō, fix], a., affix, annex, fasten to attach. 1

6. armōrum: including everything necessary for the defense and management of the ships during the battle.

7. portū: see on 9, 24. The battle was fought in the Bay of Quiberon in full view of Caesar and his army. nostris: sc. nāvibus (cf. 13, 17) and for case cf. II, 17, 2; 11, 5; 9, 7; 2, 6.

8. Brūtō, tribūnīs, centuriōnibus: constr. with cōstābat, l. 9.

10. quid etc., what (they were) to do, or what plan of fighting to adopt. agerent, īnsisterent: for mode cf. 9, 8. rōstrō: abl. of instrument.

11. nocērī: sc. nāvibus hostium and for the voice and trans. see on l. 4. cōgnōverant, they knew. For the preteritive verb see on I, 19, 11. turribus autem excitātis, even though towers were erected. These turrēs were erected on the fore and hinder decks. When not in use they were taken down. Their object was similar to that of the fore-top in modern men-of-war, and like that they were often fitted with artillery.

13. adigī possent: like adigēbātur in 13, 19.

14. mīssa: and those thrown etc.

longuriis nōn absimili fōrmā mūrālium falcium. His cum fūnēs, quī antemnas ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprēhēnsi ad- ductique erant, nāvigio rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscisīs antemnae necessariō concidēbant, ut, cum  
20 omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentisque cōsiste- ret, his ēreptis, omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mili- tēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Cae-

16. longurius, -ī [longus], *m.*, a long pole. 3  
ab-similis, -e [similis, like], un- like. 1  
fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, ap- pearance. 4.  
mūrālis, -e [mūrus, wall], per- taining to a wall, mural. 3



*Falcēs Mūrālēs.*

17. antemna, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard, yard-arm, sail. 3  
mālus, -ī, *m.*, mast, pole, beam. 2  
dē-stinō, 1. [obsol. stanō = statuō, place], *a.*, place or fasten down, secure, make fast, determine, des- tine, appoint. 3  
com-prēhendō (prēndō), -ere, -dī,

-ēnsus [prehendō, grasp], *a.*, grasp or lay hold of on both sides, seize, catch, take; compre- hend, comprise. \*

18. nāvigium, -ī [nāvigō, sail], *n.*, a sailing vessel, boat, craft; sailing, navigation. 3

prae-rumpō, -ere, ruptus [rumpō, break], *a.*, break off, tear away. 3

19. abscidō, -ere, cidī, cīsus [caedō, cut], *a.*, cut or lop off, tear off or away. 2

necessariō, *adv.*, [abl. of necessā- rius], unavoidably, under com- pulsion. \*

concidō, -ere, cidī [cadō, fall], *n.*, fall down or together, collapse, fall. \*

20. armāmenta, -ōrum [arma], *n.*, implements, gear; *esp.* tackle or rigging of a ship. 2

22. certāmen, -inis [certō, strive], *n.*, strife, struggle, con- test, combat. 2

16. nōn absimili etc. = *formā nōn dissimili fōrmāe* etc. *fōrmā*: for case cf. 13, 8 *crassitudine*. *mūrālium falcium*: see Int. 164. These hooks saved the fleet from defeat, but Roman reluctance to admit even the possibility of failure does not allow Caesar to say so. *his cum*, *whenever their ropes were caught by these (falcēs) and drawn toward (us)*.

17. comprēhēnsi aductique

*erant, whenever the ropes, which . . . had been caught and pulled by these (hooks).* Notice the pluperfect indicative after *cum* meaning *when- ever* and see A. 322 (last ex.); G. 585; H. 521, II, 1; P. B. 288, 1, A.

19-21. *quibus* = *fūnibus*. *cōsisteret*: for mode cf. 10, 7; 1, 16. *ūsus*, *control*.

23. *eo magis*, *the more*. For the case cf. 12, 12, so also *paulō*, below.

сарis atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs āc loca supe-<sup>25</sup> riōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectis, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singu- *They are de-  
feated with  
the loss of  
their ships.*  
lās bīnae āc ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs  
summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant.  
Quod postquam barbarī fieri animadvertērunt, expūgnātis  
complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllam reperirētur auxilium, <sup>5</sup>  
fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Āc iam conversis in eam  
partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia āc  
tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent.

25. factum, -ī, [*p. p. of faciō, half noun, half participle, to be trans. according to the context*], n., act, action, exploit, thing done, deed. \*

2. bīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [*bis, twice*], two each, two apiece, by twos. 5

ternī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [*ter, thrice*], three each, three apiece, three by three. 3

circum-sistō, -ere, -stetī or stitī, a., stand, flock, gather or rally

around, surround, hem in. \*

3. trāscendō (trāssc-), -ere, -dī [*scandō, climb*], a., climb across or over into, board (a ship); surmount, excel. 2

7. malacia, -ae, f., calm at sea. 1

8. tranquillitās, -tātis [*tranquillus, calm*], f., calmness of mind or weather, serenity, stillness. 2

ex-sistō, -ere, stitī [*sistō, cause to stand*], n., stand or come forth, appear, arise, ensue. 5

24, 25. paulō fortius, a little braver than usual: for the meaning of the comparative cf. II, 25, 10; I, 48, 18; 20, 2.

1. cum: see on cum, 14, 16.

2. bīnae āc ternae, by twos or threes. Does the author mean that every Gallic vessel was thus surrounded, or only those that had been disabled? It is probable that the number of Gallic ships largely exceeded that of the Roman galleys. militēs: temporarily placed upon the Roman ships.

3. summā vī contendēbant,

kept striving with all their might. For the imperfect see II, 1, 8.

5. eī reī: this mode of attack, referring, like quod, to the statement militēs . . . contendēbant.

6, 7. conversis . . . ferēbat, while they (the Veneti) turned their ships in that direction in which the wind was blowing. malacia: an unusual word (Greek), explained by the familiar (Latin) synonym that follows. The summer winds on the Biscay coast blow from the east or north-east, and a dead calm comes on about noon.

Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum m̄ximē fuit  
 10oportūna: nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut  
 perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram per-  
 vēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quartā usque ad sōlis occāsum  
 pūgnārētur

*The Veneti  
 surrender.  
 Caesar slays  
 their leaders  
 and sells the  
 rest into slav-  
 ery.*

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque  
 ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum om-  
 nis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in qui-  
 bus aliquid cōsiliī aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēne-  
 rant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in ūnum locum coēge-  
 rant; quibus āmissis, reliquī neque quō sē reciperent, neque  
 quemadmodum oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē  
 suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Cae-

10. cōn-sector, 1. [sector, freq. of sequor, follow], a., follow eagerly, pursue, chase. \*
11. interventus, -ūs [veniō, come], m., coming between, intervention, interposition. 1
- terra, -ae, f., earth, land, soil; in pl. earth, world: orbis terrārum, the world, all nations. \*
12. usque, adv. [us = uis, fr. ubi, where], all the way to, even

to, as far as, even, till. \*

3. iuventūs, -ūtis, f., the time or period of youth, from seventeen to forty-five years; the youth, the young men. 3
4. dignitās, -tātis [dignus, worthy], f., worthiness, merit; rank, dignity; position, importance. \*
5. ubi-que, adv., in any place, everywhere. 1

10. singulās: i. e., nāvēs Venetōrum. The scattering of the Venetan vessels was unfortunate, because when the calm came on, they were too far apart to assist one another.

11. omnī numerō: how many? pervēnerint: perf. subj. instead of the impf. to mark the actual completion of the act.

12. hōrā quartā: 10 a. m., if, as seems probable, the battle was fought near the autumnal equinox.

13. pūgnārētur, since the battle was continued.

2. cum, tum (l. 5), not only . . . but also: used correlatively.

3. in etc., who were possessed of any discretion or respectability.

4, 5. cōsiliī, dignitātis, nāvium: for case cf. 3, 7; II, 26, 15; 15, 10. nāvium quod . . . fuerat etc. = nāvēs quae . . . fuerant (or quae nāvēs . . . fuerant, eas) . . . coegerant.

6. quibus: including both men and ships. reliquī . . . habēbant, the rest had not (a place) where they could retreat nor (did they know) how etc.

8. eō: as in 14, 23.

sar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēdidit.

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum iis cōpiis, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperiī tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum, quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās cōgerat; atque his paucis diēbus Aulerci Eburovicēs Lexoviique senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, port-

*Sabinus goes north among the Venelli and is threatened by them.*

9. vindicō, 1. [*vis*, force or authority + *dicō*], *a.*, assert authority, claim one's rights against; set free, deliver; avenge, punish, take vengeance upon. 3

11. necō, 1. [*nex*, death], *a.*, put to death, kill, murder. \*

corōna, -ae, *f.*, wreath, garland, chaplet; tiara, coronet, crown;

circle, crowd. 2

3. Viridovix, -icia, *m.*, a chief of the Venelli. 4

6. Eburovicēs, -um: see Aulerci. II, 34, 3. 2

7. auctor, -ōris [*augeō*, increase], *m.*, one who produces, creates, or originates; promoter, instigator, originator, author. 3

9. quō: why not *ut*? Cf. 13, 3.  
10. iūs lēgātōrum: referring to the treatment of the Roman officers; see 8, 7-11, and note 9, 9.  
senātū: the Veneti had no Senate in the Roman sense. Caesar uses a Roman term to designate a Gallic institution. reliquōs, the rest, evidently means all in his power, possibly the inhabitants of the capital, Daricoritum. It can hardly mean the whole nation. "The only naval power in Gaul that could be formidable to the Romans was totally destroyed, and neither the Veneti nor their allies gave the proconsul (Caesar) any more trouble." (Long).

11. sub corōnā vēdidit, sold at auction, the captives wearing chaplets of leaves to indicate that they were for sale, or, according to Aulus Gellius, that the seller gave no guaranty. The custom, however, was not observed in Caesar's time.

The auction was conducted by the *quaestor* and the buyers were the traders who thus supplied the slave market at Rome. See Int. 102, mercatōrēs.

1. dum geruntur: while these things were being done. For the tense see on I, 27, 8.

2. Sabīnus, cōpiis: see 11, 9, 10.

3. his: the Venelli; for case cf. II, 9, 11; 6, 12.

4. summam: as in II, 4, 22.

5. exercitum: the regular force. cōpiās: a general levy of the allies: see Int. 176.

6. his paucis diēbus: after the arrival of Sabinus.

7. senātū: i. e., the elders or chiefs: see note on 16, 10. quod . . . nōlēbant: the people had decided upon war, but the 'senators' would not ratify the decision.

ās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt: māgnaque  
 praetereā multitudō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum la-  
 10 trōnumque convēnerat, quōsspēs praedandī studiumque bellan-  
 di ab agricultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre revocābat. Sabīnus idōneō  
 omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā  
 eum duūm mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductis  
 cōpiis pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hosti-  
 15 bus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum  
 militum vōcibus nōnnihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem  
 timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere  
 audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multītū-  
 dine hostium, praesertim eō absente, quī summam imperiī

9. praeter-eā, adv. [eā fr. is], beyond this, besides, further-  
 more. \*

per-dō, -ere, didī, ditus [dō, give],  
 a., give over, ruin: in p. p. as  
 adj., desperate, ruined. 2

latrō, -ōnis, m., freebooter, bandit,  
 robber. 2

11. agricultūra, -ae [ager+co-  
 lō, cultivate], f., cultivation of  
 the land, agriculture. \*

13. prō-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus  
 [dūcō, lead], a., lead or bring

forth; draw up (cōpiās); prolong,  
 protract. \*

15. contemptiō, -ōnis, [con-  
 temnō, despise], f., disdain, con-  
 tempt. 4

16. nōn-nihil, adv. [nihil, in no  
 respect, nothing], to some ex-  
 tent, somewhat. 1

čarpō, -ere, -sī, -tus, a., pluck,  
 pull away; pull to pieces, carp  
 at, censure. 1

19. absēns, -entis [pr. p. of ab-  
 sum], absent, at a distance. \*

9. undique ex Galliā=*ex om-  
 nibus partibus Galliae*. perditō-  
 rum, *desperate*. The natural result  
 of the long continued war was to  
 unsettle everything.

10. studium bellandi: see Int.  
 70. Are praedandi and bellandi ge-  
 runds or gerundives? What case  
 and why?

11, 12. idōneō... locō, in a  
 place suitable in all particulars.  
 See Int. 129. According to Napo-  
 leon III, the camp was pitched on  
 a hill about four miles east of Av-  
 ranches, in the south of the Depart-  
 ment of Manche. Notice the three

ablatives in juxtaposition: for rē-  
 bus cf. 8, 4; for locō cf. 12, 5; for  
 castrīs (note the absence of in) cf.  
 II, 30, 4; I, 49, 1.

13. duūm, only two. This con-  
 tracted form for duōrum is found  
 here only in Caesar. milium: sc.  
 passuum. cōnsēdisset: on the  
 other side of a little stream called  
 the See, north of Sabinus' position.

16, 17. vōcibus, talk. tan-  
 tam... praebuit, manifested such  
 an appearance of cowardice. vāl-  
 lum: see on 1, 19.

19. eō absente, in the absence  
 of. Case of eō? What part of  
 speech is summam?

tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunitāte aliquā datā lēgātō<sup>20</sup> dimicandum nōn existimābat.

18. Hāc cōfirmatā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iis quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māg-  
nīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet, utī ad hostēs trāseat, et, quid fierī velit, ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad  
eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur, docet neque longius abesse, quā proximā nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs, occāsiōnem negōtīi bene  
gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra irī oportēre. Multae  
rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabinī cunctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui

20. aequus, -a, -um, even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just: aequō animō, with equanimity. \*

2. callidus, -a, -um [calleō, be callous; know by experience], experienced, skilful, shrewd. 1

4. praemium, -i [prae-emō, buy or get before others], n., advantage, distinction, prize, reward. \*

pollicitātiō, -ōnis [polliceor, promise], f., promise, offer. 5

5. ē-doceō, 2. [doceō, teach], a., teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. 4

8. clam [cēlō, conceal], adv., se-

cretly, unawares. \*

10. con-clāmō, 1. [clāmō, cry out], a., n., shout or cry out together. \*

occāsiō, -ōnis [ob + cadō, fall], f., occasion, opportunity. \*

bene [benus = bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully: comp. melius: sup. optimē. 3

13. cunctātiō, -ōnis [cunctor, delay], f., delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. 2

cōfirmātiō, -ōnis [cōfirmō, confirm], f., confirmation, assurance, evidence. 1

20, 21. lēgātō etc.: for trans. cf. 10, 10: how is *dimicandum* used here? For case of *lēgātō* cf. 13, 24.

2, 3. ex iis: connect with *dēlēgit*. auxiliī causā: see Int. 99.

4, 5. utī ... trāseat: for the clause cf. 1, 9. quid ... ēdocet, gave him his instructions. velit: for mode cf. 14, 10. prō, feigning

to be.

6. quibus, etc.: rumors of Caesar's lack of success (see 14, 2, 3) had probably reached Sabinus.

7, 8. neque ... quā ... ēdūcat, and not later than the next night Sabinus would lead out etc.

11. irī oportēre: trans. by personal constr. rēs, considerations. Name the following appositives.



reī parum diligenter ab iīs erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī belli,  
 15 et quod ferē libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. His  
 rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex  
 conciliō dīmittunt, quam ab his sit concessum, arma utī ca-  
 piant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut ex-  
 plōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque collēctis, quibus fossās  
 20 Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

*The Veneti  
 are defeated  
 with great  
 slaughter and  
 forced to  
 surrender.*

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātīm ab  
 imō acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc māgnō  
 cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatiū ad  
 sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātique  
 5 pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat.  
 Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera subitō  
 duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est oportūni-

14. parum, adv. [parvus, little],  
 little, too little, not enough, not  
 very. 2

Veneticus, -a, -um, of or with the  
 Veneti.

15. libenter [libēns, willing],  
 willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 3

18. laetus, -a, -um [laetor, re-  
 joice], joyful, glad, rejoicing. 1

19. sarmentum, -ī [obsol. sarpō,  
 trim, prune], n., prunings, brush-

wood, faggot. 1

virgulta, -ōrum [fr. virgula,  
 twig], n., a place of twigs, thick-  
 et, copse; sprouts, cuttings of  
 trees. 1

20. pergō, -ere, perrēxi, perrēc-  
 tus [per + regō, direct], n., go  
 on, continue, proceed, advance. 1

2. hūc, adv. [old form for hōc, fr.  
 hic], to this place, hither, here. \*

14. parum diligenter, with too  
 little care. spēs . . . belli, the hopes  
 (inspired by) etc. They had not  
 heard the result. See ch. 16.

16, 17. prius, quam . . . con-  
 cessum, until they had granted  
 them permission. Had the council  
 not yielded to the wishes of the  
 people, it would doubtless have suf-  
 fered the same fate as had overtak-  
 en the senate (see 17, 7).

18, 19. ut . . . victōriā, just as  
 if victory were assured. On the  
 Abl. Abs. cf. 10, 5, hūc etc.

1, 2. ab imō, from the bottom;  
 the neut. sing. of the superl. of  
 inferus, used substantively. For a  
 like usage cf. 11, 18, 2. The slope  
 begins at the bank of the See. See  
 on 17, 13. circiter: prep. or adv.?

3. quam minimum, the least  
 possible. For quam cf. 9, 25.

5. cupientibus, (and) as they  
 were eager for battle. Case of cu-  
 pientibus?

6. onera: see 18, 19.

7. duābus portis: the outline  
 of the camp seems to have been

tāte locī, hostium inscientiā ac defetigatiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pūgnarum exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs<sup>10</sup> impeditōs integrīs vīribus milītēs nostrī cōsecūtī māgnū numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā evāserant, reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pūgnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar certior factus est, civitatēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt.<sup>15</sup> Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōptus est animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitatēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore Pūblius Crassus, cum *Crassus, in Aquitania, is attacked by the Sotiates.* in Aquitāniam pervēnisset, quae pars, ut ante dic-

8. dē-fetigatiō, -ōnis [fatigō, weary], *r., a wearying*; weariness, exhaustion, fatigue. 1

9. exercitātiō, -ōnis [exercitō, *freq. of exerco*], *r., exercise, practice.* \*

10. tergum, -ī, *n., back, rear.* \*  
vertō, -ere, verti, versus, *n., turn, turn around or about: terga vertere, flee.* \*

13. ē-vādō, -ere, vāsī, vāsus [vādō, go], *n., go out, escape.* 1

14. nāvālīs, -e [nāvis, ship], of

or pertaining to ships, naval. 2

16. alacer, -cris, -cre, active, eager, ready. 4

prōptus, -a, -um [prōmō, give out, disclose], evident, manifest; prepared, ready, quick, prompt.

17. mollis, -e, soft, tender, yielding, inconstant. 2

18. mēns, mentis, *r., the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought, purpose, determination.* \*

triangular (see Int. 129.) with the base of the triangle towards the Gauls and the gates at the angles. These facts have been ascertained by an examination of the remains of a Roman camp on this spot.

8. militum: the Roman soldiers.

10. ac... verterent, but fled at once. Like ac also trans. et and -que when they connect an affirmative proposition with a preceding negative.

14. Sabīnus: sc. certior factus est.

15. civitatēs: what tribes were

concerned in this revolt? See 17.

17, 18. animus here refers to natural impulse; mēns to a settled purpose based on the judgment; trans., as on the one hand the impulses of the Gauls are rash and inclined etc., so on the other hand their purposes are too inconstant and irresolute to bear up under misfortune.

1. Crassus: read 11, 6-9

2. ante: see I, 1, 2 text, where, however, the statement is simply that Aquitania was one of the three divisions of Gaul.

tum est, et regiōnum lātitudīne et multītūdīne hominū ex  
 tertiā parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intellegeret in iis lo-  
 5 cīs sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius  
 Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque  
 unde L. Mallius prōcōnsul impedimentis āmissis profūgisset,  
 nōn mediocrem sibi diligētiā adhibendam intellegēbat.  
 Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparā-  
 10 tō, multis praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Narbōne, quae  
 sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae hīs regiōnibus, nō-  
 minātīm ēvocātīs in Sotiatium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit.  
 Cūius adventū cōgnitō Sotiatēs māgnīs cōpiīs coactīs equi-  
 tātūque, quō plūrimū valēbant, in itinere āgmen nostrum  
 15 adortī primum equestre proelium commiserunt, deinde equi-

4. *aestimō, (-umō), 1. [aes, cop-  
 per, money], a., value, reckon,  
 estimate, regard, consider. 4*

6. *Praecōnīnus, -ī, [praecō, a  
 herald], m., see Valerius. 1*

7. *Mallius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile  
 name: Lucius Mallius, proconsul  
 in 78 B. C. 1*

*prō-cōnsul, -is, m., a proconsul,  
 one who at the close of his consul-  
 ship in Rome became governor of  
 a province: one invested with the  
 powers of a consul or military  
 governor. 2*

8. *mediocris, -cre [medius, the*

*middle of], middling, ordinary,  
 moderate. \**

*diligētia, -ae [diligēns, heedful],  
 f., heedfulness, pains-taking,  
 care. \**

10. *Tolōsa, -ae, f., a town of  
 Gallia Narbonensis, on the Gar-  
 onne, the modern Toulouse. 1*

*Narbō, -ōnis, m., a town of the Ro-  
 man Province, now Narbonne. 4*

12. *ē-vocō, 1. [vocō, call], a., call  
 forth or out, summon. \**

*Sotiatēs, -ium, m., the most power-  
 ful people of Aquitania.*

2-4. *quae pars, ex ... aesti-  
 manda, a section which is to be re-  
 garded as a third of Gaul. See Aquitania etc. I, 1, 21-23, and also note  
 the relative size on the map and  
 determine the correctness of Cae-  
 sar's geographical knowledge.*

5. *paucis ante annis: about  
 22 years, 78 B. C. For the case cf. I,  
 31, 36; 18, 26.*

8. *nōn ... adhibendam (esse),  
 that he must take extraordinary  
 care. For the figure in nōn medio-  
 crem cf. I, 15; II, 9, 1.*

10. *Tolōsā, Narbōne: see Int.  
 62.*

11. *cīvitātēs, cities, made up  
 of a community of civēs. his re-  
 giōnibus i. e., Aquitania.*

12. *ēvocātīs: see Int. 98. in-  
 trōdūxit: Crassus probably moved  
 south from the rendezvous of Cae-  
 sar's forces in the country of the  
 Andes and crossed the Garonne into  
 the territories of the Sotiates.*

14. *plūrimū valēbant, as in  
 II, 4, 13. Case of plurimum?*

15. *primum: adverb.*

tātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in insidiīs collocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sotia- *They are over-*  
tēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtius *come and sub-*  
Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine *mit to Cras-*  
imperātore et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscētulō duce effi- *sus.*  
cere possent, perspicī cuperent: tandem cōfectī vulneribus 5  
hostēs terga vertēre. Quōrum māgnō numerō interfecit  
Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiatium oppūgnāre coepit. Qui-  
bus fortiter resistentibus vineās turrēsq̄ ēgit. Illī aliās  
ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cuniculīs ad aggerem vineāsque āctīs  
(cūius rei sunt longē peritissimī Aquitānī, propterea quod 10  
multis locīs apud eōs aerāriae strūctūrae sunt), ubi diligentiā

17. con-vallis, -is [vallis, valley],  
r., an enclosed valley, basin, defile.

2. frētus, -a, -um, depending or  
relying upon, confiding in.

4. adulēscētulus (adol-), -ī [ad-  
olēscēns, a young man], m., a

a very young man, a stripling. 1

9. cuniculus, -ī, m., coney; bur-  
row; tunnel, mine. 5

11. aerārius, -a, -um, [aes, cop-  
per], of or for copper, copper. 1  
strūctūra, -ae, f., structure, build-  
ing; group of buildings, plant. 1

18. disiectōs, while scattered.  
adortī: make a coordinate clause.

2. superiōribus . . . frētī, rely-  
ing upon (confident because of) their  
former victories (see 29, 5-7). For  
the Abl. with frētus see A. 254 b 2;  
G. 401 N. 6; H. 425 II 1 1) n;  
B. 218, 3.

3-5. quid . . . possent: subj. of  
perspicī; for the mode cf. 18, 5; ve-  
lit; 14, 10; 9, 8. imperātore:  
who? sine reliquīs legiōnibus:  
Crassus had only twelve Roman  
cohorts. adulēscētulō: for the  
termination cf. 17, 2; II, 30, 2.  
For the case cf. 17, 12 locō; 12, 5.

6. vertēre: notice quantity of  
the penult and tell where found.

7, 8. ex itinere: see on II, 12,

5. quibus . . . resistentibus: for  
trans. cf. II, 12, 14. aliās . . .  
aliās, at one time . . . at another.

9. ēruptiōne, cuniculīs: see  
Int. 164, 165.

10. cūius rei, an art in which.  
rei refers to the construction of  
mines; for its position in the rela-  
tive clause see on 9, 9; for its case  
cf. I, 44, 30; 21, 10; 18, 8; 14, 5.  
longē peritissimī: see on longē  
8, 1.

11. aerāriae: mines of iron and  
of copper are still worked in this  
part of France. diligentiā, be-  
cause of the watchfulness of our men.  
For case cf. I, 18, 20; 14, 6; 2, 12.

nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellēxerunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt sēque in dēditionem ut recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iussī faciunt.

*Their chief  
Adiatunnus,  
with six hun-  
dred followers  
vainly at-  
tempts to es-  
cape.*

22. Atque in eā rē omnium nostrorum intentis animis, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperiī tenēbat, cum de dēvōtis, quōs illi soldūriōs appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, uti omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum iis fruantur, quōrum sē amicitiae dederint, si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum unā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnsciscant; neque adhuc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cuius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset, mori recūsāret: cum his Adiatunnus 10 ēruptionem facere cōnātus clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis

12. *prōficiō, -ere, feci, fectus* [faciō], *a., n.,* make progress, advance; profit, effect, accomplish. \*

1. *in-tendō, -ere, tendi, tentus* [tendō, stretch], *n.,* stretch out or to, extend; direct the eyes, ears, or mind, be intent or absorbed, strive. 4

2. *Adiatunnus, -i, m.,* the leader of the Sotiates. 2

3. *dē-voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus* [voveō, vow], *a., n.,* vow away; consecrate; devote; in *p. p.* as

*subst.,* a sworn follower. 3  
*soldūrii, -ōrum* [Celtic word], *m.,* vassals, retainers. 1

5. *commodum, -i* [commodus, convenient], *n.,* convenience, advantage, privilege. \*

*fruor, frui, fructus sum* [frugēs, fruits of the earth], *a., n.,* enjoy, delight in, have the benefit of. 1

7. *ad-hūc, adv.* [hūc, hither], hitherto, thus far, as yet. 1

9. *recūsō, 1.* [causa, cause], *a., n.,* make cause against or objection to; decline, reject, refuse. \*

12. *nihil prōfici posse, no progress could be made.*

14. *faciunt, they do so.*

1. *atque, now.* *rē: what matter?* *omnium . . . animis, when the attention of all our men was fixed.*

2. *summam: cf. 17, 19.*

3. *soldūriōs: this was an institution similar to that of clientage among the Romans. The soldūrii lived on terms of intimacy and equality with their chief, wore the*

*same dress and ate at the same table.*

4, 5. *uti . . . fruantur: relation to condiciō?* *commodis: for the case see on imperiō I, 2, 6.*

6. *quid: what kind of a pronoun?*

7. *ferant, cōnsciscant: so. uti from line 4. sibi mortem cōnsciscant: for trans. see on I, 4, 11.*

9. *recūsāret: for mode cf. 4, 2; II, 35, 3. cum his: i. e. the retainers, a repetition from line 4: cf. II, 25, 13.*

sublātō, cum ad arma milītēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, utī eādem deditiōnis condiōne ūterētur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expūgnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversum dimittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coopērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitatēs lēgātī, quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae: inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā cum hominum multitudīne bellum gere-<sup>10</sup> re cōnantur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur, quī unā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī

*Crassus proceeds against other Aquitanian tribes. They assemble large forces and harass Crassus, who determines on immediate battle.*

5

1 1. **vehementer** [*vehemēns*, violent], violently, impetuously, zealously; strongly, powerfully. \*

2. **Vocātēs**, -um, m., a people of Aquitania, south of the Garonne. 2 **Tarusātēs**, -ium, m., a Gallic people on the west coast of Aquitania. 2

5. **quōqueversum**, adv. [*abl. of quisque + versus*, turned], in every direction, every way. 1

1 1. **Sertōrius**, -i, m., a Roman gentile name: Quintus Sertorius, general of Marius in Spain against Sulla from 80 B. C. until assassinated by Perpenna, 72 B. C.

1 2. **tamen**, notwithstanding his attempted flight after surrender. eadem... condiōne: see 21, 14.

1, 2. **in finēs**: in what direction?

4, 5. **manū**, art. **paucīs**... erat, in a few days after his arrival. After the ablative of time "within which" the relative pronoun is almost equivalent to *postquam*. **eō**: the adverb, here = *ad id* (*oppidum*): see on *quō* II, 21, 7, and cf. I, 51, 11; 42, 18. **ventum erat**: im-

personal (*it had been come by him*, i. e., *he had come*)

8. **citeriōris**: i. e. Tarraconensis. The affinity between the peoples on the northern and southern slopes of the Pyrenees has always been very marked.

1 0. **auctōritāte**, prestige.

1 2. **omnēs annōs**: i. e., during the war between Sertorius and the Sullan generals.

1 3. **cōnsuētūdine**: for case cf. II, 19, 4; 13, 12; I, 50, 1; 4, 2.

loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere  
 15 instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suās cōpiās  
 propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et  
 viās obsidēre et castris satis praesidiū relinquere, ob eam cau-  
 sam minus commodē frumentum commeātumque sibi suppor-  
 tāri, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cunctandum exis-  
 20 timāvit, quīn pūgnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōsiliū dēlātā,  
 ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae  
 cōstituit.

*Crassus ar-  
 rays his  
 troops. The  
 Gauls remain  
 in their camp,  
 which he  
 attacks.*

24. Primā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis du-  
 plicī aciē institūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem con-  
 iectis, quid hostēs cōsiliū caperent, exspectābat.  
 Illi, etsī propter multitudinem et veterem belli  
 5 glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmīcātūrōs existi-  
 mābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessis viis com-

16. dī-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus  
 [dis-, apart + dūcō], *a.*, lead in  
 different directions, lead or draw  
 apart, separate, divide. 2

17. obsideō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus  
 [sedeō, sit], *a.*, sit in the way of,

obstruct, beset, besiege, block-  
 ade. \*

19. cunctor, 1. *n.*, delay, hesitate,  
 be reluctant. 2

4. et-sī, *conj.* even if, although. \*

14. loca capere, *to pick out  
 and occupy suitable sites for camps.*

15. quod, *this:* explained by  
 the preceding sentence and the fol-  
 lowing infinitive clauses in apposi-  
 tion.

16. nōn facile dīdūcī = *nōn pos-  
 se dīdūcī. et, and yet.*

19, 20. in diēs, *from day to  
 day;* used with expressions imply-  
 ing proportion. nōn . . . dēcertā-  
 ret, *he thought he must not delay to  
 fight a decisive battle. For the mode  
 cf. II, 2, 10.*

1, 2. primā lūce: *as in I, 22,*

1. duplicī aciē: *see Int. 147. Cras-  
 sus' force was much smaller than  
 that of the Aquitanians. auxiliis  
 . . . coniectis: as a precaution  
 against flight. mediam aciem,  
 the center of the rear line, where they  
 could be of assistance to the legion-  
 aries in the front line.*

3. quid cōsiliū, *what plan.*  
 For the case cf. 16, 4; II, 17, 9; I,  
 31, 49.

6, 7. tūtius esse, *that it was a  
 safer course,* explained by the fol-  
 lowing. obsessis . . . interclūsō,  
*by obstructing the road and cutting  
 off supplies.*

meātū interclūsō sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potīrī et, sī prop-  
ter inopiam rei frumentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere  
coepissent, impeditōs in āgmīne et sub sarcinīs adorīrī  
cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō ā ducibus prōductis,<sup>10</sup>  
Rōmānōrum cōpiīs sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā  
Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs  
nostrōs militēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque  
omnium vōcēs audirentur, expectārī diūtius nōn oportēre,  
quīn ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus  
ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs  
tēlis coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque  
dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pūgnam nōn  
multum Crassus cōfidēbat, lapidibus tēlisque subministran-

*The contest is  
close and the  
camp well de-  
fended except  
at the decu-  
man gate.*

10. cōgitō, 1. [cum + agitō, put  
in quick motion; consider], a., n.,  
consider thoroughly or carefully,  
ponder, reflect; think, purpose,  
plan. \*

away, ward off. 4  
auxiliaris, -e [auxilium, aid],  
aiding, assisting, auxiliary: in pl.  
as subst., auxiliary troops, auxil-  
iaries. 1

3. dē-pellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus  
[pellō, drive], a., drive from or

4. sub-ministrō, [ministrō, wait  
upon] a., furnish, supply, afford,  
give. 3

9. impeditōs . . . sarcinīs, while  
hindered (by their crowded posi-  
tion), in the column of march and  
under their packs. sarcinīs: see  
Int. 118.

10, 11. prōductīs cōpiīs:  
trans. by a concessive clause. cas-  
trīs: for the omission of the prep.  
cf. 17, 12. Notice the accumula-  
tion of ablatives and explain each.

12. . . opīniōne timōris: cf. 17,  
16.

14, 15. expectārī . . . irētur,  
that they ought not to delay longer  
in going against the camp. For the  
mode see on I, 47, 8.

16. ad hostium castra: the  
only instance in the Gallic war of

an attack by the Romans upon a  
fortified Gallic camp; see Int. 185,  
186.

1. aliī, aliī, force when used  
correlatively?

2. vāllō, mūnitiōnibus: the  
second is more general than the  
first, covering all the parts of a  
regular fortification in the Roman  
fashion.

3, 4. quibus, in whom. For  
the case see on I, 53, 4. This state-  
ment explains Crassus' action in  
putting them in the center: see 24,  
2. subministrandis: to the legion-  
aries fighting in the front rank: see  
on 24, 2.



- dis et ad aggerem cēspitibus comportandis speciem atque  
opiniōnem pūgnantium praeberent, cum item ab hostibus cōn-  
stanter ac nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre  
missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitis hostium cas-  
tris Crassō renūntiāverunt nōn eādē esse diligentia ab  
10decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum habere.

*The Romans  
capture the  
camp. Most  
of the enemy  
are destroyed  
in their flight.*

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut  
māgnis praemiis pollicitatiōibusque suōs excitā-  
rent, quid fieri velit ostendit. Illi, ut erat impe-  
rātum, ēductis iis cohortibus, quae praesidiō castris relictāe in-  
tritaē ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductis, nē ex hos-  
tium castris cōspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad  
pūgnam intentis celeriter ad eās, quās diximus, mūnitiōnēs per-  
venerunt atque his prōrutis prius in hostium castris cōstitērunt  
quam plānē ab his vidērī aut, quid rei gererētur, cōgnōsci posset.  
10Tum verō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostrī redintegrātis viri-

5. cēspes (caes-), -itis [caedō, cut], m., a cut sod, turf. 3

7. timidē [timidus, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. 2

8. circum (circu-) -eō, ire, ivi (ii), itus [eō, go], a., go or march around, traverse, visit. 4

4. in-trītus, -a, -um [terō, rub, wear], not worn or exhausted,

unwearied. 1

5. circum-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dūcō, lead], a., lead or draw around.

8. prō-ruō, -ere, ruī, rūtus [ruō, rush down], a., rush forth; tear or pull down, overthrow, demolish. 1

9. plānē [plānus, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. 2

5. ad aggerem, for an agger. The Romans were compelled to build a sloping embankment in order to surmount the high wall of the Gallic camp.

7. nōn timidē, fearlessly. This must have surprised the Romans; see 24, 12, opiniōne timōris. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart.

10. decumānā portā: see Int. 132. facilemque, but: see on 19, 10.

2. praemiis: see Int. 114. excitārent: why subjunctive?

4. praesidiō castris: the Romans carefully guarded the camp as a place of refuge in case of defeat.

7. diximus: in 25, 10.

8, 9. prius, quam . . . posset, before they (hostēs) could clearly see them (Rōmānōs) or understand what was going on.

10. ab eā parte: the rear part of the camp.

bus, quod plerumque in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventi dēspērātis omnibus rēbus sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimis campis cōsectātus ex milium L nūmērō, quæ ex Aquitāniā Can-<sup>15</sup> tabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vix quartā parte relictā multā nocte sē in castra recipit.

27. Hāc audītā pūgnā, māxima pars Aquitā-  
niæ sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ūltrō mīsīt, <sup>Other Aquitanian tribes submit.</sup>  
quō in nūmērō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerrionēs, Ptianī, Vccātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibuzātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ūltimæ nātiōnēs annī tempore cōfissæ, <sup>5</sup>  
quod hiems suberat, hōc facere neglēxērunt.

12. impūgnō, 1. [in + pūgnō, fight], a., fight against, attack, assail. 2

14. campus, -ī, m., plain; open space or country. 2

15. Cantabri, -ōrum, m., the Cantabrians, a tribe of northern Spain. 1

2. ūltrō, adv. [ūlterior, farther], to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously. \*

3. Tarbellī, -ōrum, m., a people of southwestern Aquitania about modern Tarbes. 1

Bigerrionēs, -um, m., an Aquitanian people in modern la Bigorre. 1

Ptianī, -ōrum, m., an Aquitanian

people about modern Pau. 1

4. Elusātēs, -um, m., an Aquitanian people about modern Eauze. 1

Gatēs, -um, m., an Aquitanian tribe, south of the Garonne. 1

Auscī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Aquitania.

Garumnī, -ōrum, m., an Aquitanian tribe on the Garonne. 1

Sibuzātēs, -um, m., an Aquitanian tribe near the Pyrenees about modern Saubusse. 1

5. Cocosātēs, -um, m., a tribe of northwestern Aquitania. 1

ūltimus, -a, -um [superl. of ūltior], farthest, most distant or remote: the last part of. 5

13. per, over.

15—17. quæ (milia) . . . convēnisse: subject of the impers. cōstābat. multā nocte: cf. multo diē, I, 22, 12.

5. ūltimæ: those living in the

extreme west at the foot of the Pyrenees. The account of this campaign was doubtless based upon the report of Crassus to his chief. tempore: what case does the form show this to be? What case with the same verb in I, 42, 18? Now read the note on I, 53, 4.

*The Morini and Menapii remain hostile. At Caesar's approach they retire to their fastnesses and thence harass Caesar's troops.*

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope ex-  
 ācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pā-  
 cātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant, quī in armīs  
 essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mī-  
 5 sissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōfici posse,  
 eō exercitum addūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne āc reliquī Galli  
 bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant māximās  
 nātiōnēs, quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse,  
 continentēsque silvās āc palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque om-  
 10 nia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar  
 pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis inte-  
 rim vīsus esset, dispersis in opere nostris subitō ex omnibus  
 partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt.  
 Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt  
 15 et complūribus interfectis longius impeditōribus locis secūti  
 paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

1. *exigō, -ere, ēgī, āctus*, drive or thrust out; exact; spend, pass.  
 4. *umquam* (unq-), *adv.*, at any time, ever. 4  
 9. *continēns, -entis* [*pres. p. of* *contineō*, hold together], holding together; continuous, extensive; contiguous, neighboring; self-controlled, continent; *as subst.*, mainland, continent. \*

12. *disperspō, -ere, spersi, spersus* [*spargō*, scatter], *a.*, scatter: *in p. p. as adj.*, dispersed, scattered. \*  
 13. *ē-volō*, 1. [*volō*, fly], *n.*, fly or rush forth. 2  
 16. *dē-perdō, -ere, didī, -ditus* [*perdō*, destroy], *a., n.*, destroy utterly, ruin; lose entirely, forfeit, lose. 3

1. *exācta*: see on *divisa*, I, 1, 1.  
 2. *omnī Galliā pācātā*, although Gaul in general was subdued. Cf. *prōductis cōpiis* 24, 10.  
 4. *essent, misissent*: for mode cf. 22, 9; 4, 2.  
 6. *eō*: to the country of the Morini. *exercitum*: probably the main body, which he had led against the Veneti. *quī i. e.*, the Morini and Menapii. *āc*: for use cf. *atque* 9, 22; II, 6, 4.

9. *continentēsque*: sc. *quod*.  
 10. *initium*: in the vicinity of St. Omer, near Calais.  
 12, 13. *dispersis . . . ēvolāvērunt*: cf. the surprise at the Sabis, II, 19, 18.  
 15. *longius . . . locis*, too far, in places quite difficult of access. For trans. of the comp. cf. 14, 25; II, 25, 10; I, 48, 18; 20, 2.  
 16. *paucōs*, only a few.

29. Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit et, ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocabat et pro vallō ad utrumque latus exstruebat. Incre-  
dibili celeritate magnō spatiō paucis diebus confectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent, eiusmodi sunt tempestates consecutae, uti opus necessariō intermitteretur et continuatiōne imbrum diutius sub pellibus milites contineri nō possent.<sup>10</sup> Itaque vastatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis Caesar exercitum reduxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus, quae proximē bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocavit.

*He ravages their country and quarters his army for the winter.*

1. deinceps, *adv.* [deinde, thence + capio], next in succession, one after the other, in turn, successively. 5

caedō, -ere, cecidi, caesus, cut, kill, slay. 2

2. im (in-), -prudens, -entis [prudens, foreseeing], not foreseeing, off one's guard, imprudent, unwary.

4. materia, -ae, and materiēs, -em (only in nom. and acc. sing.)

[mater], *f.*, matter; materials of which anything is composed, timber dressed for building. \*

7. pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, a herd: esp. of small cattle, sheep. \*

9. continuatiō, -ōnis [continuō, make continuous], *f.*, continuance, succession. 1

10. imber, imbris, *m.*, a rain-storm, rain (esp. sudden, heavy, or violent). 4

2, 3. ne quis impetus, so that no attack.

4, 5. materiam: the felled trees. conversam ad hostem, with their tops turned toward the enemy. pro vallō, to serve as a breastwork.

6. celeritate: Caesar had a number of excellent engineers (praefecti fabrum), among whom were Balbus and Mamurra. con-

fectō = caesō, cut away.

8. ipsi: the Gauls.

9. intermitteretur, stopped from time to time.

10. sub pellibus, in their tents, which were covered with hides (pellēs).

13. reliquis: what tribes?

14. collocavit: sc. eum, i. e., exercitum.

#### BOOK IV.—THE CROSSING OF THE RHINE AND THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.

---

At the close of Caesar's third campaign", says Merivale, "the only remnants of the Gallic race who retained their liberty were the mountaineers of the Pyrenees and the amphibious wanderers of the Waal and the Scheldt". But the limits of his ambition had not yet been reached, and the campaign of 55 B. C. is memorable in history as the first when the Roman arms were for the first time carried beyond the Rhine and across the Channel.

The Germans themselves gave the occasion for the first of these incursions. The Usipetes and Tencteri, two tribes that dwelt on the right bank of the lower Rhine, being hard pressed by the Suebi, a tribe from the interior of Germany, betook themselves in a body across the river into the territory of the Menapii, and there established themselves. Nothing shows more clearly the low state of Gallic patriotism than the indifference with which the nation regarded this incursion of their hereditary foes. Some of the tribes even went so far as to welcome them, and to propose to make common cause with them against their common enemy, Caesar. Encouraged by this, the Germans spread into the adjoining regions and had advanced as far south as the country of the Eburones when Caesar appeared in their front.

After some negotiations terminating in an act of seeming treachery on the part of the barbarians, Caesar, with a treachery as deep as their own, attacked without warning the unwieldy mass of men, women, and children, and drove them with great slaughter into the Rhine. Survivors of the German host, mainly a body of cavalry that had not been present at the battle, succeeded in making their escape across the Rhine, and took refuge among the Sugambri, who refused to give them up at Caesar's demand, asserting their own independence of Roman authority. This refusal and the entreaties of the Ubian tribe, the sole ally of Rome on the eastern bank of the Rhine, determined the Roman general to pass that stream. In the marvellously brief space of ten days he constructed a great bridge, over which he led his army, and then went in search of the Suebi and Sugambri, who, however, had retired into the safe depths of their vast forests

at the first intimation of his purpose. Thither he did not choose to follow them, but contented himself with ravaging the land of the Sugambri that lay in the vicinity of the river. Satisfied with this demonstration of Roman power, he recrossed the Rhine and broke down his bridge, after a stay of only eighteen days on German soil.

The project of an invasion of Britain had previously taken shape in Caesar's mind. There was fame to be earned by being the first Roman general to land in that little-known region. Under the impulse of this desire, he determined to devote the remainder of the summer to a preliminary expedition. Taking only two legions, he sailed from Portus Itius, modern Boulogne, crossed the strait, and effected a landing near Deal, despite the efforts of the Britons. Throwing up fortifications near the sea, he awaited the arrival of his cavalry before undertaking to penetrate into the interior. Meanwhile, his fleet, lying in the exposed roadstead, was shattered by a storm which came in conjunction with an unusually high tide. He therefore decided to return to the mainland, and having repaired his fleet and repulsed an attack of the islanders on his camp, he sailed back to Gaul a few days before the autumnal equinox. After another and successful effort to subdue the obstinate Menapii and Morini, Caesar placed his legions in winter quarters among the Belgae and repaired to Italy.

---

#### REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.

FROUDE: Caesar, A sketch, pp. 226-233. (Harper's ed.)

TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. v. (Ancient Classic Series.)

MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. IV. pp. 308-313.

MERIVALE: History of the Romans under the Empire. vol. I. pp. 365-383.

NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. II. chap. VII.

## COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS.

*German tribes, expelled by the Suebi, cross into Gaul.*

1. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus, Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germanī et item Tencteri māgnā cum multitudine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō  
 5 Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundi fuit, quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissi-

2. Cn., abbreviation for the praenomen Gnaeus. 4

Pompēius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name, esp. Cn. Pompeius Magnus, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus, defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B. C. 5

Usipetēs, -um, m., a German tribe beyond the Rhine below Cologne

which, forced by the encroachments of the Suevi to leave its home in eastern Germany, settled near the mouth of the Rhine. \*

3. Tencteri, -ōrum, see Usipetēs. \*

5. Suēbī, -ōrum, m., a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. \*

1. hieme: the crossing took place later than Jan. 1., 55, the date of the induction of the consuls into office. quī: for agreement see on quod, I, 38, 3.

2. Cn. Pompēiō, etc. The two triumvirs were elected consuls in pursuance of the arrangement made the year before at Lucca; see Int. 28. They had been joint consuls once before (70 B. C.); see Int. 10, 11.

4. nōn longē ā marī: probably near Xanten or Cleves, where

there are gaps in the heights at whose foot the river formerly flowed. This was not far from the branching off of the Vacalus (Waal) from the Rhine.

7. Suēbōrum gēns est, etc. Caesar here gives a brief account of the Suebi, apparently to emphasize the importance of resisting Germanic incursions. The word Suēbī seems to mean nomads, or wanderers, a term probably suggested by their mode of life, as detailed here and in Tacitus.

ma Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs hā-  
 bēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia  
 armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī  
 domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūsus in vicem an-  
 nō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agri-  
 cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī  
 āc sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō rema-  
 nēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmen-  
 tō sed māximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multum-  
 que sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotidiānā  
 exercitātiōne et libertātē vitāe, cum ā puerīs nullō officiō aut

*Character  
and customs  
of the Suebi.*

9. quotannis [quot, how many, every + annus], *adv.* every year, yearly. 4

11. maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *n.*, stay, remain, continue, abide. \*

vicis (*gen., no nom.*), change; *only in the adv. phrase in vicem*, alternately, in turn. 2

12. re-maneō, -ēre, -sī, -sus [maneō, remain], *n.*, stay or re-

main behind, remain. \*

14. sē-parō, 1. [sē = sine, without, aside], sever, separate: *in p. p. as adj.*, separated, marked off. 2

16. lāc, lactis, *n.*, milk. 3

vīvō, -ere, -vixī, victum, *n.*, live. 3

17. vēnātiō, -ōnis [vēnor, hunt], *r.*, hunting, the chase, hunting expedition. 3  
 cibus, -ī, *m.*, food. 3

8. pāgōs: often used in the sense of a *district*; here it seems to mean the individual *tribes* making up the loose confederation known as the Suebi.

11, 12. illōs, *those* (engaged in war). hī, illī: for use and trans. see A. 102, a, b; G. 307, 4. R. 1; H. 450, 2; B. 246, 1.

13. ratiō atque ūsus, *instruction and practice in*. The verb *intermittitur* is singular because the two nouns express the single idea of *equipment* for war.

14. agri: individual ownership of land is not usual among uncivilized peoples. Tacitus tells us that the Germans raised corn only and not much of that. apud eōs: the fact stated was equally true of the Germans in general. annō = ūnō annō.

15, 16. neque multum frūmentō, etc. The civilized Romans, on the other hand subsisted largely on grain foods. The statement emphasizes the barbarous nature of the Germans. māximam partem, *to a very great extent*. lacte atque pecore, *on milk and meat* (lit. *herds*). The abl. follows *vivere* as it does the dep. *utor* etc.

17. sunt in . . . vēnātiōnibus, *are devoted to the chase*. quae rēs, *a practice which*. For the position of *rēs* cf. III, 21, 10; 9, 9; it is subject of *alūt* and *efficit* l. 20. Notice that *et* occurs five times in this sentence: the first three (ll. 17, 18) are correlative, (*both*) . . . *and* . . . *and*, the last two (l. 20), *not only* . . . *but also*. genere, *from the character*. What kind of an ablative?

18, 19. cum . . . faciant, *since*,



disciplinā assuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciant,  
 20 et virēs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit.  
 Atque in eam sē cōsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locis frigidis-  
 simis neque vestītūs praeter pellis habērent quicquam, quā-  
 rum propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et  
 lavārentur in flūminibus.

*Their com-  
 merce and  
 cavalry tac-  
 tics.*

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae  
 bellō cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō  
 ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quin etiam iūmentis,  
 quibus māximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant  
 5 pretiō, Germānī importātis nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud  
 eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne

19. disciplina, -ae [*contr. of disci-  
 pulina, fr. discipulus, learn-  
 er*], *r.*, instruction, training, drill,  
 discipline. \*

as(ad)-suēfactiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fac-  
 tus [suēscō, be accustomed  
 + factiō], accustom, habituate,  
 inure.

20. immānis, -e [*old Lat. ma-  
 nus=bonus, good*], out of pro-  
 portion, huge.

21. frigidus, -a, -um [frīgus,  
 cold weather], cold. 1

22. vestītus, -ūs [vestiō, clothe],  
 m., clothing, garments.

24. lavō, -āre, (-ere), lāvī, lau-  
 tus (lōtus), a., n., wash: *in pass.*,  
 bathe. 1

3. dēsiderō, 1. a., crave, yearn,  
 long for, desire; miss, lose.

4. dēlectō, 1. [*freq. of dēliciō*,  
 entice, delight], a., allure; delight:  
*in pass.*, delight or take pleasure  
 in. 1

impēnsus, -a, -um [*p. p. of impen-  
 dō*, weigh out, expend], expen-  
 sive, high; great. 1

6. dē-fōrmis, -e [fōrma, form],  
 misshapen, deformed, unsightly;  
 debasing, disgraceful. 2

*having been accustomed from boy-  
 hood to no service or training, they  
 do nothing at all against their will.*  
 officiō, is an ablative of means.

20. immānī etc.: cf. I, 39, 4, *in-  
 genti māgnitūdine. māgnitūdine*:  
 for case cf. III, 13, 8; 4, 9.

21. in... addūxērunt, *have  
 brought them into such training.*

22. vestītūs quicquam, *any  
 clothing.* For the genitive cf. III,  
 16, 4; II, 17, 9.

1. mercātōribus est: for case  
 cf. III, 13, 14; II, 6, 10. magis eō

*etc., more than that they (the Suebi)  
 may have (persons) to whom they  
 may sell what they have taken in war,  
 than because etc. ut: introduces  
 habeant l. 2.*

2, 3. Notice the four subjunc-  
 tives: for cēperint cf. II, 2, 7; I, 8,  
 7; for vēndant III, 28, 4; 4, 2: for  
 habeant II, 9, 4; I, 22, 11; for dē-  
 siderent see A. 321, R.; G. 541. R. 1;  
 H. 516, II, 2; B. 286 1 b. The necessa-  
 ry negative is implied in 'more  
 than.' quin etiam, moreover.

4. parant: the subject is Gallī.

5. pretiō: for case see on I, 18, 9.

summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanere vestigiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut<sup>10</sup> inertius habētur, quam ephippiis ūti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent.

3. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem, quam <sup>Their neighbors the Ubiī.</sup> lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī māgnū numerum cīvitatū suam vim sustinere nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbis circiter milia passuum sexcenta agrī vacāre dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, <sup>5</sup> quōrum fuit cīvitas ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Ger-

8. dēsiliō, -ire, siluī, sultus [salīō, leap], *n.*, leap from or down, alight, dismount. \*

9. vestigium, -ī [vestigō, trace out], *r.*, trace, track, footprint; spot, place; point, moment, instant. 4

10. turpis, -e, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful. \*

11. iners, ertis [ars, art, skill], unskilled; inactive, shiftless. 1 ephippium, -ī, *n.*, horse-cloth, riding-pad, caparison; housing, trappings. 5

12. ephippiatus, -a, -um [ephip-

pium], caparisoned (as a horse-man), using housings or pads. 1 quamvis, *adv.*, as you will, however (much). 1

1. laus, laudis, *r.*, praise, commendation, renown, popularity. \*

5. Ubiī, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe on the east bank of the lower Rhine, near Cologne. \*

6. flōrēns, -entis [flōrēō, flower], flowering, blooming; flourishing, prosperous. 3

captus, -ūs [capiō, take], *m.*, taking, seizing; power of comprehension, capacity. 1

7. summī... labōris, so that they are (capable) of the severest toil. For the case (here in predicate) cf. II, 30, 11; 27, 12; 15, 13.

8. pedibus, on foot.

9. ūsus, occasion.

10. eōrum mōribus, in their eyes. For the case cf. III, 23, 13; II, 13, 12; I, 4, 2.

11. habētur, is esteemed. ephippiis: the ancients rode without stirrups.

12. quamvis pauci, however few.

1. pūblicē, for the state. quam: for its use cf. III, 19, 3; I, 7, 3.

4. ūnā ex parte: i. e., on the east side of the territory of the Suebi. milia... sexcenta: measuring from the eastern frontier of the Suebi (ā Suēbis). The width of this waste strip is much exaggerated.

6. fuit, was, referring to the period previous to their being defeated by the Suebi. ut est captus Germānōrum, according to the German standard.

mānōrum, et paulō sunt eiusdem generis cēteris hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt 10 mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multis saepe bellis expertī propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vēcīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsque redēgērunt.

*The expelled German tribes dispossess the Menapii on the Rhine.*

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencet-  
rī, quōs suprà dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suē-  
bōrum vim sustinuerunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs  
expulsī et multis locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhē-  
5 num pervēnērunt: quās regiōnēs Menapii incolēbant et ad  
utramque ripam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vicōsque habēbant;  
sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterriti ex iīs aedificiis,

7. hūmānus, -a, -um [homō, man], natural to man, human; civilized, refined, cultivated. 2  
9. ventitō, 1. [freq. of veniō, come], n., keep coming, be wont to come, resort. 3  
11. amplitūdō, -inis [amplus, large on both sides], f., wide extent, size; importance, consequence. 3  
gravitās, -tātis [gravis, heavy], f., heaviness, weight; power,

dignity. 2

13. humilis, -e [humus, the ground], on the ground; low, humble, abject. \*

4. Germānia, -ae, f., Germany, including the country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea. \*  
triennium, -ī [trēs + annus, year], n., period of three years, three years. 1

7. eiusdem . . . cēteris = cēteris Germānis.

8. multum = saepe.

10. mōribus: for case see on officio 1, 18. bellis experti: the participle expresses a concession to the cum . . . potuissent clause, which is also concessive. Trans: in spite of (having often attempted) many attempts in numerous wars.

12. vēcīgālēs: i. e., they paid tribute on account of their defeat.

13. multō humiliōrēs redēgē-

runt, reduced them to a much lower condition.

1. in eādē causā, in the same condition of subjection to the Suebi.

2. suprà: in 1, 2.

4. triennium: for case cf. III, 12, 13; II, 16, 1. ad Rhēnum: i. e., to the vicinity of the stream.

6. aedificia, vicōs: see on I, 5, 4 and 5.

7. multitudinis: according to a later chapter, 430,000 persons.

quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāvērunt et cis Rhēnum dispositis praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illi omnia experti cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium<sup>10</sup> neque clam trānsire propter custodiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti sē in suās sedēs regiōnēque simulāvērunt et tridui viam prōgressi rursus revertērunt atque omni hōc itinere unā nocte equitatū cōfectō insciōs inopinantesque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explorātōrēs certiores facti sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suos vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbiles et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil his

*Caesar distrusts the inconstancy of the Gauls.*

8. dē-migrō, 1. [migrō, move, migrate], n., move from or away, emigrate, remove. 3

12. sedēs, -is [sedeō, sit], f., seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 5

simulō, 1. [similis, like], make like or similar; feign, pretend. 2

14. in-scius, -a, -um [sciō, know], not knowing, ignorant, unconscious, unawares. 2

16. metus, -ūs [metuō, fear], m.,

fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension. \*

re-migrō, 1. [migrō, move], n., move or go back, return. 2

1. infirmitās, -tātis [in-firmus, not strong], f., weakness, fickleness, inconstancy. 3

3. mōbilis, -e [contr. for movibilis, fr. moveō, move], movable, changeable, inconstant, hasty. 1

8. trāns: i. e., east. cis, west. Caesar is speaking from the standpoint of Gaul. habuerant: before the arrival of the two German tribes.

10. vī contendere, to force their passage.

12, 13. reverti sē, that they were returning. Why Infīn.? viam prōgressi, after marching. viam: for the case see A. 238; G. 332; H. 371 2, (1); B. 176 4.

14. insciōs inopinantes: trans. by a clause with while.

18. fieret: for mode cf. III, 10, 10; II, 12, 2.

19. eōrum = Menapiōrum.

20. cōpiis, resources.

1. infirmitatem: for the fact see II, 1, 11; III, 10, 7.

3. nihil etc., that they must not be trusted at all.

committendum existimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōsistere cōgant et, quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit, quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidis vulgus circumsistat quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint, prōnūtiāre cōgant. His rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōtī, dē summīs 10 saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestigiō poenitere necesse est, cum incertīs rumōribus serviant, et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

*Caesar learns of the preparations of the Germans, and plans for war.*

6. Quā cōsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius, quam cōsuērat, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae

5. viātōr, -ōris, m., traveller. 1  
8. prō-nūntiō (nūnciō), 1. [nūntiō, announce], a., announce or set forth, publish; tell, relate, report. \*  
9. auditiō, -ōnis [audiō, hear], x., hearing; hearsay, report. 2  
10. poeniteō (pae-), 2. repent, be sorry; *impers.*, it repents, one regrets or is sorry. 1  
11. necesse, *indecl. adj.* [nē + cēdō, yield], unyielding; una-

- voidable, indispensable, necessary. \*  
in-certus, -a, -um [certus, determined], uncertain, indefinite, vague, untrustworthy. \*  
serviō, 4. [servus], a., n., be a slave, be subservient, follow, heed. 2  
12. fingō, -ere, finxi, fictus, a., form, shape, devise, invent. 3  
2. mātūrē [old *abl.* of mātūrus], *adv.*, early, speedily. \*

4. Gallicae cōsuētūdinis, characteristic of Gallic habits. For the Gen. see A. 214, d; G. 366, R. 1; H. 401; B. 203, 1, 5.

5. utī etc., this result clause (in app. with hōc, cf. III, 2, 6) contains eight subjunctives. Of these four (cōgant l. 5, quaerant l. 6, circumsistat l. 7, and cōgant l. 9) depend upon utī l. 5. For the other four (audierit and cōgnōverit l. 8, veniant and cōgnōverint l. 8) cf. III, 21, 5 possent; 14, 10; II, 20, 10; I, 20, 21.

7. vulgus: subject of circumsistat and cōgant l. 9: why the difference of number in these words?

8. quāsque = et quās.

9. his . . . auditiōnibus, by such facts and reports.

10, 11. quōrum eōs . . . est, of which it is necessary that they should repent on the spot (= at once). For the cases of quōrum and eōs see A. 221 b; G. 377; H. 409, III; B. 209.

plērīque: i. e. mercātōrēs. ad, according to.

12. ficta respondeant, shape their answers.

1. quā . . . cōgnitā: for trans. cf. II, 12, 14, 15. graviōrī, beyond his control.

2. bellō: for case cf. III, 17, 3; II, 27, 5; I, 2, 5. mātūrius,

fore suspicātus erat, facta cōgnōvit: missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōn-  
nullis civitatibus ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs, utī ab Rhē- 5  
nō discēderent, omniaque, quae postulāssent, ab sē fore parā-  
ta. Quā spē adducti Germānī lātius vagābantur et in finēs  
Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs,  
pervēnerant. Principibus Galliae ēvocātis Caesar ea, quae  
cōgnōverat, dissimulanda sibi existimāvit eōrumque animis 10  
permulsis et cōfirmātis equitātūque imperātō bellum cum  
Germānis gerere cōstituit.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlectis, iter

4. *suspīcor*, 1. [*suspiciō*, sus-  
pect], *a.*, mistrust, suspect. \*

5. *invitō*, 1. *a.*, invite, summon,  
urge. \*

10. *dis-simulō*, 1. [*simulō*, make

like], *a.*, make unlike; disguise,  
dissemble. 1

11. *per-mulceō*, -ēre, -sī, -sus  
(-tus) [*mulceō*, stroke, soothe],  
stroke gently; soothe, calm, ap-  
pease. 1

earlier in the year. Caesar often anticipated the movements of his foes and prevented their success by his celerity; see Int. 52. *ad exercitum*: where were its winter quarters located? See III, 29, 12, and map of Gaul.

3, 4. *proficiscitur*: it is probable that in accordance with his custom (see Int. 34.) he had spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul. *ea . . . facta (esse)*, that those things had been done: explained by the following clauses.

5, 6. *ab Rhēnō discēderent*: i. e. to penetrate the interior of the country. *fore parāta*: the infin. depends on a verb of saying implied in *missās lēgatiōnēs esse*.

7, 8. *lātius*: i. e., they no longer confined themselves to the territory of the Menapii west of the Rhine. *et in finēs . . . pervēnerant*: the course of the Germans was south along the valley east of the Mosa (Meuse). *quī* refers to *Con-*

*drūsōrum* only. *clientēs*: see on I, 4, 6.

9. *principibus ēvocātis*: this *concilium* was probably called at Samarobriua (Amiens). In the early part of the Gallic war Caesar called such meetings occasionally to test the feelings of the chieftains or to demand their assistance. In the second period, meetings were regularly held in the spring and fall, at which the proconsul administered justice and arranged the details of the civil and military affairs of the province.

10, 11. *animis . . . cōfirmātis*: the personality of Caesar was one of the strongest sources of his success: see Int. 26 and 53. *equitātū*: each state was bound to furnish its quota of cavalry: see Int. 100. Caesar had 5,000 cavalry in this campaign.

1. *comparātā*: by requisitions upon the tribes represented at the conference at Amiens.

in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germānōs audi-

*He is met by  
German en-  
voys. Their  
address.*

ēbat. A quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abes-  
set, lēgātī ab hīs vērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō:

- 5 Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īferre ne-  
que tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quā armīs contendat,  
quod Germānōrum cōsuētūdō sit ā māiōribus trādita, quī-  
cumque bellum īferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec  
tamen dicere, vērnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiam  
10 Rōmānī velint, posse iīs utilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs at-  
tribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint: sē-  
sē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs  
parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēmīnem,  
quem nōn superāre possint.

8. Ad haec quae vīsum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus

7. quī-cumque (-cunque), quae-  
cumque, quod-cumque, *indef.*  
*rel. pron.* [cumque, ever], who-  
ever, whatever, everyone who,  
everything that. \*  
9. ēiciō, -ere, īcī, iectus, cast

or drive out, expel. \*

10. utilis, -e [ūtor, use], useful,  
profitable, serviceable. 3

11. possidō, -ere -sēdī, -sessus,  
a., take possession of, occupy,  
seize. 1

2. loca, locis: for the repeti-  
tion of. II, 18, 1; I, 29, 3; 16, 10.  
iter ... coepit: northeast from  
Amiens, past the old camp on the  
Sabis through Tongres to Maes-  
tricht where he crossed the Meuse  
and marched down its right bank.

3. quibus: sc. locis.

4. ab hīs: i. e., the Germans.

5. Germānōs etc.: put the  
speech into the direct form in both  
English and Latin. neque ... ī-  
ferre, had not taken the initiative in  
making etc.

6. tamen ... contendat, and  
yet they did not refuse, if assailed,  
to use their weapons. quā is less  
courteous than quominus which is  
more commonly employed after re-  
cūsāre. For the mode after quā

see on I, 17, 10, and of. III, 23, 20.

7, 8. quicumque etc.: Eng. or-  
der, resistere (iis), quicumque  
etc. dēprecārī, beg off.

9. ēiectōs domō: see 1, 5.

12. ūnīs, alone.

13. reliquum nēmīnem, no  
one besides. The energy of this  
haughty speech is enhanced by the  
omission of the subject sē with the  
Inf. dicere, vērnisse, posse; by the  
omission of conjunctions; and by  
the emphatic arrangement of words,  
as nēmīnem. Its tone of superior-  
ity recalls the speech of Divico, I,  
13, and of Ariovistus, I, 36.

1. quae vīsum est, what seemed  
best. quae is the obj. of respondere  
understood. What is the subj. of  
vīsum est? sed marks the contrast

fuit orationis: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Galliā remanērent; neque verum esse, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ullōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī dari tantae praesertim multitudinī sine iniuriā possint; sed licēre, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniuriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant: hōc sē Ubiis imperātūrum.

*He demands that the Germans withdraw from Gaul.*

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixerunt et rē dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs: intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dixit. Cōgnōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab iis aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam

*They try to gain time. Caesar refuses.*

4. tueor, -ērī, tuitus (tūtus) sum, a., look or gaze at, watch, regard, guard, protect. \*

grain], a., fetch or get grain, forage. \*

3. propius, compar. adv. [prope, near], nearer. \*

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe west of the Meuse. 1

6. frūmentor, 1. [frūmentum,

Mosa, -ae, m., the Meuse or Maas a river of Belgic Gaul. \*

between the first part of Caesar's reply, which he does not think it necessary to insert, and the conclusion (*exitus*) containing his demands. *sibi esse posse, he could have.*

2, 3. *sibi*: for case cf. 2, 1; III, 13, 14; II, 15, 10. *amicitiam*: a form of alliance between the Roman state and foreign powers. It bound each of the parties not to molest the friends or give aid to the enemies of the other. It was different from the form of treaty called *societas*, which was an alliance for offensive or defensive purposes. *verum, reasonable.*

7, 8. *apud sē querantur, were*

*with him to complain.* dē Suēbōrum iniuriis: see 3, 10-13. hōc: i. e., *ut eos finibus suis recipiant.*

2. *post diem tertium, on the third day, i. e., the next day but one, since the present day was counted in.*

3. *propius sē, nearer them.* For the Acc. see on I, 46, 2. *castra movēret*: see Int. 140.

4. *sē*: for case cf. III, 6, 10; II, 31, 9; I, 23, 11.

5. *diēbus*: for case cf. III, 20, 5; I, 31, 36; 18, 26.

6. *trāns Mosam*: i. e., to the west side of the stream.



mīssam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ēius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābatur.

*Sources and  
course of the  
Meuse and  
Rhine.*

10. Mosa prōfluit ex mōnte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque longius ab eō milibus passuum LXXX in Oceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lēpontiis, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediōmātricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum, citātus fertur et, ubi Oceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs dēfluit partēs multis ingen tibusque insulis effectis, quārum pars māgna ā feris bar-

7. mora, -ae [moror, delay], f., delay. 4

8. inter-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], a., place or put between, insert, interpose. \*

1. prō-fluō, -ere, flūxī, [fluō, flow], n., flow forth or along, issue, proceed. 1

Vosegus, -i, m., the Vosges mountains, west of the Rhine. 1

3. Vacalus, -i, m., the Waal, a branch of the Rhine, near its mouth. 1

Batāvi, -ōrum, m., the Batavians, a Celtic people inhabiting Insula Batāvōrum; capital Lugdunum, the modern Leyden. 1

5. Lēpontiī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic

people among the Alps between St. Gothard and Lake Maggiore.

7. Mediōmātricēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum) m., a Gallic people between the Vosges and Moselle about modern Metz. 2

Tribocī, -ōrum (-ēs, -um) m., a German tribe on the Rhine about modern Strasburg. 2

citō, 1. [freq. of cīeō, put in motion], a., put in quick motion; hasten, incite. 1

8. dē-fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus [fluō] flow from or apart, separate, divide. 1

9. in-gēns, -entis [in, neg. + gēns, race, kind, lit. not of the kind i. e. out of proportion], enormous, huge, vast, great. 3

7, 8. hōs exspectārī . . . interpōnī: in view of Caesar's undoubted respect for the German cavalry, this reason may well have weighed strongly with him.

1. ex mōnte Vosegō: more correctly the plateau of Langres, north of the Cote d'or, which unites the Cevennes with the Vosges.

2. parte quādam receptā, receiving an arm.

3. insulam efficit: with the north arm of the Rhine and the

North Sea.

4. eō, i. e., the Vacalus. LXXX the distance from the present confluence of the Waal and Meuse to the North Sea is much less than eighty miles; but a careful study of the old water courses of the Rhine has made it clear that these streams formerly united their waters farther east, near Battenburg.

6. longō spatiō, for a long distance.

7. citātus, with a swift current.

barisque nātiōnibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus<sup>10</sup> atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum *At Caesar's approach the Germans again seek delay and gain a truce.* XII milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere, nē longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī āgmen antecessissent, praemitteret eōsque pūgnā prohiberet, sibi ut potestatem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī: quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūreiūrando fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne, quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant: ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar<sup>10</sup> eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius milibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcessū-

10. piscis, -is, m., a fish, collectively, fish. 1

11. ōvum, -ī, n., an egg. 1  
avis, -is, f., a bird. 1

13. aquātiō, -ōnis [aquor, get water], f., getting or bringing water. 1

11. ōvis avium: a favorite article of food with the Hollanders of the present day, who dwell along the Zuyder Zee. piscibus, ōvis: for case see on 1, 16. multis capitibus: inexact, according to good authorities, who claim that in Caesar's time the Rhine had but two mouths.

2. ut erat cōstitutum: see 9, 2.

3. in itinere congressī: in the forenoon of the third day: see Int. 143.

5. antecessissent: see Int. 141.

7. quōrum sī, and if their. For

trans. of the relative cf. II, 29, 5; 13, 4; I, 27, 2; 14, 4.

8, 9. eā... ūsūrōs (esse), that they would avail themselves of those terms which were proposed by Caesar (8, 6). condiciōne: for case cf. II, 32, 12; I, 20, 7.

10. trīduī spatium: this was too brief a time in which to do what they proposed. daret: what mode in the direct form? Cf. III, 8, 19; I, 35, 10; 7, 20.

12. equitēs eōrum: see 9, 7.

13. aquātiōnis causā: Caesar was approaching a small stream now called the Niers.

rum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī con-  
 15 venīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cōgnōsceret. Interim ad  
 praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit, quī  
 nūntiārent, nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesseren-  
 tur, sustinērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

*They treacher-  
 ously attack  
 and rout the  
 Roman caval-  
 ry.*

12. At hostēs ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōn-  
 spēxērunt, quōrum erat quīnque milium numerus,  
 cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habē-  
 rent, quod ii, quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōn-  
 5 dum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum  
 paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab  
 hīs petitus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt;  
 rursus resistentibus, cōnsuetūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt,

14. frequēns, -entis, constant,  
 regular; repeated, common, fre-  
 quent; numerous, crowded, in  
 great numbers. 3

15. postulātum, -ī [postulō, de-  
 mand], n., demand, claim, re-  
 quirement, request. 4

18. quo-ad, adv., as long as, as

far as; till, until. 4

8. octingenti, -ae, -a [octō+cen-  
 tum], num. adj., eight hundred. 3

6. indūtiāe, -ārum, [indu=in+  
 eō, ire], f., cessation of hostili-  
 ties, truce, armistice. 2

14. hūc: i. e., to the camp by the  
 Niers. quam: for force cf. 3, 1.  
 frequentissimī: Caesar's purpose  
 seems to have been to get as many  
 of the chiefs as possible into his  
 power. convenīrent: like *daret*  
 above, line 10.

16, 17. quī nūntiārent, men  
 to give orders. For the Subj. cf.  
 III, 11, 11; II, 17, 2. For the  
 omission of the antecedent cf. III,  
 6, 1; II, 27, 2; I, 21, 4; 17, 2.

18. accessisset: for mode see  
 on *dum*, I, 7, 18.

2. quōrum ... milium: a double  
 Gen. depending on *numerus*. In  
 such a case the governing noun  
 is usually between the genitives.

3. amplius octingentōs equi-  
 tēs: before nouns of quantity *am-*

*plus* and *plus* often do not influ-  
 ence the construction. So we may  
 say in English 'more than 800' or  
 '800 and more.' Contrast the use  
 in I, 15, 15. octingentōs: both  
 Caesar and Tacitus bear witness to  
 the efficiency of the German caval-  
 ry; the latter in fact mentions the  
 Tenceteri by name. Still it seems  
 improbable that, with all their val-  
 or, the German cavalry would ven-  
 ture to attack a force more than  
 six times their own number. Cae-  
 sar seems to throw upon them the  
 blame of the attack in order to jus-  
 tify his subsequent action. habē-  
 rent: for the mode cf. III, 7, 4;  
 7, 2; I, 26, 6.

4. ii, quī ierant: see 9, 6.

8. resistentibus: sc. *nostrīs* fr.  
 line 5. cōnsuetūdine: see 2, 7.

suffossis equis complūribusque nostris dēiectis reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius<sup>10</sup> fugā dēsisterent, quam in cōspectum āgminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pisō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūius avus in civitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frā<sup>15</sup> trī interclūsō ab hostibus auxiliū ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit: cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque inter<sup>20</sup>fectus est.

13. Hōc factō proeliō, Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs au-

9. suffodiō, -ere, fōdī, fos-  
sus [fodiō, dig], a., dig under,  
stab or pierce underneath. 1

13. septuāgintā, indecl. num  
adj., seventy.

11. vēnissent: for mode cf. 4, 18; III, 10, 10.

12, 13. quattuor et septuāgintā: a heavy loss in view of the small number of the enemy; see Int. 152.

14. amplissimō genere nātus, descended from a very illustrious line. genere: for the case see A. 244 a; B. 84; G. 395; H. 415 II; B. 215. rēgnum: monarchy was an exception in Gaul in Caesar's time, most of the states being democratic in form of government. The kings were elected and their power was not absolute. Caesar sought to revive monarchy in Gaul as an offset to the power of the nobility and priesthood.

15. amīcus: see on I, 3, 13. The same title was conferred upon states with which Rome had con-

cluded the form of treaty called *amicitia*: see on 8, 2.

16. interclūsō: trans. by a rel. clause.

1. hōc factō proeliō: the result of this engagement made it clear that little dependence could be placed upon the Gallic cavalry in case of a general battle. A bad effect would be produced upon the disaffected Gauls unless a brilliant victory followed. Caesar accordingly decided to attack the Germans without inquiring too closely into the causes of the cavalry engagement. lēgātōs etc.: in the conference which had been arranged for the next day; see 11, 14.

2, 3. condiciōnēs: stated in 11, 5. ab iis, by those: for case

*Caesar determines on decided action and detains German envoys.*

- diendōs neque condiōnēs accipiendās arbitrābā-  
tur ab iis, quī per dolum atque insidiās petītā  
pāce ūltrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō, dum  
6 hostiū cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, sum-  
mae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat, et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmi-  
tāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis  
essent cōsecūti, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capiēda nihil  
spatii dandum exīstimābat. Hīs cōstitutis rēbus et cōsiliō  
10 cum lēgātis et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūg-  
nae praetermitteret, oportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē  
eius diēi māne eādē et perfidiā et simulatiōne ūsī Germānī  
frequentēs omnibus pīncipibus māiōribusque nātū adhibitīs  
ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dicēbātur, suī pūrgandi

6. dēmentia, -ae, [dē-mēns, out of one's mind], *r.*, madness, infatuation, folly. 1

10. quaestor, -ōris [quaerō, seek], *m.*, a quaestor, an officer in charge of the public revenues, or the finances of the army. \*  
commūnicō, 1. [commūnis, common], *a.*, make common, communicate, impart, share. \*

11. praeter-mittō, -ere, misi, missus, send or let go by; let pass, overlook. 3

12. māne, *adv.*, in the morning. 3  
perfidiā, -ae [per-fidus, faithless], *r.*, treachery, falsehood, dishonesty, perfidy. \*  
simulatiō, -ōnis [simulō, make like], *r.*, simulation, pretence, deceit. \*

see A. 232 note; H. 388 note; B. 189, 1, a.

4. exspectāre etc., *that to wait . . . was (a sign of) the utmost folly.* Having determined to fight, right or wrong, Caesar's reason for engaging at once was a good one. The advantage to be gained by an immediate attack evidently weighed more with him than the possibility that he might be wrong in attacking at all.

5, 6. augērentur: for mode see on I, 7, 18; cf. the mode with *quoad* 11, 18. dēmentiae: for the case see on 5, 4: what is here the subject of *esse*? Cf. I, 17, 8; 10, 3; 7, 11. infirmitate: a consideration of great weight just then, in view of

the disaffection among the Gauls forming the allied contingent in his own army, a symptom of which was the flight of the cavalry.

10. lēgātis, quaestōre: see Int. 94, 95. nē quem etc., *not to let a day for fighting go by.*

11. rēs accidit: it was hardly an accident. Caesar himself had ordered them to return. quod, *inasmuch as.*

12. perfidiā: observe how Caesar multiplies his charges of faithless conduct.

13. frequentēs: cf. *frequentissimi*, 11, 14.

14. ad eum . . . vēnērunt: this action seems to disprove Caesar's charge of perfidy.

causā, quod contrā, atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proe-  
lium pridiē commisissent, simul ut, si quid possent, dē indutiīs  
fallendō impetrarent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs re-  
tinērī iūssit, ipse omnēs cōpiās castris ēdūxit equitātumque,  
quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse existimābat, āgmen  
subsequi iūssit.

20

14. Acīē triplici īnstitūtā et celeriter VIII mī-  
lium itinere cōfectō prius ad hostium castra per-  
vēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentire possent. Quī  
omnibus rēbus subitō perterriti, et celeritatē adventūs nostrī et  
discessū suōrum, neque cōsiliū habendī neque arma capiendī  
spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere, an  
castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum

*He unexpected-  
ly attacks  
and storms  
their camp.*

17. gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum,  
n., be delighted, rejoice. 1

6. adversus, prep. with acc.,

against. 1

7. an, conj. used in second member  
of alternative questions, or, or  
rather. \*

14-16. simul—simul: used to denote the simultaneous occurrence of unlike things; at once—and also. sui pūrgandi, of freeing themselves. See on III, 6, 3: is pūrgandi gerund or gerundive? Give gender, number and case of sui, and reason for each. atque, contrary to what. For use cf. III, 28, 6; 9, 22; II, 6, 4. ut etc.: to obtain whatever (lit. if anything) they could in the way of a truce by means of deceit.

17. quōs ... gāvīsus: because the Germans without their leaders would be less capable of resisting him. retinērī: does Caesar's action here differ materially from that of the Veneti (see III, 16, 9, 10) which he punished so severely? illōs: not necessary after quōs but emphasizes the condition of the ambassadors and Caesar's immediate course.

1. acīē triplici: see Int. 145. The legions probably marched in column of cohorts (see Int. 140) until the vicinity of the enemy was reached, when they deployed into line of battle.

3. quid agerētur, what was going on. For mode cf. 5, 8; 5, 6, possent: for mode cf. 12, 11; 4, 18.

4. omnibus rēbus, by the whole state of affairs; explained by the following ablatives.

5. suōrum: i. e., principum et maiōrum nātū, 13, 13.

6, 7. spatiō datō, and because time was not afforded. perturbantur etc., they were in great perplexity, (not knowing) whether it were better to ... or ... or etc. -ne, an, an: for the use of the particles in Double or Alternative questions see A. 211; G. 460; H. 353; B. 162 4. praestāret: imperfect, because perturbantur is a historical present.

timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, milītēs nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō 10 quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostris restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proelium commīsērunt: at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitātē 15 tum mīsit.

*The Germans  
flee with great  
loss.*

15. Germānī post tergum clamōre auditō cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictis sē ex castris eiēcērunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā māgnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in flūmen prae-

9. ir (in-) -rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus [rumpō, break], a., break in or into, storm. 5

14. passim, adv. [passus, p. p. of pandō, stretch out], hither and thither, in every direction. 1

2. abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, iectus

[iaciō, hurl], a., throw away or down, cast aside, abandon. \*

4. cōfluēns, -entis [cōfluō, flow together], m., a flowing together, confluence. 1

5. praecipitō, 1. [praeceps, headlong], a., throw or hurl headlong, precipitate. 2

9. quō locō = in castris Germānōrum.

11. carrōs: impedimenta: see I, 26, 6-10.

14, 15. ad quōs . . . mīsit: the cold-blooded cruelty of this order is almost incredible and has left an indelible stain upon Caesar's fame. When the proposal was made in the Roman Senate to proclaim a public thanksgiving for this victory Cato declared that Caesar ought to be delivered up to the Germans, in order to avert from Rome the wrath of the gods for his perfidious act done in her name.

1. Germānī: those in the camp who were resisting the Romans.

clāmōre: the cries of the women and children.

4. cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī: see on 10, 4. Rhēnī here means the *Vacalus* (Waal) the southern branch of the Rhine, connecting it with the Meuse. The scene of this battle is by some placed at Coblenz in the angle between the Moselle and the Rhine. It is more satisfactory on the whole to follow the inference from the text and the local topography, that the battle took place near Goch on the Niers and that the routed Germans fled north to the Waal. reliquā, further.

5-7. reliquī . . . periērunt: probably an exaggeration. 26

cipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine vī flūminis oppres-  
sī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucis  
vulnerātis ex tantī belli timōre, cum hostium numerus capi-  
tum cccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar  
iīs, quōs in castris retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem fēcit.<sup>10</sup>  
Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs  
vēxāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixerunt. Hīs Cae-  
sar libertātem concessit.

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō, multis dē Caesar re-  
solves to cross  
the Rhine. causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseun-  
dum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod cum vidēret Germā-  
nōs tam facile impellī, ut in Galliam venīrent, suis quoque  
rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellexerent, et posse et audēre  
populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire. Accessit etiam,  
quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam  
suprā commemorāvi praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam  
trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē

7. per-eō, ire, ii (īvi), itus [eō, go], n., go through, pass away, be destroyed, perish. 4

1. Germānicus, -a, -um [Germānus, German], of or pertaining

to the Germans, German, Germanic. 1

3. iūstus, -a, -um [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, righteous, reasonable, valid, just. \*

praecipitāvērunt, plunged headlong. ad ūnum, to a man.

8. ex . . . timōre, after the fear; ex is used in a temporal sense, but may be freely translated: relieved from.

10. discēdendī potestātem fēcit: what light does this action throw upon Caesar's real belief with respect to the charges he made against these chiefs?

11, 12. quōrum . . . vēxāverant: such as the Menapii, Ambivariti and possibly the Eburones

and Condrusi.

13. libertātem, permission (to remain).

3. illa, the following.

4, 5. suis rēbus, for their own possessions. cum intellexerent, on perceiving (since they would perceive).

6. accessit: the subject is the subst. cl. quod . . . recēperat.

8. suprā: see 9, 5. commemorāvi: see on dēmōstrāvimus, II, 1, 2.



- 10 trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum  
*Haughty re-  
ply of the Su-  
gambri to his  
messengers.* iis coniūn\_xerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs  
 mīssisset, quī postulārent, eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque  
 bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populi Rō-  
 mānī imperium Rhēnum finire: sī sē invītō Germānōs in  
 15 Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quidquam  
 esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? Ubī  
 autem, quī unī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīse-  
 rant, amicitiam fēcērant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere orā-  
 bant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs  
 20 premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reipūblicae  
 prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi  
 ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tan-  
 tum esse nōmen atque opiniōnem eiūs exercitūs Ariovistō

10. Sugambrī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Ger-  
 man tribe. 5  
 14. finīō, 4. [fīnis, limit], *a.*,  
 limit, bound; determine, appoint;  
 end, finish. 3  
 15. cūr (quōr=quārē), *interrog.*  
*adv.*, why? for what reason? 4  
 17. Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um  
 [trāns+Rhēnus], beyond or  
 across the Rhine; in *pl.* as *subst.*,

- the people across the Rhine. 3  
 20. occupātiō, -ōnis [occupō,  
 seize, occupy], *r.*, seizing, oc-  
 cupying; occupation, business,  
 engagement. 2  
 21. trāns-portō, 1. [portō, car-  
 ry], *a.*, carry over, convey across,  
 remove, transport. \*  
 23. Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, *king of the*  
*German tribe, Suebi.* \*

10. in finēs: see map. They must have swept around in the rear of Caesar's army.

13. dēderent: object of *postulārent*. For the omission of the conjunction cf. III, 11, 3; 5, 11. *respondērunt*: give the direct form of the answer in both Latin and English.

14. sē (also suī, line 15) refers to the subject of the dependent verb, i. e. to Caesar and not to the subject of the main verb, *respondērunt*.

15, 16. suī... Rhēnum, *that*

*anything across the Rhine belong to his (military) authority or (civil) jurisdiction. suī agreeing with imperiī, and understood (suae) with potestātis. imperiī, potestātis: dependent upon esse, not quicquam, cf. 5, 4. postulāret: for mode see on I, 40, 11.*

17. unī, *alone*.

18. amicitiam: see on 8, 2. orābant: the envoys from the Ubii were then in camp: see 8, 7.

20. premerentur: for mode cf. II, 11, 17; 1, 8; I, 23, 9.

21. trānsportāret: for mode cf. II, 11, 10; III, 8, 19.

pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ūltimās Germānōrum nātiōnes, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī<sup>25</sup> tūtī esse possint. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

17. Caesar his dē causīs, quās commemorāvi, *Description of Caesar's bridge across the Rhine.* Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pōntis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudinem, rapiditatem altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem pōntis hanc īstituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis intervāllō

5. rapiditās, -tātis [rapidus, swift], F., swiftness. 1

8. tignum, -ī, N., log, beam, piece of timber. 2.

sēsqui-pedālis, -e [sēsqui, (fr. semis, quī) more by a half + pēs, foot], of a foot and a half eighteen-inch. 1

2. Rhēnum trānsire: probably at Bonna (Bonn), so as to meet the wishes of the Ubii (see 16, 18) and to be as near the Sugambri as possible. The bridge must have been over a quarter of a mile long. The time of its construction is placed by Rüstow, between the 12th and the 21st of June. nāvibus for case of. II, 10, 7; I, 53, 7; 6, 16.

3. satis tūtum: the boats were probably small and could carry but few soldiers each. Broken up into so many small portions, the fighting power of the army would be greatly reduced and the enemy could more effectively oppose the landing. In case of defeat, the hazard of the retreat would be greatly increased.

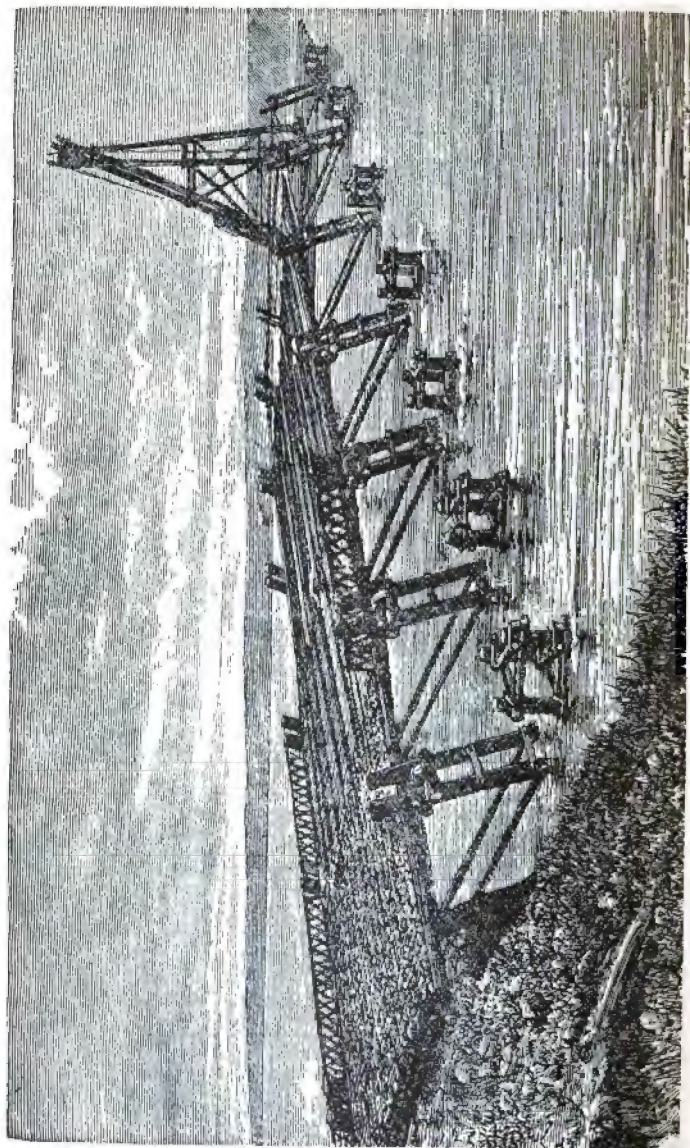
4. dignitātis esse, worthy of his own prestige etc. For the genitive cf. 16, 16. What is the subject of esse? If he depend-

ed upon the Ubii to help his army across, the effect upon the Germans would be much less than if he devised his own means of crossing. The very construction of the bridge would impress the barbarians with a high sense of the power and skill of the Romans.

4, 5. etsī... prōpōnēbātur, although the difficulty of making a bridge was represented to him as very great. summa: in predicate with the verb. id contendendum etc., that he ought to strive for this (i. e. ut pōntem faceret) or else not etc.

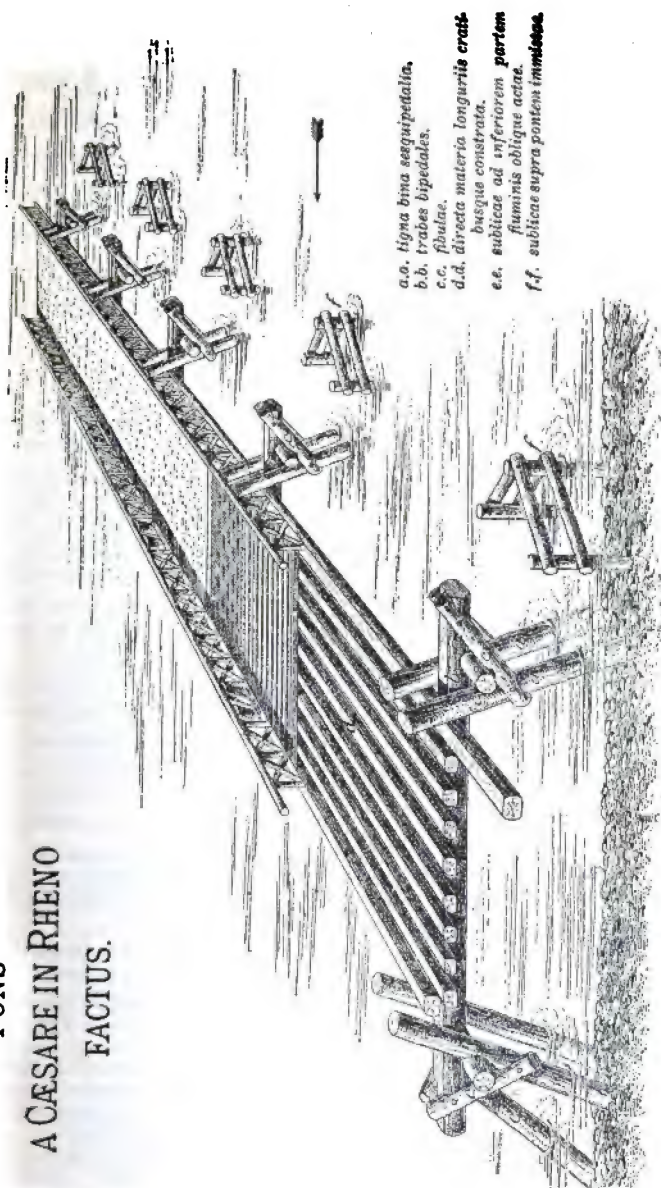
8. bīna, in pairs.

9. dīmēnsa: i. e., longer or shorter according to the depth of the river where they were driven into its bed. The average depth of the river at this point is about 16 feet. For the use of the participle cf. II, 19, 14.



CÆSAR'S BRIDGE.  
(From the Museum de St. Germaine.)

# PONS A CÆSARE IN RHENO FACTUS.



10 *opedum duorum inter se iungēbat.* Haec cum *māchinātiōnibus* immissa in *flūmen* *dēfixerat* *fistūcisque* *adēgerat*, *nōn* *sublicae* modo *dērēctē* ad *perpendicularum*, sed *prōnē* ac *fastigātē* ut secundum *nātūram* *flūminis* *prōcumberent*, *hīs* item *contrāria* duo ad eundem modum *iūcta* *intervallō* *pedum xl*  
 15 *ab inferiōre parte* *contrā vim* atque *impetum* *flūminis* *conversa* *statuēbat*. Haec utraque *insuper* *bipedālibus* *trabibus* *immissis*, quantum *eōrum* *tignōrum* *iūctūra* *distābat*, *bīnis*

11. *im* (*in*)-*mittō*, -*ere*, *mīsi*, *missus*, *a.*, send or let into, let in or down, insert, introduce. 5

*dēfigō*, -*ere*, *fixi*, *fixus* [*figō*, *fix*], *a.*, fix or fasten down, drive in, plant. 3

*fistūca*, -*ae*, *f.*, beetle, pile-driver. 1

12. *sublica*, -*ae*, *f.*, pile, stake, palisade. 3

*dērēctē* (*dir*-) [*dērēctus*, straight], *adv.*, straight, directly, exactly. 1

*perpendicularum*, -*i* [*per-pondō*, weigh carefully], *n.*, plummet, plumb-line. 1

*prōnē* [*pronus*, inclined], in an inclined position, sloping down-

wards. 2

*fastigātē* [*fastigātus*, sloping], sloping, in a sloping direction. 1

14. *XL*, here for *quadrāgēni*, -*ae*, -*a*, *distr. num. adj.* [*quadrāgintā*], forty each, forty. 2

16. *in-super*, *adv.* [*super*, above], above, on the top, from above. 2

*bi-pedālis*, -*e* [*bis*, twice + *pēs*], of two feet, two feet in length, thickness, etc. 1

17. *iūctūra*, -*ae* [*iungō*, join], *f.*, a joining, joint, fastening. 1

*distō*, -*stāre* [*dis*- apart], *n.*, stand apart; be apart, removed, or separated. 5

10. *inter se iungēbat*: *he* joined together, by means of braces. This method of construction permitted the use of lighter timbers, which presented less surface to the current.

11. *dēfixerat*, *adēgerat*: for the mode see on III, 14, 17. *nōn* etc., not vertical (*dērēctē ad perpendicularum*) like a pile.

13. *ut ... prōcumberent*, so as to slope according to the flow of the stream.

14. *duō*: *sc. tigna* (with which *contrāria* agrees). Another double pile was driven into the bed of the river forty feet below the first and

inclined toward it so that the tops of the two were about 25 feet apart, which would be the width of the bridge.

15. *ab inferiōre parte*: (*sc. flūminis*), i. e., down stream.

16. *haec utraque*: the corresponding double piles. They were connected by a beam 25 feet long and two feet thick whose ends were let in (*immissis*) between the *tigna* filling the space exactly (cf. I 9, *pedum duorum*) and resting upon cross-ties. A pair of braces (*bīnis fibulis*) ran from each double pile to the beam.

utrimque fibulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, quō māior vīs aquae sē<sup>20</sup> incitāvisset, hōc artius illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōster-nēbantur; ac nihilō sēcūs sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniūctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item<sup>25</sup> suprā pōntem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nā-

18. utrimque, *adv.* [uterque, both], on both sides. 5

fibula, -ae [*contr. of* figūbula *fr.* figō, fasten], *r.*, a fastening, clasp, brace, pin. 1

disclūdō, -ere, clūsī, clūsus [claudō, shut, close], *a.*, shut off, hold or keep apart, separate. 2

20. aqua, -ae, *r.*, water. \*

21. artē [artus, narrow, tight], *adv.*, in narrow compass, closely, tightly.

ill (in-)ligō, 1. [ligō, bind], tie or bind on, attach, fasten.

dērēctus, -a, -um (dir-) [dērigō, straighten], direct, straight.

22. iniciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus

[iaciō, hurl], *a.*, throw or cast into or upon, put or place on; put into, inspire, inject.

con-texō, -ere, texui, textus [texō, plait], *a.*, plait, weave or bind together, unite, connect.

crātis, -is, *r.*, wicker-worker, a hurdle; in war, fascines.

cōn-sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus [sternō, strew], *a.*, strew over, cover, thatch.

23. sēcūs, *comp. adv.*, less: nihilō sēcūs, none the less.

24. obliquē [obliquus, slanting], in a slanting direction, obliquely.

26. truncus, -ī, *m.*, stem, stock, trunk.

18. ab extrēmā parte, at each end of the beam. quibus, refers to haec, line 16. disclūsīs, kept apart by the beam.

19. in contrāriam partem revinctis, braced in opposite directions by the fibulae.

20. ea rērum nātūrā: i. e., the relation of the various parts of the structure to each other.

21. illigāta: sc. tigna. haec i. e., the piers described above. It is estimated that there were about fifty of these in the bridge.

23. sublicae: shores to brace the whole pier.

24. obliquē: driven in at a greater angle of inclination than the double pile so that its top was fastened to the latter. prō ariete, acting as a buttress.

25. vim flūminis exciperent: i. e., these shores reinforced the resisting power of the whole bridge. aliae: sc. sublicae: they were detached from the bridge so as to sustain all the force of trees, boats, etc. which might be swept down by the current.



vēs dēicendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs mīssae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērū vīs minuerētur, neu pōntī nocērent.

*The army crosses into the country of the Sugambri who withdraw.*

18. Diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pōntis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā com-  
5 plūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberāliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambri ex eō tempore, quō pōns institui coeptus est, fugā comparātā hortantibus iīs quōs ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis  
10 excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitudinem āc silvās abdiderant.

*He ravages their country.*

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succīs sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque iīs auxilium suum pol-

10. ex-portō, 1. [portō, carry], a., carry out or away, export. 1 sōlitudō, -inis [sōlus, alone], f., loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, desert, wilderness. 2

2. suc-cidō, -ere, cidī, cīsus [sub + caedō, cut], a., cut from beneath, cut through or down, fell. 8

27. dēiciendī operis, for the purpose of throwing down the work.

28. neu . . . nocērent, and that they might not etc. pōnti: for the case cf. III, 14, 3; 13, 17.

1. diēbus decem, quibus, with- in ten days from the time when, or in ten days after: see on III, 23, 4. The actual time used in the construction of the bridge was probably much less: see on 17, 2. coepta erat: for the voice see on I, 47, 3.

3. partem, ends. praesidiō: in a "bridge-head" or entrenchment, enveloping the end of the bridge: see II, 5, 18—20.

6. amicitiam: see on 8, 2. pe-

tentibus: trans. by a clause, and when etc.

8, 9. fugā comparātā: without awaiting the completion of the bridge. hortantibus iīs, urged by those (lit., those urging them). quōs . . . habēbant: mentioned in 16, 6—10. It is probable that the survivors of the massacre (see note 15, 5) also fled to the Sugambri.

10, 11. sōlitudinem āc silvās = sōlitudinem silvārum. For the figure of speech see on I, 31, 45.

2. vicīs . . . succīs: "The consequence must have been that in the next winter many Germans died of cold and hunger" (Long).

licitus, si ab Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iis cōgnōvit Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pōntem fieri com-<sup>The Suebi pre-</sup> perissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in om-<sup>pare resist-</sup> nēs partēs dīmisisse, uti dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenirent: hunc esse dēlectum medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinē-<sup>10</sup> rent: hic Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit omnibus rēbus iis cōfectis, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exer-<sup>Caesar re-</sup> citum cōstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, <sup>crosses into</sup> ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diē-<sup>Gaul.</sup> <sup>15</sup> bus omninō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōsūptis satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pōntemque rescidit.

5. posteāquam (posteā quam),  
adv. [posteā, afterwards], after.\*

11. hīc, adv. here, in this place;  
(of a place just mentioned), there,  
in that place. 4

15. obsidiō, -ōnis, [ob-sideō, sit

at, besiege], F., siege, investment,  
blockade; peril, oppression. \*

liberō, 1. [liber, free], a., make or  
set free, release, deliver. 5

17. ūtilitās, -tātis [ūtilis, use-  
ful], F., usefulness, utility, advan-  
tage, service. 2

5. fieri, was being made.

6, 7. nūntiōs dīmisisse uti  
dēmigrārent, had sent messengers  
(to urge them) to leave.

8, 9. dēpōnerent, convenirent:  
in the same constr. as dēmigrārent,  
above. hunc: sc. locum.

10. delectum etc., as this (place)  
had been selected almost exactly the  
central point of the lands etc.

11. hīc, ibi: both words refer  
to the same place.

14, 15. ut ... liberāret: for  
the ut clauses cf. II, 31, 9; 9, 12; 2,  
7; I, 48, 6; 30, 8. The moral effect

of this military demonstration was  
no doubt considerable. During the  
whole of the next year's campaign-  
ing on the Rhine frontier, the Ger-  
mans could not be induced to cross  
the stream.

15. obsidiōne: the Ubii could  
not be driven from their homes;  
yet they were, so to speak, in a state  
of siege.

16, 17. satis prōfectum (esse),  
that enough had been accomplished.  
Give the principal parts of the  
verbs from which we get *prōfectum*  
and *prōfectum*. ad laudem: i. e.,  
for the honor of Rome.



*He plans an expedition to Britain.*

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionē vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegēbat et, si tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset, et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercatōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercatōribus neque quantā esset insulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus institutis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrum nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs, reperire poterat.

1. **exiguus, -a, -um** [*exigō, drive or weigh out*], *weighed out exactly*; scanty, short, small, meagre, limited. \*

9. **in-cōgnitus, -a, -um** [*cōgnōs-*

*cō, learn, know*], not ascertained, unknown. 2

**temerē**, [*cf. temeritās, chance*], *adv., by chance, rashly, blindly.* 4

1. **exiguā . . . reliquā**: the ablative absolute is concessive and the sentence contains besides a formal concessive clause, *etsi . . . hiemēs*. Cf. 3, 10, and trans.: *although only a small part of the summer was left, in spite of the fact that the winters are early (mātūrae) because etc.*

4, 5. **quod hostibus . . . intellegēbat**, *because he knew that assistance was rendered from thence to our enemies*. **tempus annī**: cf. *exiguā aestāte*, line 1, above.

6. **māgnō . . . fore**, *it would be of great advantage to him*. For the case cf. II, 30, 9, 10; 20, 8; I, 52, 16; 25, 6.

7. **si adisset**, *if he should (mere-*

*ly) visit*. For mode and tense see on II, 9, 12.

9, 10. **temerē illō adit**, *incur the risk of going there*. **mercatōrēs**: the trade was controlled by the Veneti (see III, 8, 3), the traders usually avoiding the land of the Belgae for the reason stated in I, 1, 8. **iis ipsis = mercatōribus**.

12. **neque etc.**, *he could not learn what the size of the island was etc.*

13, 14. **esset, incolerent**: for mode cf. 14, 3; 5, 8.

15. **māiōrum nāvium**: i. e., the ships of war and transports, which were much larger than the trading vessels used by the Gauls.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvi longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explōrātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat classem iubet convenire. Interim cōnsiliō eius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs ā complūribus insulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditis liberaliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum iīs unā Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitra-

*He proceeds against the Morini. Negotiations with the Britons.*

6. trāiectus, -ūs [trāiciō, cross over], m., crossing over, crossing, passage. 2

10. Britannus, -a, -um, of Britain, British, Britanno: in pl. as subst., the people of Britain, the Britons. 4

12. ob-temperō, 1. [temperō,

rule], n., be subject to rule, attend to, comply with, obey. 2

14. Commius, -ī, m., a prince of the Atrebatas (living in Belgic Gaul).

16. fidēlis, -e [fidēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. 2

1, 2. priusquam . . . faceret, before incurring the risk. For mode cf. 14, 3; 12, 11; 4, 18.

3. Volusēnum: see what Caesar says of him in III, 5, 8. nāvi longā: see Int. 170. Sc. eum as subject of esse or object of praemittit.

7. hūc: refers in general to the country of the Morini, but specifically to the port in which the fleet was to assemble.

11, 12. dare, obtemperāre: a

rare use of the complementary infinitive with a verb of promising. The usual construction is the (future) infinitive with subj. acc.

15. rēgem: Caesar mentions by name eleven Gallic kings. ibi: i. e., among the Atrebatas.

16. sibi fidēlem: Commius, however, deserted Caesar in 52 B.C. arbitrābātur, supposed, indicates that the author knew better when he wrote. This, then, was written at the conclusion of the war.

bātur, cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque, ut populi Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque  
 20 celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit quī nāvī ēgredi āc sē barbaris committere nōn auderet, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

*The Morini  
 make terms.*

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsarent, quod hominēs barbari et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāisset, factūrōs pollicerentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis oportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque belli gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rerum occupātiōnēs Britan-

charge], *a.*, release from a charge, free from blame; justify, excuse; make excuse or explanations, apologize. 1

4. imperitus, -a, -um [peritus,

experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. \*

6. oportūnē (opp-), *adv.*, fitly, at the right time. 1

3. excūsō, 1. [causa, cause,

17. hīs regiōnibus: in Belgic Gaul. māgnī habēbātur, *was held in high estimation.* māgnī: for case see on I, 20, 15.

18, 19. adeat, hortētur: what is omitted? Cf. 16, 13; III, 5, 11. ut fidem sequantur, *to continue under the protection.*

21, 22. quī nōn auderet, *seeing that he did not dare.* For the mode see on II, 15, 14.

2. morātur: for the tense of. III, 17, 1; I, 27, 8.

3. temporis: *i. e.*, the previous summer. cōnsiliō, *behavior*, see III, 28.

4. hominēs barbari, *being strangers or since they were strangers.* For a like (predicate) use of hominēs see I, 2, 14. cōsuētūdinis: *viz.* of treating with clemency those who submitted.

5. fēcissent: for mode cf. 16, 20.

8. annī tempus: *i. e.*, there was not enough of the campaigning season left for both the reduction of the Morini and the expedition to Britain.

9. hās . . . occupātiōnēs, *engaging in such trivial matters.* tantulārum: for signification of the ending see on II, 30, 2.

niae antepōnendās iūdicābat, māgnū iīs numerum obsidum<sup>10</sup> imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recēpit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coactīs cōnstrātisque, quot *Further preparations for the invasion.* satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII<sup>15</sup> onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ab milibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Tīturīo Sabīnō et L. Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ab quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn<sup>20</sup> vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iūssit.

23. His cōstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad *Caesar crosses to Britain.*

10. ante-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], a., place or set before, regard of more importance, prefer. 1

12. onerārius, -a, -um [onus, burden], fitted for burdens, transport: sc. nāvis, transportship, freight-ship. \*

21. Rūfus, -ī, m., (red, red-headed), *The cognomen of Publius Sulpicius, Caesar's lieutenant.* 1

1. nancīscor, -ī, nactus (nactus) sum, a., get, obtain; meet with, find. \*

11, 12. eōs: the Morini, not the hostages. nāvibus onerāriīs: see Int. 175.

12, 13. cōnstrātīs, *decked*. duās legiōnēs: the 7th and 10th. What would be the number of legionaries on each vessel? See Int. 87.

14. quod... habēbat, *the ships of war he had besides* (lit. *what of ships* etc.). Cf. III, 16, 5.

15. hūc: i. e., in addition to the transports and the war ships. XVIII: it has been estimated that 450 horsemen with their horses could be conveyed in this number of transports.

16. eō locō ab: at the port of Ambletuse. For *ab* cf. II, 30 7;

7, 9; its use with another preposition (*ex*) is exceedingly rare.

17. quō minus... possent, *from being able to* etc. For the mode see on I, 31, 25. eundem portum: i. e., Boulogne.

18. equitibus distribuit: about twenty-five men and the same number of horses in each transport.

21. dūcendum: construe with *reliquum exercitum*; for its use cf. III, 11, 11; I, 19, 4.

22. portum: as in line 16.

1, 2. rēbus, *measures*. idōneam tempestātem: the wind was from the south and the weather

nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ūteriōrum portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iūssit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita mōntibus angustē mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris expectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset, et quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae

2. solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *a.*, loosen, untie, unbend, disengage; *sc.* nāvēs, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. 5

3. cōn-scendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus [scandō, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. 3

4. tardē, *adv.*, slowly, with delay. 1

6. ex-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; set forth, explain. \*

9. litus, -oris, *n.*, sea shore, beach, shore. \*

nēquāquam [nec, + *abl.* of *quisquam*], in no way, by no means, not at all. 2

settled. *tertiā vigiliā*: about midnight of the 26th of August. *solvit*: *sc.* nāvēs or ancorās.

3. *sequi*: the same wind which had prevented them from joining the fleet at Boulogne (see 22, 16) would be favorable now.

4. *ā . . . administrātum*, since these (*equitēs*) executed his orders too slowly to take advantage of the wind, which soon changed and kept the cavalry in port three days. *quibus*: for case cf. III, 4, 10; 2, 5; how does this differ from 13, 3?

6. *ibi*: probably a little southwest of Dover, where the chalk cliffs

came close to the water's edge.

10. *reliquae nāvēs*: including the eighteen transports, of whose detention Caesar knew nothing. *convenirent*: for mode cf. 13, 5.

11. *in ancoris*, at anchor.

13, 14. *ut, ut, ut*: the uses must be carefully distinguished. The two before *postulārent* are adverbs, *as*, and are ordinarily used with the indicative (cf. II, 22, 1; 7, 10; I, 22, 3; 16, 3); the subjunctive is due to *administrārentur* I. 16, see on I, 8, 7. The *ut* before *quae* is not to be translated and might be omitted from the text without affecting the sense, see on II, 15, 14.

celerem atque instabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad<sup>15</sup> tempus omnēs rēs ab iis administrārentur. His dīmīssis et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum datō signō et sublātis ancoris circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac p. ānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

24. At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō *The Britons attack the Romans on landing.* praemissō equitatū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiis subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in<sup>5</sup> altō cōstitui nōn poterant, militibus autem ignōtis locis, impeditis manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressis simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illi aut ex āridō aut

**in-stabilis**, -e, unsteady. 1  
**nūtus**, -ūs [nuō, nod], m., nod, sign, command. 3  
**mōtus**, -ūs [moveō, move], m., movement, motion; political movement, uprising. \*  
**15. celer**, -eris, -ere, swift quick speedy, fast. **motus**: sudden.  
**18. septem**, indecl. num. adj.

seven. 2

**2. essedārius**, -ī [essedā, a war chariot], m., a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. 4  
**6. ignōtus**, -a, -um, unknown, unfamiliar; base. 1  
**9. āridus**, -a, -um [āreō, be dry], dry; neut. as subst., dry land. 4

**16. administrārentur**: depends upon *monuit* with *ut* omitted as in 21, 18.

**17. aestum**: the tidal current turns west about 11:30 A. M., and runs west until 6:30 P. M.

**19. apertō . . . litore**: the low shore of Romney, about seven miles west of Dover.

**2. 3. quo genere**, a class (of troops) *which*; for position of *genre* cf. 1, 17; III, 21, 10.

**4. ēgredi**: for mode see on II, 4, 7.

**5. nisi** etc., *could not be moored except in deep water*.

**6. militibus** etc., *the soldiers, burdened by the great and heavy weight of their armor, their hands occupied, the ground unknown (to them), had to leap* etc. For case of *militibus* cf. III, 13, 24; II, 20, 1. **locis**: abl. abs. For the gerundive constr. cf. II, 20, 1. **oppressis**: constr. with *militibus*.

**7, 8. manibus**: abl. abs. **onere**: join with *oppressis*, which agrees with *militibus*. **in fluctibus**: the gradual shoaling of the water prevented the heavily laden ships from reaching shore. **cōsistendum**, *get a footing*.

**9. cum illi**, *while the enemy*.

10 paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membris expeditis nōtissimis locis audācter tēla conicerent et equos insuēfactos incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque hūius omnī-nō generis pūgnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritāte ac studiō, quō in pedestribus uti proeliis cōsuērunt, utēbantur.

*Caesar brings  
the war-ships  
into action.*

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiō et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriis  
5 nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiō genere tormentōrum permōti barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem  
10 retulērunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae

10. membrum, -ī, n., member of the body, limb. 2

nōtus, -a, -um, known; famous; notorious. \*

11. insuēfactus, -a, -um [insuēō, accustom + faciō], accustomed, well trained. 1

13. alacritās, -tātis [alacer, active], r., activity, spirit, eagerness. 3

5. funda, -ae, r., a sling. 5

sagitta, -ae, r., an arrow. 3

7. figurā, -ae [figō, form], r., form, shape, figure. 5

12. hūius etc., entirely unacquainted with this method of warfare. How different it was from their usual method of fighting may be seen from Int. 148, 149.

13. pūgnae: for case cf. III, 21, 10; I, 44, 30; 21, 10; 18, 8.

14. nōn utēbantur, did not exhibit. quō: refers both to alacritāte and studiō.

2. quārum . . . inūsitiō, whose form was less familiar, than that of the trading vessels.

4. latus apertum: the right flank.

5. fundis, sagittis: see Int. 99.

6. quae . . . fuit, these measures were of great advantage to our troops.

7. figurā = speciēs line 2. See Int. 179. rēmōrum mōtū: the Britons were not accustomed to the use of oars in propelling large vessels.

8, 9. ac . . . retulērunt, and then withdrew a very little. atque, and now, introducing a new and important incident.

10. quī, the man who: see Int. 120, 121. On the omission of the antecd. cf. 11, 16; III, 6, 1; II, 27, 2.

legiōnis. aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēveniret, 'Dēsilitē,' inquit, 'commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere: ego certē meum rei publicae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō.' Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortāti inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadis, ubi

*After a fierce contest the Britons are forced to flee.*

11. aquila, -ae, f., an eagle: a standard, (as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion). 4

obtestor, 1. [testor, witness], a., call to witness, appeal to, invoke. 1

12. fēliciter [fēlix, happy], happily, auspiciously. 1

ē-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [veniō, come], a., come or turn out, result, happen. 1

inquam, -is, -it, perf., inquit, de-fect. verb. say. \*

13. certē, adv. [compare certus], certainly; at least, at all events. 5  
meus, -a, -um, adj. pron. [cf. oblique cases of ego], of me, my, mine, my own. \*

17. dēdecus, -oris [decus, honor], n., dishonor, infamy. 1

2. firmiter [firmus, strong], strongly, steadily, firmly. 1

4. aggregō, (ad-), 1. [ad + grex, flock], a., unite in flock, gather, assemble, attach one's self to, join, attach. 2

13, 14. ego certē officium praestiterō, I, at least, shall have done my duty. The tense indicates that the resolute soldier thought of his duty as already done.

16. cohortāti inter sē, urging one another. For inter sē see on I, 1, 4.

17. tantum dēdecus: see especially Int. 124. admitterētur, not to commit so disgraceful an act: for mood cf. II, 5, 7; I, 17, 6.

18. ex proximīs nāvibus = ī, quī in proximīs nāvibus erant.

1. pūgnātum est: as in I, 26, 1.  
2, 3. firmiter insistere, to get a firm footing. signa subsequi, keep up with the standards, i. e., to keep their company formation. alius ... aliā etc., men from different ships. For the elliptical use of alius cf. II, 26, 4; 24, 10; 22, 4.

4. quibuscumque ... aggregābat, gathered about whatever standards they chanced upon. For a similar instance see II, 21, 13.

5, 6. nōtis ... vadis: and hence where it was safe to go. ubi cōn-



ex litore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspēxerant, incitātis equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circum-sistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant.

Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, 10 item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complēri iūssit et, quōs laborantēs cōspēxerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostri, simul in aridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequi potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insu- 15 lam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristinam fōrtūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

*The Britons  
make peace.*

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misē-runt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāset factūrōs polliciti sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātis Commius Atrebas vēnit, quem 5 suprà dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris

9. scapha, -ae, *f.*, small boat, skiff. 1

10. speculātōrius, -a, -um [*spec-  
ulor*, spy, reconnoitre], scouting,  
reconnoitering. 1

11. labōrō, 1. [*labor*, toil], *n.*,

toil, work hard; be anxious,  
troubled, or perplexed; labor;  
suffer, be hard pressed. \*

6. ōrātōr, -ōris [*ōrō*, speak], *m.*,  
one who speaks; speaker, orator;  
ambassador, envoy. 1

spēxerant, as often as they saw: the frequentative use of the plu-perf. aliquōs singulārēs: for the fact see l. 2.

7. plūrēs: i. e., hostēs.

8. latere apertō: see on 25, 4.

9. scaphās: carried upon the war-ships to facilitate communica-tion with the land or with the fleet.

10. speculātōria nāvigia: see Int. 175.

12. simul (=simul atque), as soon as.

13. longius, very far from the

sea-shore.

14, 15. cursum . . . potuerant: see on 23, 4, and on 23, 10. hōc ūnum: the pursuit by the cavalry was an important part of every regular engagement. Hence Caesar's apology for the deficiency here. As a matter of fact this was only the beginning of disaster to the expedition.

5. suprà: see 21, 14.

6, 7. hunc . . . comprehēde-rant, they had seized this man

mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant, tum proeliō factō remisērunt. In petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ūltrō<sup>10</sup> in continentem lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixerunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt,<sup>15</sup> principēsque undique convenire et sē civitatēsq̄ suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmatā post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprà dēmōstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēni ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum

*The ships conveying the cavalry are driven back by a storm.*

9. culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault, guilt. 2

imprudentia, -ae, f., want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. 3

10. ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus [in- + (g)nōscō, know], n., forgive, pardon. 5

14. longīnquus, -a, -um [longus, long], far off, distant, remote. 5

17. commendō, 1. [mandō, give into one's hands], a., entrust entirely or completely, entrust, commend, surrender. 1

4. lēnis, -e, gentle, mild, smooth. \*

(Commius) as soon as he landed, although he was carrying Caesar's dispatches in the capacity of an envoy. How Caesar regarded such an action in others is shown by his punishment of the Veneti, III, 16, 10.

8, 9. eius rei: the treatment of Commius. imprudentiam, ignorance of the rights of envoys, or of the fact that Commius was clothed with that function.

10. ignōscerētur, that they might be pardoned. How is an in-

transitive verb used in the passive. In what case would 'they' be if expressed here?

11. lēgātis missis: see 21, 10.

12. intulissent: for mode of. 22, 5; 16, 19. ignōscere imprudentiae, that he overlooked their indiscretion. For the case of. 17, 28.

1, 2. post... ventum: on August 30, the third day after his arrival, according to our reckoning.

cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suī cum periculō dēicerentur; quae  
 1 otamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complerentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum profectae continentem petierunt.

*The tide and storm shatter the rest of the fleet.*

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Oceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita unō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum  
 5 cūrāverat quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerariās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās afflictabat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabatur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctis reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancoris reliquisque armāmentis āmissis ad  
 1 onāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere,

1. lūna, -ae [for lūc-na fr. lūceō, give light], f., the moon. 3
6. dē-ligō, 1. [ligō, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. 4
7. auxiliōr, 1. [auxilium, aid],

a., give aid, help, assist, render assistance. 3

8. frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, a., break, shiver, smash; crush, subdue, discourage. 2

8. ad inferiōrem partem: i. e., the southern shore, west of the location of the Roman camp.

9. occāsum: for case see on I, 46, 2. māgnō . . . dēicerentur, were driven from their course to their great peril. suī: for case cf. II, 24, 12; 8, 2; I, 30, 4; 14, 8.

11. adversā nocte, in the face of the night; cf. II, 19, 23.

2. diēs, a time which. aestūs māximōs: the 'spring' tide, said to rise 19 feet at Dover.

3. nostris . . . incōgnitum: the Romans were best acquainted with the Mediterranean Sea, in which high tides do not occur. unō tempore: there was a conjunction

of a high tide and a storm.

5. in āridum subdūxerat: by means of tackle and rollers the ships were drawn up entirely beyond the reach of the ordinary waves. In the present instance, however, the unexpected 'spring tide' reached them.

6. quae . . . dēligatae, which were riding at anchor. It was not the custom to beach the transports.

7. administrandī, to manage the ships. auxiliandī, to render assistance from the shore.

9. ancoris: see Int. 172.

10. id quod: id is often prefixed to a relative to summarize its antecedent, if the antecedent is a clause.

tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs ērant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōstābat, hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

15

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis principēs Britan- *The Britons  
plan to renew  
hostilities.*  
niae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant,  
inter sē collocūtī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmā-  
nīs deesse intellexerent et paucitatem militum ex castrōrum  
exiguitate cōgnōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora, 5  
quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat,  
optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebelliōne factā frūmentō com-  
meātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere,  
quod hīs superātis aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem postea  
belli inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. 10  
Itaque rūsus coniūratiōne factā paulatim ex castrīs discē-  
dere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

11. perturbātiō, -ōnis [perturbō, disturb greatly], *v.*, disturbance, alarm, confusion. 1  
12. re-portō, *i.* [portō, carry],

- a.*, carry or bring back, convey. 2  
9. reditus, -ūs, *m.*, a going back, returning, return. 3

11. neque enim, etc: Caesar was in the very same situation that he had so carefully avoided at the Rhine. Cf. 17, 2 and note.

13-15. quod . . . erat, and because it was manifest to all that they must pass the winter in Gaul, supplies of grain had not been prepared in this place (Britain) for the winter.

2. convēnerant: see 27, 16.

3, 4. equitēs . . . deesse, that the Romans were without etc. Rōmānis: for case see on I, 48, 9.

7. optimum: pred. adj. in agreement with prohibēre and prō-

dūcere. factū: see on I, 3, 18. re-  
belliōne factā, to renew the war: trans. as coordinate with the infinitives. frūmentō: for case cf. 9, 4; III, 6, 10.

8. rem, operations. in hiemem prōdūcere: so as to prevent the Romans' return to the continent.

9. his superātis, if these (troops) were overpowered: abl. abs. aut, or at least.

11. rūsus: *i. e.*, returning to their former hostility.

12. suōs ex agrīs dēdūcere: see 27, 15.

*Caesar refits  
his fleet.*

31. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventum navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat.
- 5 Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferbat et quae gravissime afflictae erant nave, earum materiam atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur et quae ad eas res erant usui ex continentem comparari iubebat. Itaque, cum summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reli-
- 10 quis ut navigari commodum posset, effecit.

*The Britons  
attack the Ro-  
man foragers.*

32. Dum ea geruntur, legio ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspitione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra
- 5 ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Ca-
6. affligo (adf-), -ere, flix, flic-  
tus, strike, overthrow; damage,  
injure. 4  
aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze; any-

thing made of copper or bronze,  
coin, money: aes alienum, an-  
other's money, debt. 4

2. ex...eo, from the disaster to his ships and from the fact.

6. quae, etc., he employed the timber and metal of the ships which had been most disastrously shattered for fitting up the others. quae...

nave: for the position of the anteced. and agreement of relative cf. II, 19, 16; 19, 12; I, 40, 29; 22, 15. aere: iron was not much used in the constructions of ships. For instance, the beak was made of copper or bronze, and the nails likewise.

7. eas res: i. e., the repairing and equipment of the vessels.

8, 9. cum...administraretur, since the work (of refitting the fleet) was pushed forward by the soldiers with the utmost energy. summo studio: due in part to their eager

desire to leave (cf. 29, 11. perturbatio) and in part no doubt, to their loyalty to their commander (see Int. 53). reliquis: sc. navibus. Explain the four different ablatives in the sentence.

10. ut...posset, that the voyage could be readily made. For mode of posset cf. II, 11, 5; I, 13, 20. How is navigari used?

1. geruntur: for tense cf. 22, 2.

2. frumentatum: for the form and use cf. I, 37, 3; 31, 30; 16, 18. appellabatur: see Int. 88.

3. interposita, having arisen.

4. hominum, i. e., the natives. in agris remaneret: ostensibly engaged in labor in the fields close to the camp.

5. ventitaret: for signification see on II, 15, 13.

sarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsiliī, cohortēs, quae in stationibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquīs duās in stationem cohortēs<sup>10</sup> succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegre sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspi-<sup>15</sup> cātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlitue- rant: tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedis pūgnae. Prīmō *Their mode of fighting from war-chariots.* per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plē-

6. pulvis, -eris, m., dust. 1  
 11. cōnfestim [festinus, in haste], hastily, at once, immediately. \*  
 15. dē-metō, -ere, messuī, messus [metō, cut, mow], a., mow or cut down, reap, harvest. 1  
 16. dēlitiscō (ēscō), -ere, lituī [incept. of lateō, hide], n., hide away, skulk, lurk. 1  
 17. metō, -ere, messuī, a., cut, mow, reap. 1

19. essedum, -ī, n. (a Celtic word), a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. 5

circum-dō, dare, dedi, datus [dō, give], a., give or put around, encompass, surround. \*

2. per-equitō, 1. [equitō, ride], n., ride about, ride hither and thither, ride through or around. 2

6. quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, than ordinarily appeared.

8, 9. id, quod: for use of *id* see on 29, 10. quod erat, which was really the fact. aliquid... initum (esse) cōnsiliī, that some new plan etc. cōnsiliī: for the case cf. 1, 22.

12. paulō longius, a considerable distance.

18. incertīs ōrdinibus: owing

to the surprise, the ordinary formation in line of battle could not be made.

19. essedis: we have no precise and reliable description of the British war-chariot.

1. genus hōc est, this is the method.

2. perequitant: sc. the subject essedārī.

rumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuā-  
 5 vērunt, ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae  
 interim paulatim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collo-  
 cant, ut, si illi ā multitudīne hostium premantur, expeditum  
 ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabili-  
 tātem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō  
 10 et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in declivī ac praecipitī locō in-  
 citātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per  
 tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs  
 citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

*Caesar ree-  
cues his for-  
agers.*

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs novitāte  
 pūgnae tempore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium  
 tulit: namque ēius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex

4. turma, -ae, *f.*, troop or squad-  
 ron of cavalry, the tenth part of  
 an ala. 5

in-sinuō, 1. [sinuō, wind], *a. n.*,  
 wind or work one's way into;  
 work or introduce into; intro-  
 duce; penetrate. 1

5. auriga, -ae [aurea, headstall  
 + agō], *m.*, driver, charioteer. 1

6. currus, -ūs [curro, run], *m.*,  
 chariot, car; *fig.*, team. 1

8. receptus, -ūs [recipiō, with-  
 draw], *m.*, a place of withdrawal,  
 retreat, refuge, shelter. 3

stabilitās, -tātis [stabilis, steady],  
*f.*, steadiness, fixedness. 1

11. moderor, 1. [modus, limit],

*a.*, limit, mitigate, temper, con-  
 trol, guide, regulate. 2

flectō, -ere, flexi, flexus, *a. n.*,  
 bend, curve, turn, turn around,  
 direct in turning. 2

12. tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, beam, pole  
*(esp. of a chariot)*. 1

per-currō, -ere, cucurri, (curri),  
 cursus [currō, run], *a.*, run  
 through or over, traverse, pass  
 over or along. 1

13. cito, *adv.*, *comp.* citius and  
*superl.* citissimē [fr. citus],  
 quickly, speedily. 1

1. novitās, -tātis [novus, new],  
*f.*, newness, novelty, novel kind  
 or nature, strangeness. 1

4. cum insinuāvērunt: see on  
 III, 14, 17. turmās: see Int. 101.  
 Caesar had no cavalry with him;  
 but the description here given is a  
 general one.

7, 8. illi: those who alighted  
 from the chariots, the warriors. ex-  
 peditum receptum, a safe retreat.  
 habeant: for mode cf. II, 19, 22;  
 5, 18; I, 25, 10; 6, 13.

10. in... praecipitī, on slop-  
 ing and even precipitous ground.

11. brevi, quickly; lit., within  
 a short (time).

1-3. quibus... tulit, Caesar  
 brought aid, at a critical moment, to  
 our men who were confused by these  
 tactics because of the unusual nature  
 of the contest. rēbus; for case

timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitratūs suō sē  
 locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs  
 redūxit. Dum haec geruntur nostrīs omnibus occupātīs,  
 quī erant in agris reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt con-  
 tinuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs  
 continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbari  
 nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitatemque nostrō-  
 rum militum suis praedicāvērunt et, quanta prae-  
 dae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī  
 facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. His rēbus, celeriter māgnā multitudīne  
 peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vērunt.

*The Britons  
gather a large  
force and  
march against  
the Roman  
camp.*

35. Caesar etsī idem, quod superiōribus diē-  
 bus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs  
 pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs

*They are de-  
feated and  
flee.*

8. *continuus*, -a, -um [*contineō*, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. \*

12. *prae-dicō*, 1. a., n., speak before others; proclaim, state, declare. 5

*praeda*, -ae, [*praehendō* fr. *pre-*

*hendō*, seize], f., property seized in war; booty, plunder, spoil. \*

16. *peditātus*, -ūs, [*pedēs*, footman], m., foot soldiers, infantry. \*

3. *ef-fugiō*, -ere, *fūgī* [*fugiō*, flee], a., n., flee from or away, avoid, shun, escape. 3

(with *perturbātis*) cf. 17, 2. *novitātī*: for case cf. III, 21, 11; I, 18, 20; 14, 6. *tempore*: for the case cf. II, 4, 6; I, 50, 1; 16, 10.

4, 5. *ad...esse*, was unfavorable for provoking a contest etc.

7. *haec*: the attack of the Britons described in chap. 32.

8. *quī...reliquī*: mentioned in 32, 4. For the meaning and use of *reliquī* see on I, 12, 7. *discessērunt*: they also repaired to the rendezvous (cf. 30, 11).

9. *diēs*, several days in succession: for case of *diēs* cf. 4, 4. *tempestātēs*: how does this expression

differ from the similar one in III, 29, 8?

12, 13. *praedae faciendae*: as Caesar had left all his baggage behind (cf. 30, 5), the Britons were under a false impression. *suī liberandī* what kind of a pronoun is *sui*? Give its gender, number, and case. Is *liberandī* gerund or gerundive? Cf. 13, 14; III, 6, 3.

15. *his rēbus*, at the mention of etc.

1, 2. *idem fore*, that the same thing would occur.



circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebas, dē quō ante dictum est,  
 5 sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit.  
 Commiō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hos-  
 tēs ferre nōn potuerunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spa-  
 tiō secūtī, quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuerunt, com-  
 plūrēs ex iis occiderunt, deinde omnibus longē latēque  
 10 aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt.

*They give hos-  
 tages to Cae-  
 sar, who goes  
 back to Gaul.*

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad  
 Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. His Caesar nume-  
 rum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in  
 continentem addūcī iussit, quod propīnquā diē aequinoctiī  
 5 infirmis nāvibus hiemī nāvigatiōnem subiciendam nōn ex-  
 istimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post  
 mediam noctem nāvēs solvit: quae omnēs incolumēs ad con-  
 tinentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iis onerāriae duae eōdem,  
 quōs reliquī, portūs capere nōn potuerunt et paulō infā  
 10 delātae sunt.

3. duplicō, 1. [duō + plicō, fold],  
 a., double; increase. 2

4. aequinoctium, -ī [aequus,  
 equal + nox, night], n., the equi-  
 nox. 2

5. in-firmus, -a, -um [firmus,

strong], not strong, weak, feeble;  
 faint, discouraged. 4

9. infā, adv. and prep. with acc.  
 [for infera (sc. parte) from in-  
 ferus, below], below, beneath;  
 inferior, under; after. 4

4. ante: see 21, 18, 14. dic-  
 tum est, we have spoken. How is  
 the verb used here?

6. commiō proeliō: see Int.  
 148, 149. diūtius, for any length of  
 time.

7, 8. ac: for trans. see on III,  
 19, 10. quōs . . . potuerunt, (our  
 troops) following these as far as  
 their powers of running permitted.  
 cursū et viribus: for the figure of  
 speech cf. 18, 10, 11.

2. his, in their case; for the  
 case see on I, 28, 2.

3. ante: see 27, 8.

4. propīnqua diē aequinoctiī,

at the near approach of the equinox

5. infirmis . . . subiciendam  
 (esse), that with shattered ships his  
 (return) voyage should be exposed to  
 the (equinoctial) storm.

6. idōneam tempestātem, fa-  
 vorable weather.

8, 9. ex iis: see on II, 3, 2.  
 onerāriae etc. English order: duae  
 onerāriae nōn potuerunt eōdem por-  
 tūs capere, quōs reliquī (militēs)  
 cēperunt, et delātae sunt paulō infā.  
 et: in the same sense as ac 35, 6.  
 paulō infā: a short distance to  
 the south of the port of Boulogne.  
 For case of paulō cf. disbus 9, 5.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi militēs circiter trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adducti primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumsteterunt ac, si sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia sex convēnerunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō misit. Interim nostri militēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē pūgnāvērunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complūrēs ex his occiderunt. Postea vērō quam equitatus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectis armis terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iis legiōnibus, quās ex Britannia redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī rebellīōnem fēcerant, misit. Quī cum prop-

*The Morini revolt, attack Caesar's troops on landing, and are repulsed.*

*Labienus ravages their country.*

2. trecenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj. [tres-centum], three hundred. 3

6. orbis, -is, m., anything circular; orb, ring, circle: orbis terrarum, the world. 4

1. quibus ex nāvibus: i. e., *onerariae duae*, 36, 8.

2. castra: at Boulogne, which P. Sulpicius Rufus had had made (see 22, 21).

4. pācātōs: for the fact see 22, 10, 11. praedae: the booty which they supposed the Romans were bringing back.

5. magnō . . . numerō, with an *inconsiderable number*. For the figure of. III, 20, 8; 1, 15.

6, 7. orbe: a formation similar to the hollow square (see Int. 140), assumed in circumstances of great danger. The soldiers faced out from the center, and stood mainly on the defensive. hominum: i. e.,

of the Morini; join with *milia*.

8. omnem: i. e., all that were at the camp, comprising the detachment that Caesar had intended to take with him to Britain, and whatever horsemen Rufus had with him.

9. suis auxiliō, to the assistance of his troops. For cases cf. 20, 6.

12. postea . . . quam = *postea-quam*.

14. magnus numerus: see Int. 152:

2. iis legiōnibus: i. e., the 7th and 10th.

ter siccitatēs palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō  
 5 superiōre annō perfugiō fuerant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestā-  
 tem Labiēni pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lē-  
 gātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus  
 eōrum agrīs vāstātis, frūmentis succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs,  
 quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē  
 10 *The Romans are quartered for the winter among the Belgae.* ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omni-  
 um legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omni-  
 nō civitatēs ex Britannā obsidēs mīsērunt, reli-  
 quae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris  
 diērum vīginti supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

4. siccitās, -tātis [siccus, dry],  
 r., drought, dryness. 2

5. perfugium, -i [perfugiō, flee

for refuge], n., place of refuge,  
 shelter, asylum, refuge. 1

4, 5. quō sē reciperent, a place to retreat, lit., whither they might retreat. The clause is object of habērent; quō, is an adverb: see on II, 21, 7. quō perfugiō ... ūsī, a place of refuge which they had used the previous year. Our idiom would lead us to expect the genitive for perfugiō (i. e., perfugii, quō) in apposition with palūdum: for its position here cf. 24, 3; 1,

17, and for its case 11, 8. superiōre annō: for the fact see III, 28, 9.

12, 13. reliquae neglēxērunt: a good reason in Caesar's mind for the expedition of the following year. ex litteris, in accordance with Caesar's despatches to the Roman Senate. diērum vīginti supplicātiō: see on II, 35, 11, and notice the increased number of days.

## BOOK. V—INVASION OF BRITAIN. REVOLT OF THE EBURONES AND TREVERI.

---

Reasons of policy and desire for personal glory led Caesar to undertake an invasion of Britain in force. It would impress both Gaul and Britain with the power of Rome, and cut off from the malcontents on the mainland a source of strength. Determined to carry the project into execution the next year, he planned for the winter of 55-54 B. C. the construction of a great fleet of a peculiar pattern. Leaving this in competent hands, he repaired to Illyricum to settle the affairs of that section, which had been disturbed by the revolt of the Pirustae.

At the beginning of June, 54 B. C., he returned from the East to find his fleet in readiness. Orders were given to collect the armament at Portus Itius. Meanwhile Caesar took necessary precautions against disturbances in his absence.

The army concentrated at Portus Itius numbered eight legions and four thousand Gallic and Spanish cavalry. Three legions and two thousand cavalry, under command of Labienus, were to guard the coast and keep open the communications. Unfavorable winds retarded the fleet twenty-five days; finally the wind changed and orders were given to embark.

Weighing anchor about sunset on the 20th of July, according to Napoleon III., the fleet came about noon to the coast of Britain near Deal. Caesar proceeded inland, leaving ten cohorts and three hundred cavalry to guard the camp and fleet. At a distance of twelve miles the natives were found in position to dispute the passage of a small stream (the Stour). Defeated here, they withdrew into a well-fortified stronghold, from which they were soon driven. Here Caesar halted and fortified a camp. On the following morning came the news of the partial destruction of the fleet by a great storm in the preceding night. Caesar at once ordered a retreat and hurried ahead to the shore. Viewing the scene of disaster, he gave orders for hauling the vessels on shore and enclosing them in a retrenchment, which was done by hard labor in ten days. He then again took up his march into the interior.

The interval had been utilized by the Britons in concentrating their forces, and Caesar found them in large numbers under the command of Cassivellaunus. After meeting with one reverse, the British chieftain determined not to combat with the Romans but to annoy and retard them on the march and thus to prolong the campaign. Caesar, on the other hand, determined to bring it to a conclusion as quickly as possible, and to this end advanced toward the territory of Cassivellaunus. Reaching the river Thames, he signally defeated the Britons there, and soon after captured the stronghold of Cassivellaunus, who thereupon made his submission. All the principal tribes of southeast Britain followed his example. Caesar exacted hostages and fixed

annual tribute to be paid to the Roman state, and in the latter part of August returned to the continent. It can not be said that Caesar in any true sense subdued the island of Britain. His immediate object was doubtless gained in impressing the inhabitants with a due sense of respect for Roman military power. It may be that they were thenceforth less ready to strengthen the hands of Gallic revolt, but they were still substantially free.

In Gaul there had been a drought and a scanty harvest. Caesar in consequence of this fact found it necessary to divide his forces. This he did being careful, however, to keep them within what he thought was a safe distance of each other. The Gauls saw in this disposition of the Roman forces a chance to throw off the yoke of oppression. Sabinus and Cotta had been stationed with a legion and a half at Aduatuca among the Eburones. Ambiorix and Catuvolcus, the chiefs, instigated by the Treviran Indutiomarus, attacked the Roman camp, but were defeated. The wily Ambiorix then asked for a parley, and under the pretence of friendship induced the Romans to abandon their camp and march to join Labienus or Cicero, fifty miles away. He promised under oath not to hinder their passage. Scarcely had they gone two miles when they were attacked in a narrow defile, and after a desperate conflict prolonged from sunrise until the middle of the afternoon, were cut off almost to a man.

Before this great disaster became known, the Gauls suddenly attacked Cicero's camp among the Nervii. The besieged resisted with great energy and heroism, but their effective strength diminished daily and the outlook was becoming desperate. At last, after many attempts, a Nervian slave brought to Caesar news of his lieutenant's danger. Moving at once to the rescue, he defeated the Gauls and raised the siege. This success checked the projected general uprising, but the gravity of the situation led Caesar to forego his usual winter visit to Italy and remain in Gaul watching developments. The whole land was in a state of unrest; conspiracy was rife, and only the Aedui and the Remi were free from the infection of revolt.

In this outbreak Caesar received his first serious check, and while discipline and courage won the day for him, still his adversaries were encouraged by their partial success to make further trial in behalf of freedom. From this time the war took on a different aspect. Common hatred of Roman rule drew the people together and a measure of unity in effort became apparent.

---

#### REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.

FROUDE: Caesar, a Sketch, pp. 233-249. (Harper's ed.).

TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. VI. (Ancient Classics series).

MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. IV. pp. 313-321.

MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. I. pp. 384-398.

NAPOLÉON: Julius Caesar, vol. II. chap. VIII.

## COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus discē- *Naval prepara-*  
dēns ab hibernīs Caesar in Ītaliā, ut quotannis *tions for*  
facere cōsuērat, lēgātis imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, *the invasion*  
utī quam plūrimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēs- *of Britain.*  
que reficiendās cūrārent. Eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōn- 5  
strat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnēque paulō facit  
humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō mari utī cōsuēvimus, at-  
que id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aes-  
tuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat, ad onera āc  
multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs, 10

1. Domitius, -ī, m., a Roman gen-  
tile name: Lucius Domitius  
Ahenobarbus, consul in 54 B. C.,  
fell at Pharsalus, 48 B. C. 1

Ap., abbreviation for the praenōmen  
Appius. 1

Claudius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile

name: Appius Claudius, consul in  
54. B. C. 1

6. onerō, 1. [onus, load], a., load,  
burden, freight with anything;  
burden, oppress, overwhelm. 1  
subductiō, -ōnis [ducō, lead], r.,  
leading or drawing from beneath,  
drawing ashore, beaching. 1

1, 2. L. Domitiō, Ap. Clau-  
diō cōsulibus: in the year 54 B. C.  
discēdēns ab hibernīs: where was  
the army wintering? See IV, 38,  
10. in Ītaliā: see II, 35, 9.

4. veterēs: i. e., those that had  
formed the fleet of the expedition  
to Britain in 55 B. C.

6. ad, with a view to.

7. humiliōrēs: (sc. nāvēs) with  
greater breadth of beam and less  
depth of hold. quam quibus, than  
those which. nostrō mari: what  
sea?

8. propter . . . aestuum: an in-  
correct reason.

9. onera: baggage of all kinds:  
see Int. 118, 119.

quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs actuā-  
 riās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuuat.  
 Ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispāniā apportārī  
 iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāc-  
 tīs in Īllyricum proficiscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs fini-  
 timam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī  
 audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitatibus militēs imperat cer-  
 tumque in locum convenīre iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae  
 lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūbli-  
 cō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōstrant omnibus  
 ratiōnibus dē iniūriis satisfacere. Perceptā ōratiōne eōrum  
 Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet;  
 nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitatē presecūtūrum dēmōn-  
 strat. Iis ad diem adductīs ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter  
 cīvitatēs dat, quī litem aestiment poenamque cōstituant.

15 *He goes to Il-  
lyricum and  
receives the  
submission  
of the Pi-  
rustae.*

11. *actuārius, -a, -um* [agō, set in motion], pertaining to motion; swift sailing: *nāvis* or *nāvigium*, see Int. 175. 1  
 12. *humilitās, -tātis* [humilis, low], *r.*, lowness, shallowness; humility, weakness. 2  
 13. *apportō* (ad-), 1. [portō, carry], *a.*, carry, bring, or convey to. 1  
 14. *per-agō -ere, ēgī, āctus* [agō], *a.*, drive or carry through; execute, accomplish, complete. 4

15. *Pīrūstae, -ārum, m.*, a people in *Illyricum*. 2  
 16. *incursiō, -ōnis*, [in-currō, run against], *r.*, onset; incursion, invasion, inroad, attack. 4  
 21. *percipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus* [capiō, take], *a.*, take fully, acquire; perceive, hear, learn, bear through. 4  
 24. *arbitēr, -trī, m.*, a bystander: a judge, umpire, arbitrator. 1  
 25. *lis, litis, f.*, strife, quarrel, lawsuit; damages. 1

11. *reliquīs maribus*: i. e., the different parts of the Mediterranean Sea. *actuāriās*: see Int. 175.

12. *ad rem*: i. e., for being fitted with oars. *humilitās*: the low bulwarks making it easier to use oars and to load and unload the ships.

13. *ex Hispāniā*: from the time of its conquest, Spain furnished the Romans with materials for naval equipment, such as iron, copper, the esparto grass (*spartum*),

for cables etc.

14. *conventibus*: the proconsular courts, over which it was the duty of Caesar to preside.

16. *partem*: i. e., *Illyricum*.

19. *eārum rērum* = *incursiōnum*.

20, 21. *omnibus ratiōnibus*, in every way. i. e., by giving hostages, and paying the damages and a fine.

25. *dat, appoints*. *quī aestiment, to assess*.

2. Hīs cōfectīs rēbus conventibusque peractīs in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circuitīs omnibus hibernīs singulārī militum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter sexcentās eius generis, cūius suprā dē- 5 mōnstrāvimus, nāvēs et longās xxviii invēnit instrūctās neque multum abesse ab eō, quā paucīs diēbus dēducī possint. Col- laudātīs militibus atque iis, quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit, ostendit atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum<sup>10</sup> esse cōgnōverat, circiter milium passuum xxx ā continentī: huic rei quod satis esse vīsum est militum reliquit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expeditīs iiii et equitibus dccc in finēs Trēverōrum proficiscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō parēbant Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dicē-<sup>15</sup> bantur.

3. Haec civitās longē plūrimū tōtīus Galliae equitātū valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut

7. collaudō (conl-), 1. [laudō, praise], praise highly or in set terms, eulogize. 4

9. Itius, -a, -um, sc. portus, a port of the Morini, whence Caesar

embarked for Britain, perhaps Boulogne, or Witsand. 2.

10. commodus, -a, -um [modus, measure], in full measure; complete; suitable, favorable. 5

2. ad exercitum: still in winter quarters: cf. IV, 38, 10.

3. circuitis etc., having made the rounds of etc.

4, 5. in...inopiā: a concessive phrase, trans. although there was etc.

6, 7. neque...possint, and that they were not far from being ready to be launched.

11. cōgnōverat: by his experience of the previous year.

12. quod...militum, what seemed to be a sufficient force. For the expression cf. IV, 22, 14; III, 16, 5.

13. expeditis: see Int. 119.

14. concilia: see on IV, 6, 9. Attendance upon these councils was made a test of fealty to Rome.

1. haec civitās: i. e., the Treveri. equitātū: for case cf. III, 17, 12 (rēbus); 8, 4; II, 17, 14.

Caesar returns to Gaul and goes to the country of the Treveri.



- The rival chiefs, Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, seek his support.*
- suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā civitāte duo dē principātū inter sē contendēbant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix; ē quibus alter, simulatque dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amicitia populi Rōmāni dēfectūrōs cōfirmāvit quaeque in Trēveris gererentur ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitātum peditātumque cōgere iisue, qui
- oper aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingentī māgnitūdine per mediōs finēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed posteāquam nōnnūllī principēs ex eā civitāte et familiāritāte Cingetorigis adducti et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterriti ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suis privātim rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam civitātī cōsulere nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur,
3. tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, a., touch, reach, border on. 1
4. Indutiomarus, -ī, m., a chief of the Treveri.
5. Cingetorix, -igis, m., a Treveran chieftain, rival of Indutiomarus. \*
10. Arduenna, -ae, f., the Ardennes, a vast forest of northeast Gaul. 4
14. familiāritās, -tātis [familiaris, of the family, intimate], f., familiar intercourse, intimacy. 1
16. quoniam, adv. [quom = cum + iam, now], when now, since, whereas. \*
- cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -ltus, a., n., go to for advice, take counsel, consult: with dat., take counsel for, study the interests of, promote the welfare of. \*

3. suprā: in III, 11, 2. Rhēnum tangit: this proximity to the Germans rendered the Treveri more restless and dangerous.

4. Indutiomarus was the father-in-law of Cingetorix.

5. alter, the latter. simulatque, as soon as.

6. suōs, his party.

10. Arduennam: it was the largest of the Gallic forests, extending over the most of the country between the Rhine, Meuse, and Moselle. It is the seat of the Belgian

iron mines.

11. māgnitūdine: for case cf. IV, 1, 20; III, 4, 9; II, 6, 11.

12. initium: i. e., the northern frontier.

13. principēs: probably partisans of Indutiomarus, but personal friends of Cingetorix.

16. civitātī: for case cf. IV, 27, 12; III, 14, 3; II, 16, 6 (his); I, 18, 19.

17. nē: for meaning after verbs of fearing cf. II, 26, 5; I, 27, 10; 19, 11.

līgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: Sēsē idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitatē in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter<sup>20</sup> imprudentiam lāberetur: itaque esse cīvitatē in suā potestātē, sēsēque, sī Caesar permetteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, suās cīvitatisque fōrtūnās eius fidei permīssūrum.

4. Caesar, etsi intellegēbat, quā dē causā ea <sup>Caesar de-  
cides to favor  
Cingetorix.</sup> dicerentur, quaeque eum rēs ab institūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēveris cōsumere cōgeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rēbus comparātis, Indutiomarum ad sē cum ducentis obsidibus venīre iussit. His <sup>5</sup> adductis, in iis filiō propinquisque eius omnibus, quōs nōminātīm ēvocāverat, cōsolātus Indutiomarum hortātusque est, uti in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sēcūius principibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātis hōs singillatim Cingetorigi conciliāvit, quod cum meritō eius ā sē fieri intellegēbat, tum magni<sup>10</sup>

19. idcirco, *adv.* [circa, round about], on that (this) account, therefore. 1

21. lābor, -ī, lapsus sum, *n.*,

slide, slip; fall in or away; go wrong; fail, be disappointed in. 2

4. Britannicus, -a, -um [Britannia], of Britain, British. 1

19. quō: for use cf. III, 16, 9; II, 27, 6; I, 14, 14.

20, 21. propter imprudentiam: as in IV, 27, 9. nē, *for fear that*. itaque... potestātē, *therefore* (since he had remained at home) *the whole state was in his power*, and he alone had the right to treat with Caesar.

2. quae rēs: the submission of the chiefs to Caesar (cf. 3, 13). cōnsiliō: i. e., *bellum parare* (cf. 3, 12).

3. aestātem: it was already June.

6. filiō, propinquis: for case cf. I, 16, 12.

8. principibus: those who had held out with Indutiomarus.

9. hōs... conciliāvit: thus using his influence to secure for Cingetorix the power he coveted.

10, 11. quod etc., *and he not only knew that he was doing this* (active for passive) *in accordance with his* (Cingetorix's) *deserts, but also thought etc.* cum... tum: force when used correlatively? meritō: for case cf. IV, 2, 10; III, 23, 13; II, 13, 12. magni interesse, *that it was of great importance*. magni: for case cf. IV, 21, 17; with interesse the degree is expressed as here, or by an adverb as in II, 5, 5.

interesse arbitrābātur ēius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plū-  
rimum valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspē-  
xisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus, suam grātiam  
inter suōs minuī, et quī iam ante inimicō in nōs animō fuis-

15 set, multō gravius hōc dolore exārsit.

*Caesar's fleet  
and troops as-  
semble at  
Portus Itius.*

5. Hīs rēbus cōstitutīs Caesar ad portum  
Itium cum legiōnibus pervēnit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX  
nāvēs, quae in Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cur-  
sum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae,  
5 revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus  
rēbus instrūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae  
convenit numerō milium quattuor principēsque ex omnibus  
cīvitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem per-  
spēxerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum  
10 dūcere dēcrēverat, quod cum ipse abesset mōtum Galliae  
verēbātur.

*Treachery of  
Dumnorix.*

6. Erat unā cum cēteris Dumnorix Aeduus, dē  
quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primīs  
cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum

15. ex-ārdēscō, -ere, ārsī, ārsus  
[incho. of ārdēō, burn], set on  
fire; be inflamed; be excited. 1

3. Meldī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic peo-  
ple on the Marne about modern  
Meaux. 1

12. cūius . . . perspēxisset,  
since he had etc. For trans. and  
mode cf. IV, 21, 22; II, 15, 14.

13. id . . . graviter, was great-  
ly vexed at this course; explained  
by the clause suam . . . minuī.

14. quī . . . fuisset, and al-  
though he had been; quī = cum is  
with concessive (as well as causal)  
force takes the subjunctive.

3, 4. in Meldīs: across the  
Marne from the territory of the  
Suessiones. The vessels would fol-  
low the Marne and Seine down to

the mouth of the latter: see on 1, 4.  
tempestāte rēiectās: while sail-  
ing from the mouth of the Seine to  
Boulogne. cursum tenēre: as in  
IV, 26, 14. eōdem: i. e., to the  
mouth of the Seine.

7. numerō: abl. of specification,  
in its common pleonastic use with  
numerals: cf. I, 49, 8; 5, 4. mili-  
um: join with equitātus, for case  
cf. II, 30, 4; 5, 21; I, 38, 1; 5, 8.

2. ante: see I, 3, 14.

3, 4. cupidum . . . auctōritā-  
tis: see I, 18, 8. rērum, imperiū:

imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallōs auctoritatis cōgnōverat. Accēdebat hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnū civitātis dēferri; quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandi aut dēprēcandi causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus primō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur,<sup>10</sup> partim quod insuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Posteaquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vidit, omnī spē impetrandi adēptā principēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārique coepit, utī in continentī remanērent: metū territāre: nōn sine causā fierī,<sup>15</sup> ut Gallia omnī nōbilitate spoliārētur; id esse cōsiliū Cae-

7. dictum, -ī, n., a saying, remark; command. 5

9. hospes, -itis, m., r., entertainer, host; guest, sojourner, stranger; hereditary or family friend. 3

11. insuētus, -a, -um [suēscō, accustom], unaccustomed, unused, unfamiliar with. 2

12. religiō, -ōnis [ligō, bind], r., reverence for the gods, piety, religion; religious matters (rites, scruples, feelings, etc.). 5

obstinātē, adv., [obstinātus, re-

solved], firmly, inflexibly, resolutely. 1

13. adimō, -ere, ēmi, ēemptus [emō, take], a., take away to one's disadvantage, remove. 2

14. sē-vocō, 1. [vocō, call], a., call aside or apart; separate, withdraw. 1

15. territō, -āre, [freq. of terreō, frighten], a., keep frightening, alarm. 4

16. spoliō, 1. [spolium], rob, despoil, plunder. 2

for case cf. IV, 24, 13; II, 21, 4; I, 44, 80; 21, 10. animi, auctoritātis: for case cf. IV, 2, 7; II, 30, 11; 27, 12; 15, 13.

5. accēdebat hūc, and besides.

6, 7. quod dictum, this statement. graviter ferēbant: because they had, and preferred, a democratic form of government with an annual magistracy: see on rēgnū, IV, 12, 14.

8. audēbant: because of their fear of Dumnorix, who was power-

ful and apparently unscrupulous.

11, 12. nāvigandī: gerund or gerundive? For case cf. imperiī l.

4. timēret: for mode cf. IV, 27, 12; 16, 19; II, 11, 17; I, 23, 9. diceret: a peculiar idiom deserving careful study, see A. 321, Note 2, ad fin.; G. 541, N. 3; H. 516, II, 1; B. 286 1 a.

15. territāre: complementary with coepit supplied from l. 14. So also interpōnere and pōscere, below, while fierī l. 15 and esse l. 16 are in indirect discourse.

saris, ut quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūsiūrandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae  
2 ointellēxissent, commūnī cōsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

*He flees, is overtaken and killed.*

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitatī Aeduae dignitātis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspici-  
5 endum, nē quid sibi āc reipūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōsuēvit, dabat operam, ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sēcūius omnia ēius cōn-  
10 silia cōgnōsceret: tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem militēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet. At omnium impeditis animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā castrīs insciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā

4. āmentia, -ae [mēns, mind],  
F., bewilderment of mind, madness, folly. 2

6. commoror, 1. [moror, tarry],  
n.. tarry, wait, stop. 2  
Cōrus, -ī, m., the northwest wind. 1  
8. flō, 1. a., blow. 1

18. trāductōs necāret, *take over and put to death*. fidem interpōnere, *he pledged his own word*. reliquīs: possibly the chiefs whom Caesar was leaving behind. These Dumnorix tries to draw from their allegiance.

1-3. quod . . . tribuēbat . . . statuēbat: since the Aedui were so influential, the plots of Dumnorix to draw them from their friendly attitude toward Rome and Caesar, were all the more dangerous.

7. māgnam partem: "Accord-

ingly when the hydraulic windmills came into use in Holland, as they could not be turned to the varying winds, they were built so that the plane of the sails faced the northwest" (Moberly).

10. militēs = *peditēs*.

11, 12. impeditis, *occupied*. cum equitibus Aeduōrum: Dumnorix may have been their commander, as on a former occasion (I, 18 28, 29).

14. omnibus postpositis, *disregarding everything else*.

Caesar intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis māgnam partem equitatūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit<sup>15</sup> retrahique imperat; sī vim faciat neque pareat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sālō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut<sup>20</sup> erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt: at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

8. His rēbus gestis Labiēnō in continentī cum <sup>Caesar sails to Britain.</sup> tribus legiōnibus et equitum milibus duōbus relicto, ut portūs tuērētur et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō

14. post-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], *a.*, place behind, postpone; neglect, disregard.

16. re-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus [trahō, drag], drag or bring back.

17. sāsus, -a, -um, sound in body or mind, discreet, sensible.

19. implōrō, 1. [plōrō, call out]. *a.*, beseech, entreat, implore.

20. clāmitō, 1. [freq. of clāmō, call out], *a.*, *n.*, call out loudly or repeatedly, exclaim.

16. interficī iubet: Dumnorix by his act of desertion had rendered himself liable to the penalty of death.

17. nihil prō sālō, *nothing rational.*

19. manū: *i. e.*, with the weapons in his hands.

20. liberum . . . cīvitātis: the assertion is as creditable to the free spirit of Dumnorix as the record of it here is to Caesar's candor: see Int. 47.

21. erat imperātum: Caesar does not shrink from the responsibility of an act which doubtless seemed to him both just and expedient. interficiunt: this deed must have made a deep impression upon the Gallic nobles, who saw

one of their order struck down for asserting his liberty of action. "Everyone who was conscious of similar sentiments—and they formed the great majority—saw in that catastrophe the picture of what was in store for himself" (Momm. vol. IV, p. 816).

2, 3. portūs tuērētur: as Sulpicius Rufus had done the year before; see IV, 22, 21. rem frūmentāriam: to be forwarded to Britain as needed. quaeque etc.: Caesar feared the effect of the death of Dumnorix.

4, 5. prō rē, *according to the occasion and circumstances.* quīnque legiōnibus: the 7th is the only one especially mentioned. About

5 *rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equi-*  
*tum, quem in continentī reliquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs*  
*solvit et lēnī Āfricō prōvēctus mediā circiter nocte ventō in-*  
*termiſsō cursum nōn tenuit et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce*  
*sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspēxit. Tum rūsusaes-*  
 10 *tūs commūtatiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem*  
*insulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte*  
*cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudan-*  
*da, quī vēctōriis gravibusque nāvigiis nōn intermiſsō rēmi-*  
*gandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequāunt. Acces-*  
 15 *sum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō ferē tem-*  
*pore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut postea Caesar*  
*ex captivīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent,*

7. *Āfricus, -a, -um, of Africa:*  
*ventus, the southwest wind*  
*(blowing from Africa to Italy). 1*

*prō-vehō, -ere, vēxi, vēctus, car-*  
*ry forward.—Usually passive:*  
*move forward, advance, set sail. 1*

11. *ēgressus, -ūs [gradior, go],*  
*m., going forth, landing. 1*

12. *laudō, 1. [laus, praise], a.,*

*praise, commend. 1*

13. *vēctōrius, -a, -um [vehō,*  
*carry], for carrying: nāvigia,*  
*transport-ships. 1*

*rēmigō, -āre [rēmus, oar + agō],*  
*a., propel the oar; row. 1*

15. *meridiānus, -a, -um [meri-*  
*diēs, midday], of midday: tem-*  
*pūs, noon. 1*

how large a force did Caesar have?  
 See Int. 86. *parī numerō, and a*  
*force of cavalry equal (to that)*  
*which, etc.*

6, 7. *ad sōlis occāsum:* proba-  
 bly on the 20th of July. *nāvēs*  
*solvit, set sail. From what port?*

8. *cursum:* northwest. *lon-*  
*gius:* past the place on the coast  
 where Caesar wished to land. *aes-*  
*tū:* the tide was running toward  
 the northeast. *ortā lūce, at day-*  
*break: abl. abs. expressing time cf.*  
*II, 35, 6, 7.*

10. *eam partem:* probably  
 between Nalmer and Deal, about

seven miles northeast of Dover.  
 Follow on the map the route as de-  
 scribed in the text.

11. *superiōre aestāte:* on the  
 first expedition of IV, 23.

13. *vēctōriis . . . nāvigiis, al-*  
*though the transports were heavily*  
*laden. For trans. cf. II, 12, 7.*  
*vēctōriis:* these were purposely  
 built very broad of beam (cf. I, 10  
 and Int. 75), and were naturally  
 much slower than the narrow war-  
 ships.

14, 15. *accessum est:* trans.  
 by personal constr.

multitudine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinis privātisque, quās suī quisque commodi causā fecerat, amplius octingentae unō erant visae tempore, ā litore discesserant ac sē in 20  
superiōra loca abdiderant.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castris idō- *Caesar encounters the natives for the first time and compels them to flee.*  
neō captō, ubi ex captivīs cōgnōvit, quō in locō  
hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare  
relictis et equitibus CCC, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē ter-  
tiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod 5  
in litore mollī atque apertō deligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat,  
et praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctū prō-  
gressus mīlia passuum circiter XII hostium cōpiās cōspicātus  
est. Illi equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressi ex locō  
superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepē- 10  
runt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdiderunt locum  
nancitī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum, quem domesticī  
bellī, ut vidēbantur, causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crē-  
bris arboribus succisīs omnēs introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsī

18. annōtinus, -a, -um [annus, year], of last year, a year old. 1

7. Atrius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Quintius Atrius, an officer in Caesar's army. 1

14. introitus, -ūs [intrō-eō, go within], m., going within, entrance, access. 1

praeclūdō, -ere, clūdī, clūsus [claudō, close], a., close or shut in front, shut or cut off. 1

17, 18. eō: to the vicinity of the landing place. privātis: belonging to wealthy officers or volunteers, or possibly to traders.

21. superiōra loca: i. e., the heights some twelve miles inland. For the case cf. I, 12, 12.

1. locō: probably close to the sea-shore.

3. cohortibus x: a guard composed of a contingent of two co-

horts from each of the five legions

5, 6. eō minus veritus: Caesar did not heed the lesson of his previous experience; cf. IV, 29. mollī atque apertō: cf. IV, 23, 19, apertō ac planō.

7. et connects contendit (l. 5) and praefecit.

9. essedis: see on IV, 32, 19.

10. proelium committere: after the cavalry had forced the passage of the stream.



15 ex silvis rārī prōpugnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At milites legōnis septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvis expulērunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit, et quod loci nātūram 20 ignōrābat, et quod magnā parte diēi consūptā mūnitiōni castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

*A storm damages the fleet.*

10. Postridiē eius diēi māne tripertitō milites equitēsque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eōs, qui fūgerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris prōgressis, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem 5 vērērunt, qui nūntiārent superiōre noctē māximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in litus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis pati possent: itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnū esse incommodum acceptum.

1. tripertitō, *adv.*, [tripertitus] in or into three parts. 3

2. expeditiō, -ōnis, *v.*, an enterprise against the enemy, expedition.

3. aliquantus, -a, -um [alius +

quantus, how much], some; considerable; in *neut. as subst. with part. gen.*, a good deal, not a little: in *abl. as adv.*, in some degree, considerably. 2

15. rārī, in small detachments. ingredi: for the mode cf. IV, 24, 4; II, 4, 7.

16, 17. legiōnis septimae: this legion had met with a reverse on the previous expedition (see IV, 32, 12-19.) and was no doubt eager to try conclusions with the foe again. testūdine factā: see Int. 155. aggere: a roughly-made mound of earth, trees, etc., high enough to permit the soldiers to reach the top of the breastwork. For a similar instance see III, 25, 5, and note.

20, 21. mūnitiōni castrōrum: see Int. 180-181. tempus relin- qui: at what time of day did the

Romans usually begin building the camp?

1. tripertitō: in three detachments.

2. expeditiōnem: the troops were in light marching order (*expediti*).

3, 4. iam extrēmī: the rear guard of the Romans was still in sight of the camp.

5. nūntiārent: for mode cf. IV, 11, 17; III, 11, 11.

7. subsisterent, hold firm. For mode cf. I, 40, 5 (*putārent*).

8. itaque: i. e., in consequence of the inability of the seamen to control their vessels.

11. His rēbus cōgnītis Caesar legiōnēs equitā- *It is hastily repaired and beached at the camp.*  
 tumque revocārī atque itinere dēsistere iubet, ipse  
 ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiis litterisque  
 cōgnōverat, cōram perspicīt, sic ut amīssis circiter XL nāvibus  
 reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidērentur. Ita- 5  
 que ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arces-  
 sī iubet; Labiēnō scribīt, ut, quam plūrimās possit, iīs legiōni-  
 bus, quae sint apud eum, nāvēs instituat. Ipse, etsi rēs erat  
 multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit  
 omnēs nāvēs subducī et cum castris unā mūnitiōne coniungī. 10  
 In his rēbus circiterdiēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnis quidem  
 temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Subductis nāvi-  
 bus castrisque ēgregiē mūnītis eādem cōpiās, quās ante,  
 praesidiō nāvibus reliquit, ipse eōdem, unde redierat, pro-  
 ficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique *The Britons unite under Cassivellanus.* 15  
 in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant  
 summā imperiū bellique administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō per-

4. cōram, adv., [cum + ōs, face],  
 face to face, in person. 3

6. faber, fabrī, (gen. pl. -brūm),  
 m., a workman in wood, iron,  
 brass, marble, etc., a smith, car-  
 penter, mechanic. In the Roman

army the fabrī or engineers were a  
 separate corps under the praefec-  
 tus fabrūm.

11. nocturnus, -a, -um [nox,  
 night], of or belonging to the  
 night, nocturnal, by night. \*

2. revocārī: from the pursuit.

6. fabrōs: as the engineering  
 corps (see Int. 102) was distinct  
 from the legion, it is clear from  
 the expression *ex legiōnibus dēligit*  
 that Caesar called for soldiers who  
 understood carpentry to aid in the  
 work.

10. subducī: see on IV, 29, 5.  
 castris: see on 9, 1. This was a  
*castra nāvālia*, designed to keep  
 open his communications by water  
 with his base of supplies at *Portus*  
*Itius*. unā mūnitiōne: it has been  
 estimated that the eight hundred

vessels, if ranged in four lines,  
 would occupy a strip of beach a  
 mile long and three hundred and  
 fifty feet wide. To enclose the  
 space in addition to that required  
 for five legions, two thousand horse-  
 men, the ships' crews and camp fol-  
 lowers, must have required fortifi-  
 cations of great extent.

14. eōdem: i. e., the camping-  
 place on the Stour, near which the  
 British stronghold was: cf. 9, 11 lo-  
 cum, and 21 castrōrum.

17. summā . . . administrandī,  
*the chief command and direction of*  
*the war.*

missā Cassivellaunō; cūius finēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flū-  
men dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter milia  
20 passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitā-  
tibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū  
permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefecerant.

*Britain: its  
people, re-  
sources, pro-  
ductions, cli-  
mate.*

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur,  
quōs nātōs in insulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dicunt,  
maritima pars ab iis, quī praedae ac bellī inferen-  
dī causā ex Belgiō trāsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē iis nōminibus  
5 cīvitātum appellantur, quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnē-  
runt) et bellō illātō ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coe-  
pērunt. Hominum est infinīta multitudō crēberrimaque

18. Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., Cas-  
wallon, the commander-in-chief of  
the Britons against Caesar. \*

19. Tamesis, -is, m., the Thames. 2

1. interior, -ius, comp. adj. (sup.  
intimus) [prep. intrā, within],  
inner, interior: in pl. as subst.,  
those in the interior. 5

4. Belgium, -ī, n., the country of  
the Belgians. 2

6. colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, till,  
cultivate; inhabit, dwell; honor,  
cherish; observe. 2

7. in-finitus, -a, -um [finis, end,  
limit], endless, unlimited, bound-  
less, countless. 3

18. Cassivellaunō: the king of  
the Cassi, a people living in a dis-  
trict comprised in the present coun-  
ties of Hertford, Bedford and Buck-  
ingham.

21. LXXX: Caesar naturally  
gives the distance by the route fol-  
lowed from his landing place to the  
ford where he crossed the Thames.  
huic . . . intercesserant, formerly  
incessant wars had occurred between  
him and the other tribes.

In this and the next two chapters  
Caesar gives such items of infor-  
mation about Britain as he could  
gather from his own observation  
and the sources of knowledge open  
to him. His main purpose was to  
satisfy the lively curiosity felt by  
the Roman public with reference

to this unknown land.

2. quōs . . . dicunt, whose birth  
upon the island itself is handed down,  
they say, by tradition. Britain was  
very early settled by Celts from the  
continent, who were preceded by an  
Iberian race. Other barbarous peo-  
ples in lieu of historical data have  
adopted the same theory in regard  
to their own origin.

4. ex Belgiō: the ground for  
this statement was the existence in  
Britain of tribes called Atrebates.  
Belgae, etc.

5. quibus . . . pervēnērunt, from  
which they have descended and mig-  
rated hither. cīvitātibus: on the  
repetition of the antecedent cf. IV,  
7, 2; II, 18, 1.

7. hominum, of the population.

aedificia ferē Gallicis cōnsimilia, pecorum māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut nummō aureō aut tāleis ferreis ad certum pondus exāminātis prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum<sup>10</sup> album in mediterrāneis regiōnibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperā-<sup>15</sup> tiōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frigoribus.

9. nummus, -ī, m., a piece of money, coin. 2  
 aureus, -a, -um [aurum, gold], of gold, gold, golden. 1  
 tālea, -ae, f., rod, bar. 1  
 10. exāminō, 1. [exāmen, tongue of a balance], a., weigh, balance. 1  
 plumbum, -ī, n., lead: sc. album, tin. 1  
 11. albus, -a, -um, white. 1  
 mediterrāneus, -a, -um, [medius, in the middle+terra], midland, inland, interior. 1  
 13. fāgus, -ī, f., a beech-tree beech (timber). 1  
 abīēs, -etis, f., the silver fir, fir-tree. 1  
 14. lepus, -oris, m., a hare. 1

- gallina, -ae [gallus, a cock], f., a hen. 1  
 ānser, -eris [cf. Engl. gander], m., a goose. 1  
 gustō, 1. a., a taste, partake of, eat. 1  
 fās, indecl. [inf. fāri, to speak], n., divine sanction or law, opp. to iūs, human law; right. 4  
 15. voluptās, -tātis [volō wish], f., what one wishes; pleasure, delight, enjoyment, satisfaction. 2  
 temperātus, -a, -um [p. p. of temperō, temper], moderate, temperate, mild. 1  
 16. remissus, -a, -um [p. p. of remittō, send back, relax], relaxed, not rigid, gentle, mild. 1

8. Gallicis: the houses of the Gauls, it is said, were large, with high steep roofs covered with thatch; in shape they were like the Indian wigwam, but were substantially built of timbers.

9. ūtuntur . . . aureō: this statement has been verified by the finding of British gold coins antedating Caesar's time. taleis ferreis, iron qars, used as coins.

10, 11. plumbum album: the Phoenicians obtained tin from the Scilly Islands, off Cornwall, as early as the 11th century B. C. mediterrāneis regiōnibus: i. e., Cornwall. Caesar's mistake was natural, he

thinking only of the southeastern coast, from which the western parts of the island would seem to be inland.

12. exigua cōpia and for this reason, perhaps, used as money. aere: copper is now found in quantity in Cornwall and Devon, though the mines were not vigorously worked until the last century. importātō, probably from Sweden.

13. fāgum atque abietem: another mistake on Caesar's part. They are both said to be indigenous in Britain.

15. animi . . . causa, for diversion, as pets.

*Its form and size.*

13. *Insula nātūrā triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem spēctat. Hōc pertinet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidio minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trāsmīssūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est insula, quae appellātur Mona: complūrēs praeterea minōrēs subiectae insulae exīstimantur; dē quibus insulis nōnnūllī scripsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmā esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus,*

1. *triquetrus, -a, -um* [tri- + (quatus =) quartus], with three corners, triangular. 1

2. *angulus, -i, m.,* corner, angle. 2

3. *Cantium, -i, n.,* a district in the southeast of England, now Kent. 3

4. *merīdiēs, -ēi* [for medidiēs = medius + diēs], m., midday, noon; the south. \*

6. *occidō, -ere, cidi, cāsus,* fall or go down; set; be slain.

*Hibernia, -ae, f.,* Ireland.

7. *dīmidius, -a, -um* [medius], divided in the middle, halved,

half: in neut. as subst., a half. 2

8. *trāsmīssus, -ūs* [trāns-mittō], m., sending across, passing over, passage. 1

9. *Mona, -ae, f.,* (1) in ancient writers usually the island Anglesey; (2) in Caesar probably the Isle of Man. 1

11. *brūma, -ae* for *brevima = brevissima*, f., the shortest day, i. e., the winter solstice; the winter. 1

12. *percontātiō, -ōnis* [percontor, inquire], f., inquiring, asking; question, inquiry. 2

3. *ferē omnēs*: possibly the Veneti brought their cargoes of tin across from Cornwall to the mouth of the Loire: see on IV, 20, 9, 10. *ex Galliā, Gallic.*

4. *inferior*: sc. *angulus*: i. e., Land's End. *hōc*: sc. *latus*. *pertinet, extends towards the southwest.*

5. *alterum*: sc. *latus*. *vergit ad Hispaniam*: a mistake prevailing long after Caesar's time.

7, 8. *dīmidio minor, a half smaller.* *dīmidio*: for case of. III,

12, 12; II, 20, 4. *sed . . . atque, but the passage is of the same length as.* *spatiō*: for case of. 3, 11; IV, 1, 20. *atque*: for use of. IV, 13, 15; III, 28, 6; 9, 22; II, 6, 4.

9. *Mona*: the Isle of Man, as is evident from the description. *mediō cursū, half way across.* Anglesey, to which Tacitus applies the name of Mona, is near the English coast.

10. *insulae*: probably the Hebrides and Orkney Islands.

nisi certis ex aquā mēnsūris breviorēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō, lateris, ut fert illōrum opiniō, DCC milium. Tertium est contrā septentrionēs; 15 cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc milia passuum octingenta in longitūdinem esse existimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs C milium passuum.

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, *Customs of its inhabitants.* quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērique frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lactē et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestitī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō 5

13. mēnsūra, -ae [metior, measure], *r.*, measuring, measure. 2

15. DCC, here for septingenti, -ae, -a [septem + centum], seven hundred. 2

19. viciēs (viciēns), num. adv. [viginti, twenty], twenty times. 1

4. serō, -ere, sēvi, satus, a., sow, plant. 1

carō, carnis, *r.*, flesh. 2

5. vestiō, 4. [vestis, clothes], clothe, dress, attire. 3

vitrum, -i, n., glass, woad, a plant used in dyeing blue. 1

13. certis ex aquā mēnsūris, by exact measurements by means of water, i. e., by the water-clock (clepsydra). This was constructed on the plan of the sand or hour glass in vogue in later times. The water dropped through a small hole in the bottom of the vessel containing it. breviorēs: especially noticeable in the summer. The longest day at Rome is 15 hours; at London 16½ hours; in the north of Scotland, 18½ hours.

14, 15. ut... opiniō, according to their opinion. DCC: the exact length is about ninety Roman miles less.

16. angulus = alter angulus:

line 2 above. Caesar does not mention the angle between the west and the "north" sides.

17. octingenta: the real length of this side is about 570 Roman miles.

1. his: the tribes of Britain.

3. interiōrēs: the inhabitants of the inland regions.

4. nōn serunt: in contrast with the people of Cantium, who cultivated the soil: cf. IV, 32, 15; 31, 5. lacte... vivunt: cf. what Caesar says of the Germans in IV, 1, 16, 16.

inficiunt quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in pūgnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.

Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnique inter sē commūnēs et māxi-  
10 mē frātēs cum fratribus parentēsque cum liberis; sed sī quī sunt ex hīs nātī, eōrum habentur liberī, quō primum virgō quaequae dēducta est.

*Skirmishes between the Britons and Romans.*

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriique ācritēr proe-  
liō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ta-  
men ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs  
in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectis  
5 cupidius insecūtī nōnnūllōs ex suis āmisērunt. At illī inter-  
missō spatiō imprudentibus nostris atque occupātis in mūnī-

6. inficiō, -erē, fēcī, fectus [faciō], *a.*, put on; stain, dye, tinge; taint, infect. 3

caeruleus, -a, -um [caelum, the sky], dark-colored, dark blue, sky-blue, azure. 1

color, -ōris, *m.*, hue, color, tint. 3

horridus, -a, -um [horreō, stand on end, bristle], bristling, rough; unsightly, hideous, frightful. 1

7. aspectus (ad-), -ūs [adspiciō, look at], *m.*, look; appearance, mien, aspect. 3

capillus, -ī [Gr. head], the hair of the head. 2

prō-mittō, -ere, misī, missus [mittō, send], *a.*, send forward

or down; let hang down or grow (capillum or barbam). 1

8. rādō, -ere, rāsī, rāsus, *a.*, scrape, shave. 1

labrum, -ī [cf. lambō, lick, lap], *n.*, lip, *fig.* rim, edge. 3

9. dēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [decem], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. 2

duodēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [duodecem], twelve each, twelve at a time. 3

10. parēs, -entis [*p. of pariō*], *m. and f.*, a parent, father, mother. 3

11. virgō, -inis, *f.*, maiden, maid, virgin. 1

7. aspectū: for case cf. 3, 1; III, 8, 4; II, 6, 1. capillō... prōmissō, they have flowing hair. capillō: for case cf. 13, 7; 3, 11.

9. habent... duodēnī, (*parties of*) ten or twelve have.

11. quō: used adverbially for

ad quōs, cf. II, 16, 10.

1. Equitēs: the narrative broken off at the end of the 11th chapter is here resumed. essedarii: see IV, 24, 2.

6, 7. imprudentibus... occu-

tiōne castrōrum subitō sē ex silvīs eiēcērunt impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castris collocātī, ācrit̄er pūgnāvērunt, duābusque missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare atque his primis legiōnum duārum, cum hae perexiguō inter-<sup>10</sup> missō loci spatiō inter sē cōstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritis nostris per mediōs audācissimē perrupērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illi plūribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae cum sub oculis omnium āc prō castris dīmīcārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitatem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent neque ab signis discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad hūius generis hostem, equitēs autem māgnō cum periculō proeliō dīmīcāre, propterea quod illi etiam cōsultō

*Tactics of the Britons. Dis-  
advantage of  
the Romans.*

10. *per-exiguus, -a, -um* [*exiguus*, scanty, little], very small, very little. 1

13. *Laberius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name: Quintus Laberius*

*Durus, a military tribune. 1*  
*Dūrus, -i, m., a Roman cognōmen. 1*  
6. *cōsultō* [*abl. N. of cōsultus*, well considered], *adv.*, deliberately, designedly, on purpose. 5

*pātis*, while our men were off their guard and engaged. *mūnitiōne castrōrum*: see Int. 130, 131.

8. *statiōne*, on guard. Where were they posted? See IV, 32, 5.

10. *atque his primis*: and these the first (cohorts), i. e., the first cohort in each legion, which contained the picked men. The detailing of these cohorts emphasizes the greatness of the danger. *perexiguō*, with a very little (portion of) space intervening between them.

11. *cōstitissent*: for mode cf. IV, 12, 4; III, 7, 4; 7, 2. *novō genere*: showing that these cohorts did not belong to the 7th and

10th legions, which had had experience in the British mode of fighting on the former expedition.

12. *per mediōs*: through the space between the cohorts. The Roman formation in close ranks was not well adapted for meeting such attacks.

3. *nostrōs*: i. e., the infantry. *gravitatem armōrum*: see Int. 104, ff.

4. *ab signis discēdere*: i. e., to break ranks and skirmish.

5. *equitēs*: corresponds to *nostrōs* above.

6. *illi* = *Britanni*



plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilirent et pedibus dispari proeliō contenderent. Equestris autem proeliī ratiō et cēdentibus et  
 10 insequentibus pār atque idem periculum inferēbat. Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnisque intervāllis proeliārentur, statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfetiḡātis succēderent.

*The Britons  
renew their  
attacks and  
are repulsed.*

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in col-  
 libus cōstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius  
 quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed  
 meridiē cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque om-  
 5 nem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex

8. **dis-pār, paris** [pār, equal], unequal, unlike, dissimilar, ill-matched. 2

11. **numquam** (nunq-), [nē+unquam, ever], not ever, never. 4

13. **dēfetiḡo** (dēfat-), 1. [fatigō, weary], a., completely weary, tire out, exhaust. 5

4. **pābulor**, 1. [pābulum, fodder],

a., get fodder, forage. 3

5. **Trebōnius**, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Caius Trebonius, a friend of Cicero and Caesar who procured the Gallic province for Caesar and was appointed legate by him. \*

**repente** [acc. N. of repēns, sudden], adv., suddenly, unexpectedly. 5

7. **nostrōs**=*equitēs*.

8. **essedīs**: see note IV, 32, 19. **pedibus**: cf. the description of the manœuvre in IV, 33, 5, ff. The chief advantage lay in the fact that the British fought on foot and chariot at once, while the Roman cavalry was not supported by the infantry.

9, 10. **et . . . pār**, *was the same, both when they retreated and advanced.*

11. **rārī**: as in 9, 15.

12, 13. **aliōs aliī**: for use cf. IV, 26, 3; II, 26, 4; I, 39, 12.

1. **procul ā castrīs**: apparently to lure the cavalry away from the main body.

2. **lēnius**: in contrast to the *ācritēr* of 15, 1.

4. **pābulandī**: see Int. 116. **trēs legiōnēs** etc.: an unusually large foraging party. The novel tactics of the British inspired respect. How large a force of cavalry had Caesar? Cf. 8, 5 and 2.

5, 6. **lēgātō**: see Int. 94. **repente . . . advolāverunt**: this recalls the manœuvre of the previous

omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīcubi ab sīg-nīs legiōnibusque absisterent. Nostrī ācritēr in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque finem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērēt, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, māgnōque eōrum numerō inter-<sup>10</sup>fectō neque suī colligendī neque cōsistendī aut ex essediis dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbiscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen *Caesar crosses the Thames and faces the enemy.* Tamesim in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trāns-irī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animum advertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. Rīpa 5

6. pābulātor, -ōris [pābulor, forage], m., forager. 1  
ad-volō, i. [volō, fly], n., fly to or against, rush on or at. 3  
sīcubi, adv., if in any place, if any-

where, wheresoever.

7. ab-sistō, -ere, stitī [sistō, stand], n., stand from or aloof, withdraw; leave off, refrain, desist. 1

year (IV, 32, 15, ff). sīcubi etc., if in any place they (the foragers) withdrew etc.

7. nostrī: the legionaries.

8. sequendī, following the enemy, who were not beaten yet, but slowly retreating.

9. subsidiō cōnfīsī: the cavalry did not repeat the mistake of the previous day in allowing themselves to be drawn away from the legions: cf. 16, 7. subsidiō (sc. legiōnum): for case see on III, 27, 5.

10. praecipitēs . . . ēgērunt: the attack of the cavalry finally forced the enemy to flee.

12. ex, after.

1. cōnsiliō: viz., not to fight

pitched battles but to prolong the war and wear out the Romans.

2. finēs: north of the Thames, in Middlesex and Buckinghamshire. exercitum dūxit: for the purpose of forcing the British leader to fight.

3. ūnō omnīnō locō: somewhere up the river from London, possibly as far as Kingston. Today the Thames is fordable in a number of places between London and Shepparton. atque hōc (locō) aegrē, and even there with much difficulty.

4. animum advertit=animadvertit, and has the same construction.

autem erat acūtis sudibus praefixis mūnīta, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rēbus cōgnītis ā captivīs perfugisque Caesar praemissō equitatū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequi iussit. Sed eā celeritatē atque impetū militēs ierunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinere nōn possent ripāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

*Cassivellaunus resorts to guerilla warfare.*

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis dīmīssīs ampliōribus cōpiis milibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictis, itinera nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iis regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agris in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster liberius praedandī vāstandique causā sē in agrōs eiēcērat, omnibus

6. acūtus, -a, -um [*p. p. of acuō*, sharpen], sharpened, pointed. 2  
 sudis, -is, *f.*, pile, stake. 4  
 prae-figō, -ere, fixi, fixus, [figō, fix], *a.*, fix or fasten before, set in front or on the end. 1  
 7. tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus, *a.*

cover, hide, conceal; defend, protect. \*

10. exstō (extō), -āre, *n.*, stand out, extend above. 1.

2. contentiō, -ōnis [contendō, stretch out], *f.*, stretching out, striving, struggle, contest. \*

6. praefixis: i. e., projecting from the northern bank in contrast to the stakes driven into the bed of the stream (*sub aquā dēfixae*).

8. praemissō equitatū: Caesar probably sent the cavalry up and down the river, to cross and attack the enemy's flank.

9. eā, such, so also the following *eō*.

10. cum... exstārent, although the head only etc. This shows the value and extent of the legionary training.

1. suprà: in 17, 13, 14.

2. omnī... contentiōnis, hav-

ing lost all hope of being able to continue the contest.

2-4. ampliōribus cōpiis, the greater part of his troops. Cassivellaunus soon saw that his infantry was useless against the legions. itinera... servābat, kept watching our movements. locisque, etc: "We may conclude from this passage and the following narrative that the British chariots had very high wheels, which would enable them to pass more easily over the inequalities of the ground, and that they were very narrow" (Goehler).

8. eiēcērat: for the mode cf. IV, 17, 11; III, 14, 17, 18.

viis sēmitisque essedāriōs ex silvis ēmittēbat et māgnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum iis cōfligēbat atque hōc<sup>10</sup> metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur, ut neque longius ab āgmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstandis incendiisque faciendis hostib⁹ nocērētur, quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnārii militēs efficere poterant.

15

20. Interim Trinobantēs, prope firmissima eā- Submission of the Trinobantes.  
rum regiōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adu-  
lēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem Galliam vēnerat, cuius pater in eā civitate rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat, 5  
lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī deditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in civitatem mittat, quī praesit

9. sēmita, -ae, f., narrow way, lane, foot-path. 2

12. tantum [neut. acc. of tantus], adv., so much, so far, to such a degree or extent. 5

13. incendium, -ī [incendō, set fire to], n., burning, conflagration, fire. \*

1. Trinobantēs, -um, m., a tribe of southeast Britain capital Camulodunum, the modern Colchester. 3

2. Mandubracius, -ī, m., a prince of the Trinobantes who with his people went over to Caesar. 4

10, 11. hōc metū: the demonstrative is, by a not infrequent Latin construction, attracted to the case of its noun (hōc metū=metū huius rei): translate from fear of this. relinquēbātur etc., the one course left was for Caesar to forbid etc.

12, 13. et hostibus nocērētur, and damage the enemy. hostibus: for case cf. 3, 16; IV, 27, 12; III, 14, 3; II, 16, 6. tantum etc.: the foot soldiers could ravage only a comparatively narrow strip on either side of the line of march.

1, 2. eārum regiōnum, of this

section of the country, that had united under the command of Cassivellaunus.

3, 4. ad eum . . . vēnerat: for the fact see IV, 21, 10.

5. ipse: Mandubracius.

6. pollicentur, etc.: this result was brought about by Caesar through the instrumentality of Mandubracius, who was with him. Diplomacy won Caesar many a victory.

8, 9. quī praesit, imperium obtineat: the first term (praesit) refers to the submission of others (as Cassivellaunus); the second (imperium obtineat) to absolutely in-

imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrā-  
 10gintā frumentumque exercitui Mandubraciumque ad eōs  
 mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsidēs ad numerum  
 frumentumque miserunt.

*Other tribes  
 submit. Cae-  
 sar takes the  
 stronghold of  
 Cassivellaun-  
 us.*

21. Trinobantibus defēnsis atque omnī militum  
 iniuriā prohibitīs Cenimāgnī, Segontiacī, Ancali-  
 tēs, Bibrocī, Cassī legationibus missis sēsē Caesarī  
 dēdunt. Ab his cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum  
 5 Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque munitum, quō satis  
 māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum  
 autem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque  
 fossā muniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā con-  
 venīre cōsuērunt. Eō proficiscitur cum legiōnibus: locum  
 10reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere munitum, tamen hunc  
 duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper  
 morātī militum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā  
 ex parte oppidi eiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris re-  
 pertus multique in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

*After a third  
 attempt, Cas-  
 sivellaunus  
 submits.*

22. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivel-  
 launus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā

2, 3. Cenimāgnī, -ōrum; 1 Se-  
 gontiacī, -ōrum, 1 Ancalitēs,  
 -um; 1 Bibrocī, -ōrum; 1

Cassī, -ōrum; 1 tribes of South-  
 east Britain. See map.

dependent authority. For the Subj.  
 cf. 10, 5; IV, 11, 17; III, 11, 11; II,  
 11, 9; I, 15, 5.

1. defēnsis: against Cassivel-  
 launus.

4, 5. eō locō: i. e., where the  
 envoys met Caesar; perhaps at the  
 crossing of the Thames. oppidum  
 Cassivellaunī: identified by some  
 authorities with the town St. Albans.

6. oppidum etc., the Britons

call (this) a town whenever etc. The  
 oppidum was intended for a place  
 of refuge in case of attack—not for  
 a permanent abode, as were the op-  
 pida of the Gauls. "They have  
 groves instead of cities; for when  
 they have enclosed a great circle of  
 felled trees, they build huts for  
 themselves and make folds for their  
 herds, not indeed for any length of  
 time" (Strabo).

2. suprā: in 14, 2.

dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī coāctis omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia 5 dē imprōvisō adorian tur atque oppūgnent. Iī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorige suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentis acceptis, vāstātis finibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne 10 cīvitatū, lēgātōs per Atrebatem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset hiēmāre in continentī prōpter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset atque id facile extrahī posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat et quid in annōs singulōs vēctigālis populō 15 Rōmānō Britannia penderet, cōstituit; interdicīt atque im-

4. Cingetorix, -igis; \* Carvilius, -i; 1 Taximagulus, -i; 1 Segovax (onax), -actis: 1 *British princes ruling in Kent.*

8. Lugotorix, -igis, m., a *British chieftain*. 1

9. dētrimentum, -i [dē-terō, rub or wear out], n., loss, damage, injury; defeat. \*

14. ex-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus

[trahō, drag], a., drag or draw out, waste or fritter away. 1

16. pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, a., weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out (as money was weighed in payment.)

inter-dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus [dicō, say], a., say among other things; intervene by an order; prohibit, exclude, interdict. \*

3. regiōnibus: "The territory of Cantium we may suppose was divided into four parts, and each had a little king" (Long).

4. Cingetorix: a different king from the Treveran: cf. 3 and 4.

5. castra nāvālia: see on 11, 10.

6. dē imprōvisō: as in II, 3, 1.

10, 11. dēfectiōne cīvitatū: see 21, 2, 3. Commium: see IV, 27, 4.

12. in continentī: i. e., in Gaul instead of Italy: see Int. 34.

13. repentinōs mōtūs: Labienus doubtless kept Caesar fully informed of the state of Gaul.

14. superesset: it was now about the last of August. atque id etc., and that this time (if further delay was made) could easily be etc.

15. quid . . . vēctigālis, how much tribute each year: an empty form, since no troops were left to enforce the collection and tribute.

16. interdicīt atque imperat: when two verbs are synonymous (or nearly so) one may be rendered by an adv., he expressly forbids.

perat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

<sup>1</sup>Caesar re-  
turns to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. His dēductis, quod et captivō-  
rum māgnū numerum habēbat, et nōnnullae tempestate  
dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre  
5 instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tantō nāvium numerō tot  
navigātiōibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō  
nāvis, quae militēs portāret, dēsiderārētur; at ex iis, quae  
inānēs ex continenti ad eum remitterentur priōris com-  
meātūs expositis militibus et quās postea Labiēnus faciendās  
10 cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae  
ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūs-  
trā exspectāset, nē annī tempore ā navigātiōe excluderētur,  
quod aequinoctium suberat, necessariō angustius militēs  
collocāvit ac summā tranquillitāte cōsecūtā, secundā nitā  
15 cum solvisset vigiliā, primā luce terram attigit omnēsque  
incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

4. dē-pereō, -ire, -iī, itūrus, n.,  
go to ruin, perish; be lost or un-  
done. 2

8. inānis, -e, empty, void; aban-  
doned, worthless; vain. 2

11. aliquamdiū [*fem. acc. of ali-*  
*quis (sc. partem) + diū, a long*

time], for a while, for some time,  
awhile. 2

12. excludō, -ere, clūsī, clūsus  
[cludō, shut], a., shut out, cut  
off; hinder, prevent. 4

13. angustē [angustus], adv.,  
within a narrow space, closely. 1

2. nāvēs refectās: see 10, 6-9  
and 11, 4 ff.

4. commeātibus: here in the  
original sense of *relays* or *trips*.

5, 6. tot navigātiōibus: a  
concessive abl. abs., *in spite of so*  
*many voyages*.

7. portāret: for mode cf. *vēn-*  
*dant* IV, 2, 2; III, 4, 2; II, 5, 16; I,  
6, 2.

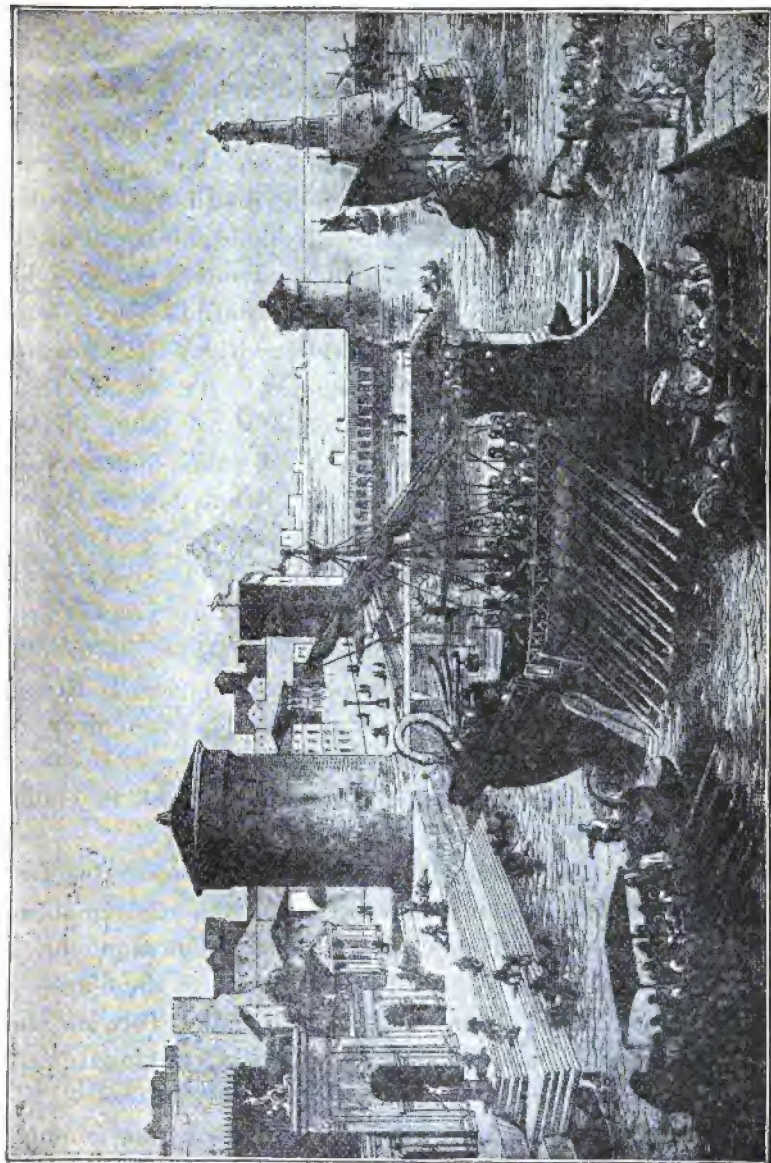
9. faciendās: for constr. cf. IV,  
22, 21; III, 11, 11; I, 19, 4.

10. numerō, *to the number of*.  
locum caperent, *reached the land*.

12. annī tempore: it was now  
near the end of September. Caesar  
had been in Britain nearly three  
months.

13. angustius, *in rather close*  
*quarters*.

14, 15. secundā vigiliā, primā  
lucē: the voyage, therefore, occu-  
pied about nine hours.



NAVAL SCENE.



*Caesar dis-  
tributes his  
army among  
several tribes  
for the win-  
ter.*

24. Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrivae peractō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitatēs angustius provēnerat, coactus est aliter ac superiōribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocare legiōnesque in plūrēs civitatēs distribuere. Ex quibus unam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esubiōs L. Rosciō; quartam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōfiniō Trēverōrum hiemare iussit; trēs in Bellovacis collocāvit; his M. Crassum quaestōrem et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praeficit. Unam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōscripserat, et cohortēs quinque in Eburonēs, quōrum pars māxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus Q. Titurium Sabinum et L. Aurunculium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtis legiōnibus facillimē inopiae frumentariae sēsē medērī posse existimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hiberna, praeter eam, quam L. Rosciō in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem dūcendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnitaque hiberna cōgnovisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit.

*The Carnutes  
slay the  
friendly chief  
Tasgetius.  
Caesar's  
measures for  
their punish-  
ment.*

25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cuius māiōrēs in suā civitatē rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō eius virtute atque in sē benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari eius operā fuerat usus, māiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimici multis palam ex civitatē auctoribus interfecērunt. Dēfertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē civitas eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Car-

nūtēs proficīscī iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque operā cōg- 10  
nōverat Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mit-  
tere. Interim ab omnibus [lēgātīs quaestōribusque], quibus  
legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hīberna perventum  
locumque [hībernīs] esse mūnītum.

26. Diēbus circiter xv, quibus in hīberna ven- *Revolt of the  
Eburones un-  
der Ambiorix.  
Defeated, in  
an assault up-  
on the camp  
of Sabinus,  
they demand  
a conference.*  
tum est, initium repentinī tumultūs ac defectionis  
ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolcō, quī cum ad  
finēs rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent  
frūmentumque in hīberna comportāvissent, Indutiomari Trē- 5  
verī nūntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitoque oppressīs  
lignātōribus māgnā manū ad castrā oppugnātum vērērunt.  
Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque adscendissent  
atque unā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs equestri proe-  
liō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnā- 10  
tione redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, utī aliquī  
ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdīret: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē  
commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minui  
posse spērārent.

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Ar- *In the confer-  
ence Ambio-  
rix craftily  
advises the  
Romans to  
withdraw to a  
place of safe-  
ty.*  
pinēius equēs Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Tituriī, et  
Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante  
missū Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitāre cōnsuē-  
rat; apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum locūtus est: Sēsē 5  
prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimum eī cōnfītērī debēre,  
quod eius operā stipendiō liberātus esset, quod Aduātucīs,  
finitimīs suis, pendere cōnsuēssset, quodque eī et filius et  
frātris filius ab Caesare remissī essent, quōs Aduātucī obsi-  
dum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenuis- 10  
sent; neque id, quod fecerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum, aut  
iūdicīō aut voluntāte suā fecisse, sed coactū civitātis, suaque

esse eiusmodi imperia, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitudō, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitātī porrō hanc  
 15 fuisse bellī causam, quod repentināe Gallōrum coniūratiōni resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitate suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperitus rērum, ut suis cōpiis populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōfīdat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium: omnibus hibernīs Caesaris oppūg-  
 20 nandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterae legiōni subsidiō venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūni libertate cōnsilium initum vidērētur. Quibus quoniam prō pietate satisfēcērit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officiī prō beneficiis  
 25 Caesaris: monēre, orāre Titurium prō hospitīō, ut suae ac militum salutī cōnsulat. Māgnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc affore bīduō. Ipsōrum essē cōnsilium, velintne prius, quam finitimī sentiant, educ-  
 tōs ex hibernīs militēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum  
 30 dēducere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab iīs absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūreiūrandō cōnfīrmāre, tūtum iter per finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et civitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hibernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritis grātiā referre. Hāc orātiōne hab-  
 35 itā discēdit Ambiorix.

*Roman officers discuss the proposal of Ambiorix.* 28. Arpinēius et Iūnius, quae audiērunt, ad  
 lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentinā rē perturbāti, etsī ab hoste ea dicēbantur, tamen nōn negligenda existimā-  
 bant, māximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod civitatem  
 5 ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt, māgnaque inter eōs existit contrō-  
 versia. L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī militum

et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum neque ex hibernis iniussu Caesaris discendum existi-<sup>10</sup> mabant; quantavis copias Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant: rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostium impetum multis ultro vulneribus illatis fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentaria non premi; in-<sup>15</sup> terea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia; postrimo quid esse levius aut turpius, quam auctore hoste desummis rebus capere consilium?

29. Contra ea Titurius sero facturos clamitabat, cum maiores manus hostium adiunctis Ger-<sup>Sabinus fa-  
vors the sug-  
gestion.</sup> manis convenissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum. Brevem consulendi esse occasionem. Caesarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam; neque aliter<sup>5</sup> Carnutes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta contemptione nostri ad castra venturos esse. Non hostem auctorem, sed rem spectare: subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germanis dolore Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias; ardere Galliam tot<sup>10</sup> contumeliis acceptis sub populi Romani imperium redactam, superiore gloria rei militaris extincta. Postrimo quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certa spe Amborigem ad eius modi consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque par-<sup>15</sup> tem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius, nullo cum periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque eorum, qui dissentirent, consilium quem habere exitum? in quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinquam obsidione famem esset timenda.<sup>20</sup>

30. Hac in utramque partem disputatione hab-<sup>Cotta opposes.</sup> ita, cum a Cottā primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur,

'Vincite', inquit, 'si ita vultis', Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut māgna pars militum exaudīret; 'neque is sum', inquit, 'quī  
 5 gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear; hī sapient; si gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent, quī, si per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proximīs hībernīs coniūctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn rēiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs aut ferrō aut famē intereant.'

*Sabinus prevails and the Romans prepare to leave camp.*

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et orant, nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēdūcant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo ūnum omnes sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salutem perspicere. Rēs disputatiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs: superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātūr primā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret,  
 10 quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex instrūmentō hībernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia excōgitantur, quārē nec sine periculō maneātur et languōre militum et vigiliīs periculum augeātur. Primā lūce sic ex castrīs proficiscuntur, ut quibus esset persuāsum, nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō  
 15 [Ambiorige] cōnsilium datum, longissimō āgmine māximisque impedimentis.

*The Eburones attack them after their departure.*

32. At hostēs, posteaquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliisque dē profectione eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātis insidiis bipertitō in silvīs oportūnō atque occultō locō ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, et cum sē māior pars āgminis in māgnam convallem dēmīssisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

33. Tum dēnum Titurius, quī nihil ante prō- *Unfortunate management of the Roman leaders.*  
 vīdisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispō-  
 nere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere  
 vidērentur; quod plērumque iīs accidere cōnsuēvit, quī in ipsō  
 negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāasset, 5  
 haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profec-  
 tiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nullā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat:  
 et in appellandīs cohortandisque mīlitibus imperātōris et in  
 pūgnā militis officia praestābat. Cum propter longitūdinem  
 āgminis minus facile omnia per sē obīre et, quid quōque locō 10  
 faciendum esset, prōvidēre possent, iūssērunt prōnūntiāre, ut  
 impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōsisterent. Quod  
 cōnsilium etsi in ēius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est,  
 tamen incommodē accidit: nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem  
 minuit et hostēs ad pūgnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn 15  
 sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Prae-  
 tereā accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgō mīlitēs ab sīg-  
 nīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret, ab  
 impedīmentīs petere atque arripere properāret, clāmōre et  
 flētū omnia complērentur. 20

34. At barbaris cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam *Measures taken by the Eburones.*  
 dūcēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iūssērunt, nē  
 quis ab locō discēderet: illōrum esse praedam atque illis re-  
 servārī, quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde omnia in  
 victōriā posita existimārent. Erant et virtūte et studiō pūg- 5  
 nandī parēs nostrī; tametsi ab dūce et ā fōrtūnā dēserēbantur,  
 tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns  
 quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte māgnus numerus  
 hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūntiārī  
 iubet, ut procul tēla cōnciant neu propius accēdant et, quam 10  
 in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcērint, cēdant (levitāte armō-

rum et cotidiānā exercitātiōne nihil iīs nocērī posse), rūrsus sē ad signa recipientēs īnsequantur.

*Their disastrous effect.  
The Romans bravely resist.*

35. Quō praeceptō ab iīs diligentissimē obser-  
vātō, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe excesserat at-  
que impetum fēcerat, hostēs vėlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim  
eam partem nūdār, necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipī.
- 5 Rūrsus, cum in eum locum; unde erant ēgressī, revertī coepe-  
rant, et ab iīs, quī cesserant, et ab iīs, quī proximī steterant,  
circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec vir-  
tūtī locus relinquiēbātur, neque ab tantā multitudine cōniecta  
tēla cōnfertī vitāre poterant. Tamen tot incommodis cōnflī-
- 10 tāti, multis vulneribus acceptis resistēbant et māgnā parte  
diēi cōnsūptā, cum ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pūgnā-  
rētur, nihil quod ipsis esset indignum, committēbant. Tum  
T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō primum pilum dūxerat, virō  
forti et māgnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāici-
- 15 tur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum  
circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur: L. Cotta lēgātus om-  
nēs cohortēs ordinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vul-  
nerātūr.

*Sabinus desires to seek  
the protection  
of Ambiorix.  
Cotta opposes.*

36. His rēbus permōtus Q. Titurius, cum pro-  
cul Ambiorigem suōs cohortantem cōspēxisset,  
interpretē suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit  
rogātum, ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respon-
- 5 dit: Si velit sēcum colloquī, licēre; sperāre ā multitudine im-  
petrārī posse, quod ad militum salutē pertineat; ipsī vērō  
nihil nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.  
Ille cum Cottā sauciō communicat, sī videātur, pūgnā ut ex-  
cēdant et cum Ambiorige ūnā colloquantur: sperāre ab eō dē
- 10 suā ac militum salutē impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum  
hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.

37. Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs militum circum sē habēbat et primōrum ordinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iūssus arma abicere imperātum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum dē 5  
condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō ab Ambiorige instituitur sermō, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in nostrōs factō ordinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum māximā parte militum. Reliquī sē 10  
in castra recipiunt, unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum māgnā multitudīne hostium premerētur aquilam intrā vāllum prōiēcit, ipse prō castris fortissimē pūgnāns occiditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppūgnatiōnem sustinent; noctū ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interfici- 15  
unt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlapsī incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduātucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō finitimī, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem inter- mittit peditātumque sēsē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā 5  
Aduātucisque concitātis, posterō diē in Nervios pervenit hortāturque, nē suī in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō iis, quās accēperint, iniuriis occāsionem dimittant: interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitūs interisse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtīi, subitō oppressam le- 10  
giōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interfici; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiutōrem. Facile hāc orātiōne Nervii persuadet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dimissis nūntiis ad Cen- trōnēs, Grudiōs, Levacōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs,

*While parley-  
ing Sabīnus  
is slain. The  
Roman army  
is almost com-  
pletely de-  
stroyed.*

*Ambiorix in-  
cites the Adu-  
atuci and  
Nervii to  
arms.*

*Other tribes  
unite: they  
attack Cice-  
ro's camp.*



- quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās manūs possunt, cōgunt et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nōndum ad eum famā dē Tituriī morte perlātā. Huīc quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōnnūllī militēs, quī lignatiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. His circumventis magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Aduātucī atque hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritatē pōnēbant atque hanc adepti victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōfidēbant.

*Cicero writes to Caesar. Stout resistance of the Romans.*

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne litterae magnīs prōpositis praemiis, si pertulissent: obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex materiā, quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant, turres admodum cxx excitantur incredibili celeritatē; quae deesse operi vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multo maiōribus coactis cōpiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, ab nostris resistitur. Hōc idem reliquis deinceps fit diēbus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātis facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēi oppugnatiōnem opus sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praeiustae sudēs, magnus murālium pilōrum numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōricaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicero, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquebat, ut ūltrō militum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

*The Nervii try to allure Cicero from the river. He re-*

41. Tunc ducēs principēsque Nerviorum, qui aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dicunt.

Factā potestāte, eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Tituriō ēgerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppugnārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fidei faciundae causā. Errāre eōs dicunt, sī quicquam ab hīs praesidii spērent, quī suis rēbus diffidant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illis incolumibus per sē ex hibernīs discēdere et, quāscumque in partēs velint, sine metū proficisci. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populi Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem: sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre prō eius iūstitiā, quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nervii vāllō pedum IX et fossā pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiorum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbis cōgnōverant et, quōs dē exercitū habēbant captivōs, ab hīs docēbantur, sed nullā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā, quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiis cēspitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitudō cōgnōsci potuit: nam minus hōris tribus milium pedum xv in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt, reliquisque diēbus turres ad altitudinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinesque, quās idēm capitivi docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē māximō coortō ventō ferventēs fūsili ex argillā glandēs fundis et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentis erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī māgnitudīne in omnem locum castrō-

*The Nervii invest Cicero's camp.*

*They fire the Roman barracks.*

rum distulērunt. Hostēs māximō clāmōre sicutī partā iam  
 atque explōrātā victōriā turrēs testūdīnēsque agere et scālis  
 vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta militum virtūs atque  
 ea praesentia animī fuit, ut, cum undique flammā torrēren-  
 10 tur māximāque tēlōrum multitudine premerentur suaeque  
 omnia impedimenta atque omnēs fōrtūnās cōnflagrāre intel-  
 legerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet  
 nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum  
 omnēs acerrimē fortissimēque pūgnārent. Hic diēs nostrīs  
 15 longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut  
 eō diē māximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque inter-  
 ficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstipāverant recessumque  
 primīs ūltimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flam-  
 mā et quōdam locō turri adāctā et contingente vāllum tertiāe  
 20 cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō, quō stābant, locō recessērunt  
 suōsque omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, si  
 introire vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi ausus  
 est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus cōniectīs dēturbāti,  
 turrisque succēnsa est.

*The rival ex-  
 ploits of two  
 centurions.*

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centu-  
 riōnēs, quī primīs ordinibus appropinquārent, T.  
 Pulio et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās  
 habēbant, quīnam anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locīs  
 5 summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pulio, cum ācer-  
 rimē ad mūnitiōnēs pūgnārētur, 'Quid dubitās,' inquit, 'Vo-  
 rēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās?  
 hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit.' Haec cum dixis-  
 set, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs quaque pars hostium cōnfer-  
 10 tissima est vīsa, irrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē vāllō  
 continet, sed omnium veritus existimātiōnem subsequitur.  
 Tum mediocrī spatiō relictō Pulio pilum in hostēs immittit

atque ūnum ex multitudine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimatō hunc scūtis prōtegunt, in hostem tēla ūniversī cōniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. 15 Trānsfigitur scūtum Pulīōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. Avertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impeditumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illi Vorēnus et laborantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pulīōne omnis multitūdō convertit: 20 illum verūtō arbitrantur occisum. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īstat, in locum dēlātus inferiōrem concidit. Huīc rūsus circumventō fert subsidium Pulīō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectis summā cum laude 25 sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. Sic fōrtūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit, ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salutīque esset neque diiudicārī posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppūgnatiō, et māximē quod māgnā parte militum cōnfectā vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiūque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum 5 militum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat summamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hic servō spē libertātis māgnisque persuādet praemiis, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās 10 effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ullā suspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculis Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

46. Caesar accēptis litteris hōrā circiter ūn-  
decimā diēi statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M.

*Cicero informs Caesar of his peril.*

*Caesar directs his legates to relieve Cicero.*

- Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cūius hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebatum finēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, si rei pūblicae commodō facere posset, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat expectandum; equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex proximīs hibernīs cōgit.

*Crassus and Fabius respond.*

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus eō diē milia passuum xx prōcēdit. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, litterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne, quod eō toleranda hiemis causā dēvēxerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiaē vēnissent, veritus nē si ex hibernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs recentī victoriā efferri scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrus esset, rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit, docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria milia passuum longē ā suis castris cōsēdisse.

*Caesar informs Cicero of coming relief.*

48. Caesar cōsiliō eius probātō, etsi opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectūs ad duās redierat, tamen ūnum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritatē pōnēbat. Venit magnīs itineribus in Nerviorum finēs. Ibi ex captivīs cōgnōscit, quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnīs praemiis persuādet, uti ad Cicerōnem epistolam dēferat. Hanc Grae-

cīs cōscrip̄tam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistolā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cōgnōscentur. Si adīre nōn possit, monet, ut trāgulam cum epistolā ad ammentum deligātā intrā 10 mūnitiōnem castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scribit, sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter affore; hortātur, ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostrīs bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōn- 15 spicitur, dēmp̄ta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū militum recitat māximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitatiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

49. Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiō- *The Gauls quit the siege and march against Caesar.* nem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs con- tendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter milia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem sup̄rā dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; 5 hunc admonet, iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litterīs, hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudi- nem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātis suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmīcandum animō cōn- firmat. Posterō diē lūce primā movet castra et circiter milia 10 passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multītū- dinem hostium cōspiciātur. Erat māgnī periculī rēs tantulis cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmīcāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberā- tum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritā- te existimābat: cōnsēdit et, quam aequissimō locō potest, 15 castra commūnit atque haec, etsi erant exigua per sē, vix hominum milium septem, praesertim nullis cum impedimen- tis, tamen angustis viarum, quam māximē potest, contrahit eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. I

20 terim speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dimissis explōrat, quō commodissimē itinere vallēs trānsirī possit.

*Caesar feels  
fear and re-  
tires within  
his works.*

50. Eō diē parvulis equestribus proeliis ad  
aquam factis utrīque sēsē suō locō continent: Galli,  
quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, expectā-  
bant; Caesar, si forte timōris simulatiōne hostēs in suum lo-  
cum elicere, posset, ut citrā vallem prō castris proeliō conten-  
5 deret; si id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātis itineribus minōre  
cum periculō vallem rīvumque trānsiret. Primā lūce hostium  
equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostris equiti-  
bus committit. Caesar cōsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in cas-  
10 tra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre  
vallō mūniri portāsque obstrui atque in hīs administrandis  
rēbus quam māximē concursārī et cum simulatiōne agī timōris  
iubet.

*By an unex-  
pected sortie  
Caesar routs  
the Gauls.*

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitātī cō-  
piās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōstituunt,  
nostris vērō etiam dē vallō dēductis propius accēdunt et tēla in-  
trā mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus cōniciunt praecōnibusque  
5 circummissis prōnūtiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus  
velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsire, sine periculō licēre;  
post id tempus nōn fore potestātem: ac sic nostrōs contemp-  
sērunt, ut obstrūctis in speciem portis singulis ōrdinibus  
cēspitum, quod ea nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, alii  
10 vāllum manū scindere, alii fossās complēre inciperent. Tum  
Caesar omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō  
celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sic utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā  
resisteret nēmō, māgnūque ex eis numerum occidit atque  
omnēs armīs exuit.

*He proceeds  
to the camp  
Noero.*

52. Longius prōsequi veritus, quod silvae pa-  
lūdēsque intercēdēbant neque etiam parvulō dē-

trīmentō illōrum locum relinqui vidēbat, omnibus suis incol-  
umibus cōpiis eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Institū-  
tās turrēs, testūdīnēs mūnitiōnēsque hostium admirātur; le-  
giōne prōductā cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reli-  
quum militem sine vulnere: ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus,  
quantō cum periculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint adminis-  
tratae: Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat:  
centurionēs singillatim tribūnōsque militum appellat, quō-  
rum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimoniō Cicerōnis cōgnōver-  
at. Dē cāsū Sabinī et Cottae certius ex captivīs cōgnōscit.



CONTIO.

Posterō diē contiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, milites  
cōnsolātur et cōnfirmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeri-  
tate lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, 15  
quod beneficiō deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum expiātō  
incommodō neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs lon-  
gior dolor relinquiātur.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdi-  
bilī celeritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur,  
ut, cum ab hibernīs Cicerōnis milia passuum ab-

*Retreat of  
Indutimarus  
and his allies.  
Caesar decides  
to winter in  
Gaul.*



- esset circiter LX, eoque post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar pervē-  
 5 nisset, ante mediam noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor  
 orerētur, quō clāmōre significātiō victōriæ grātulātiōque ab  
 Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indu-  
 tiomarus, quī posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppūgnāre dēcrē-  
 verat, noctū prōfugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs reducit.  
 10 Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hiberna, ipse  
 cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvā trīnīs hibernīs  
 hiemāre cōstituit et, quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant,  
 tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam illō  
 15 civitatēs dē bellō cōsultābant, nūntiōs legātiōnēsque in om-  
 nēs partēs dīmīttēbant et, quid reliquī cōsiliī caperent at-  
 que unde initium bellī fieret, explōrābant nocturnaue in  
 locīs dēsērtis concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtius  
 hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit, quā  
 20 aliquem dē cōsiliīs ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet.  
 In hīs ab L. Rosciō, quem legiōnī tertiædecimæ præfēce-  
 rat, certior factus est, māgnās Gallōrum cōpiās eārum civitā-  
 tum, quæ Aremoricae appellantur, oppūgnandī suī causā  
 convēnisse neque longius milia passuum octō ab hibernīs  
 25 suis āfuisse, sed nūntiō allātō dē victōriā Caesaris discessisse,  
 adeō ut fugae similis discessus vidērētur.

*Caesar con-  
fers with the  
Gallio chiefs.  
Suspected in-  
subordination  
of nearly all  
the tribes.*

54. At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitatis  
 ad sē ēvocātis aliās territandō, cum sē scire, quæ  
 fierent, dēnūntiāret, aliās cohortandō māgnam par-  
 tem Galliae in officiō tenuit. Tamen Senonēs,  
 5 quæ est civitās in primīs firma et māgnæ inter Gallōs auc-  
 tōritātis, Cavarīnum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōstitu-  
 erat, cuius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris  
 cuiusque māiōrēs rēgnum obtinuerant, interficere publicō

cōnsiliō cōnātī, cum ille praesēnsisset ac prōfūgisset, usque ad finēs īsecūtī rēgnō domōque expulērunt et, mīssīs ad <sup>10</sup> Caesarem satisfaciendī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre iūssisset, dictō audiētēs nōn fuērunt. Tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit, esse aliquōs repertōs prīncipēs inferendī bellī, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtatiōnem attulit, ut praeter Aeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs <sup>15</sup> praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā erga populum Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallici bellī officiīs, nūlla ferē cīvītās fuerit nōn suspecta nōbīs. Idque adeō haud sciō mīrandumne sit, cum complūribus aliīs dē causīs, tum māximē, quod eī, quī virtūte bel- <sup>20</sup> lī omnibus gentibus praeferēbantur, tantum sē eius opīniōnis dēperdidisse, ut ā populō Rōmānō imperia perferrent, gravisimē dolēbant.

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indutiomarus tōtīus The Treveri under Indutiomarus form a hostile alliance. hiemis nūllum tempus intermīsērunt, quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, cīvītātēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicerentur, māgnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen <sup>5</sup> ūllī cīvītātī Germānōrum persuādērī potuit, ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum sē bis expertōs dicerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tenctērorum trānsitū: nōn esse amplius fōrtūnam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lapsus Indutiomarus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā finitimīs equōs parāre, exulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā māg- <sup>10</sup> nīs praemiīs ad sē allicere coepit, Ac tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāverat, ut undique ad eum lēgatiōnēs concurrerent, grātiā atque amicitiam publicē prīvātimque peterent.

*Indutiomarus  
calls an  
armed coun-  
cil of the  
Gauls. He  
plans to at-  
tack Labie-  
nus.*

56. Ubi intellexit ūltrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte Senonēs Carnūtēsque cōscientiā facinoris instigārī, alterā Nerviōs Aduātucōsque bellum Rōmānīs parāre, neque sibi voluntāriōrum cōpiās
- 5 dēfore, sī ex finibus suis prōgredi coepisset, armātum conciliū indicit. Hōc mōre Gallōrum est initium bellī: quō lēge commūnī omnēs pūberēs armātī convenīre cōsuērunt: quī ex iīs novissimus convenit, in cōspectū multitudinis omnibus cruciātibus affectus necātur. In eō conciliō Cingetorigem,
- 10 alterius princīpem factiōnis, generum suum, quem suprà dēmōstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō nōn discessisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque eius publicat. His rēbus cōfectis in conciliō prōnūntiat arcessitum sē ā Senonibus et Carnūtibz aliisque eomplūribz Galliae cīvitatibus: hūc itūrum per
- 15 finēs Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs populātūrum āc, priusquam id faciat, castra Labiēnī oppūgnātūrum. Quae fierī velit, praecipit.

*Labiēnus,  
feignīng fear,  
remains in  
the camp.*

57. Labiēnus, cum et locī nātūrā et manū mūnitissimīs castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō āc legiōnis periculō nihil timēbat; nē quam occāsionem rei bene gerendae dīmitteret, cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorige atque eius pro-
- 5 pīnquīs ōrātiōne Indutiomari cōgnitā, quam in conciliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad finitimās cīvitatēs equitēsque undique ēvocat: his certam diem conveniendī dīcit. Interim prope cotidiē cum omnī equitātū Indutiomarus sub castrīs eius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cōgnōsceret, aliās collo-
- 10 quendī aut territandī causā: equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum cōniciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnitiōnem continēbat timōrisque opīniōnem, quibuscumque poterat rēbus, augēbat.

58. Cum m̄iōre in diēs contemptiōne Indutiomarus ad castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmissīs equitibus omnium finitimārum cīvitātum, quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā diligentīā omnēs suōs custōdiīs intrā castra continuit, ut nullā ratiōne ea rēs ēnūn- s  
tiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferri posset. Interim ex cōnsuētū-  
dine cotidiānā Indutiomarus ad castra accēdit atque ibi m̄ag-  
nam partem diēi cōsūmit: equitēs tēla cōniciunt et m̄agnā  
cum contumeliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. Nūl-  
lō ab nostris datō respōnsō, ubi vīsum est, sub vesperum dis- 10  
persi āc dissipātī discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs  
omnem equitātum ēmittit: praecipit atque interdicat, prōter-  
ritīs hostibus atque in fugam cōniectīs (quod fore, sicut ac-  
cidit, vidēbat) ūnum omnēs peterent Indutiomarum, neu quis  
quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, quod 15  
morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat:  
m̄agna prōpōnit iīs, quī occiderint, praemia; submittit cohō-  
tēs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat hominis cōnsilium fōrtū-  
na, et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dē-  
prehēnsus Indutiomarus interficitur caputque eius refertur 20  
in castra; redeuntēs, quōs possunt, cōnectantur atque occi-  
dunt. Hāc rē cōgnita omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviorum, quae  
convēnerant, cōpiae discēdunt, paulōque habuit post id fac-  
tum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.

*He makes a sudden sortie. Indutiomarus is slain, his army routed, and order restored in Gaul.*

## BOOK VI.—CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE TREVERI AND EBURONES.

---

The enforced leisure of the winter was improved by Caesar in making preparations for the coming struggle with the insurgents. Two legions were levied in Cisalpine Gaul, and a third was borrowed from Pompeius, making ten legions now under Caesar's command. Before the arrival of spring he put his army in motion toward the territory of the Belgae. Surprising the Nervii with four legions, he ravaged their country with fire and sword. Returning to winter-quarters he called an assembly of the Gauls, to which all gathered except the Senones, Carnutes and Treveri. He overawed the first two of these tribes by a prompt advance against them, and accepting hostages from them, he turned in pursuit of Ambiorix, the destroyer of Sabinus and his legions. The rebel chief was in hiding among the Menapii, with whom Caesar had several scores to settle. Hastening thither, he built bridges, burnt villages, and carried off cattle and men. Ambiorix, however, escaped. Receiving the submission of the Menapii, he marched up the left bank of the Rhine to the support of Labienus, who was in pursuit of the Treveri. By a pretended flight they were drawn into an engagement in which they were defeated with great slaughter. In order to overawe the Germans, who had rendered aid to the Treveri on this occasion, Caesar built another bridge across the Rhine some distance above the place where he had made the first, and crossed in force. But the results were even less fruitful than on the former occasion. After a short stay among the Ubii, Caesar withdrew, broke down enough of the bridge to render it useless to the Germans, and marched through the Ardennes in search of Ambiorix, the capture of whom he thought of the highest importance to the success of his efforts for the subjugation of Gaul. The forces of the wily chief were defeated, but he still eluded all his pursuers. Caesar divided his army into three bodies to facilitate the pursuit, and left all the baggage in charge of Cicero at Aduatuca, the scene of the terrible slaughter of the troops of Sabinus. Cicero, in spite of Caesar's warnings, let his troops leave the camp on foraging expeditions. A body of German horsemen, who had crossed the Rhine on a predatory excursion, learned of the rich booty in Cicero's camp and of the carelessness of the Roman general. They accordingly-

ly made a sudden attack, which was repelled with great difficulty, leaving the Romans in a panic. Seven days after his departure Caesar returned, and restored the confidence of his men. Baffled in capturing Ambiorix, he turned upon the Eburones themselves, and with the assistance of their neighbors completely extirpated them. He then returned to the Senones and Carnutes and instituted an investigation of their revolt, which resulted in the condemnation to death of their chief Acco. Making such a strategic disposition of his forces as gave them control of the area of the revolt, Caesar repaired to Italy, where matters of great moment awaited his attention.

#### REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.

FROUDE: Caesar: A Sketch. pp. 240-252. (Harper's ed.).

TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. vii. (Ancient Classic Series).

MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. iv. pp. 321-323.

MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. i. chap. x. pp. 398-405.

NAPOLÉON: Julius Caesar, vol. ii. chap. ix,



## COMMENTARIUS SEXTUS,

*Caesar procures new troops from Italy.*

1. Multis dē causis Caesar māiōrem Galliae  
mōtum exspectāns per M. Silānum, C. Antistium  
Rēginum, T. Sextum lēgātōs dēlēctum habēre instituit: simul  
ab Cn. Pompēiō prōcōnsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem  
5 cum imperiō reipublicae causā remaneret, quōs ex Cisalpīnā  
Galliā cōsul sacrāmētō rogāvisset, ad signa convenire et ad  
sē proficisci iuberet, magni interesse etiam in reliquum tem-  
pus ad opīniōnem Galliae existimāns tantās vidērī Itāliae fac-  
ultātēs, ut, si quid esset in bellō dētrīmentī acceptum, nōn  
10 modo id brevī tempore sarcīrī, sed etiam māiōribus augērī  
cōpiis posset. Quod cum Pompēius et reipublicae et amicit-  
iae tribuisset, celeriter cōfectō per suōs dēlēctū tribus ante  
exāctam hiemem et cōstitutis et adductis legiōnibus duplicā-  
tōque eārum cohortium numerō, quās cum Q. Tituriō amīs-  
15 erat, et celeritātē et cōpiis docuit, quid populī Rōmānī discip-  
lina atque opēs possent.

*The Treveri again form an alliance against him.*

2. Interfectō Indutiomarō, ut docuimus, ad eius  
propinquos ā Trēveris imperium dēfertur. Illi  
finitimōs Germānōs sollicitāre et pecūniam pollicērī nōn dē-  
sistunt. Cum ab proximis impetrāre nōn possent, ūteriōrēs  
5 temptant. Inventis nōnnūllis civitatibus iūreiūrandō inter sē  
cōfirmant obsidibusque dē pecūniā cavent; Ambiorigem sibi  
societātē et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Cae-  
sar cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs, Aduātucōs,  
Menapiōs adiūctis Cisirhēnānīs omnibus Germānīs esse in

armīs, Senonēs ad imperātum nōn venīre et cum Carnūtibus 10  
fīnitimisque civitātibus cōsilia communicāre, ā Trēverīs  
Germānōs crēbris legātīonibus sollicitārī, mātūrius sibi dē  
bellō cōgitandum putāvit.

3. Itaque nōndum hieme cōfectā proximīs *Caesar deva-*  
quattuor coāctīs legiōnibus dē imprōvisō in finēs *states the*  
Nerviōrum contendit et, priusquam illī aut con- *country of*  
venīre aut prōfugere possent, magnō pecoris atque *the Nervii.*  
hominum numerō captō atque eā praedā militibus *After a con-*  
concessā vāstātisque agrīs in dēditionem venīre atque obsidēs *ference at*  
sibi dare cōēgit. Eō celeriter cōfectō negōtiō rūsus in hīb- *Lutetia*  
erna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae primō vēre, ut in- *(Paris), he*  
stituerat, indictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnūtēs Trē- *marches*  
werōsque vēnissent, initium bellī ac dēfectiōnis hōc esse ar- *against the*  
bitrātus, ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutētiam *Senones.* 5  
Parisiōrum trānsfert. Cōfinēs erant hī Senonibus civitatem-  
que patrum memoriā coniūxerant, sed ab hōc cōsiliō āfuisse  
exīstimābantur. Hāc rē prō suggestū prōnūtiātā eōdem diē  
cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficiscitur magnisque itineribus 15  
eō pervenit.

4. Cōgnitō eius adventū Accō, quī princeps *These submit;*  
eius cōsiliū fuerat, iubet in oppida multitudinem *also the Car-*  
convenīre. Cōnantibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse *nutes.*  
Rōmānōs nūtiātur. Necessariō sententiā dēsistunt legātōs-  
que dēprecandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt: adeunt per Aedu- 5  
ōs, quōrum antiquitus erat in fidē civitās. Libenter Caesar  
petentibus Aeduis dat veniam excūsātiōnemque accipit, quod  
aestivum tempus instantis bellī, nōn quaestiōnis esse arbitrāt-  
ur. Obsidibus imperātis centum hōs Aeduis custōdiendōs  
trādit. Eōdem Carnūtēs legātōs obsidēsque mittunt ūsī dēp- 10  
recātōribus Rēmīs, quōrum erant in clientēlā: eadem ferunt



respōsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat cīvī-  
tātibus.

*Caesar pro-  
ceeds against  
the Menapii.*

5. Hāc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus et mente et  
animō in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorigis insistit,  
Cavarinū cum equitātū Senonū sēcum proficisci iubet, nē  
quis aut ex hūius irācundiā aut ex eō, quod meruerat, od-  
iō cīvītātis mōtus exsistat. Hīs rēbus cōstitūtis, quod prō  
explōrātō habēbat Ambiorigem proeliō nōn esse contentūrum,  
reliqua eius cōsilia animō circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapii  
propinquī Eburōnum finibus, perpetuis palūdibus silvisque  
mūniti, quī ūnī ex Galliā dē pāce ad Caesarem lēgātōs num-  
10 quam miserant. Cum hīs esse hospitium Ambiorigī sciēbat;  
item per Trēverōs vēnisse Germānis in amicitiam cōgnōv-  
erat. Haec prius illi dētrahenda auxilia existimābat quam  
ipsum bellō lacesseret, nē dēspērātā salūte aut sē in Menap-  
iōs abderet aut cum Trānsrhēnānis congredi cōgerētur. Hōc  
15 initō cōsiliō tōtius exercitūs impedimenta ad Labiēnum in  
Trēverōs mittit duāsque legiōnēs ad eum proficisci iubet; ip-  
se cum legiōnibus expeditis quīnque in Menapiōs proficisci-  
tur. Illi nullā coāctā manū loci praesidiō frēti in silvās palūd-  
ēsque cōfugiunt suaque eōdem cōferunt.

*They sue for  
peace and  
give hostages.*

6. Caesar partitis cōpiis cum C. Fabiō lēgātō  
et M. Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectis pon-  
tibus adit tripertitō, aedificia vicōsque incendit, māgnō pec-  
oris atque hominum numerō potitur. Quibus rēbus coācti  
5 Menapii lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. Ille  
obsidibus acceptis hostium sē habitūrum numerō cōfirmat,  
sī aut Ambiorigem aut eius lēgātōs finibus suis recēpissent.  
Hīs cōfirmātis rēbus Commium Atrebatem cum equitātū  
custōdis locō in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Trēverōs proficis-  
10 citur.

7. Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī māg- *The Trevert  
plan to attack  
Labienus.  
His strategy.*  
nīs coāctīs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiīs Labiēnum  
cum ūnā legiōne, quae in eōrum finibus hiemāverat, adorīrī  
parābant, iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum  
duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positis cas- 5  
tris ā milibus passuum xv auxilia Germānōrum expectāre  
cōstituunt. Labiēnus hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō spērāns temer-  
itāte eōrum fore aliquam dīmīcandi facultātem, praesidiō quīn-  
que cohortium impedimentis relictō, cum vīgintī quīnque coh- 10  
ortibus māgnōque equitātū contrā hostem proficīscitur et mille  
passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter La-  
biēnum atque hostem difficili trānsitū flūmen rīpīsque prae-  
ruptis. Hōc neque ipse trānsīre habēbat in animō neque  
hostēs trānsitūrōs existimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotī-  
diē spēs. Loquitur [in cōnsiliō] palam, quoniam Germānī 15  
appropīnquāre dicantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fōrtūnās in  
dubium nōn dēvocātūrum et posterō diē primā lūce castra  
mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex māgnō  
Gallōrum equitum numerō nōnnūllōs Gallicīs rēbus favēre  
nātūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus noctū tribūnīs militum primīsque 20  
ōrdinibus convocātis, quid suī sit cōnsiliū, prōpōnit et, quō  
facilius hostibus timōris det suspiciōnem, māiōre strepitū et  
tumultū, quam populī Rōmānī fert cōnsuetūdō, castra mōvērī  
iubet. His rēbus fūgae similem profectiōnem effēcit. Haec  
quoque per explōrātōrēs ante lūcem id tantā propīnquitāte 25  
castrōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

8. Vix āgmen novissimum extrā mūnitiōnēs *He lures them  
to an unfa-  
vorable pos-  
ition and ut-  
terly defeats  
them.*  
prōcesserat, cum Galli cohortātī inter sē, nē spērā-  
tam praedam ex manibus dīmīterent: longum esse  
perterritis Rōmānīs Germānōrum auxilium expectāre, neque  
suam patī dignitātem, ut tantīs cōpiīs tam exiguam manum

praesertim fugientem atque impeditam adoriri nōn audeant, flūmen trānsire et iniquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādem ūsus simulatiōne itineris placidē prōgrediēbatur. <sup>10</sup> Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumultō quōdam collocatis, 'Habētis,' inquit, 'militēs, quam petistis, facultatem: hostem impeditō atque iniquō locō tenētis: praestāte eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam saepenumero imperatori praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec coram <sup>15</sup> cernere existimate.' Simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque dirigi iubet et paucis turmis praesidio ad impedimenta dimissis reliquos equites ad latera disponit. Celeriter nostri clamore sublato pila in hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi praeter spem, quos modo fugere credēbant, infestis signis ad se ire <sup>20</sup> viderunt, impetum ferre nōn potuerunt ac primo concursu in fugam coniecti proximās silvas petierunt. Quos Labiēnus equitatu consecutus magnō numero interfecto, compluribus captis paucis post diebus civitatem recepit. Nam Germani, qui auxilio veniebant, percepta Treverorum fugā sese domum <sup>25</sup> recepērunt. Cum his propinqui Indutiomari, qui defectionis auctores fuerant, comitati eos ex civitate excesserunt. Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum.

*Second passage of the Rhine. Caesar receives the submission of the Ubii and plans to go against the Suebi.*

5

9. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit; quarum una erat, quod auxilia contra se Treveris miserant, altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus paulum supra eum locum, quo ante exercitum traduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Nota atque instituta ratione magnō militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio

relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant at-<sup>10</sup> que in dēditionem vēnerant, purgandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt, quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitate in Trēverōs mīssa neque ab sē fidem laesam: petunt atque ōrant, ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit dari,<sup>15</sup> pollicentur. Cōgnitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia mīssa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquirit.

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs *The Suebi retire within the forest Bacenis.* certior Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque iīs nātiōnibus, quae sub eōrum sint imperiō, dēnūntiāre, ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cōgnitis rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum deli-<sup>5</sup> git; Ubiīs imperat, ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperitōs hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs ad inīquam pūgnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī, mandat, ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant. Illī<sup>10</sup> imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt: Suēbōs omnēs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiīs, quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse: silvam esse ibi infīnitā māgnitudine, quae appellātur<sup>15</sup> Bacēnis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre et prō nātivō mūrō obiectam Cherūscōs ab Suēbīs Suēbōsque ab Cherūscīs iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre: ad eius initium silvae Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōstituisse.

*Contrast of  
Gaullo and  
German cus-  
toms.*

*Existence of  
two parties in  
Gaul.*

5

10

*The leading  
tribes: the  
Aedui, Sequa-  
ni, Remi.*

6. *factiō, -ōnis, [faciō], f., making, doing: combination. party, faction. \**

8. *arbitrium, -i [arbitr, judge], n., decision or judgment of the*

*arbitr; opinion, discretion, pleasure. 3*

11. *egēō, egēre, egui, a., need, want, lack; be without or destitute. 2*

1. *locum*: as the military movements of this campaign were comparatively unimportant, Caesar introduces at this point an interesting account of the life and manners of the Gauls and Germans.

4. *omnibus civitatibus*: for the number see Int. 68.

6. *singulis domibus*: some members of a family being the supporters of one chief, others of his rival. *factionēs*: see Int. 69.

7. *eōrum*: the commons.

8. *quōrum*: the chiefs (*principēs*).

9. *redeat, is referred. eius rei*: explained by the clause *nē . . . egēret*.

11, 12. *auxilii*: for the case see A. 223; G. 405, N. 2; H. 410 V., 1; B. 212.

What case usually follows such verbs? *quisque*: i. e., each chief. *opprimi . . . patitur*: i. e., his position obliged him to protect his dependents.

13, 14. *in summā, in general. tōtius Galliae*: depends upon *ratio*, for case cf. IV, 16, 16. *partēs duās*: i. e., national parties headed by the Druids and nobles respectively: see Int. 78.

1, 2. *vēnit*: in 58 B. C. *alterius . . . Sēquanī*: cf. I, 31, 10, *alterius Arvernōs*. The Arverni preceded the Sequani in the leadership of

cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Aeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē māgnīs iactūris pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliis vērō complūribus factis secundis atque omnī nōbilitate Aeduōrum interfectā tantum potentiā antecesserant, ut māgnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab iis principum filiōs acciperent et publicō iūrāre cōgerent, nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōsiliū initūrōs, et partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitate adductus Diviciacus auxiliū petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus imperfectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commutātiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlis restitutīs, novīs per Cae-

4. **clientēla, -ae** [cliēns, a client], *r.*, the relation of client and patron; patronage, vassalage; dependents, vassals. 5  
6. **iactūra, -ae** [iaciō, throw], *r.*, throwing away; loss, expense. 4

10. **iūrō, 1.** [iūs, right], *n.*, swear one's rights, take an oath, swear. 2  
14. **Rōma, -ae, r.**, Rome. 3  
**imperfectus, -a, -um** [faciō], not made or done, unaccomplished. 1

this faction.

3. **antīquitus**: before the time when the Romans began to support the Aedui against the Arverni: see Int. 79.

4. **māgnae, numerous. clientēlae**: among these were the Bellovaci, Bituriges, Senones and Segusiavi.

6. **iactūris pollicitātiōnibus**: cf. the assertion of Ariovistus in I, 44, 5, *māgnis praemiis*.

7. **nōbilitate . . . interfectā**: cf. what Diviciacus says in I, 31, 18, 19.

8. **potentiā**: for ease cf. V, 14, 7; III, 8, 4; II, 17, 14; I, 48, 12.

10, 11. **nihil . . . initūrōs**: cf.

the more definite statement in I, 31, 23-26.

12. **occupātam**: trans. by a relative clause, *which had been* etc.

14. **Rōmam profectus**: in 63 B. C. **imperfectā rē**, *without accomplishing his purpose*. The senate was busily engaged in investigating the conspiracy of Catiline, and did not give him a definite answer.

15. **commutātiōne, a change** in the political relations of the parties, resulting from the defeat of Ariovistus; cf. I, 51-53.

16, 17. **novīs (sc. clientēlis) . . . comparātis**: give an example from I, 28, 14 ff.

sarem comparātis, quod hī, quī sē ad eōrum amicitiam aggre-  
gāverant, meliōre condiōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūti  
vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā,  
20 Sequānī principātum dīmiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī  
successerant: quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā in-  
tellegēbātur, ii, quī propter veterēs inimicitias nūllō modō  
cum Aeduīs coniungī poterant, sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicā-  
bant. Hōs illī diligenter tuēbantur: ita et novam et repente  
25 collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tum statū rēs erat, ut  
longē principēs habērentur Aeduī, secundum locum dignitātis  
Rēmī obtinērent.

*Two classes of  
nobility: the  
Knights and  
Druids.*

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum, quī aliquō  
sunt numerō atque honōre, genera sunt duo. Nam  
plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē,  
nūllō adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plerīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut  
5 māgnitudine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur,  
sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus, quibus in hōs eadem om-  
nia sunt iūra, quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus

22. inimicitia, -ae [amicitia,  
friendship], r., enmity, hostility. 1

23. dicō, 1. proclaim; consecrate,  
devote, assign, give over. 2

25. status, -ūs, m., position, con-

dition, station. 3

5. tribūtum, -ī [tribuō, assign],  
n., tribute. 2

7. dominus, -ī, m., ruler, lord,  
master. 1

17. eōrum = *Aeduōrum*.

18. sē ūti, *that they enjoyed*.

19. reliquīs rēbus, *by all other  
means*: in addition to the means  
mentioned above.

20. Rēmī: see on II, 3, 2 and 4.

21. adaequāre: sc. the object,  
*Aeduōs*. How is the verb intellegē-  
bātur used here?

24, 25. repente collēctam: i.  
e., within the five years since Cae-  
sar's arrival. tum: in 53 B. C.

26. habērentur, *were regarded*.

3. plēbēs: see Int. 76.

4. aere aliēnō: in early times  
the lower classes were always more  
or less in debt to the higher orders.  
This fact has been explained as be-  
ing due to the absorption of capi-  
tal by the nobles, to whom the toil-  
ers had to apply for means to pur-  
chase the necessary implements for  
working the land.

5. iniūriā potentiōrum: cf. 11,  
10, *contrā potentiōrem*.

6. quibus, for case (so *dominīs*,  
1. 7) cf. IV, 8, 2; III, 13, 14; II,  
15, 10.

generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illi rēbus  
 divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata pro- <sup>Power of the</sup>  
 cūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur: ad eōs māgnus adulēscen- <sup>Druids.</sup>  
 tium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrīt, māgnōque hī sunt  
 apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis publicis  
 privātisque cōstituunt, et sī quod est admissum facinus, sī cae-  
 dēs facta, sī dē hērēditātē, dē finibus contrōversia est, idē dē-  
 cernunt, praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; sī quī aut privātus aut  
 populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec  
 poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum,  
 hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dē-  
 cēdunt, aditum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgi-  
 ōne incommodī accipiunt, neque hīs petentibus iūs redditur <sup>20</sup>

8. druidēs, -um, m., the Druids, an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain. \*

9. sacrificiū, -ī [sacrificō, offer sacrifice], n., a sacrifice. 4

pro-cūrō, 1. [cūrō, care for], a., take care of, attend to; expiate or avert (evil) by sacrifice. 1

10. interpretor, 1. [interpretēs, an interpreter], a., explain, expound, determine. 1

12. contrōversia, -ae [contrō, fr. cōtrā+versus, turned], f., dispute, quarrel, controversy. \*

13. caedēs, -is [caedō, cut], f., cutting; (of persons) slaughter, massacre, murder. \*

14. hērēditās, -tātis [hēres, an heir], f., heirship, inheritance; an inheritance. 1

16. dēcrētum, -ī [dēcernō, de-

oide], n., decision, decree, order. 3

stō, stāre, steti, status, n., stand. 4

18. impius, -a, -um [pius, dutiful], undutiful, impious, wicked. 1

scelerātus, -a, -um [scelus, crime], stained with crime, reprobate, accursed. 2

dē-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [cēdō, go], n., go away, withdraw, depart from. 5

19. sermō, -ōnis [serō, connect], m., connected words; conversation, discourse. 8

dē-fugiō, -ere, fūgī [fugiō, flee], flee away from, shun, avoid. 1

contāgiō, -ōnis [cum + tangō, touch], f., touching, contact; noxious contact, contagion; contamination, pollution. 1

8. druidum: see Int. 72-75. The word is commonly derived from *drūs*, oak. The religious services of the Druids were held in oak-groves. intersunt, officiate at, the word denoting active participation.

11, 12. hī: the Druids. eōs: the common people.

13. sī...admissum, if any crime has been committed.

16. sacrificiis interdicunt: a form of excommunication.



neque hōnōs ūllus commūnicātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctoritatem. Hōc mortuō aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitate, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōnumquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnūtum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōnsidunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētis iūdicīisque parent. Disciplina in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trāslāta esse exīstimātur, et nunc, quī diligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt, plērumque illō discendi causā proficiscuntur.

*Their privileges and doctrines.*

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt, militiae vacatiōnem omniumque rērum habent immunitatem. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplinam conveniunt et ā parentibus propīnquīsque mittuntur. Māgnū ibi

23. excellō, -ere, celsus, a., n., be eminent or superior, surpass, excel. 1

24. suffrāgium, -ī, n., ballot, vote, suffrage; decision, judgment, election. 2

27. cōsecrō, 1. [sacrō, dedicate], dedicate, consecrate. 2

30. trāns-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, carry across, transfer. 3

31. illō, adv. [ille, that], to that

place, thither, there. 2

2. militia, -ae [mīles, soldier].

r., military service, warfare. 3

vacatiō, -ōnis [vacō, be without].

r., freedom, exemption, immunity. 1

3. immunitās, -tātis [im-mūnis without duty], r., freedom from public services or charges, immunity. 1

27. locō: this place was probably on the site of the town of Dreux.

28, 29. dēcrētis, iūdicīis: for case cf. V, 19, 13; IV, 27, 12; III, 14, 3; II, 16, 6 (his); I, 25, 20.

31. illō: the center of the Druid worship in Britain was on the island of Anglesey.

2. militiae vacatiōnem: the instance of the Druid Diviciacus proves that a military life was not outside of the range of choice of a Druid. tantīs, these great: lit., so great (as these).

4. praemiīs: i. e., the privileges mentioned in the preceding sentence.

numerus versuum ediscere dicuntur. Itaque annos nonnulli vicenos in disciplina permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis ferere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in<sup>10</sup> vulgum disciplinam efferri velint, neque eos, qui discunt, litteris confisos minus memoriae studere; quod ferere plerisque accidit, ut praesidio litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. Imprimis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios,<sup>15</sup> atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de

6. **versus -us** [vertō, turn], *M.*, turning; a verse of poetry; a line of writing. 1

**ē-discō, -ere, didici** [discō, learn], *a.*, learn in detail or by heart; learn. 1

7. **vicēni, -ae, -a**, *distr. num. adj.* [viginti, twenty], twenty each, twenty. 1

13. **per-discō, -ere, didici** [discō], *a.*, learn thoroughly, get by

heart, know well. 1

15. **inter-eō, ire, ī (īvi), itus** [eō, go], *n.*, go among a crowd and so be lost; be lost, perish; fall in battle, be slain. \*

**anima, -ae, f.**, breath, life, soul. 1

17. **sidus, -eris, n.**, star, constellation, heavenly body. 1

18. **mundus, -i** [mundus, well ordered], *M.*, the universe world. 1

9. **rationibus**: e. g., in public registers: see on I, 29, 2. **utantur**: for mood cf. IV, 12, 3; III, 7, 4; I, 26, 6. *id*: i. e., neque . . . mandare, use written notes.

10-12. **in vulgum . . . velint**: the Roman patricians, too, guarded very jealously their exclusive privileges in connection with the state religion. **vulgum**: cf. the similar phrase in I, 46, 9, and explain the difference in form. **disciplinam**: including the knowledge of the sacred chants and formulae, which

gave men access to the gods. **eos . . . studere**: depends upon *velint*. **litteris**: for case cf. *iudiciis* 13, 29. **minus studere**, pay less attention to.

14. **hoc**: introduces the following infinitive clauses. **persuadere, convince** (men) of this.

15. **ab aliis . . . ad alios**: the doctrine of the transmigration of souls. It is not known whence the Druids derived it. The burial customs of the Gauls indicate that this was not the belief of the masses.

deōrum immortalīum vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūti  
20trādunt.

*The knights.  
Their war-  
like habits.*

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est  
ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante  
Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsi  
iniuriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō  
5 versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque  
amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque  
habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.

*Religion. Hu-  
man sacrific-  
es.*

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdi-  
ta religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt  
affectī graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliis periculisque  
versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immo-  
5 lātūrōs vovent administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus

19. dis-putō, 1. [putō, think], a.,  
think over; debate about, dis-  
cuss. 1

3. solēō, -ēre, solitus sum, n.,  
be wont, be accustomed.

4. prōpulsō, 1. [freq. of prō-  
pellō, drive forth or away], a.,  
drive forth or off, drive back,  
repel. 2

6. ambactus, -ī, (a celtic word,)  
m., one led around; dependent,  
retainer, vassal. 1

3. morbus, -ī, m., sickness, dis-  
ease, malady. 2

4. victima, -ae [vitta, the fillet  
placed about the head of sacrificial  
victims], f., sacrifice, victim. 1  
immolō, 1. [mola, the meal  
sprinkled over victims], a., sprin-  
kle sacrificial meal; sacrifice, im-  
molate. 3

5. vōveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, a., n.,  
devote, vow. 1  
ad-minister, -tri, m., assistant, at-  
tendant; priest. 1

1. alterum genus: cf. 13, 7, 8.  
equitum: the Gallic knights, form-  
ing with the Druids the nobility.

2, 3. quod . . . quotannis . . .  
solēbat: see Int. 70.

6. ambactōs, retainers: a class  
of hired servants, intermediate be-  
tween slaves and clients.

7. nōvērunt: for force of the  
tense see on I, 19, 11.

1. nātiō . . . dēdita, the Gallic  
race is entirely devoted.

3. graviōribus; i. e., such as

would not yield to the simple re-  
medies of the Druids.

4. hominēs immolant: there  
seem to have been two kinds of hu-  
man sacrifice, first, the immolation  
of prisoners of war in honor of the  
Gallic gods corresponding to Mar-  
s and Mercury; second, the offering  
of the lives of criminals in honor  
of Saturn. These sacrifices—of  
which Caesar gives us no instance  
coming under his own observation  
—appear to have ceased entirely  
after the conquest.

ūtuntur, quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen placārī arbitrantur, publicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī māgnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vivīs hominibus complent; quibus suc-<sup>10</sup> cēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum, quī in fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī, grātiōra dīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis cōpia dēfēcit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

15

17. Deum māmīmē Mercurium colunt: hūius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem

*The deities.  
Their attrib-  
utes.*

7. nūmen, -inis, n., divine will or power, divinity, deity. 1

plācō, 1. a., reconcile; appease, pacify, placate. 1

9. simulācrum, -ī [simulō, make like], n., image, figure, statue. 2

10. vivus, -a, -um [vivō, live], alive, living. 5

succendō, -ere, cendī, cēnsus, [candeō, glow], a., set on fire from below, kindle. \*

11. flamma, -ae, f., blaze, fire, flame. 2

12. fūrtum, -ī [fūr, a thief], n., theft, robbery. 1

latrōcinium, -ī [latrō, robber], n., robbery, brigandage, bandit war. 3

noxia, -ae [noceō, injure], f., injury, crime, offence. 1

13. grātus, -a, um, pleasing, agreeable. 2

14. in-nocēns, -entis [noceō], not injuring, harmless, innocent: in pl. as subst., the blameless or upright. 2

15. dē-scendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus [scandō, climb], a., climb or go down, descend; have recourse to, resort. 5

1. Mercurius, -ī, m., Mercury, the messenger of the gods: the god of eloquence, of roads, of traders and thieves, the bestower of prosperity. 1

2. inventor, -ōris [in-veniō, come upon], m., inventor, discoverer, author. 1

9, 10. simulācra: colossal statues in the form of men. quōrum... complent, whose limbs, formed of interwoven osiers, they fill with living men. hominibus: for the case see A. 248 c 2; G. 405; H. 421, II; B. 218, 8.

12, 13. sint comprehēnsī: for the mood cf. V, 23, 7; IV, 2, 2; (vēndant); III, 4, 2; II, 35, 3; I, 6, 4.

1. Mercurium: the Gallic Teutates, the German Woden, the worship of whom was general throughout Europe.

2. simulācra: not statues, but symbolic representations. Statues of the gods did not appear in Gaul until the time of the Roman occupation.

artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habere vim māximam ar-  
 5 bitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtē et Iovem et Minervam. Dē his eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opiniōem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtē bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō  
 10 dīmīcāre cōstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēperint, plērumque dēvovent: cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multis in civitatibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locis cōsecrātis cōspicārī

3. *ars, artis, f., skill, art; artifice.* 1

4. *quaestus, -ūs [quaerō, seek to gain], m., gaining, acquiring, acquisition, profit.* 1

*pecūnia, -ae, f., property, wealth; money.* \*

*mercātūra, -ae [mercor, purchase], f., trade, commerce.* 1

5. *Apollō, -inis, m., Apollo, son of Jupiter and Latona, god of the sun; god of divination, healing, music, poetry etc.* 1

*Mārs, -tis, m., Mars, the god of war, of husbandry, of shepherds, of seers; fig., battle, war.* 2

*Iuppiter (Iūpiter), Iovis [Iovis-*

*pater], m., Jupiter (Jove,) the chief Roman deity, father of gods and men, god of the heavens and air.* 1

6. *Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, the goddess of wisdom, identical with the Greek Athene, the goddess of the arts and sciences.* 1

8. *artificium, -ī [artifex, artificer], n., a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick.* 2

9. *caelestis, -e [caelum, heaven], heavenly, divine, celestial; in pl. as subst., celestial beings or objects.* 1

11. *animal, -ālis [animus, breath of life], n., a living creature, animal.* 2

3, 4. *viārum . . . ducem: i. e., the god points out the way (viārum) and brings the traveller to his destination (itinerum). ad quaestūs pecūniae, for acquiring wealth, by banking, loaning money. pecūniae: for case cf. IV, 28, 9; II, 24, 12; I, 14, 8. mercātūrās: gains from the sale of merchandise.*

5. *Apollinem: Apollo was probably identical with the Gallic god Belen, Mars with Esus or He-*

*sus, Jupiter with Taranis, god of thunder (Celtic taran=thunder). The name of the divinity corresponding to Minerva is not known.*

6. *reliquae gentēs: e. g., the Greeks and Romans.*

11, 12. *dēvovent: cf. sē immolātūros vovent, 16, 4. animālia: both man and beast. reliquās rēs: i. e., the portion consecrated to the gods.*

licet; neque saepe accidit, ut negligētā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere auderet, gravis-<sup>1</sup> 5  
simumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

18. Galli sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs *Their reputed origin. Reckoning of time. Respect for fathers.* praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōnnume-  
rō diērum, sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant, ut noctem diēs subsequatur. <sup>5</sup>  
In reliquīs vitae īstitutīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēverunt, ut mūnus militiae sustin-  
ere possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur filiumque pue-  
rilī aetate in pūblicō in cōspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt. <sup>10</sup>

14. quispiam, quae-piam, quid-  
(quod-) piam, *indef. pron.*, any one, anything, any. 2

1. Dis, Dītis, *m.*, Dis, the Greek Pluto, brother of Jupiter and Neptune, and god of the infernal regions, the realm of darkness and night. 1

4. nātālis, -e [nātus, born], pertaining to birth: diēs, birthday. 1

5. ob-servō, 1. [servō, give heed], a., heed, observe, mark, cele-

brate. 4

7. ad-olēscō, -ere, olēvī, ultus [*incept. of ad-oleō*, cause to grow], *n.*, grow up, reach maturity or man's estate. 1

mūnus, -eris, *n.*, service, duty, burden. 3

8. palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly. 3  
puerilis, -e [puer, child], childish, boyish, youthful. 1

9. as (ad-)sistō, -ere, stitī [sis-tō, stand], *n.*, stand (by or near). 1

15. capta . . . occultāre: cf. the crime of Achan and its punishment (Josh. 7).

16. supplicium: the punishments of the Gauls were exceedingly severe, that by fire being the most common.

1. Dīte . . . prōgnātōs, *sprang from the god of night*, i. e., apparently, aborigines. Cf. V, 12, 2, nātōs in insulā.

3, 4. nōn numerō . . . finiunt: so also the Greeks, Germans, and

Jews. The Welsh call a week "eight nights." Our "fortnight" and "se'en-night" show the same usage.

4. mēnsium: the months began with the first quarter of the moon.

5. subsequatur: i. e., the Gauls counted their days from sunset to sunset.

6. ab reliquīs: sc. populīs: e. g. the Romans and the Greeks.

8. palam . . . adire, to approach them in public.

10. dūcunt: for trans. cf. I, 3, 7.

*Dowries.*

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur fructūsque servantur: uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorū  
 5 *Power of husbands.* temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs, sicutī in liberōs, vitāe necisque habent potestātem; et cum paterfamiliae illūstriore locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem venit, dē uxōribus in servilem  
 10 modum quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt *Funeral rites.* prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; om-

1. dōs, dōtis [dō, give], *r.*, a marriage gift or portion, dowry. 2
2. aestimātiō, -ōnis [aestimō, value, reckon], *r.*, valuation. 1
3. con-iūctim [iungō, join], *adv.*, jointly, unitedly, in common. 1
4. fructus, -ūs, *m.*, enjoyment; fruit, crops; profit. 4
7. paterfamiliāe, patrisfamiliāe [pater], *m.*, head of a family, householder. 2
8. il (in-)lūstris, -e [lūstrō, purify, illumine], illumined, resplendent; distinguished, illustrious. 3

9. servilis, -e [servus, slave], of or like a slave, servile. 2
10. quaestiō, -ōnis [quaerō, inquire], *r.*, an inquiry, investigation, examination. 5
11. ex-cruciō, 1. [cruciō, torture], *a.*, torture greatly, torment, rack. 3
- fūnus, -eris [Sancr., *dhv.*, burn], *n.*, funeral rites, funeral, burial. 2
12. magnificus, -a, -um [māgnus + faciō], splendid, grand, magnificent. 1
- sūmptuōsus, -a, -um [sūmptus, expense], expensive, sumptuous, lavish. 1

1. virī etc., whatever property husbands have received from their wives as dowry.

2, 3. tantās... commūnicant: in like manner the Roman husband often gave a *dōnātiō propter nūptiās* to meet the dōs of his wife.

4. ratiō habētur, an account is kept.

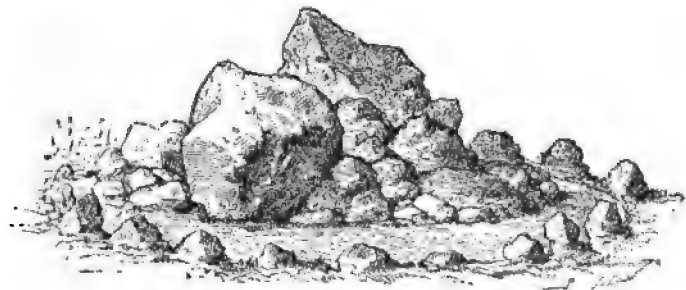
5. eum: the survivor.

7. vitāe... potestātem: the Roman husband had legally the same power.

9, 10. in servilem modum: i. e., under torture, which was the Roman method of examining slaves. sī (scelus) compertum est, if their guilt is established.

11. fūnera: the burning of the dead was not the only method used by the Gauls. Livy tells us that the Cisalpine Gauls buried their dead, and tombs have been found in Transalpine Gaul, whose contents indicate that they were anterior to the time of Caesar.

nīaque, quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprà hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab iīs dilēctōs esse cōstābat, iūstīs fūnebris<sup>15</sup> cōfectīs unā cremābantur.



GALLIC BURIAL MOUND

20. Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem publicam administrāre existimantur, habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē publicā ā finitimīs rumōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque im-

*Management  
of state af-  
fairs.*

13. **cor, cordis**, *n.*, the heart, *esp.* as the seat of the passions and affections: **cordi esse**, be dear. 1

15. **diligō, -ere, lēxi, lēctus** [**dis- + legō**, choose], *a.*, single or choose out, esteem highly, love, be attached to. \*

**fūnebris, -e** [**fūnus**, a funeral] of a

funeral: *in neut. pl. as subst.*, funeral rites. 1

3. **sanciō, -ire, sānxi, sānctus** [*cf. sacer*, sacred], *a.*, make sacred or inviolable, ordain, ratify, sanction.

5. **temerārius, -a, -um** [**temerē**, by chance], imprudent, rash, indiscreet. 2

13. **vīvīs cordī fuisse**, were dear to them when alive. The graves which have been opened contained vases, jars, rings, armor, etc. **cordi**: a dative of purpose.

14. **animālia**: the bones of hunting dogs and horses have been found in Gallic tombs. **suprà hanc memoriam**, before our time.

1. **civitātēs**: attraction of the the antecedent. **commodius**: the Gauls were often controlled in their public measures by mere rumors; *cf. IV, 5, 9, his rebus atque auditiōnibus*.

3, 4. **quis, quid, quō**: signif. after *sī* and *nēve*?



peritōs falsis rumōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quaeque esse ex ūsū iudicāvērunt, multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē publicā nisi per concilium loquī  
 10 nōn concēditur.

*The different  
 customs of the  
 Germans.  
 Religion, Dis-  
 cipline of  
 youth.*

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine dif-  
 ferunt. Nam neque druidēs habent, quī rēbus dī-  
 vīnīs praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum  
 numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt, quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opi-  
 5 bus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam, reliquōs nē fāmā  
 quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in  
 studiīs rei militāris cōsistit: ā parvīs labōrī ac dūritiae stu-  
 dent. Quī diūtissimē impūberēs permānsērunt, māximam in-  
 ter suōs ferunt laudem: hōc alī stātūrā, alī virēs nervōsque

6. falsus, -a, -am [*p. p. of fallō*,  
 deceive], deceived; false, un-  
 founded. 1

terreō, 2. a., frighten, alarm, ter-  
 rify. 4

4. cernō, -ere, crēvī, certus, a.,  
 separate; discern, distinguish,  
 perceive. \*

apertē [apertus, open], adv., open-

ly, manifestly. 2

5. Vulcānus (Vol-), -ī, m., Vul-  
 can, the god of fire and metals;  
 fig., fire. 1

7. dūritia, -ae [dūrus, hard], f.,  
 hardness, hardship. 1

8. impūbēs, -eris [pūbēs, adult],  
 immature, young; unmarried,  
 chaste. 1

8, 9. quaeque . . . prōdunt,  
*whatever they decide is advantageous,*  
*they lay before the people.* per con-  
 ciliū: i. e., in a formal meeting  
 of the tribe.

2. neque druidēs habent: while  
 the Germans had a priesthood, it  
 did not enjoy the exclusive privi-  
 leges or the political power of the  
 Druids.

3. sacrificiīs student: from  
 Tacitus we learn that they did sac-  
 rifice to their gods. It is probably

true, however, that they were not  
 so religious by nature as the Gauls;  
 cf. 16, 1, *natiō dedita religionibus*.

4. quōs etc.: i. e., a simple na-  
 ture worship. opibūs: such as  
 heat, cold, and light.

5, 6. reliquōs . . . accēpērunt:  
 but Tacitus, who is a better author-  
 ity on the Germans than Caesar,  
 names Mercury, Mars and Hercules  
 as their principal deities. Mercury  
 is identified with Woden or Odin.

7. cōsistit, *is spent*.

cōfirmārī putant. Intrā annum vērō vicēsimum fēminae nō-<sup>10</sup> titiam habuisse in turpissimīs habent rēbus: cūius rei nūlla est occultātiō, quod et prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur et pel- libus aut parvis rēnōnum tegimentīs ūtuntur magnā corporis parte nūdā.

22. Agricultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars *Agriculture. Community of land.* eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiō- nibusque hominum, quī ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō <sup>5</sup> vīsum est agrī attribuunt atque annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt. Eius rei multās afferunt causās; nē assiduā cōnsuetūdine capti,

10. vicēsimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [vīgintī], the twen- tieth. 1

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, a female, *esp. a* woman. 2

nōtia, -ae [nōtus, known], *f.*, celebrity, fame; acquaintance with, knowledge. 2

12. occultātiō, -ōnis [occultō, conceal], *f.*, concealing, conceal- ment. 1

prōmiscuē, [prōmiscuus, in com- mon], *adv.*, promiscuously, indis- criminately, in common. 1

per-luō, luere, luī, lūtus [luō, wash], *a., n.*, wash, lave, bathe. 1

13. rēnō, -ōnis, *m.*, a deer-skin; fur cloak made of reindeer skins. 1

2. victus, -ūs [vivō, live]. *m.* living; means of living, food, victuals. 4

cāseus, -i, *m.*, cheese. 1

3. proprius, -a, -um, one's own, peculiar, individual. 2

4. cōgnātiō, -ōnis [cō-gnātus, connected by birth], *f.*, blood relationship; kinsman; family, clan. 2

5. co-eō, ire, ii (ivī), itus [eō], *n.*, go or come together, assem- ble, meet, unite. 1

6. aliō, *adv.* [old dative of alius], to another place, elsewhere. 1

7. assiduus (ad-), -a, -um [se- deō, sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant. 3

12. occultātiō, means of hiding.

1, 2. agricultūrae nōn student: i. e., in comparison with the Gauls they paid little attention to it. Tacitus says that the cultivation of the soil was left to women and old men. māiorque . . . cōnsistit: cf. IV, 1, 15. This is confirmed by Tacitus.

3, 4. finēs propriōs, individual lands; see on IV, 1, 14 privati agri. magistrātūs, principēs: what is the distinction between these? in annōs etc., assign each year to the families and kinsmen and those who have assembled with them as much land, in any locality, as they see fit.

7. rei, practice, custom. affe- runt: i. e., the Germans themselves.

studium belli gerendi agricultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant, potentiōrēsque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē quā oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

*Social and military organization.*

23. Cīvitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlitūdīnēs habēre. Hōc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cedere, neque quemquam prope audere cōsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiorēs arbitrantur, repentināe incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs, quī eī bellō praesint, ut vitāe necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiā, quae extrā finēs cūiusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe minuendae causā fierī praedicant.

10. accūrātō (ad-) [accūrātus, carefully done], *adv.*, carefully, with care, elaborately. 1

12. dissēsiō, -ōnis [dis-sentiō, think differently], *r.*, disagreement, dissension. 5

aequitās, -tātis [aequus, equal], *r.*, equality, uniformity; impar-

tiality, fairness, equity. 1

10. infāmia, -ae [infāmis, of ill repute], *r.*, ill-repute, disgrace, degradation.

12. exerceō, 2. [arceō, ward or drive off], *a.*, drive forward, engage busily; practice, train, exercise. \*

8. agricultūrā: see on *pretiō* I, 18, 9.

12. animī aequitāte, in a contented frame of mind.

1. māxima laus etc., cf. IV, 3, 1.

3. proprium virtūtis, a mark of valor. expulsōs etc.: translate by coordinate clauses.

6. dēfendit, *repels*.

9. regiōnum, pāgōrum: some authorities make the first refer to the territory, the second to the inhabitants; others consider the *pāgus* a subdivision of the *regiō*.

10. minuunt, *settle*. latrōcinia ... infāmiā: this opinion was universal among primitive peoples.

Atque ubi quis ex principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint, prōfiteantur, cōnsurgunt iī, quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā mul-<sup>15</sup> titūdine collaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt, in dēser- tōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quāque dē causā ad eōs vērunt, ab iniuriā prohibent, sanc- tōs habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque com-<sup>20</sup> mūnicātur.

24. Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germānōs Galli *Decadence of the Gauls. Military superiority of the Germans.* virtūte superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum coloniās mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Era-<sup>5</sup> tosteni et quibusdam Graecis famā notam esse video, quam

dēsidia, -ae [sedeō, sit], *r.*, sitting still; inactivity, indolence. 1

14. prōfiteor, -eri, fessus sum [fatiōr, confess], *a., n.*, confess publicly, avow or declare one's purpose. 4

cōn-surgo, -ere, surrēxi, surrēctus [surgō, rise], *n.*, arise together or in a body, rise up; of a session, break up. 2

16. dēsertor, -ōris [dē-serō, abandon], *m.*, a deserter. 1

17. prōditōr, -ōris [prō-dō, betray], *m.*, betrayer, traitor. 1

18. dē-rogō, 1. [rōgō, ask], *a.*, modify a law; detract from, take away, withdraw. 1

violō, 1. [vīs, violence], *a.*, injure, outrage, violate. 2

4. colōnia, -ae [colōnus, a husbandman], *r.*, a colony; abstract for concrete, colonists, planters. 1

fertilis, -e [ferō, bear], fruitful, fertile, productive. 2

5. Hercynius, -a, -um, Hercynian: silva, the Hercynian forest, the mountain country of Germany extending from the Black Forest to the Bohemian Highlands. 2

Eratosthenēs, -is, *m.*, a distinguished Greek astronomer, philosopher, geographer, and poet, born at Cyrene, B. C. 276; died at Alexandria, B. C. 196. 1

13. sē ducem fore: i. e., of some piratical expedition.

14. quī... prōfiteantur, let any who wish to follow volunteer; an indirect quotation of the challenge

of the leader.

16. ex hīs: those who have thus publicly pledged their support.

17, 18. omnium rērum fidēs, all confidence.

illi Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāverunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt: quae gēns ad hōc tempus his sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis 10 opiniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādē inopiā, egestatē, patientiā, quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdē victū et cultū corporis utuntur, Gallis autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et transmarinārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largitur, paulatim assuēfactī superārī multisque victi proeliis nē sē 15 quidem ipsī cum illis virtūte comparant.

*Extent of the  
Hercynian  
forest. Its  
fauna.*

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprà dēmōnstrāta est, lātitudō novem diērum iter expeditō patet: nōn enim aliter finiri potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōverunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et

7. *Orcynia*, -ae, adj., f., a Greek name for the Hercynian forest. 1

Volcae, -ārum, m., a people of southern Gaul, including the Aremici and Tectosages. 3

Tectosagēs, -um, m., a branch of the Volcae in Gallia Narbonensis. 1

9. *bellicus*, -a, -um [bellum], of or in war, military. 1

10. *egestās*, -tātis [egeō, need], f., need, want, poverty. 1

*patientia*, -ae [patior, suffer], f.,

the quality of bearing or suffering, patience, endurance. 2

12. *trans-marinus*, -a, -um [mare, sea], from across or beyond the sea, transmarine. foreign. 1

15. *comparō*, 1. [com-pār, equal to], a., set in pairs, place in comparison, compare. 2

4. *Nemetēs*, -um, m., a German tribe on the Rhine about modern Speier. 2

8, 9. *ibi*: in modern Bavaria. *his sēdibus sēsē continet*: i. e., they had successfully resisted the Germans, a proof of their superiority. *laudis*, for prowess.

10, 11. *in . . . Germānī*, in the same (condition of) poverty, want, and endurance (of hardships) as they formerly (were).

12. *transmarinārum* etc.: see Int. 57.

13, 14. *largitur*, supplies. *assuēfactī superārī*: e. g., by the

Germans.

1. *suprà*: cf. 24, 5.

2. *lātitudō*: the breadth from north to south. *novem diērum iter*: i. e., a distance of from 200 to 250 miles.

3. *nōn aliter*: i. e., than by the length of a "day's march." *mēnsūrās*: e. g., miles, paces.

4. *nōverunt*: sc. *Germānī*. *oritur* etc., trace its limits on the map.

Rauricōrum finibus rēctāque flūminis Dānuvii regiōne per-  
tinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōr-  
sus diversīs ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finēs  
propter māgnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est hūius  
Germāniae, quī sē aut adisse ad initium ēius silvae dicat,  
cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut, quō ex locō oriātur, ac-  
cēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārū nāscī cōstat, quae  
reliquis in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae māximē differ-  
ant ā cēteris et memoriae prōdenda videantur, haec sunt.

26. Est bōs cervi figurā, cūius ā mediā frōnte *The reindeer.*  
inter aurēs ūnum cornū existit excelsius magisque dērēctum  
hīs, quae nōbīs nōta sunt, cornibus: ab ēius summō sicut

5. rēctus, -a, -um [regō, direct],  
direct, straight.

Dānuvius, -ii, m., the Danube. 1

6. Dāci, -ōrum, m., inhabitants of  
the province, Dacia.

Anartēs, -ium, m., a German tribe  
near the Hercynian forest. 1

hinc, adv., [for hince, fr. hīc,  
here], from here, hence. 2

sinistrōrsus, adv., [sinister, left +  
vertō], turned to the left, to the  
left. 1

11. fera, -ae [ferus, wild], a wild

beast, wild animal.

1. bōs, bovis, m., r., ox, bull; cow:  
in pl. cattle.

cervus, -i, m., stag, deer: in pl. by  
meton., forked stakes, used to  
break cavalry charges.

2. auris, -is [cf. audiō], r., an ear.  
excelsus, -a, -um [excellō, be emi-  
nent], eminent, elevated, high,  
tall.

3. sic-ut (sic-utī) adv., so far as,  
just as, as.

5. rēctā...regiōne, in a course  
parallel with the river Danube.

6. sinistrōrsus: i. e., the north-  
east. The river here takes an ab-  
rupt turn to the south and leaves  
the forest highlands.

8. hūius Germāniae: i. e.,  
western Germany.

9, 10. initium: i. e., the east-  
ern extremity. diērum iter LX:  
about 600 miles. quō ex locō ori-  
ātur: i. e., where the initium is.

13. haec, the following.

1. bōs cervi figurā: the Ro-  
mans called any large animal that

they did not know bōs. Here Cae-  
sar means the reindeer, which in  
early times had a wide range in  
Europe, extending as far as the  
south of France. ā mediā frōnte,  
from the middle of the forehead.

2. ūnum cornū existit: a mis-  
take most satisfactorily accounted  
for by the assumption that neither  
Caesar nor his informants had ever  
seen the reindeer.

3. hīs cornibus: for the case cf.  
III, 5, 1; II, 7, 11; I, 22, 3. ab...  
summō, from its top: for the use of  
the adjective cf. II, 18, 2.

palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae  
 5 marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma māgnitūdōque cornuum.

*The elk.* 27. Sunt item, quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est  
 cōnsimilis caprīs figurā et varietās pellium, sed māgnitūdine  
 paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nō-  
 dis articulisque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt,  
 5 neque, sī quō afflīctae cāsū cōcidērunt, ērigere sēsē aut sub-  
 levāre possunt. His sunt arborēs prō cubilibus: ad eās sē  
 applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinātae quiētem capiunt.  
 Quārum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus,  
 quō sē recipere cōsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus  
 10 subruunt aut accidunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs  
 eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine re-

4. palma, -ae, *f.*, the palm of the hand, the hand; the palm-tree; a broom of palm twigs.

diffundō, -ere, fūdi, fūsus [dis- + fundō, pour], *n.*, pour or spread out, branch widely.

5. mās, maris, masculine, male: *subst.*, a male.

1. alcēs, -is, *f.*, an elk; (?) moose-deer. 1

2. capra, -ae, *f.*, a she-goat. 1  
 varietās, -tātis [varius, different], *f.*, difference, diversity, variety. 2

3. mutilus, -a, -um, maimed, mutilated, without. 1

crūs, crūris, *n.*, the leg below the knee, shank; the leg. 1

nōdus, -ī, *m.*, knot, joint. 1

4. articulus, -ī, [*dim.* of artus,

joint], *m.*, a little joint, knuckle, knot. 1

quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, rest, repose, quiet. 5

6. cubile, -is [cubō, lie down], *n.*, couch, bed, resting-place, lair. 1

7. ap(ad-)plicō, 1. [plicō, fold], *n.*, fold or bring near, attach, apply, bend toward, incline, lean. 1

re-clinō, 1. *n.*, bend or lean back, recline. 1

8. vēnātor, -ōris [vēnor, hunt], *m.*, hunter. 1

9. quō, *interrog. adv.*, whither, to what place or person or thing. 5

rādix, -icis, *f.*, a root. 5

10. accido, -ere, cidi, cīsus [caedō, cut], *a.*, cut at or into, cut deep, hew, notch. 1

4, 5. eadem ... cornuum: on the contrary the horns of the female are smaller than those of the male.

1. alcēs, *elk*. It is to-day found only in northern Europe, having moved north on account of the changes in the climate.

2. varietās pellium, *varied color*.

3. cornibus: for case cf. 12, 8. sine nōdis: the same notion was long prevalent at Rome regarding the elephant.

10. summa speciēs, *the general appearance*.

clīnāvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere affligunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum, quī ūrī appel- *Description of the urus.*  
lantur. Hī sunt māgnitūdine paulō inf̄rā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Māgna vīs eōrum est et māgna v̄lōcītās, neque hominī neque ferae, quam cōspēxērunt, parcutunt. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt; hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere v̄nātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfecērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus, quae sunt testīmōniō, māgnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfieri nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs<sup>14</sup> multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conq̄isita ab labris argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulis prō pōculis ūtuntur.

1. ūrus, -ī, m., wild ox, bison. 1
2. elephantus, -ī, m., an elephant; ivory. 1
3. taurus, -ī, m., bull; ox. 1
4. v̄lōcītās, -tātis [v̄lōx, swift], f., swiftness, rapidity. 1
5. parcō, -ere, peperci, parvus [parcus, frugal], n., act or use carefully, spare, not injure. \*
- studiōsē [studiōsus, eager], adv., eagerly, zealously, carefully. 1
- fovea, -ae [fodiō, dig], f., a whole dug in the earth, pitfall, snare. 1
6. dūrō, 1. [dūrus, hard], a., make hardy, harden. 1
8. testīmōnium, -ī [testor, be a witness], n., witness, evidence, proof. 4

9. as (ad-)suēscō, -ere, suēvī, suētus [suēscō, accustomed], a., n., accustomed, habituate; become accustomed or familiarized. 1
- mānsuēfaciō, -ere, feci, factus [mānsuēscō, grow tame + faciō], a., tame; in pass., mānsuēfīō, be tamed. 1
12. argentum, -ī, n., silver; silver plate or coin; money. 2
- circumclūdō, -ere, clūdī, clusus [claudō, shut], a., shut in, enclose around, surround. 1
13. epulae, -arum, f., feast, banquet. 1
- pōculum, -ī [cf. pōtō, drink], n., drinking-vessel, cup, bowl, goblet. 1

1. ūrī: the German auerochs or uerochs (mountain or wild ox) which has long been extinct in Europe. Some identify it with the bison, though the description here given does not fit that animal.

2, 3. hī sunt speciē etc., these have the appearance etc. speciē:

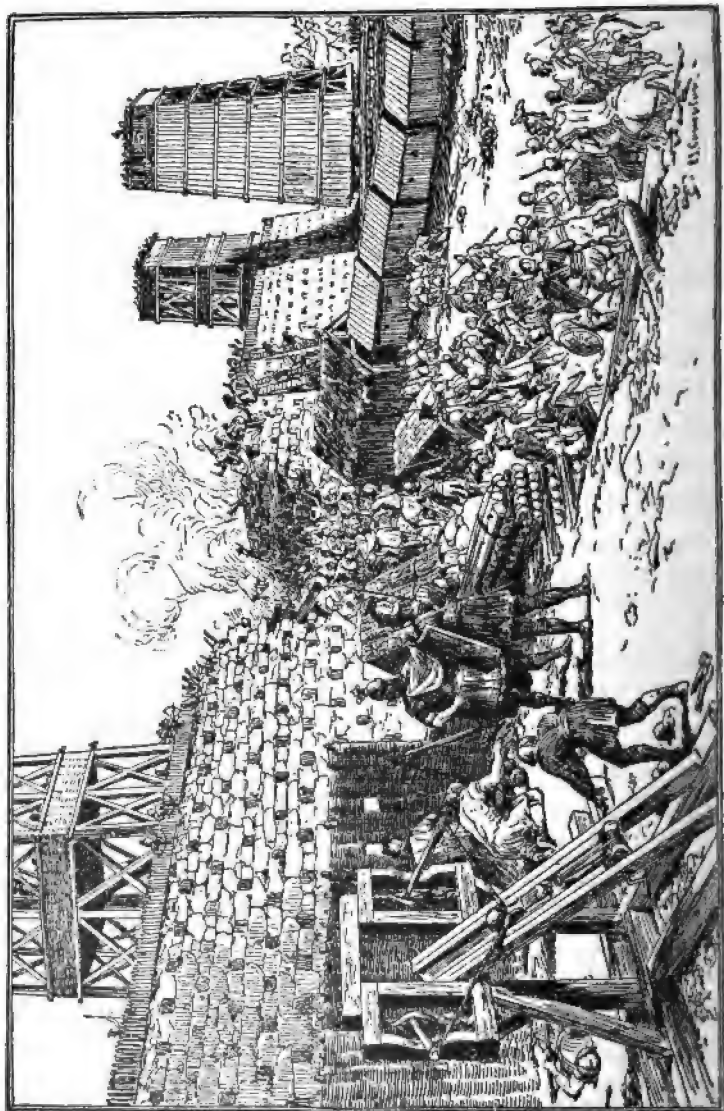
for case cf. V, 14, 7; IV, 1, 20; III, 13, 8; II, 18, 4; I, 39, 5.

4. hominī, ferae: for case cf. 13, 28.

9, 10. nē... exceptī, not even if taken while young.

12. ab... argentō, with a rim of silver.





STORMING A CITY.

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explorātōrēs comperit Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus, quod, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Gernānī agricultūrae student, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius; sed nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbaris tolleret atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem ūltimam pontis, quae ripās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitudinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum quattuor cōstituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pōntis tuendī causā pōnit māgnisque eum locum mūnitiōnibus firmat. Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscentem praefēcit. Ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est tōtius Galliae māxima atque ā ripīs Rhēnī finibusque Trēverōrum ad Nervios pertinet milibusque amplius quīngentis in longitudinem patet, L. Minucium Basilum cum omni equitatū praemittit, si quid celeritate itineris atque oportunitate temporis proficere posset, monet, ut ignēs in castris fieri prohibeat, nē qua eius adventūs procul significātiō fiat: sēsē cōnfestim subsequi dicit.

*Caesar returns into Gaul from the Suebi and goes against Ambiorix.*

30. Basilus, ut imperātum est, facit. Celeriter contrāque omnium opīniōnem cōfectō itinere multōs in agris inopinantes dēprehendit; eōrum indiciō ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quō in locō cum paucis equitibus esse dicēbātur. Multum cum in omnibus rebus, tum in rē militārī potest fōrtūna. Nam sicut māgnō accidit cāsū, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum incideret, priusque eius adventus ab hominibus vidērētur, quam fāma ac nūntius afferrētur, sic māgnae fuit fōrtūnae omni militārī instrūmentō, quod circum sē habēbat, ēreptō,

*Ambiorix is surprised by Basilus and narrowly escapes.*

rēdis equisque comprehēnsīs ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod aedificiō circumdatō silvā, ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, quī vitandī aestūs causā plērumque silvārum ac flūminum petunt propinquitātēs, comitēs famili-  
 15 ārēsque ēius angustō in locō paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt, Hīs pūgnantibus illum in equum quīdam ex suis intulit: fugientem silvae tēxērunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fōrtūna valuit.

*He disbands  
his forces.*

31. Ambiorix cōpiās suās iūdicione nōn condūxerit, quod proeliō dimicandum nōn existimārit, an tempore exclūsus et repentinō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crēderet, dubium est; sed certē  
 5 dimissis per agrōs nūntiis sibi quemque cōsulare iussit. Quōrum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentēs palūdēs profūgit: quī proximī Oceanō fuērunt, hī insulis sēsē occultāvērunt, quās aestūs efficere cōsuērunt: multī ex suis finibus ēgressi sē suaque omnia aliēnissimis crēdidērunt.  
 10 Catuvolcus, rēx dimidiaē partis Eburōnum, quī unā cum Ambiorige cōnsilium inierat, aetāte iam cōfectus cum labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorigem, quī ēius cōnsiliū auctor fuisset, taxō, cuius māgna in Galliā Germāniāque  
 15 cōpia est, sē exanimāvit.

*Submission of  
the Segni and  
Condrusi.  
Cicero is  
placed in  
charge of the  
stores.*

32. Sēgnī Condrūsique ex gente et numerō Germānōrum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt orātum, nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret neve omnium Germān-  
 5 ōrum, quī essent citrā Rhēnum, unam esse causam iūdicāret; nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāsse, nūlla Ambiorigī auxilia mīsisse. Caesar explorātā rē quaestiōne captivōrum, sī quī ad eōs Eburōnēs ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur, im-

perāvit: sī ita fēcissent, finēs eōrum sē violāturum negāvit. Tum cōpiis in trīs partēs distribūtis impedimenta omnium <sup>10</sup> legiōnum Aduātucam contulit. Id castellī nōmen est. Hōc ferē est in mediis Eburōnum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculēius hiemandi causā cōnsēderant. Hunc cum reliquīs rēbus locum probārat, tum quod superiōris annī mūnitiōnēs integrae manēbant, ut militum labōrem suble- <sup>15</sup> vāret. Praesidiō impedimentis legiōnem quartamdecimam reliquit, ūnam ex his tribus, quās proximē cōscriptās ex Italiā trādūxerat. Eī legiōni castrisque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praeficit ducentōsque equitēs eī attribuit.

33. Partitō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōni- *Caesar divides his troops and continues in pursuit of Ambiorix.* bus tribus ad Oceanum versus in eās partēs, quae Menapiōs attingunt, proficisci iubet; C. Trebonium cum parī legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem, quae ad Aduātucōs adiacet, dēpopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquīs tribus <sup>5</sup> ad flūmen Scaldem, quod influit in Mosam, extrēmāsque Arduennae partis ire cōstituit, quō cum paucis equitibus profectum Ambiorigem audiēbat. Discēdēns post diem septimum sēsē reversūrum cōfirmat, quam ad diem eī legiōni, quae in praesidiō relinquēbatur, dēbērī frūmentum sciēbat. <sup>10</sup> Labiēnum Treboniumque hortātur, sī reipublicae commodō facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur, ut rūsus commūnicātō cōsiliō explorātisque hostium ratiōnibus aliud initium belli capere possint.

34. Erat, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, manus cer- *Straits of the Romans. Caesar invites allies with the hope of plunder.* ta nūlla, nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium, quod sē armis dēfenderet, sed in omnis partis dispersa multitūdō. Ubi cutque aut vallēs abdita aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedita spem praesidiī aut salutis aliquam offerē- <sup>5</sup> bat, cōnsēderat. Haec loca vicinītatibus erant nōta, magnam-

que rēs diligentiam requirēbat nōn in summā exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim poterat ūniversis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus cōservandis; 10 quae tamen ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius ēvocābat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus cōfertōs adire prohibēbant. Sī negōtium cōfici stirpemque hominum scelerātōrum interfici vellet, dīmittendae plūrēs mānūs diducendique erant mili- 15 tēs: sī continēre ad sīgna manipulōs vellet, ut institūta ratiō et cōsuētūdō exercitūs Rōmānī postulābat, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbaris, neque ex occultō insidiandī et dispersōs circumveniendī singulis deerat audācia. Ut in ēiusmodī difficultātibus, quantum diligentīā prōvidērī poterat, prōvidēbā- 20 tur, ut potius in nocendō aliquid praetermitterētur, etsī omnium animī ad ulciscendum ardēbant, quam cum aliquō militum dētrimentō nocērētur. Dīmittit ad finitimās cīvitatēs nūntiōs Caesar: omnēs ēvocat spē praedae ad diripiendōs Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvis Gallōrum vīta quam legiōnārius 25 mīles perīclitētur, simul ut māgnā multitudīne circumfūsā prō talī facinore stirps ac nōmen cīvitatīs tollātur. Māgnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

*The Sugambri, Germans, come to share the plunder of the Eburones and march against Cicero at Aduatua.*

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēsque appetēbat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legiōnemque revertī cōstituerat. Hīc, quantum in bellō fōrtūna possit et 5 quantōs afferat cāsūs, cōgnōscī potuit. Dissipātis ac perterritis hostibus, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla, quae parvam modo causam timōris afferret. Trāns Rhēnum, ad Germānōs pervenit fāma, diripī Eburōnēs atque ūltrō omnēs ad praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo milia Sugambri, 10 quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tencterōs

atque Usipetēs suprà docuimus. Trāseunt Rhēnum nāvibus  
ratibusque trīgintā milibus passuum infrā eum locum, ubi  
pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ā Caesare relictum: prī-  
mōs Eburōnum finēs adeunt: mūltōs ex fugā dispersōs exci-  
piunt, māgnō pecoris numerō, cūius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, <sup>15</sup>  
potiuntur. Invītātī praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs pa-  
lūs in bellō latrōciniisque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Qui-  
bus in locis sit Caesar, ex captivīs quaerunt; profectum lon-  
gius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cōgnōscunt.  
Atque ūnus ex captivīs: ‘Quid vōs,’ inquit, ‘hanc miseram ac <sup>20</sup>  
tenuem sectāminī praedam, quibus licet iam esse fōrtūnatīs-  
simos? Tribus hōrīs Aduātucam venīre potestis: hūc omnēs  
suās fōrtūnās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit: praesidiī tan-  
tum est, ut nē mūrus quidem cingī possit, neque quisquam  
ēgredi extrā mūnitiōnēs audeat.’ Oblātā spē Germānī quam <sup>25</sup>  
nactī erant praedam in occultō relinquunt; ipsī Aduātucam  
contendunt ūsī eōdem duce, cūius haec indiciō cōgnōverant.

36. Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs praecep-  
tis Caesaris summā diligentīā militēs in castrīs <sup>Cicero, un-  
warily, sends  
five cohorts to  
forage.</sup>  
continuisset ac nē cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnitiō-  
nem ēgredi passus esset, septimō diē diffidēs dē numerō diē-  
rum Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod longius prōgressum <sup>5</sup>  
audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū eius fāma afferēbātur, simul eō-  
rum permōtus vōcibus, quī illius patientiam paene obsessiō-  
nem appellābant, [siquidem ex castrīs ēgredi nōn liceret],  
nūllum eiusmodī cāsū exspectāns, quō novem oppositis le-  
giōnibus māximōque equitatū dispersis ac paene delētis hos- <sup>10</sup>  
tibus in milibus passuum tribus offendi posset, quīnque  
cohortēs frūmentātum in proximās segetēs mittit, quās inter  
et castra ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Complūrēs erant ex  
legiōnibus aegrī relictī; ex quibus quī hōc spatiō diērum con-

25 valuerant, circiter CCC, sub vēxillō ūnā mittuntur; māgna praetereā multitudō cālōnum, māgna vis iūmentōrum, quae in castrīs subsēderant, factā potestāte sequitur.

*The Sugambri surprise Cicerō's camp.*

37. Hōc ipsō tempore et cāsū Germānī equitēs interveniunt prōtinusque eōdem illō, quō vēnerant, cursū ab decumanā portā in castra irrumpere cōnantur, nec prius sunt visī obiectīs ab eā parte silvis, quam castrīs appropinquārent, usque eō, ut quī sub vāllō tenderent mercātōrēs recipiendī suī facultātem nōn habērent. Inopināntēs nostrī rē novā perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur ex reliquīs hostēs partibus, sī quem aditum reperire possent. Aegrē portās nostrī tuentur, reliquōs aditūs locus ipse per sē mūnitiōque dēfendit. Tōtis trepidātur castrīs, atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit; neque quō signa ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prōnūntiat, alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit; plērique novās sibi ex locō religiōnēs fingunt Cottaeque et Tituriī calamitātem, quī in eōdem occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre omnibus perterritis cōfirmātur opiniō barbaris, ut ex captivō audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nītuntur 20 sēque ipsī adhortantur, nē tantam fōrtūnam ex manibus dīmittant.

*Valiant exploit of Sextius Baculus.*

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus, quī primum pilum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cūius mentiōnem superiōribus proeliis fēcimus, ac diem iam quintum cibō caruerat. Hīc diffusus suae atque omnium salutī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit: videt imminēre hostēs atque in summō esse rem discrimine: capit arma ā proximis atque in portā cōnsistit. Cōnsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs

ēius cohortis, quae in statione erat; paulisper unā proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus: aegrē per manūs tractus servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō reliquī sēsē cōfirmant tantum, ut in mūnitionibus cōsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebeant. 10

39. Interim cōfectā frūmentātiōne militēs nostrī clāmōrem exaudiunt: praecurrunt equitēs; quantō rēs sit in periculō cōgnōscunt. Hic verō nulla mūnitiō est, quae perterritōs recipiat: modo cōscriptī atque ūsus militāris imperītī ad tribūnum militum centuriō- 5  
ēsque ōra convertunt; quid ab his praeciipiātur exspectant. Nēmō est tam fortis, quā rei novitate perturbētur. Barbarī signa procul cōspicātī oppugnātiōne dēsistunt: redisse primō legiōnēs crēdunt, quas longius discessisse ex captivīs cōgnōverant, postea dispectā paucitate ex omnibus partibus 10  
impetum faciunt.

40. Cālōnēs in proximum tumultum prōcurrunt. Hinc celeriter dēiectī sē in signa manipulōsque cōniciunt; eō magis timidōs perterrent militēs. Alii, cuneō factō ut celeriter perrumpant, cēsent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra, et si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquōs servārī posse cōfidunt; aliī, ut in iugō cōsistant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hōc veterēs nōn probant militēs, quōs sub vēxillō unā profectōs docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī duce C. Trebōniō, equite Rōmānō, quī eīs erat praepositus, per mediōs hostēs perrumpunt incolumēs. 10  
que ad unum omnēs in castra perveniunt. Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem impetū militum virtute servantur. At ii, quī in iugō cōstitierant, nullō etiam nunc ūsū rei militāris perceptō neque in eō, quod probāverant, cōsiliō permanēre, ut sē locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam quam 15

*The foragers  
return and  
are attacked  
by the Sugam-  
bri.*

*The foragers  
regain the  
camp with  
great loss.*



prōdesse aliīs vim celeritātemque viderant imitārī potuērunt, sed sē in castra recipere cōnātī inīquum in locum dēmīsērunt. Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōnnūllī ex inferiōribus ordinibus reliquārum legionū virtūtis causā in superiōres erant ordinēs  
 20 hūius legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam rei militāris laudem āmitterent, fortissimē pūgnantēs concidērunt. Militum pars hōrum virtūte submōtis hostibus praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit, pars ā barbaris circumventa periit.

*The Germans withdraw. Caesar's arrival allays the fear of the Romans.*

41. Germānī dēspērātā expūgnatiōne castrōrum, quod nostrōs iam cōstitisse in mūnitiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā praedā, quam in silvis dēposuerant, trāns Rhēnum sēsē recēpērunt. Āc tantus fuit etiam  
 5 post discessum hostium terror, ut eā nocte, cum C. Volusēnus mīssus cum equitātū ad castra vēnisset, fidem nōn faceret adesse cum incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sic omnium animōs timor praeoccupāverat, ut paene aliēnātā mente dēlētis omnibus cōpiis equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dicerent  
 10 neque incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppūgnātūrōs fuisse contenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

*Caesar's reflections on the inroad of the Sugambri.*

42. Reversus ille, ēventūs bellī nōn ignōrāns, unum, quod cohortēs ex statiōne et praesidiō essent ēmissae, questus—nē minimum quidem cāsū locum relinqui debuisse—multum fōrtūnam in repentinō hostium  
 5 adventū potuisse iūdicāvit, multō etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipsō vāllō portisque castrōrum barbarōs āvertisset. Quārum omnium rērū māximē admīrandum vidēbātur, quod Germānī, quī eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum trānsierant, ut Ambiorigis finēs dēpopulārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum dēlāti optātissimum Ambiorigī beneficium obtulērunt.

*Punishment of the Eburones. Vatin attempts to seize Ambiorix.*

43. Caesar rūrsus ad vēxandōs hostēs profectus māgnō coāctō numerō ex finitimīs civitātibus in omnēs partēs dimittit. Omnēs vīcī atque omnia

aedificia, quae quisque cōspēxerat, incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus locis agēbātur; frūmenta nōn solum ā tantā multitudīne iūmentōrum atque hominum cōsumēbantur, sed etiam annī tempore atque imbribus prōcubuerant, ut, sī quī etiam in praesentiā sē occultāssent, tamen hīs dēductō exercitū rērum omnium inopiā pereundum vidērētur. Āc saepe in eum locum ventum est tantō in omnis partis dīvisō equitātū, ut modo vīsum ab sē Ambiorigem in fugā circumspicerent captivī nec plānē etiam abīsse ex cōspectū contenderent, ut spē cōsequendī illātā atque infīnitō labōre susceptō, quī sē summam ā Caesare grātiā inītūrōs putārent, paene nātūrā studiō vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam felicitatē dēfuisse vidērētur, atque ille latebris aut saltibus sē ēriperet et noctū occultātus aliās regiōnēs partēsq̄ peteret nōn māiōre equitum praesidiō quam quattuor, quibus solis vitā suā committere audēbat.

44. Tālī modō vāstātis regiōnibus exercitum Caesar duārum cohortium damnō Durocortōrum Rēmōrum redūcit, conciliōque in eum locum Galliae indictō dē coniūrātiōne Senonum et Carnūtum quaestīonem habēre instituit; et dē Accōne, quī princeps eius cōsiliī fuerat, graviōre sententiā prōnūntiātā mōre māiōrum supplicium sūmpsit. Nōnnūllī iūdicium veritī prōfūgērunt. Quibus cum aquā atque ignī interdixisset, duās legiōnēs ad finēs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reliquās in Senonum finibus Agedinē in hibernīs collocāvit frūmentōque exercitū prōvisō, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

*Punishment  
of Acco, chief  
of the Senones.  
Winter ar-  
rangements.*

## BOOK. VII.—VERCINGETORIX: GENERAL UPRISING OF THE GAULS: ALESIA. .

---

The Celts were again beaten, but still not utterly cast down. Caesar's action in leaving Gaul at this perilous juncture was due in part to political conditions necessitating his proximity to the political agitation at Rome, and in part to his knowledge of the Celtic character. What he had not counted upon was the spirit of unity which under the teaching of misfortune had taken root throughout the land; nor had he counted upon the appearance of a genius akin to his own to direct into well-planned channels of effort the determination of a gallant race to regain its freedom.

The special anxieties of Caesar in the direction of Rome were well known to the insurgents, and they conceived that the time had come for a general uprising. The massacre of a number of Romans at Cenabum (Orleans) gave the signal. Instantly the patriots in every quarter were in agitation. The revolt spread with remarkable rapidity. Through the influence of Vercingetorix, henceforth the master spirit in the Celtic councils, the Arverni, who had hitherto been staunch friends of Rome, joined the patriotic party and led almost all the south land with them. In the east everything depended upon the decision of the Aedui, who still hesitated. At this crisis Caesar, unheralded, crossed the Alps and Cevennes, secretly traversed the hostile territory and joined his army, thus destroying all the hopes that the patriots had cherished of driving the legions out of Gaul in his absence.

Vercingetorix had now to solve the problem of making head against the Romans. Feeling their superiority in the field, he devised a plan of campaign which consisted in the avoidance of a general engagement, the laying waste the country far and wide, the destruction of towns and magazines of supplies, and the constant harassing of the enemy's forces.

Ere the close of the winter the hostile movements of the Celtic patriots forced Caesar to break up camp and march against them. Accordingly, he moved south to Cenabum, the scene of the first outbreak, destroyed the town, and crossed the Loire into the country of the Bituriges. Vercingetorix sent his cavalry into the country with orders to burn everything within the reach of the Roman foraging parties. Twenty towns of the Bituriges were burned in a single day. The same fate was decreed to their capital, Avaricum, but yielding to the prayers

of the Bituriges, Vercingetorix consented to defend it. Only after great efforts was Caesar able to reduce the place. An awful carnage followed the successful assault of the Romans. Only eight hundred escaped to the camp of Vercingetorix out of the forty thousand who were engaged in the defense.

Undismayed by this disaster, Vercingetorix used it to stimulate the Gauls to still greater efforts. The Roman general had divided his army, sending Labienus with four legions north toward Agedincum and Lutetia, while he with six legions followed Vercingetorix. Labienus was checked in his attempt upon Lutetia by Camulogenus. Vercingetorix took a strong position under the walls of Gergovia, the capital of the Arverni and an impregnable fortress. Caesar could not afford to linger long before Gergovia, and after an unsuccessful assault, he accepted his first personal defeat at the hands of the Gauls, and withdrew. A rapid march brought him to Sens, where he was joined by Labienus, who had succeeded in surprising and routing the Gauls in his front.

As a result of the reverse at Gergovia the Aedui threw off the yoke of allegiance to Rome, and their capital, Bibracte, became the center of patriotic effort. Caesar having strengthened his cavalry by a force of German horsemen, and having procured supplies from the same source, slowly advanced toward the country of the Aedui. At the Vingeanne river the Gallic leader made the fatal mistake of departing from his plan of avoiding a battle. The usual result followed. The Gauls were badly defeated and retreated to Alesia. Caesar followed them and at once invested the fortress. Alesia fell, and with it sank the last hope of Gallic independence; for while the loss of the fortress might be retrieved, the loss of the brave and able leader could not. With a few exceptions the allied tribes quietly submitted. The conciliatory policy which Caesar now adopted soon healed the wounds of war, and the Gauls ever remained faithful to him and to his fortunes.

---

#### REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.

FROUDE: Caesar, a sketch, pp. 270-290. (Harper's ed.).

TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. viii. (Ancient Classic Series).

MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. iv. pp. 323-349.

MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. ii, chap. xii.

NAPOLÉON: Julius Caesar, vol. ii, chap. x.

## COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS.

*Important  
events at  
Rome. The  
Gauls plan a  
revolt.*

1. Quiētā Galliā Caesar, ut cōstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit dē Clodii caede, dē senātūque cōsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italiae coniūrārent, delēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et affingunt rumōribus Galli, quod rēs poscere vidēbātur, retinēri urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantis dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne, quī iam ante  
5 sē populi Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent, liberius atque audācius dē bellō cōsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictis inter sē principēs Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remōtis locis queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsū ad ipsōs recidere dēmōstrant: miserantur commūnem Galliae fōrtūnam: om-  
15 nibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiis dēposcunt, quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis periculō Galliam in libertātem vindicent. Imprimis ratiōnem esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eōrum clandestina cōsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs  
20 audeant absente imperātōre ex hibernis ēgredi, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit. Postrēmō in aciē praestāre interficī, quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam libertātemque, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, recuperāre.

*The Carnutes  
take the initiative.*

2. His rēbus agitātis prōfitentur Carnūtēs sē nūllum periculum commūnis salutis causā recūsā-

re principēsque ex omnibus bellum facturōs pollicentur et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūreiūrando ac fidē sancīatur, petunt, 5 collātis militāribus signīs, quō mōre eōrum gravissimā caerimōniā continētur, nē factō initio belli ā reliquīs dēserantur. Tum collaudātis Carnūtibus, datō iūreiūrando ab omnibus, quī aderant, tempore eius rei cōstitutō ab concilio discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnūtēs Gutruātō et *They massacre the Romans at Cenabum.* Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātis hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt civēsque Rōmānōs, quī negōtiandi causā ibi cōstiterant, in his C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī rei frūmentariae iūssū 5 Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae civitatēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae māior atque illūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque significant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle 10 gesta essent, ante primam cōfectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter CLX.

4. Simili ratiōne ibi Vercingetorix, Celtillī *Many tribes unite under Vercingetorix, King of the Arverni.* filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cuius pater principātum Galliae tōtius obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum appetēbat, ā civitatē erat interfectus, convocātis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cōg- 5 nitō eius cōnsilio ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ab Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquīsque principibus, quī hanc temptandam fōrtūnam nōn existimābant, expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agrīs habet dēlectum egentium ac perditōrum. Hāc coactā manū, quōscumque 10 adit ex civitatē, ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur, ut

commūnis libertātis causā arma capiant, māgnisque coāctis  
 cōpiis adversariōs suōs ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, ex-  
 pellit ex civitate. Rēx ab suis appellatur. Dīmittit quōque-  
 15 versus lēgatiōnēs; obtestatur, ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter  
 sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadurcōs, Turonōs, Auler-  
 cōs, Lemovicēs, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs, quī Ōceanum  
 attingunt, adiungit; omnium cōsēnsū ad eum dēfertur im-  
 perium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs civitatibus obsi-  
 20 dēs imperat, certum numerum militum ad sē celeriter addūci  
 iubet, armōrum quantum quaeque civitās domī quodque ante  
 tempus efficiat, cōstituit; imprimis equitātū studet. Sum-  
 mae diligentiae summam imperiī severitatem addit; māgnitū-  
 dine supplicii dubitantēs cōgit. Nam māiōre commissō  
 25 delictō ignī atque omnibus tormentis necat, leviōre dē causā  
 auribus dēsectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit,  
 ut sint reliquīs documentō et māgnitudine poenae perterreant  
 aliōs.

*The Bituriges  
 join the  
 league.*

5. His suppliciis celeriter coāctō exercitū Luc-  
 terium Cadurcum, summae hominem audāciae,  
 cum parte cōpiarum in Rutenōs mittit; ipse in Biturigēs pro-  
 ficiscitur. Eius adventū Biturigēs ad Aeduōs, quōrum erant  
 5 in fidē, lēgātōs mittunt, subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hos-  
 tium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Aeduī dē cōsiliō lēgātōrum,  
 quōs Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditā-  
 tūsque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen  
 Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturigēs ab Aeduīs dividit, paucōs  
 10 diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsire ausi domum revertun-  
 tur lēgātisque nostris renūntiant sē Biturigum perfidiam  
 veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōsiliū fuisse cōgnōverint, ut, si  
 flūmen trānsissent, unā ex parte ipsi, alterā Arvernī sē cir-  
 cumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā, quam lēgātis prōnūntiārunt,

an perfidiā adducti fēcerint, quod nihil nōbīs cōstat, nōn 15  
vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturigēs eōrum discessū  
statim sē cum Arvernīs coniungunt.

6. His rēbus in Ītaliā Caesarī nūntiātis, cum *Caesar re-*  
iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēi commodi- *turns to*  
ōrem in statum pervēnisse intellexeret, in Trānsalpīnam Gal- *Gaul.*  
liam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultāte  
afficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenīre posset. 5  
Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itin-  
ere proeliō dīmīcātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum  
contenderet, nē iīs quidem, quī eō tempore quieti vidērentur,  
suam salūtem rēctē committī vidēbat.

7. Interim Lucretius Cadurcus in Rutenōs *He thwarts*  
mīssus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prō- *the plans of*  
gressus in Nitiobrogēs et Gabalōs ab utrisque obsidēs accipit *Lucretius*  
et māgnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus irrup- *agains Narbo.*  
tiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus 5  
cōnsiliis antevertendum exīstimāvit, ut Nārbōnem prōficisce-  
rētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs cōfirmat, praesidia in  
Rutenīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Arecomiciīs, Tolosātibus cir-  
cumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, cōn-  
stituit, partem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque, 10  
quod ex Ītaliā addūxerat, in Helviōs, quī finēs Arvernōrum  
contingunt, convenīre iubet.

8. His rēbus comparātis repressō iam Lucretiō *He surprises*  
et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculō- *the Arverni.*  
sum putābat, in Helviōs proficiscitur. Etsī mōns *Vercingetoris*  
Cevenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclōdit, dūriissimō tem- *comes to their*  
pore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen discussā nive 5  
sex in altitūdinem pedum atque ita viīs patefactīs summō  
mīlitum sudōre ad finēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus op-



pressis inopinantibus, quod se Cevennā ut mūrō munitōs existimabant, ac ne singulārī quidem umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat, ut quam latissimē possint vagentur et quam māximum hostibus terrorem inferant. Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiī ad Vercingetorigem perferuntur; quem perterriti omnēs Arvernī circumstant atque obsecrant, ut suis fōrtūnis cōnsulat, ne ab hostibus diripiantur, praesertim cum videat omne ad se bellum trāslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

*Caesar prepares for the war. Vercingetorix proceeds to besiege the Boian allies in Gergovia.*

9. At Caesar bīduum in his locis morātus, quod haec de Vercingetorige usū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmenti equitātusque cōgendi ab exercitū discēdit, Brūtum adulescentem his cōpiis praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnīs partēs equitēs quam latissimē pervagentur: datūrum se operam, ne longius trīduō a castris absit. His cōstitutis rēbus suis inopinantibus quam māximis potest itineribus Viennam pervēnit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multis ante diēbus eō praemiserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō per finēs Aeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemabant, ut, si quid etiam de suā salūte ab Aeduis inīrētur cōsiliū, celeritatē praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit priusque omnēs in unum locum cōgit, quam de eius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorix rūsus in Biturigēs exercitum reducit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Boiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs Caesar collocāverat Aeduisque attribuerat, oppugnāre instituit.

*Caesar decides to bring them relief.*

10. Māgnam haec res Caesarī difficultatē ad cōsiliū capiendum afferēbat, si reliquam partem

hiemis unō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stipendiāriis Aeduōrum expūgnātis cūcta Gallia dēficeret, quod nullum amīcis in eō praesidium vidēret positum esse: sī mātūrius ex hibernis 5 ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūris subvēctiōnibus laborāret. Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpeti, quam tantā contumeliā acceptā omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Aeduōs dē supportandō commeātū prae-mittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque, ut 10 in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum māgnō animō susti-neant. Duābus Agedincī legiōnibus atque impedimentis tōtius exercitūs relictis ad Bōiōs proficiscitur.

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum Vel- Caesar storms Vellaunodunum and Cenabum. launodūnum vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, quō expeditiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, op-pūgnāre instituit eoque bīduō circumvallāvit; tertiō diē missis ex oppidō lēgātis dē dēditiōne arma cōnferrī, iūmenta prō- 5 dūcī, de obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōnficeret, C. Trebō-nium lēgātum relinquit, ipse ut quam primum iter faceret. Cē-nabum Carnūtum proficiscitur; quī tum primum allātō nūntiō dē oppūgnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum irī exīstimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī causā, quod eō 10 mitterent, comparābant. Hūc bīduō pervenit. Castris ante oppidum positīs diēi tempore exclusus in posterum oppūgnā-tiōnem differt quaeque ad eam rem ūsuī sint militibus im-perat et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris con-tingēbat, veritus, nē noctū ex oppidō prōfugerent, duās legiōn- 15 ēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs paulō antē mediam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressi flūmen trānsire coēpērunt. Quā rē per explorātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās ex-peditās esse iusserat, portis incensis intrōmittit atque oppidō potitur perpaucis ex hostium nūmerō dēsiderātis, quā cūcti 20

caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitudini fugam intercluserant. Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus donat, exercitum Ligerem traducit atque in Biturigum fines pervenit.

*Vercingetorix  
leaves Ger-  
govia and  
marches to  
Noviodunum.*

12. Vercingetorix, ubi de Caesaris adventum cognovit, oppugnatione destitit atque obviam Caesaris proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturigum positum in via Noviodunum oppugnare instituerat. Quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent oratum, ut sibi ignosceret suaeque vitae consuleret, ut celeritate reliquas res conficeret, quam pleraque erat consecutus, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari iubet. Parte iam obsidum tradita, cum reliqua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis militibus intramissis, qui arma iumenta que conquirent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem simulatque oppidanum conspexerunt atque in spem auxilii venerunt, clamore sublato arma capere, portas claudere, murum complere coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido cum ex significati-  
15 catione Gallorum novi aliquid ab iis iniri consilii intellexissent, gladiis destitutis portas occupaverunt suosque omnes incolumes reciperunt.

*A cavalry con-  
test, favorable  
to Caesar who  
receives the  
submission of  
Noviodunum  
and departs  
for Avaricum.*

13. Caesar ex castris equitatum educi iubet, proelium equestre committit; laborantibus iam suis Germanos equites circiter cccc submittit, quos ab initio secum habere instituerat. Eorum impetum  
5 Galli sustinere non potuerunt atque in fugam coniecti multis amissis se ad agmen reciperunt. Quibus profligatis rursus oppidanum perterritum comprehensos eos, quorum opera plebem concitatum existimabant, ad Caesarem perduxerunt seseque ei dederunt. Quibus rebus confectis Caesar ad oppidum  
10 Avaricum, quod erat maximum munatissimumque in finibus

Biturigum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est, quod eō oppidō receptō civitātem Biturigum sē in potestātem redactūrum cōfidēbat.

14. Vercingetorix tot continuīs incommodis *Vercingetorix urges the Gauls to cut off the Romans from supplies by destroying their own crops and cities.* 5  
 Vellaunodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum, atque antea gestum sit. Omnibus modis huic rei studendum, ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundant et quod annī tempore sublevantur. Pābulum secārī nōn posse; necessariō dispersōs hostēs ex aedificiīs petere: hōs omnēs cotidiē ab equitibus dēlēri posse. Praetereā commūnis salūtis causā rei familiāris commoda 10  
 neglegenda; vicōs atque aedificia incendi oportēre hōc spatiō obvia quōqueversus, quō pābulandī causā adire posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod, quōrum in finibus bellum gerātur, eōrum opibus sublevantur: Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum periculō lon- 15  
 gius ab castrīs prōcessūrōs: neque interesse, ipsōsne interficiant impedimentīsne exuant, quibus āmissis bellum gerī nōn possit. Praetereā oppida incendi oportēre, quae nōn mūnitiōne et locī nātūrā omnī sint periculō tūta, nē suis sint ad detractandam militiam receptācula neu Rōmānīs prōposita 20  
 ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbere, liberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interficī; quae necesse accidere vīctīs.

15. Omnium cōsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā *Avaricum is spared at the request of its inhabitants.*  
 ūnō diē amplius xx urbēs Biturigum incenduntur. Hōc idem fit in reliquīs civitātibus: in omnibus partibus incendia cōspiciuntur: quae etsī māgnō cum dolōre omnēs

- 5 ferēbant, tamen hōc sibi sōlāciū prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explorātā victōriā celeriter amīssa recipērātūrōs cōfidēbant. Dēlibērātūr dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, incendi placēret, an dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad pedēs Biturīgēs, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtīus Galliae urbem, quae
- 10 praesidiō et ōrnāmētō sit cīvitātī, suis manibus succendere cōgerentur: facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dīcunt, quod prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdatā ūnum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia dissuādente primō Vercingetorige, post concēdente et precibus
- 15 ipsōrum et misericordiā volgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur.

*Vercingetorix, stationed near Avaricum, harasses the Roman foragers.*

16. Vercingetorix minōribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur et locum castrīs dēligit palūdibus silvisque mūnītum ab Avaricō longē milia passuum
- XVI. Ibi per certōs explorātōrēs in singula diēi tempora, quae
- 5 ad Avaricum agerentur, cōgnōscēbat et, quid fierī vellet, imperābat. Omnis nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat dispersōsque, cum longius necessariō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur māgnōque incommodō afficiēbat, etsī, quantum ratiōne prōvidērī poterat, ab nostrīs occurrēbātur, ut incertīs
- 10 temporibus diversīsque itineribus irētur.

*The Romans bravely endure the hardships of the siege.*

17. Castrīs ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar, quae intermīssa ā flūmine et ā palūdibus aditum, ut suprā dīximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem apparāre, vineās agere, turrēs duās cōstituere coepit;
- 5 nam circumvallāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frumentāriā Bōiōs atque Aeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit: quōrum alterī, quod nullō studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvābant alterī nōn māgnīs facultātibus, quod cīvitās erat exigua et

infirmā, celeriter, quod habuērunt, cōsūmpsērunt. Summā difficultātē reī frūmentāriæ affectō exercitū tenuitātē Bōiō-<sup>10</sup>rum, indiligentiā Aeduōrum, incendiis aedificiōrum, usque eō ut complūrēs diēs frūmentō milites caruerint et pecore ex longīnquiōribus vicis adactō extrēmam famem sustentārent, nūlla tamen vōx est ab iis audita populī Rōmānī māiestātē et superiōribus victōriis indigna. Quīn etiam Caesar cum in<sup>15</sup> opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret et, sī acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē dimissūrum oppūgnātiōnem diceret, ūniversī ab eō, nē id faceret, petēbant: sic sē complūrēs annōs illō imperante meruisse, ut nūllam ignōminiam acciperent, nusquam infectā rē discēderent: hōc sē ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, sī in-<sup>20</sup>ceptam oppūgnātiōnem reliquissent: praestāre omnīs perferre acerbitatēs, quam nōn cīvibus Rōmānīs, quī Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum interissent, parentārent. Haec eadē centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

A5

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs appropinquāssent, *Vercingetoris moves nearer Avaricum. Caesar proceeds against him.* ex captivīs Caesar cōgnōvit Vercingetorigem cō-<sup>5</sup>sūptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum equitatū expeditisque, quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōsuēssent, insidiandī causā eō profectum, quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illī celeriter per explorātōrēs adventū Caesaris cōgnitō carrōs impedimentaue sua in artiōrēs silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās omnīs in locō editō atque apertō instrūxē-<sup>10</sup>runt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōferri, arma expeditī iussit.

*He withdraws  
because of the  
strong position  
of the  
Gauls.*

19. Collis erat lēniter ab infimō acclivis. Hunc  
ex omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque  
impedita cingēbat nōn lātiōr pedibus quīnquāgintā.  
Hōc sē colle interruptis pontibus Galli fiduciā loci continē-  
5 bant generatimque distribūtī [in cīvitātēs] omnia vada [āc  
saltūs] eius palūdis obtinēbant sic animō parātī, ut, sī eam  
palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantēs pre-  
merent ex locō superiōre, ut, quī propinquitatem loci vidēret,  
parātōs prope aequō Marte ad dimicandum existimāret, quī  
10 inīquitatem condiciōnis perspiceret, inānī simulatiōne sēsē  
ostentāre cōgnōsceret. Indignantēs milītēs Caesar, quod  
cōnspectum suum hostēs perferre possent tantulō spatiō in-  
teriectō, et signum proeliī exposcentēs ēdocet, quantō dētri-  
mentō et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre  
15 victōriam; quōs cum sic animō parātōs videat, ut nūllum prō  
suā laude periculum recūsant, summae sē inīquitātis condem-  
nārī dēbere, nisi eōrum vītā suā salūte habeat cārīorem.  
Sic milītēs cōsolātus eōdem diē reducit in castra reliquaue,  
quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinēbant oppidī, administrāre  
20 instituit.

*Vercingetorix  
successfully  
defends him-  
self against a  
charge of  
treason.*

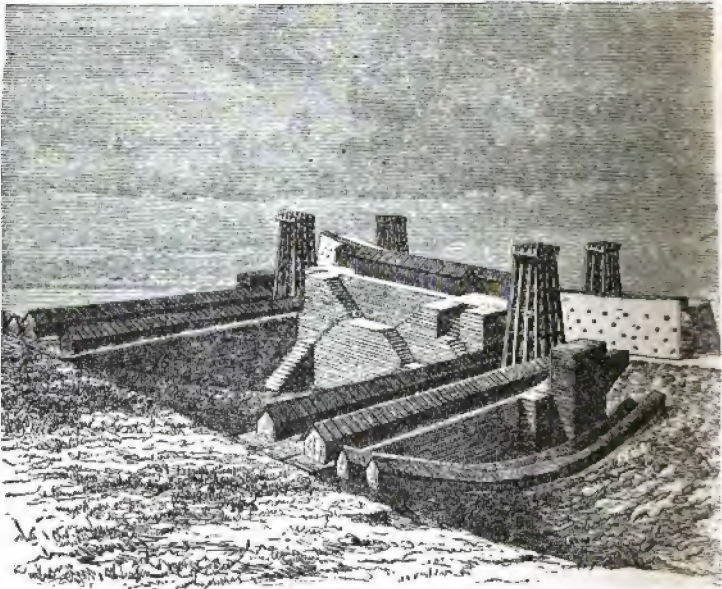
20. Vercingetorix, cum ad suōs redisset, prō-  
ditiōnis insimulātus, quod castra propius Rōmā-  
nōs mōvisset, quod cum omnī equitatū discessis-  
set, quod sine imperiō tantās cōpiās reliquisset, quod eius dis-  
5 cessū Rōmānī tantā oportunitate et celeritate vēnissent: nōn  
haec omnia fōrtuitō aut sine cōnsiliō accidere potuisse; rēg-  
num illum Galliae malle Caesaris concessū quam ipsōrum  
habēre beneficiō—tālī modō accūsātus ad haec respondit:  
Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābuli etiam ipsīs hor-  
10 tantibus: quod propius Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum loci

oportunitate, quī sē ipse sine mūnitiōne dēfenderet: equitum  
vērō operam neque in locō palūstrī dēsiderārī dēbuisse et illic  
fuisse ūtilem, quō sint prōfectī. Summam imperiī sē cōn-  
sultō nullī discēdentem trādidisse, nē is multitudinis studiō  
ad dīmīcandum impellerētur, cui reī propter animī mollitiem 15  
studēre omnēs vidēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn pos-  
sent. Rōmānī sī cāsū intervēnerint, fōrtūnae, sī alicūius in-  
diciō vocātī, hūc habendam grātiā, quod et paucitātem  
eōrum ex locō superiōre cōgnōscere et virtūtem dēspicere  
potuerint; quī dīmīcāre nōn ausī turpiter sē in castra recēpe- 20  
runt. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nullum dēsī-  
derāre, quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque  
omnibus Gallīs explorāta: quīn etiam ipsīs remittere, sī sibi  
magis honōrem tribuere, quam ab sē salutem accipere videan-  
tur. ‘Haec ut intellegātis,’ inquit, ‘ā mē sincerē prōnūtiārī, 25  
audīte Rōmānōs militēs.’ Prōdūcit servōs, quōs in pābulā-  
tiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat et famē vinculisque exeru-  
ciāverat. Hī iam ante ēdoctī, quae interrogātī prōnūtiārent,  
militēs sē esse legiōnāriōs dīcunt; famē et inopiā adductōs  
clam ex castrīs exīsse, sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs 30  
reperīre possent: similī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec  
iam virēs sufficere cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse.  
itaque statuisse imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppugnātiōne oppidi  
prōfēcissent, triduō exercitum dēdūcere. ‘Haec,’ inquit, ‘ā  
mē,’ Vercingetorix, ‘beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis in- 35  
simulātis; cūius operā sine vestrō sanguine tantum exercitum  
victōrem famē cōnsūmptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex fugā  
recipientem nē quā civitās suis finibus recipiat, ā mē prōvī-  
sum est.’



*The Gauls, reassured, send him reinforcements.*

21. Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armīs concrepat, quod facere in eō cōnsuērunt, cūius ōrātiōnem approbant; summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem nec dē ēius fidē dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne bellum administrārī posse. Statuunt, ut decem mīlia hominum dēlēcta ex omnibus cōpiīs in oppidum mittantur, nec sōlis Biturigibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēnsent, quod



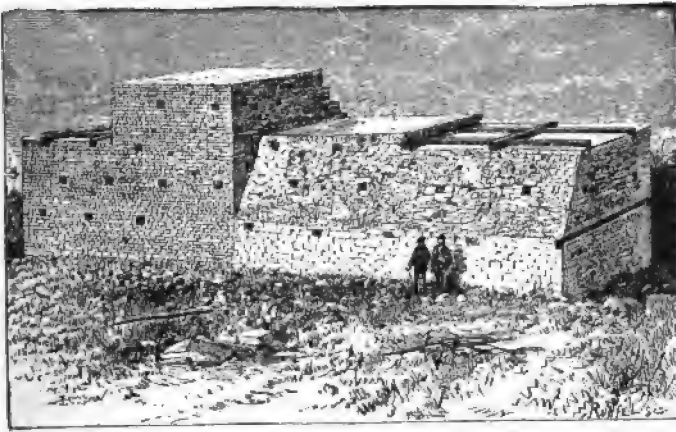
ROMAN WORKS OF APPROACH AT AVARICUM.

paene in eō, si id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriæ cōnstāre intellegēbant.

*Able defense of the Gauls in Avaricum.*

22. Singulārī mīlitum nostrōrum virtūtī cōnsilia cūiusquemodī Gallōrum occurrēbant, ut est summae genus sollertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda, quae ā quōque trāduntur, aptissimum. Nam et laqueīs falcēs āvertēbant, quās, cum destināverant, tormentis intrōr-

sus reducēbant, et aggerem cuniculīs subtrahēbant, eō sciē-  
tius, quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrāriae atque omne genus  
cuniculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum est. Tōtum autem mū-  
rum ex omnī parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās coriīs  
intēxerant. Tum crēbris diurnīs nocturnisque ēruptiōnibus 10  
aut aggerī ignem inferēbant, aut militēs occupātōs in opere  
adoriēbantur et nostrārum turrium altitudinem, quantum hās  
cotidiānus agger expresserat, commissīs suārum turrium



GALLIC WALL.

mālīs adaequābant et apertōs cuniculōs praeūstā et praeacūtā  
māteriā et pice fervefactā et māximī ponderis saxīs morāban- 15  
tur moenibusque appropinquāre prohibēbant.

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē fōrmā *Description of  
a Gallic wall.*  
sunt. Trabēs dērēctae, perpetuae, in longitudinem paribus  
intervāllīs distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs in solō collocantur.  
Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea  
autem, quae diximus, intervālla grandibus in fronte saxīs 5  
efferciuntur. His collocātīs et coāgmentātīs alius insuper

ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter  
 sē contingant trabēs, sed paribus intermissae spatiis singulae  
 singulis saxīs interiectis artē contineantur. Sic deinceps  
 10 omne opus contēxitur, dum iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur.  
 Hōc cum in speciem varietātemque opus dēfōrme nōn est al-  
 ternis trabibus ac saxīs, quae rēctis lineīs suōs ordinēs ser-  
 vant, tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam  
 habet oportunitātem, quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete  
 15 māteria dēfendit, quae perpetuīs trabibus pedēs quadrāgēnōs  
 plērumque intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpī neque distrahī  
 potest.

*The besieged  
 Gauls fire the  
 Roman works  
 and make a  
 sally.*

24. Hīs tot rēbus impeditā oppugnātiōne mili-  
 tēs, cum tōtō tempore frīgore et assiduīs imbris  
 tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec  
 superāvērunt et diēbus xxv aggerem longum pedēs cccxxx,  
 5 altum pedēs lxxx exstrūxērunt. Cum is mūrū hostium  
 paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus cōnsuētūdine excubāret  
 militēsque hortārētur, nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere in-  
 termittērētur, paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum  
 fūmāre aggerem, quem cuniculō hostēs succenderant, eōdem-  
 10 que tempore tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō duābus portīs ab  
 utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fiēbat: aliī facēs atque āridam  
 māteriem dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant, picem reli-  
 quāsque rēs, quibus ignis excitārī potest, fundēbant, ut quō  
 primum occurrerētur aut cui rei ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō  
 15 inīrī posset. Tamen, quod institūtō Caesaris semper duae  
 legiōnēs prō castris excubābant plūrēsque partitis temporibus  
 erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut aliī ēruptionibus resis-  
 terent, aliī turrēs reducerent aggeremque interscinderent,  
 omnis vērō ex castris multitudō ad restinguendum concurreret.

25. Cum in omnibus locis cōsumptā iam reli- *They are re-*  
quā parte noctis pūgnārētur semperque hostibus *pulsed into*  
spēs victōriæ redintegrārētur, eō magis, quod deūstōs pluteōs *the town.*  
turrium vidēbant nec facile adire apertōs ad auxiliandum  
animadvertēbant, semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessīs succēde- 5  
rent omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vestigiō temporis po-  
sitam arbitrārentur, accidit īnspectantibus nōbīs, quod dīgnum  
memoriā visum praetereundum nōn exīstimāvimus. Quīdam  
ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēvī ac picis trāditās  
glēbās in ignem ē regiōne tūrris prōiciēbat: scorpiōne ab la- 10  
tere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex prox-  
imis ūnus iacentem trāsgressus eōdem illō munere fungē-  
bātur; eādē ratiōne ictū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterī successit  
tertius et tertiō quartus, nec prius ille est ā prōpūgnātōribus  
vacuus relictus locus, quam restinctō aggere atque omnī ex 15  
parte summōtis hostibus finis est pūgnandī factus.

26. Omnia expertī Gallī, quod rēs nūlla suc- *The Gauls are*  
cesserat, posterō diē cōsiliū cēpērunt ex oppidō *prevented*  
prōfugere, hortante et iubente Vercingetorige. *from evacuat-*  
Id silentiō noctis cōnātī nōn māgnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē *ing by the en-*  
effectūrōs spērābant, proptereā quod neque longē ab oppidō 5  
castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palūs, quae perpetua inter-  
cēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat. Iamque hōc  
facere noctū apparābant, cum mātresfamiliae repentē in pūb-  
licum prōcurrērunt flentēsque prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum  
omnibus precibus petiērunt, nē sē et commūnēs liberōs hosti- 10  
bus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam  
nātūrae et viriū infirmitās impediret. Ubi eōs in senten-  
tiā perstāre vidērunt, quod plērumque in summō periculō  
timor misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et significāre dē  
fugā Rōmānīs coepērunt. Quō timōre perterritī Gallī, nē ab

equitatū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

*Caesar makes  
an assault.*

27. Posterō diē Caesar prēmōtā turri dīrēctis-  
que operibus, quae facere instituerat, māgnō ecortō imbre  
nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōnsilium tempestātem  
arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō dispositās  
5 videbat, suōs quoque languidiūs in opere versārī iussit et,  
quid fierī vellet, ostendit. Legiōnibusque inter castra vīneās-  
que in occultō expeditis cohortātus, ut aliquandō prō tantis  
labōribus fructum victōriae perciperent, iis, quī primī mū-  
rum ascendissent, praemia prōposuit militibusque sīgnum  
10 dedit. Illī subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrum-  
que celeriter complēvērunt.

*The town is  
taken and  
pillaged.*

28. Hostēs rē novā perterriti, mūrō turribus-  
que dēiecti in forō ac locis potentiōribus cuneātīm  
cōstitērunt, hōc animō, ut, sī quā ex parte obviam venirētur,  
aciē instructā dēpūgnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum  
5 sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vidērunt,  
veritī, nē omnīnō spēs, fugae tollerētur, abiectis armīs ūltimās  
oppidi partēs continentī impetū petivērunt, parsque ibi, cum  
angustō exitū portārum sē ipsi premerent, ā militibus, pars  
iam ēgressa portis ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit  
10 quisquam, quī praedae studeret. Sic et Cēnabī caede et  
labōre operis incitatī nōn aetāte cōfectis, nōn mulieribus  
nōn infantibus pepercērunt. Dēnique ex omnī numerō, quī  
fuit circiter milium XL, vix DCCC, quī primō clāmōre auditō  
sē ex oppidō ēiēceraant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorigem pervē-  
15 nērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit  
veritus, nē qua in castris ex eōrum concursū et misericordiā  
vulgī seditiō orerētur, ut procul in viā dispositis familiāribus  
suīs principibusque civitātum disparandōs dēdūcendōsque ad

suos cūraret, quae cuique civitatī pars castrorum ab initio obvenerat. 20

29. Posterō diē concilio convocatō cōsolātus *Vercingetorix tries to reanimate his forces.* cohortatusque est, nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent neu perturbārentur incommodō. Nōn virtūte neque in acie vicisse Rōmānōs, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppugnatiōnis, cuius rei fuerint ipsi imperiti. Errāre, si qui in bello omnis secundos rerum proventus expectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendī, cuius rei testes ipsos habēret; sed factum imprudentiā Biturigum et nimiā obsequentiā reliquorum, uti hōc incommodum acciperetur. Id tamen sē celeriter māioribus commodis sanātūrum. Nam quae ab reliquis Gallis civitatēs dissentirent, hās suā diligentia adiūctūrum atque unum cōsiliū tōtius Galliæ effectūrum, cuius cōsensuī nē orbis quidem terrarum possit obsistere; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab iis commūnis salutis causā impetrārī, ut castra mūnīre instituerent, quō facilius repentinōs hostium impetūs sustinērent. 15

30. Fuit haec oratiō nōn ingrāta Gallis, et *His success.* maximē, quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat tantō acceptō incommodō neque sē in occultum abdideret et cōspectum multitudinis fūgerat; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentire existimābatur, quod rē integrā primō incendendum Avaricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque ut reliquorum imperatorum res adversae auctoritatem minuunt, sic huius ex contrariō dignitas incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbatur. Simul in spem veniebant eius affirmatiōne de reliquis adiungendis civitatibus; primumque eō tempore Galli castra mūnīre instituerunt; et sic sunt animō cōfirmāti hominēs insueti laboris, ut omnia, quae imperarentur, sibi patienda existimarent. 10

*He gains new allies.*

31. Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetorix animō labōrābat, ut reliquās cīvitatēs adiungeret, atque eās dōnīs pollicitātiōnibusque alliciēbat. Huic rei idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut orātiōne subdolā aut  
 5 amīcitiā facillime capere posset. Quī Avaricō expūgnātō refūgerant, armandōs vestiendōsque cūrat; simul ut dēminūtāe cōpiae redintegrārentur, imperat certum numerum militum cīvitatibus, quem et quam ante diem in castra addūcī velit, sagittariōsque omnēs, quōrum erat permāgnus numerus  
 10 in Galliā, conquīrī et ad sē mittī iubet. His rēbus celeriter id, quod Avaricī dēperierat, explētur. Interim Teutomatus, Ollovicōnis filius, rēx Nitiobrogum, cūius pater ab senātū nostrō amicus erat appellātus, cum māgnō equitum suōrum numerō et quōs ex Aquitāniā condūxerat ad eum pervenit.

*The Aedui ask Caesar to decide between two rival chieftains.*

32. Caesar Avaricī complūrēs diēs commorātus summamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī  
 commeātūs nactus exercitum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope hieme cōfectā cum ipsō annī  
 5 tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficisci cōstituisset, sive eum ex palūdibus silvisque ēlicere sive obsidiōne premere posset, lēgātī ad eum principēs Aedū-  
 ōrum veniunt orātum, ut māximē necessariō tempore cīvitatī subveniat; summō esse in periculō rem, quod, cum singulī  
 10 magistrātūs antiquitus creārī atque rēgiam potestātem annum obtinēre cōsuēssent, duo magistrātum gerant et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creatum esse dicat. Hōrum esse alterum Convictolitāvem, flōrentem et illūstre[m] adulēscen-  
 tem, alterum Cotum, antiquissimā familiā nātum atque ipsum  
 15 hominem summae potentiae et māgnae cōgnātiōnis, cūius frāter Valetiacus proximō annō eundem magistrātum gesserit. Cīvitatē esse omnem in armīs; divīsum senātum, divi-

sum populum, suās cūiusque eōrum clientēlās. Quod sī diūtius alātur contrōversia, fore utī pars cum parte cīvītātis cōnfligat. Id nē accidat, positum in ēius diligentīā atque auctōritāte. 20

33. Caesar, etsī ā bellō atque hoste discēdere *He decides according to their laws.* dētrimentōsum esse exīstimābat, tamen nōn ignōrāns, quanta ex dissēnsiōnibus incommoda orīrī cōnsuēssent, nē tanta et tam coniūncta populō Rōmānō cīvītās, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rēbus ōrnāsset, ad vim atque 5 arma dēscenderet, atque ea pars, quae minus sibi cōnfideret, auxilia ā Vercingetorige arcesseret, huic rei praeventendum exīstimāvit, et, quod lēgibus Aeduōrum iīs, quī summum magistrātum obtinērent, excēdere ex finibus nōn licēret, nē quid dē iūre aut dē lēgibus eōrum dēminuisse vidērētur, ipse 10 in Aeduōs proficīscī statuit senātumque omnem et quōs inter contrōversia esset ad sē Decetiam ēvocāvit. Cum prope omnis cīvītās eō convēnisset docērēturque, paucīs clam convocātis aliō locō, aliō tempore atque oportuerit frātre ā frātre renūtiātum, cum lēgēs duo ex ūnā familiā vīvō utrōque nōn 15 solum magistrātūs creārī vetārent, sed etiam in senātū esse prohibērent, Cotum imperium dēpōnere coēgit, Convictolitāvem, quī per sacerdōtēs mōre cīvītātis intermīssīs magistrātibus esset creātus, potestātem obtinēre iūssit.

34. Hōc dēcrētō interpositō cohortātus Aeduōs, ut contrōversiārum ac dissēnsiōnis obliviscerentur atque omnibus omīssīs rēbus huic bellō servīrent eaque, quae meruissent, praemia ab sē, dēvīctā Galliā, exspectārent equitātumque omnem et peditum mīlia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiīs rei frūmentariae causā dispōneret, exercitum in duās partēs dīvisit: quattuor legiōnēs in Senonēs Parisiōsque Labiēnō dūcendās *Caesar sends Labienus to the north and marches upon Gergovia.* 5



dedit, sex ipse in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum  
 10 flūmen Elaver dūxit: equitātūs partem illī attribuit, partem  
 sibi reliquit. Quā rē cōgnitā Vercingetorix omnibus inter-  
 ruptis eius flūminis pontibus ab alterā flūminis parte iter  
 facere coepit.

*He finds Ver-  
cingetorix at  
the passage  
of the Elaver.*

35. Cum uterque utrīque esset exercitus in  
 cōspectū ferēque ē regiōne castris castra pōneret,  
 dispositis explorātōribus, nēcubi effectō ponte Rōmānī cōpiās  
 trādūcerent, erat in māgnis Caesarī difficultātibus rēs, nē mā-  
 5 iōrem aestātis partem flūmine impedirētur, quod nōn ferē  
 ante autumnum Elaver vadō trānsiri sōlet. Itaque, nē id  
 accideret, silvestrī locō castris positīs ē regiōne ūnūs eōrum  
 pontium, quōs Vercingetorix rescindendōs cūrāverat, posterō  
 diē cum duābus legiōnibus in occultō restitit; reliquās cōpiās  
 10 cum omnibus impedimentis, ut cōnsuēverat, misit partitis  
 quibusdam cohortibus, utī numerus legiōnum cōstāre vidē-  
 rētur. His quam longissimē possent prōgredi iussis, cum  
 iam ex diēi tempore coniectūrā caperet in castra perventum,  
 isdem sublicis, quārum pars inferior integra remanēbat, pon-  
 15 tem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque  
 trāductis et locō castris idōneō dēlectō reliquās cōpiās revo-  
 cāvit. Vercingetorix rē cōgnitā, nē contrā suam voluntātem  
 dimicāre cōgerētur, māgnis itineribus antecessit.

*Situation of  
Gergovia.  
Position of  
the two  
armies.*

36. Caesar ex eō locō quintis castris Gergo-  
 viam pervēnit equestrique eō diē proelio levī factō,  
 perspectō urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō mon-  
 te omnis aditus difficilēs habēbat, dē expūgnātiōne dēspērā-  
 5 vit, dē obsessiōne nōn prius agendum cōstituit, quam rem  
 frumentāriam expedisset. At Vercingetorix castris prope  
 oppidum positīs mediocribus circum sē intervallis sēparatim  
 singulārum civitātum cōpiās collocāverat, atque omnibus eius

iugī collibus occupātis, quā dispici poterat, horribilem speciem praebebāt principēsque eārum civitātum, quōs sibi ad cōsiliū capiendū delēgerat, primā lūce cotidiē ad sē convenīre iubēbat, seu quid commūnicandū, seu quid administrandū vidērētur, neque ūllum ferē diem intermittēbat, quā equestri proeliō interiectis sagittariis, quid in quōque esset animi ac virtutis suōrum, periclitārētur. Erat ē regiōne oppidi collis sub ipsis radicibus montis egregiē munitus atque ex omni parte circumcīsus; quem si tenērent nostrī, et aquae magnā parte et pabulatiōne liberā prohibētūrī hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō ab his, nōn nimis firmō tamen, tenēbatur. Silentio noctis Caesar ex castris egressus, priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō veniri posset, deiecto praesidiō potitus locō duās ibi legiōnes collocavit fossamque duplicem duodēnum pedum ā maiōribus castris ad minōra perduxit, ut tūto ab repentinō hostium incursū etiam singulī comēare possent.

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Con- *Plot to detach the Aeduans from Caesar's support.*  
victolitāvis Aeduus, cui magistrātum adiudicātum ā Caesare dēmōnstrāvimus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscentibus colloquitur; quōrum erat princeps Litaviccus atque eius frātēs, amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscentēs. Cum his praemium commūnicat hortāturque, ut sē liberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint. Ūnam esse Aedūōrum civitātem, quae certissimam Galliae victōriam dētineat; eius auctoritāte reliquās continērī; quā trāductā locum cōsistendi Rōmānis in Galliā nōn fore. Esse nōnnūllō sē Caesaris beneficiō affectum, sic tamen, ut iūstissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plūs commūni libertāti tribuere. Cūr enim potius Aeduī dē suō iūre et dē lēgibus ad Caesarem disceptātōrem, quam Rōmānī ad Aeduōs veniant? Celeriter

15 adulēsentibus et ōrātiōne magistrātūs et praemiō dēductis, cum sē vel prīncipēs eius cōsiliū fore profitērentur, ratiō perficiendī quaerēbātur, quod civitātem temerē ad suscipiendum bellum addūcī posse nōn cōfidēbant. Placuit, ut Litaviccus decem illis milibus, quae Caesarī ad bellum mitterentur, 20 praeficerētur atque ea dūcenda cūrāret, frātresque eius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua quā ratiōne agī placeat, cōstituunt.

*Its further-  
ance through  
Litaviccus.*

38. Litaviccus acceptō exercitū, cum milia passuum circiter xxx ab Gergoviā abesset, convocātis subitō militibus lacrimāns: 'Quō proficiscimur,' inquit 'militēs? Omnis noster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit: 5 prīncipēs cīvitātis, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, insimulātī prōditionis ab Rōmānīs indictā causā interfectī sunt. Haec ab hīs cōgnōscite, quī ex ipsā caede fūgērunt: nam ego frātribus atque omnibus meis propīnquis interfectis dolore prohibeor, quae gestasunt, prōnūntiāre'. Prōducuntur hī, quōs ille edocuerat, quae dīcī vellet, atque eadem, quae Litaviccus prōnūntiāverat, 10 multitūdīnē expōnunt: omnēs equitēs Aeduōrum interfectōs, quod collocūtī cum Arvernīs dicerentur; ipsōs sē inter multitudinem militum occultāsse atque ex mediā caede fūgissee. Conclāmant Aeduī et Litaviccum obsecrant, ut sibi cōsulat. 15 'Quasi vērō,' inquit ille, 'cōsiliū sit rēs, ac nōn necesse sit nōbīs Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere. An dubitāmus, quīn nefariō facinore admīssō Rōmānī iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in nōbīs animī est, persequāmur eōrum mortem, quī indīgnisimē interiērunt, atque hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus'. Ostendit 20 cīvēs Rōmānōs, quī eius praesidiū fiduciā ūnā erant: māgnū numerum frūmentī commeātūsque diripit, ipsōs crudēlīter excruciatōs interficit. Nūntiōs totā cīvitāte Aeduōrum di-

mittit, eōdem mendaciō dē caede equitum et principum per-  
mouet; hortatur, ut simili ratiōne, atque ipse fecerit, suās 25  
iniuriās persequantur.

39. Eporedorix Aeduus, summō locō nātus Caesar is in-  
formed of the  
plot by Epore-  
dorix. adulēscēns et summae domī potentiae, et unā  
Viridomarus, parī aetate et grātiā, sed genere disparī quem  
Caesar ab Diviciacō sibi trāditum ex humili locō ad summam  
dignitatem perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convēnerant 5  
nōminatim ab eō evocātī. His erat inter sē dē principatū  
contentiō, et in illā magistrātuum contrōversiā alter prō  
Convictolitavī, alter pro Cotō summis opibus pūgnāverant.  
Ex hīs Eporedorix cōgnitō Litaviccī cōnsiliō mediā ferē nocte  
rem ad Caesarem dēfert; orat, nē patiatur civitatem prāvis 10  
adulēscēntium cōnsiliis ab amicitia populi Rōmāni dēficere;  
quod futurum prōvideat, si sē tot hominum milia cum hosti-  
bus coniūnserint, quōrum salutem neque propinquī neglegere  
neque civitas levī mōmentō aestimāre posset.

40. Māgnā affectus sollicitūdine hōc nūntiō The Aeduans  
under Lita-  
vicius yield.  
The leader  
escapes. Caesar, quod semper Aeduōrum civitatī praecipuē  
indulserat, nullā interpositā dubitātiōne legiōnēs  
expeditās quattuor equitatumque omnem ex castris edūcit,  
nec fuit spatium tāli tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod 5  
rēs posita in celeritate vidēbatur: C. Fabium lēgātum cum  
legiōnibus duābus castris praesidiō relinquit. Frātrēs Lita-  
viccī cum comprehendī iussisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostēs  
fūgissee. Adhortātus militēs, nē necessariō tempore itineris  
labōre permoveantur, cupidissimis omnibus prōgressus milia 10  
passuum xxv āgmen Aeduōrum cōspicātus immissō equitā-  
tū iter eōrum moratur atque impedit interdicitque omnibus,  
nē quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomarum,  
quōs illi interfectōs existimābant, inter equitēs versārī suōs-

- 15 que appellāre iubet. His cōgnitīs et Litaviccī fraude perspectā Aeduī manūs tendere, dēditionem sīgnificāre et prōiectis armīs mortem dēprecārī incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suis clientibus, quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrēmā fōrtūnā dēserere patrōnōs, Gergoviam perfūgit.

*Attack on  
Fabius, encamped near  
Gergovia.  
Caesar hastens to his relief.*

41. Caesar nūntiīs ad cīvitatē Aeduōrum mīssīs, quī suō beneficiō cōservātōs docērent, quōs iūre bellī interficere potuisset, tribusque hōrīs [noctis] exercitū ad quiētem datīs castra ad  
5 Gergoviam mōvit. Mediō ferē itinere equitēs ā Fabiō mīssī, quantō rēs in periculō fuerit, expōnunt. Summīs cōpiīs castra oppugnāta dēmōnstrant, cum crēbrō integrī dēfessīs succēderent nostrōsque assiduō labōre dēfatīgārent, quibus propter māgnitudinem castrōrum perpetuō esset iisdem in  
10 vāllō permanendum, Multitudīne sagittārum atque omnis generis tēlōrum multōs vulnerātos; ad haec sustinenda māgnō ūsuī fuisse tormenta. Fabium discessū eōrum duābus relictīs portīs obstruere cēterās pluteōsque vāllō addere et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsum apparāre. His rēbus  
15 cōgnitīs Caesar summō studiō militum ante ortum sōlis in castra pervēnit.

*Plots and outrages of the Aeduī.*

42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aeduī primīs nūntiīs ab Litaviccō acceptīs nullum sibi ad cōgnōscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs irācundia et temeritās, quae māximē illī hominum  
5 generī est innāta, ut levem auditiōnem habeant prō rē compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānōrum diripiunt, caedēs faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōclīnātam Convictolitāvis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admīssō ad sānitātem revertī pudeat. M. Aristium, tribūnum  
10 militum, iter ad legiōnem facientem fidē datā ex oppidō

Cabillōnō ēdūcunt: idem facere cōgunt eōs, quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōstitērant. Hōs continuō in itinere adortī omnibus impedimentis exuunt; repūgnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multis utrimque interfectis māiōrem multitudinem ad arma concitant, 15

43. Interim nuntiō allātō, omnēs eōrum militēs in potestāte Caesaris tenēri, concurrunt ad Aris- *Duplicity of the Aedui. Caesar plans to abandon the siege of Gergovia.* tium, nihil publicō factum cōsiliō dēmōstrant; quaestiōnem dē bonis direptis dēcernunt, Litavicci frātrum- que bona publicant, lēgātōs ad Caesarem suī purgandī grātiā mittunt. Haec faciunt recipērandōrum suōrum causā; sed 5 contāminātī facinore et capti compendiō ex direptis bonis, quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exterriti cōnsilia clam dē bellō inīre incipiunt civitatēque reliquās lēgātōnibus sollicitant. Quae tametsi Caesar intellegēbat, 10 tamen quam mītissimē potest lēgātōs appellat: nihil sē propter inscientiam levitatemque vulgī gravius dē civitate iudicāre neque dē suā in Aeduōs benevolentia dēminuere. Ipse māiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus civitatibus circumsisteretur, cōnsilia inībat, quemadmodum ā Gergoviā discēderet ac rūsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ā timōre defectionis similis fugae vidērētur. 15

44. Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene gerendae rei. Nam cum in minōra castra *He finds a favorable position for an attack.* operis perspicendi causā vēnisset, animum advertit collem, quī ab hostibus tenēbatur, nūdātum hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus vix prae multitudine cerni poterat. Mirātus quāerit ex perfugis causam, quōrum māgnus ad eum cotidiē numerus cōfluēbat. Cōstābat inter omnēs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explorātōrēs cōgnōverat, dorsum esse eius iugī prope aequum, sed hunc silvestrem et angustum, quā esset

aditus ad alteram partem oppidī: vehementer huic illōs locō  
 10 timere nec iam aliter sentire, unō colle ab Rōmānīs occupātō,  
 sī alterum amīsissent, quā paene circumvallātī atque omnī  
 exitū et pābulātiōne interclūsī vidērentur: ad hunc mūnien-  
 dum hominēs ā Vercingetorige ēvocātōs.

*He maneuvers  
to deceive the  
Gauls.*

45. Hāc rē cōgnitā Caesar mittit complūrēs  
 equitum turmās eōdem mediā nocte; imperat hīs ut  
 paulō tumultuōsius omnibus locīs vagentur. Primālūce māg-  
 num numerum impedimentōrum ex castrīs mūlōrumque prōdū-  
 5 cī dēque hīs strāmenta dētrahī mūliōnēsque cum cassidibus  
 equitum speciē ac simulātiōne collibus circumvehī iubet. Hīs  
 paucōs addit equitēs, qui lātius ostentātiōnis causā vagentur.  
 Longō circuitū eāsdem omnēs iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec  
 procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in  
 10 castra, neque tantō spatiō, certī quid esset, explorārī poterat  
 Legiōnem unam eōdem iugō mittit et paulum prōgressam in-  
 feriōre cōstituit locō silvīsque occultat. Augētur Gallīs  
 suspiciō atque omnēs illō ad mūnitiōnem cōpiae trādūcun-  
 tur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōspicātus tēctīs insig-  
 15 nibus suōrum occultātisque signīs militāribus rārōs militēs  
 nē ex oppidō animadverterentur, ex māiōribus castrīs in  
 minōra trādūcit lēgātisque, quōs singulis legiōnibus praefēc-  
 erat, quid fierī velit, ostendit: imprīmīs monet, ut contineant  
 militēs, nē studiō pūgnandī aut spē praedae longius prōgre-  
 20 dianantur; quid inīquitās locī habeat incommodī prōpōnit: hōc  
 unā celeritāte posse vitārī; occāsiōnis esse rem, nōn proeliū  
 Hīs rēbus expositis signum dat et ab dextrā parte aliō ascen-  
 sū eōdem tempore Aeduōs mittit.

*The Romans  
capture the  
Gaulic camp  
outside the  
walls.*

46. Oppidī mūrus ā plāniciē atque initiō as-  
 cēnsūs rēctā regiōne, sī nullus amfractus intercē-  
 deret, MCC passūs aberat: quidquid hūc circuitūs

ad molliendum clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. A mediō ferē colle in longitudinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, 5 ex grandibus saxīs sex pedum mūrum, quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret, praedūxerant Gallī atque inferiōre omnī spatiō vacuō relictō superiōrem partem collis usque ad mūrum oppidī dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant. Militēs datō signō celeriter ad mūnitiōnem perveniunt eamque trāsgressī trinīs 10 castrīs potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castrīs capiendīs celeritās, ut Teutomatus, rēx Nitobrogum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut meridiē conquiēverat, superiōre corporis parte nūdā, vulnerātō equō vix sē ex manibus praedantium militum ēriperet. 15

47. Cōsecūtus id, quod animō prōposuerat, Caesar receptuī canī iūssit, legiōnisque decimae, *Caesar restrains his soldiers who are eager to follow up their advantage.* quācum erat, continuō signa cōstituit. At reliquarum legiōnum militēs nōn exaudītō sonō tubae, quod satis māgna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen ā tribūnīs militum lēgātisque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed elāti spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundīs proeliis nihil adeō arduum sibi esse existimāvērunt, quod nōn virtūte cōsequi possent, neque finem prius sequendi fēcērunt, quam mūrō oppidī portisque appro- 10 pīnquārunt. Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clamōre quī longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterriti, cum hostem intrā portās esse existimārent sēsē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Matrēsfamiliae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant et pectore nūdō prōminentēs passīs manibus obtestābantur 15 Rōmānōs, ut sibi parcerent neu, sicut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinērent: nōnnūllae dē mūrīs per manūs dēmīssae sēsē militibus trādēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis VIII, quem inter suōs eō diē dixisse



20 cōnstābat, excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiis neque commīsū-  
rum ut prius quisquam mūrum ascenderet, trēs suōs nactus  
manipulārēs atque ab iis sublevātus mūrum ascendit; hōs  
ipse rūsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrum extulit.

*The Gauls re-  
ceive rein-  
forcements.*

48. Interim ii, quī ad alteram partem oppidī,  
ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, mūnitiōnis causā con-  
venerant, primō exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crebrīs nūntiis  
incitātī, oppidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissis equitibus  
5 māgnō cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque primus  
venerat, sub mūrō cōsistēbat suōrumque pūgnantium nume-  
rum augēbat. Quōrum cum māgna multitūdō convēnisset,  
mātrēsfamiliae quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs ten-  
debant, suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō passum capillum os-  
10 tentāre liberōsque in cōspectum prōferre coepērunt. Erat  
Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō; simul et cur-  
sū et spatiō pūgnae defatigātī nōn facile recentēs atque inte-  
grōs sustinēbant.

*Caesar chang-  
es position  
and stations  
reserves.*

49. Caesar cum iniquō locō pūgnārī hostium-  
que augērī cōpiās vidēret, praemetuēns suis ad T.  
Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō relique-  
rat, mīsīt, ut cohortēs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub  
5 infimō colle ā dextrō latere hostium cōstitueret, ut, sī nos-  
trōs locō depulsōs vidisset, quō minus liberē hostēs insequē-  
rentur, terreret. Ipse paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prō-  
gressus, ubi cōstitēbat, ēventum pūgnae expectābat.

*Panico caused  
by the arrival  
of the Aeduians.*

50. Cum ācerimē cominus pūgnārētur, hos-  
tēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōfiderent,  
subitō sunt Aeduī visī ā latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab  
dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs distinendae causā mīserat.  
5 Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt,  
āc tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs animadvertēbantur, quod

insigne pācātōrum esse cōnsuērat, tamen id ipsū suū fallendī causā militēs ab hostibus factum existimābant. Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque unā mūrū ascenderant circumventī atque interfectī mūrō praecipitābantur. M. Petronius, eiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās *Exploit of Petronius.* excidere cōnātus esset, ā multitudīne oppressus ac sibi dēspērāns multis iam vulneribus acceptis manipulāribus suis, quī illum secūtī erant: 'Quoniam,' inquit, 'mē unā vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vitae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditate glōriae adductus in periculum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultate vōbis cōsulite.' Simul in mediōs hostēs irrupit duōbusque interfectis reliquōs ā portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī suis: 'Frūstrā,' inquit, 'meae vitae subvenīre cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis virēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte, dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite.' Ita pūgnāns post paulum concidit ac suis salutī fuit.

51. Nostrī, cum undique premerentur, XLVI *The Romans retire with loss.* centuriōnibus amissis dēiecti sunt locō. Sed intolerantius Gallōs īnsequentēs legiō decima tardāvit, quae prō subsidio paulō aequiōre locō cōstitērat. Hanc rursus XIII legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt, quae ex castris minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs, ubi primum plāniciem attigērunt, īfestis contrā hostēs signis cōstitērunt. Vercingetorix ab radicibus collis suos intrā mūnitiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē militēs sunt paulō minus septingenti dēsiderātī.

52. Posterō diē Caesar cōntiōne advocātā tēmeritatem cupiditatemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsī iudicāvissent, quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidērētur, neque signō recipiendī datō cōstitissent neque ā tribūnīs militum lēgātisque retinērī

*Caesar reproaches his soldiers for rashness and praises their valor.*

potuissent. Exposuit, quid inīquitās locī posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hostibus explōrātā vīctōriā dīmīssisset, nē parvum modo dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter inīquitātem locī  
 10 acciderat. Quantō opere eōrum animī māgnitūdinem admīrārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnitiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidī tardāre potuisset, tantō opere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātōrem dē vīctōriā atque exitū rērum sentīre existimārent; nec  
 15 minus sē ab milite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque animī māgnitūdinem dēsīderāre.

*The Gauls decline to fight. Caesar retires among the Aedui.*

53. Hāc habitā cōntiōne et ad extrēmā ōrātiōnem cōfirmātis militibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur neu, quod incommodum inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī hostium tribuerent, eadem dē  
 5 profectiōne cōgitāns, quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castris ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōstituit. Cum Vercingetorix nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestri proeliō atque eō secundō in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hōc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam militumque animōs cōfirmandōs factum  
 10 existimāns in Aeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem īsecūtis hostibus tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver pervēnit; pontem reficit eōque exercitum trādūxit.

*He seeks a renewal of their allegiance.*

54. Ibi ā Viridomarō atque Eporedorige Aeduīs appellātus discit cum omnī equitātū Litavicum ad sollicitandōs Aeduōs profectum: opus esse ipsōs antecēdere ad cōfirmandā cīvitatē. Etsi multis iam rēbus  
 5 perfidiam Aeduōrum perspectam habēbat atque hōrum discessū mātūrārī dēfectiōnem cīvitatīs existimābat, tamen eōs retinendōs nōn cōstituit, nē aut īferre iniūriam vidērētur

aut daret timōris aliquam suspiciōnem. Discēdentibus hīs breviter sua in Aeduōs merita exposuit, quōs et quam humil-  
ēs accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs agris, omnibus  
ēreptīs cōpiis, impositō stipendiō, obsidibus summā cum con-  
tumēliā extortīs, et quam in fōrtūnam quamque in amplitū-  
dinem dēdūxisset, ut nōn solum in pristinum statum redīs-  
sent, sed omnium temporum dignitātem et grātiā anteces-  
sisse vidērentur. Hīs datīs mandātīs eōs ab sē dimisit.

55. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Aeduōrum ad *Noviodunum, the store house for the Romans, is destroyed by the Gauls.*  
rīpās Ligeris oportūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesar  
omnēs obsidēs Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniā pūb-  
licam, suōrum atque exercitūs impedimentōrum māgnam par-  
tem contulerat, hūc māgnū numerum equōrum hūius bellī  
causā in Ītaliā atque Hispāniā cōemptum mīserat. Eō cum  
Eporedorix Viridomarusque vēnissent et dē statū civitātis  
cōgnōvissent, Litaviccum Bibracte ab Aeduīs receptum,  
quod est oppidum apud eōs mājimae auctōritātis, Convictoli-  
tāvem magistratū māgnamque partem senātūs ad eum con-  
vēnisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetorigem dē pāce et amicitīā con-  
ciliandā publicē mīssōs, nōn praetermittendum tantum  
commodum existimāvērunt. Itaque interfectīs Noviodūnī  
custōdibus quīque eō negotiandī causā convēnerant pecūni-  
am atque equōs inter sē partītī sunt; obsidēs civitātum Bi-  
bracte ad magistratū dēdūcendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum,  
quod ā sē tenērī nōn posse iūdicābant, nē cui esset ūsuī Rō-  
mānīs, incendērunt; frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt nāvibus  
āvērunt, reliquū flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt.  
Ipsī ex finitimīs regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere, praesidia custōdi-  
āsque ad rīpās Ligeris dispōnere equitātumque omnibus locīs  
iniciendī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt, sī ab rē frūmen-  
tariā Rōmānōs exclūdere [aut adductōs inopiā ex prōvinciā

expellere] possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs adiuvābat, 25 quod Liger ex nivibus crēv rat, ut omninō vadō nōn posse trānsīrī vidērētur.

*Caesar crosses  
the Loire and  
goes to join  
Labienus*

56. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar mātūrandum sibi cēnsuit, sī esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum, ut prius, quam essent māiōrēs eō coāctae cōpiae, dīmīcāret. Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam 5 converteret, ut nēmō nōn tum quidem necessāriō faciendum existimābat, cum infāmia atque indignitās rei et oppositus mōns Cevenna viārumque difficultās impediēbat, tum māximē quod abiūnctō Labiēnō atque iīs legiōnibus, quās ūnā mīserat, vehementer timēbat. Itaque admodum māgnīs diurnis nocturnisque itineribus cōnfectīs contrā omnium opīniōnem ad Ligerem vēnit vadōque per equitēs inventō prō rei necessitatē oportūnō, ut brāchia modo atque umerī ad sustinenda arma liberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū, quī vim flūminis refringeret, atque hostibus primō aspectū 10 perturbātis incolumem exercitum trādūxit frūmentumque in agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus replētō hīs rēbus exercitū iter in Senonēs facere instituit.

*Labienus  
marches on  
Lutetia (Paris).  
He is  
opposed by  
Camulogenus.*

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus eō supplēmētō, quod nūper ex Italiā vēnerat, relīctō Agedincī, ut esset impedimētis praesidiō, cum quattuor legiōnibus Lutētiam proficiscitur. Id est opidum Parisiōrum, quod positum est in insulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cūius adventū ab hostibus cōgnitō māgnae ex finitimīs civitatibus cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperiī trāditur Camulogēnō Aulercō, quī prope cōnfectus aetāte tamen propter singulārem scientiam rei militāris ad eum est honōrem ēvēctus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palūdem, quae infliēbat in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum

māgnoperē impedīret, hic cōnsēdit nostrōsque trānsitū prohibēre instituit.

58. Labiēnus primō vineās agere, crātibus atque aggere palūdem explēre atque iter mūnīre cōnābātur. Postquam id difficilīus cōnfieri animū advertit, silentiō ē castrīs tertiā vigiliā ēgressus eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Metiosēdum pervēnit. Id est oppidum Senonum in insulā Sēquanāe positum, ut paulō antedē Lutētiā diximus. Dēprēnsis nāvibus circiter quīnquāgintā celeriterque coniūctis atque eō militibus iniectis et rei novitate perterritis oppidānis, quōrum māgna pars erat ad bellum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potitur. Refectō 10 ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exercitum trādūcit et secundō flūmine ad Lutētiam iter facere coepit. Hostēs rē cōgnitā ab iis, quī Metiosēdō fūgerant, Lutētiam incendi pontēque eius oppidi rescindi iubent; ipsī perfecti ā palūde ad ripās Sēquanāe ē regiōne Lutētiāe contrā 15 Labiēni castra cōnsidunt.

*Labiēnus captures Metiosēdum. The Gauls burn Lutetia and march against him.*

59. Iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discessisse audiēbatur, iam dē Aeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rumōrēs afferēbantur, Galli que in colloquiis interclūsum itinere et Ligere Caesarem inopiā frūmenti coāctum in prōvinciam contendisse cōfirmābant. Bellovaci autem dēfectiōne Aeduōrum cōgnitā, quī ante erant per sē infidēlēs, manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum Labiēnus tantā rerum commūtatiōne longē aliud sibi capiendum cōsiliū, atque antea sēnserat, intellegēbat, neque iam, ut aliquid acquireret proeliōque hostēs lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agedincum redūceret, cōgitābat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovaci, quae civitas in Galliā māximam habet opīniōnem virtūtis, instābant, alteram Camulogēnus

*Perplexity of Labienus.*

paratō atque instructō exercitū tenēbat; tum legiōnēs a  
 15 praesidiō atque impedimentis interclūsās māximum flūmen  
 distinēbat. Tantīs subitō difficultātibus obiectis ab animi  
 virtūte auxilium petendum vidēbat.

*He divides his  
 troops and  
 withdraws.*

60. Sub vesperum cōsiliō convocātō cohortā-  
 tus, ut ea, quae imperāssset, diligenter industriēque  
 administrārent, nāvēs, quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat, singulās  
 equitibus Rōmānīs attribuit et primā cōfectā vigiliā quat-  
 5 tuor mīlia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredi ibique  
 sē exspectāre iubet. Quīnque cohortēs, quās minimē firmās  
 ad dimicandum esse existimābat, castris praesidiō relinquit;  
 quīnque eiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā nocte cum omni-  
 bus impedimentis adversō flūmine māgnō tumultū proficisci  
 10 imperat. Conquirit etiam lintres: hās māgnō sonitū rēmō-  
 rum incitātās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulū  
 silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit, quē  
 nāvēs appellī iusserat.

*He crosses the  
 Seine. The  
 Gauls pursue.*

61. Eō cum esset ventum, explorātōrēs hosti-  
 um, ut omnī flūminis parte erant dispositi, in-  
 opinantēs, quod māgna subitō erat coorta tempestās, ab  
 nostris opprimuntur; exercitus equitatusque equitibus Rō-  
 5 mānīs administrantibus, quōs eī negotiō praefecerat, celeriter  
 trāsmittitur. Ūnō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūntiā-  
 tur in castris Rōmānōrum praeter cōsuetūdinem tumultuārī  
 et māgnū ire āgmēn adversō flūmine sonitumque rēmōrum  
 in eādē parte exaudiri et paulō infā militēs nāvibus trāns-  
 10 portārī. Quibus rēbus auditis, quod existimābant tribus  
 locis trānsire legiōnēs atque omnēs perturbātōs defectione  
 Aeduōrum fugam parāre, suās quoque cōpiās in trēs partēs  
 distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relictō et  
 parvā manū Metiosēdum versus missā, quae tantum prō-

grederetur, quantum naves processissent, reliquas copias 15  
contra Labienum duxerunt.

62. Primā luce et nostri omnes erant trans- *Labienus de-*  
portati et hostium acies cernebatur. Labienus *feats the*  
*Gauls and*  
*joins Caesar.*  
militēs cohortatus, ut suae pristinae virtutis et secundissimorum  
proeliorum retinerent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem,  
cuius ductū saepenumero hostēs superāssent, praesentem 5  
adesse existimarent, dat signum proelii. Primō concursū a  
dextrō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōstiterat, hostēs pelluntur  
atque in fugam cōniciuntur; ab sinistrō, quem locum duode-  
cima legiō tenēbat, cum primī ordinēs hostium transfixi pilis  
concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, nec dabat 10  
suspiciōnem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulo-  
gēnus suis aderat atque eos cohortabatur. Incertō etiam  
nunc exitū victōriae, cum septimae legiōnis tribūnis esset  
nūntiātum, quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur, post tergum  
hostium legiōnem ostendērunt signaque intulērunt. Nē eō 15  
quidem tempore quisquam locō cessit, sed circumventi  
omnēs interfectique sunt. Eandem fōrtūnam tulit Camulo-  
gēnus. At ii, qui in praesidiō contrā castra Labieni erant  
relicti, cum proelium commissum audissent, subsidiō suis  
iērunt collemque cōpērunt, neque nostrōrum militum victō- 20  
rum impetum sustinere potuerunt. Sic cum suis fugientibus  
permixti, quos nōn silvae montesque tēxerunt, ab equitatū  
sunt interfecti. Hōc negōtiō cōfectō Labienus revertitur  
Agedincum, ubi impedimenta tōtius exercitūs relicta erant;  
inde diē tertio cum omnibus copiis ad Caesarem pervēnit. 25

63. Defectiōne Aeduorum cōgnitā bellum *More tribes*  
augetur. Lēgatiōnēs in omnes partēs circum- *join the revolt.*  
*Dissapoint-*  
*ment of the*  
*Aedui.*  
mittuntur: quantum grātiā, auctoritatē, pecū-  
niā valent, ad sollicitandās civitatēs nūtuntur; nacti obsidēs



- 5 quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum supplicio dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorige Aeduī, ut ad sē veniat rationēsque bellī gerendi communicet. Rē impetratā contendunt, ut ipsīs summa imperiī trādatur, et rē in contrōversiam dēductā tōtius Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur.
- 10 Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitudinis suffrāgiis rēs permittitur: ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorigem probant imperatōrem. Ab hōc concilio Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod amicitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit
- 15 causa, quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Māgnō dolore Aeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū, queruntur fōrtūnae commūtatiōnem et Caesaris indulgentiam in sē requirunt, neque tamen susceptō bellō suum cōnsilium ā reliquīs sēparāre audent. Invitī summae speī adulēscentēs,
- 20 Eporedorix et Viridomarus, Vercingetorigi parent.

*Plans of Vercingetorix.*

64. Ipse imperat reliquīs civitatibus obsidēs diemque hūc rei cōstituit. Omnēs equitēs, quīdecim milia numerō, celeriter convenire iubet: peditātū, quem antea habuerat, sē fore contentum dicit, neque fōrtūnam temptātūrum aut in aciē dīmicātūrum, sed, quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentatiōnibus pābulatiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, quā rei familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium libertatemque sē cōsequi videant. His
- 5 cōstitutis rēbus Aeduīs Segusiāvisque, quī sunt finitimi prōvinciae, decem milia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs octingentōs. His praeficit frātre Eporedorigis bellumque inferri Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutenōs Cadur-
- 15 cōsque ad finēs Volcārū Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs mit-

tit. Nihilō minus clandestinīs nūntiīs legātiōnibusque Allobrogās sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum principibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia *Preparations of Caesar.* cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coāctā prōvincia ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helvī suā sponte cum finitimīs proeliō congressī pelluntur et C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Cabūrī filiō, prīncipe cīvitātis, complūribusque aliis interfectīs intrā oppida ac mūrōs compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbris ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis māgnā cum cūrā et diligentiā suōs finēs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nullā rē ex prōvincia atque Ītaliā sublevārī poterat, <sup>10</sup> trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs, quas superiōribus annīs pācāverat, equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, quī inter eōs proeliārī cōsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur, ā tribūnis militum reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānis atque ēvocātis <sup>15</sup> equōs sūmit Germānisque distribuit.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae *Vercingetoris counsels an attack.* ex Arvernīs equitēsque, quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī, conveniunt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferri posset, circiter milia <sup>5</sup> passuum decem ab Rōmānis trīnīs castris Vercingetorix cōnsēdit convocātisque ad concilium praefectīs equitū vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat. Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam libertātem satis esse; ad reliquū temporis pācem atque ōtium <sup>10</sup> parum prōfici: māiōribus enim coāctis cōpiis reversūrōs neque

finem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde in āgmine impeditōs ad-  
rīrentur. Sī peditēs suīs auxiliū ferant atque in eō moren-  
tur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrū cōfidat,  
15 relictīs impedimentīs suae salūtī cōsulant, et ūsū rērum ne-  
cessāriarū et dīgnitatē spoliātū irī; nam dē equitibus hos-  
tium, quī nēmō eōrum prōgredi modo extrā āgmen audeat,  
nē ipsōs quidem dēbere dubitare. Id quō māiōre faciant ani-  
mō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrū et terrōrī hostibus  
20 futūrū. Conclāmant equitēs: sāctissimō iūreiūrandō cōn-  
firmārī oportere, nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad pa-  
rentēs, ad uxōrem aditū habeat, quī nōn bis per āgmen hos-  
tium perequitāset.

*The Gauls are  
defeated with  
loss.*

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus iūreiūrandō ad-  
āctīs posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū  
duae sē aciēs ā duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā primō āg-  
mine iter impedire coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum  
5 quoque equitātū tripertitō dīvisum contrā hostem ire iubet.  
Pūgnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōsistit āgmen; impe-  
dimenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur, Sī quā in parte nostri  
labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō signa inferri Cae-  
sar aciemque cōstituī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad īnsequ-  
10 endum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxiliī cōfirmābat. Tandem  
Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostēs locō  
dēpellunt; fugientēs usque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorix cum  
pedestribus cōpiīs cōsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque  
interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumīrentur  
15 veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs  
nōbilissimī Aeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus,  
praefectus equitū, quī contrōversiam cum Convīctolitāvī  
proximīs comitiīs habuerat, et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiō-  
nem Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat, et Eporedorix,

quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Aeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorix cō- *They retire to Alesia. Caesar pursues and lays siege.*  
piās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinus-  
que Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandūbiōrum, iter facere  
coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castrīs ēdūci et sē subse-  
quī iūssit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem dēduc- 5  
tis duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis secūsus, quantum diē  
tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus hostium ex novis-  
simō āgmine interfectis alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit.  
Perspectō urbis sitū perterritisque hostibus, quod equitātū,  
quā māximē parte exercitūs cōfidēbant, erant pulsī, adhor- 10  
tātus ad labōrem militēs circumvallāre instituit.

1. fugō, 1. put to flight, chase:  
rout. 1

Vercingetorix, -igis, m., chief of  
the Averni and commander of the  
combined Gallic forces in 52 B. C.  
at Alesia. \*

3. Alesia, -ae, r., a town of the

Mandūbii, now Alise Ste. Reine. \*

Mandūbii, -ōrum, m., a Gallic  
people between the Aedui and  
Lingones. 3

11. circum-vallō, 1. [vālum,  
rampart], a., surround with a  
rampart, beleaguer, invest. 4

2. ut ... collocāverat: i. e.,  
without returning to camp.

3, 4. Alesiam ... coepit: the  
distance is about forty miles.  
quod: for gender cf. II, 1, 4; I,  
38, 3.

8. alterō diē: i. e., on the sec-  
ond day of the march, which began  
the day after the battle. ad Ale-  
siam: this is Alise Ste. Reine, as  
has been proved by the excavations  
made on the site by order of the  
Emperor Napoleon III during the  
years 1862-65. The ancient town  
covered the whole of the oval pla-  
teau of Mont Auxois, which is one  
and a quarter miles long east and

west and one half a mile across in  
the widest place. The base of the  
hill is six miles in circumference.  
The slopes rise very gradually to  
a wall of rock on all sides except  
the east where a low neck of land  
connects the hill with the high  
ground on that side.

9. perspectō urbis sitū: this  
reconnaissance convinced Caesar  
that it would be difficult to take  
the place by assault. The Roman  
army approached from the east.

11. circumvallāre: see Int.  
156, 157. Caesar had eleven legions  
— about 50,000 men — 5,000 Gallic  
and German cavalry and 10,000  
auxiliary troops.



London: George Bell & Sons.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum Alesia in colle summō *Situation and defences of Alesia.* admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnārī nōn posse vidērētur; cūius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante id oppidum plāniciēs circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omni- 5 bus partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō spatiō parī altitudinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam sex in altitudinem pedum praedūxerant. Ēius mūnitiōnis, quae ab Rōmānīs 10 īnstituēbātur, circuitus xi mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra

4. sub-luō, -ere, lūtus [luō, wash], *a.*, wash underneath, wash. 1

7. fastigium, -ī [fastigō, make pointed], *n.*, the top of a gable; summit, elevation, height; declivity, descent, slope. 3

cingō, -ere, cinxi, cinctus, *a.*, encircle, surround, encompass,

invest. \*

9. māceria, -ae, *f.*, a wall of soft clay; enclosure, wall. 2

10. prae-dūcō, -ere. dūxi, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead before; make or construct before or in front. 2

11. XI, for ūndecim, *ind. num.* *adj.*, eleven.

2. admodum ēditō locō: about 550 feet above the surrounding plain. nisi obsidiōne: the site was not so elevated as that of Ger-govia, but the defeat there had warned Caesar against taking any risks. Another defeat might undo the work of years.

3, 4. duo flūmina: the Lutosa (*Ose*) on the north and Osera (*Oserain*) on the south, both emptying into the Brenne. ante id oppidum: on the west. plāniciēs: the plain of Laumes.

5, 6. longitūdinem: north and south. reliquīs . . . partibus: on the north, east and south. collēs: a series of hills separated from Mont Auxois by the valleys of the Ose and Oserain. mediocri spatiō: about one mile. interiectō: between the collēs and Mont Auxois.

8. hunc omnem locum: the eastern slope of the elevation, the level top being occupied by the town.

9. fossam: extending from the Ose to the Oserain. The Gauls expected the Romans to follow them along the low ridge between the two streams, by which alone the position could be stormed.

10. ēius mūnitiōnis: the Roman lines of investment, consisting of the camps and redoubts. In order to hem in the Gauls until they were finished, Caesar must first have seized all the hills and distributed his forces temporarily.

11. castra: four on the heights (except Mont Rea) for infantry and four on the plain for cavalry, have been excavated.

oportūnīs locīs erant positā ibique castella xxiii facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū stationēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō erup-  
tiō fieret: haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmīs praesidiīs

15 tenēbantur.

*The Gauls are severely beaten in a cavalry contest.*

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā  
plāniciē, quam intermīssam collibus tria mīlia  
passuum in longitudinem patēre suprā dēmōstrāvimus.  
Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs  
5 Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēque prō castris cōstituit.  
Praesidiō legiōnem additō nostrīs animus augētur: hostēs in fu-  
gam coniectisē ipsī multitudīne impediunt atque angustioribus  
portis relictis coartantur. Germānī ācrius usque ad mūni-  
tiōnēs sequuntur. Fit māgna caedēs: nōnnūllī relictis equīs  
10 fossam trānsire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. Paulum  
legiōnēs Caesar, quās prō vāllō cōstituerat, prōmovērī iubet.

14. excubitor, -ōris [cubō, lie down], m., one who lies out or on guard; watchman, sentinel. 1

7. ad-dō, dere, didī, ditus [dō, give], a., give or impart to, annex, add. \*

12. ibique, there, i. e., in the lines of investment.

1. fit equestre proelium: Ver-  
cingetorix tried to break the Ro-  
man lines and escape. opere: the  
building of redoubts and camps.

2. plāniciē: here, naturally, was  
the weakest portion of the line of  
investment. The Gauls advanced  
along the northern and southern  
slopes of Mont Auxois.

5. Germānōs: a body of about  
1,000 horse which Caesar had drawn  
from the subject tribes in order to  
offset the numerically superior cav-  
alry force of the enemy. They  
were much superior to his Gallic

horse and had already done good:  
service. prō castris: those within  
supporting distance, on Mont Rea  
and Mont Flavigny.

6. praesidiō... additō: as a  
moral support; cf. V, 17, 9, cōn-  
fisi, etc.

8. portis: in the māceriae on  
the west, extending down the slopes  
of Mont Auxois to the two streams  
see map.

10. fossam: not the one men-  
tioned in 69, 9, but the one in  
front of the māceriae referred to in  
the previous note. māceriam  
trāscendere: because the gates  
were blocked.

11. prō vāllō=prō castris, line  
5, above.

Nōn minus, quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant, perturbantur Galli: venīri ad sē cōnfestim existimantēs ad arma conclāmant: nōn-nūllī perterritī in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portās claudī, nē castra nudentur. Multis interfectis com-15 plūribus equis captis Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ā *Vercingetorix dismisses his cavalry and orders a general levy of the Gauls.* Rōmānis perficiantur, cōnsilium capit, omnem ā sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat, ut suam quisque eōrum civitatem adeat omnēsque, quī per aetātem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cōgant. Suā in 5 illōs merita prōpōnit obtestaturque, ut suae salutis ratiōnem habeant neu sē optimē dē commūnī libertate meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs fuerint, milia hominum dēlēcta LXXX unā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre frūmen-10 tum, sed paulō etiam longius tolerāre posse parcendō. His datis mandātis, quā erat nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum mittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē

6. ob-testor, 1. [testor, witness], a., call to witness, protest, appeal to, entreat, implore. 4  
7. optimē, adv. [*superl. of bene*], very well, highly. 2  
8. in-diligēns, -entis [diligēns,

heedful], heedless, careless, negligent. 1

13. silentium, -ī [sileō, be silent], n., silence: *in abl. as adv.* in silence. \*

13. nōn minus: than the horsemen who had just been routed. quī . . . erant: the Gallic infantry in the camp under the walls of Alesia.

2, 3. omnem equitātum: about 15,000. dimittere: they were useless in the city and would only help consume the limited supply of provisions; and he depended upon

them to bring an army to his rescue.

9. milia . . . LXXX: it seems: probable that the number is exaggerated, there not being room on the plateau for so large an army in addition to the inhabitants of Alesia.

12. quā: on the east. The cavalry fled up the valleys of the Ose and Oserain.



referri iubet: capitis poenam iis, qui non paruerint, constitu-  
 15 it: pecus, cuius magna erat copia a Mandubiis compulsa,  
 viritum distribuit: frumentum parce et paulatim metiri insti-  
 tuit. Copias omnes, quas pro oppido collocaverat, in oppi-  
 dum recepit. His rationibus auxilia Galliae expectare et  
 bellum parat administrare.

Caesar's  
 works of in-  
 vestment.

72. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis et cap-  
 tivis Caesar haec genera munitionis instituit. Fos-  
 sam pedum viginti directis lateribus duxit, ut eius fossae  
 solum tantundem pateret, quantum summae fossae labra dis-  
 5 taerent; reliquas omnes munitiones ab ea fossa pedes cccc re-  
 duxit, id hoc consilio, quoniam tantum esset necessari-  
 spatium complexus, nec facile totum opus corona militum  
 cingeretur, ne de improvise aut noctu ad munitiones hostium  
 multitudo advolaret, aut interdum tela in nostros operi desti-  
 10 natos conicere possent. Hoc intermisso spatio duas fossas

16. viritum [vir, man], adv., man  
 by man, singly, individually. 1  
 parcē [parcus, sparing], adv., spar-  
 ingly, frugally, carefully. 1

4. tantundem, adv. [tantus, so  
 great], just as great or far, just  
 so far. 1

16. viritum distribuit: in order  
 that they might be eaten first, since  
 there was nothing to feed them on.

2. haec genera: the descrip-  
 tion in this and the next chapter  
 applies especially to the works in  
 the plain of Laumes, though in  
 general it is true of the whole con-  
 travallation. instituit: in the  
 plain west of Alesia, since the  
 strongest fortifications were need-  
 ed there.

3. pedum viginti: in width.  
 This trench was eight or nine feet

deep. duxit: from the Ose to the  
 Oserain.

5. reliquas munitiones: the  
 main works of contravallation. pe-  
 des cccc: i. e., at each end of the  
 trench. The fortifications were  
 not parallel with it.

6, 7. id: i. e., both fossam...  
 duxit and reliquas... reduxit. tan-  
 tum spatium: the distance around  
 Mont Auxois.

11. eadem altitudine: i. e., the  
 two trenches were of the same  
 depth, which the excavation shows  
 was 8 or 9 feet.

xv pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine perdūxit, quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmīssīs locīs aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem ac vāllum xii pedum extrūxit.

View of the plain of Lensues looking towards Mount Rén from the site occupied by Caesar, c. 85 (Plan 7), with a restoration of the Roman lines and the walls of Alesia.



Huic lōricam pinnāsque adiēcīt, grandibus cervīs ēminenti-

12. campester (tris), -tris, -tre [campus, a plain], of a plain, flat, level: loca, level country. 4

dē-mittō, -ere, mīsi, mīssus [mittō], *a.*, send away or down, thrust down: sē, descend: sē animō, lose courage: *in p. p.* as *adj.*, low-lying, low. \*

dērīvō, 1. [rīvus, stream], *a.*, draw off. 1

14. lōrica, -ae [lōrum, thong], *r.*, a leather cuirass, corselet; breast-work, parapet. 3

pinna, -ae, *r.*, feather, pinion; parapet, battlement of stakes between which spears could be thrown. 2

grandis, -e, of large size, full grown, great. 4

ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, *n.*, stand out, project. 3

interiōrem: the one nearer the town. The form of the trench is shown in the section of the works.

12. campestribus .. locis: *i. e.*, this water-ditch did not extend all around Alesia. The dry ditch, however, formed a part of the whole contravallation. *ex flūmine:* the Oserain. The gravel washed into the ditch by the water was easily traced by the excavators nearly half its length.

13. post eās: Caesar describes the works from the point of view of Alesia. *aggerem:* an earthwork

parallel with the outer trench. *vāllum:* a line of palisades at the top of the slope of the *agger*. As the trench was over eight feet deep, the entire height of the face of the contravallation was over twenty feet.

14. lōricam: a breastwork of hurdles supported by the *vāllum*. *pinnās:* these were set upon the top of the *lōrica*: see elevation of rampart. *cervīs:* large limbs of trees sunk into the *agger* at the base of the parapet with their forked branches projecting horizontally.

15 bus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit, quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

*His works of defence.*

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnitiōnēs fieri necesse dēminūtis nostris cōpiis, quae longius ā castris prōgrediēbantur; ac nōnnumquam opera nostra Galli temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portis summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō mīlitum mūnitiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncis arborum admodum firmis rāmīs absceisis atque hōrum dēlibrātis ac praeacūtis cacūminibus perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs 10 altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illi stīpitēs dēmīssī et ab infimō re-

15. commissūra, -ae [com-mittō, unite], f., uniting; joint, seam, junction. 1

pluteus, -ī, m., shed, mantelet (of hurdles covered with hides to protect besiegers); defence, breastwork. 3

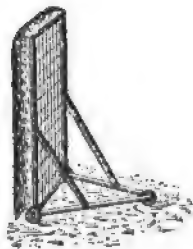
1. māterior, -ārī a., procure wood. 1

8. dē-librō, -āre, -ātus [liber, bark], a., strip off the bark or rind, peel. 1

9. cacūmen, -inis, n., the top, tip, summit, point. 1

10. stīpes, stīpitis [cf. stīpō, compress], m., log, stock, trunk of a tree. 2

15. pluteōrum: which, bound



*Pluteus.*

together, formed the lōrica.

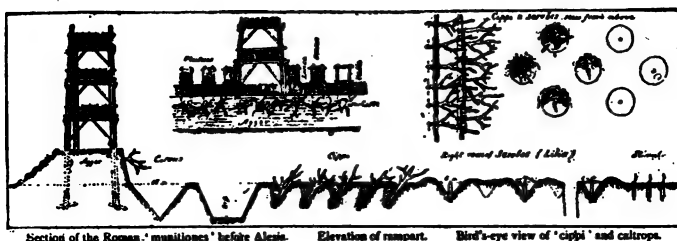
16. tōtō opere: not the whole length of the contravallation, but the portion running across the plain, about a mile and a half in length.

17. distārent: there were about 100 of these towers.

7. numerō: it is estimated that there would have been one man only for each three feet of the length of the fortifications with no reserves. truncis: trunks of trees with stout branches peeled and sharpened were set in trenches parallel with the contravallation.

10. hūc: i. e., in fossās.

vincti, nē revelli possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quinī ērant ordinēs coniūcti inter sē atque implicāti; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsi acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appel-



lābant. Ante hōs oblīquīs ōrdinibus in quīncuncem dispositis scrobēs trium in altitūdinem pedum fodiēbantur paulātim<sup>15</sup> angustiore ad infimum fastigiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitūdine ab summō praeacūtī et praeūstī dēmittēbantur

11. re-vellō (vol-), -ere, vellī, vulsus [vellō, pluck], a., pull, pluck or tear away. 2

12. implicō, 1, [plicō, fold], a., enfold, entwine, unite closely. 1

13. vāllus, -ī, m., a stake for a palisade; a palisade.

cippus, -ī, m., pillar, post, boundary-stone; a palisade or stockade formed of trunks of trees driven into the ground. 1

14. oblīquus, -a, -um, sidelong, slanting, oblique. 1

quīncunx, -uncis [quinque + uncia, twelfth], m., five twelfths; quīncunx, anything arranged in oblique lines or rows thus :::: 1

15. scrobis, -is, f., m., ditch, trench, pit. 3

fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus, a., dig. 1

16. teres, -etis, adj. [terō, rub], rubbed or rounded off, smooth. 1

femur, -inis (-oris), n., the thigh. 1

17. prae-ūstus, -a, -um [p. p. of praeurō used as adj.], burned in front or at the end. 3

11, 12. quinī . . . implicāti: there were five rows of these set so close together that their projecting branches interlaced and formed a sort of abatis.

13. vāllis: these were the branches (rāmīs) of the rows of tree trunks. cippōs appellābant: sc. mīlītēs: probably in jest. They were a novelty.

14. ante hōs: i. e., toward Alesia.

15, 16. scrobēs: in the plain of Laumes more than 50 of these were found, others on the heights, dug in the solid rock. paulātim . . . fastigiō: the pits were funnel-shaped.

17. praeūstī: so as to harden the wood.

ita, ut nōn amplius digitis quattuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōfirmandi et stabiliēdi causā singulī ab infimō solō pedēs 20 terrā exculcābantur, reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās insidiās viminibus ac virgultis integēbatur. Huius generis octōnī ordinēs ducti ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris liliū appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs infixis tōtae in terram infodiēbantur 25 mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis\*disserēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

*Extent of the  
works of in-  
vestment.*

74. His rēbus perfectis regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō loci nātūrā XIII milia passuum complexus parēs eiusdem generis mūnitiōnēs, diversās

19. *stabilio*, 4. [*stabilis*, firm], a., make firm or stable, stay, fix. 1

20. *exulcō*, -āre [*calcō*, trample], a., trample out, stamp or tread down. 1

21. *in-tegō*, -ere, *tēxi*, *tēctus* [*tegō*, cover], cover over; protect. 3

*octōnī*, -ae, -a, num. distr. [octō, eight], eight at a time, eight (each.) 2

22. *similitūdō*, -inis [*similis*, like], f., likeness, resemblance. 2

23. *flōs*, *flōris*, m., blossom, flower. 1

*lilium*, -ī, n., lily; a name jocosely

given to the scrobes, dug out in form of a lily. 1

24. *hāmus*, -ī, m., hook. 1

*in-figō*, -ere, *fixi*, *fixus* [*figō*, fix], a., fix or fasten in or on. 1

*in-fodiō*, -ere, *fodi*, *fossus* [*fodiō*, dig], a., dig in, drive in deep, plant, bury. 1

25. *dis-serō*, -ere [*serō*, sow], a., sow here and there; plant or set at intervals. 1

26. *stimulus*, -ī, m., goad; stake, concealed beneath the ground as a defence. 2

2. XIII or XIV [=quatuordecim, an ind. num. adj.], fourteen.

19, 20. *singulī* . . . *exculcābantur*: i. e., the bottom of each pit was filled in with firmly trodden earth to the depth of a foot.

23. *lilium*: the funnel-shaped pit (*scrobis*) representing the calyx and the stake (*stipes*) the pistil. *ante haec*: i. e., still toward the town. *tāleae*: square wooden stakes with barbed hooks of iron set in their tops. These were buried close together so that only the hooks were above the surface.

Five of these were found in the excavations.

26. *stimulōs*: Caesar's language seems to imply that the soldiers gave names in jest to these novelties.

3, 4. *mūnitiōnēs*: the lines of circumvallation designed to repel the attack of the Gallic army of relief. In the plain of Laumes they are parallel to the lines of contravallation and the space between is 600

ab his, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē māgnā quidem multitudīne, sī ita accidat, mūnitiōnum prae-  
sidia circumfundī possent; āc nē cum periculō ex castris  
ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre  
omnēs convēctum iubet.

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Galli con-  
ciliō principum indictō nōn omnēs eōs, quī arma  
ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorix, convocan-  
dōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique civitāti imperan-  
dum, nē tantā multitudīne cōfūsā nec moderārī nec discer-  
nere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Impe-  
rant Aeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segūsiāvis, Ambivarētis,  
Aulercis Brannovicibus, Brannoviis, mīlia xxxv; parem nu-  
merum Arvernīs adiūctis Eleutetis, Cadurcis, Gabalis, Vel-

*A contingent imposed on each Gallic tribe for the relief of Alesia.*

4. *exteri*, -ae, -a, *pl. only in use*, outside, outer, external; foreign. *sup.*, *extrēmus* or *extimus*. 3
8. *con-vehō*, *vehere*, *vēxi*, *vēc-tus* [*vehō*, carry], *a.*, carry or bring together, collect, fetch in. 1
2. *in-dicō*, -ere, *dixi*, *dictus* [*dicō*, say], *a.*, say publicly, proclaim, announce, appoint. \*
3. *cēnsēō*, -ēre, -ui, -sus, *a.*, estimate, reckon; be of opinion, think, decide. \*
5. *cōn-fundō*, -ere, *fūdī*, *fusus* [*fundō*, pour], *a.*, pour together, mingle; confuse, disorder; *in p. p.* as *adj.*, confused, disordered, indiscriminate. 1
- dis-cernō*, -ere, *crēvi*, *cretus*, [*cernō*, discern], *a.*, separate; dis-

- tinguish, discern. 1
7. *Ambivarēti*, -ōrum, *m.*, clients of the Aedui. 2
8. *Brannovicēs*, -um, *m.*, a part of the Aulerci II, 34, 3. 1
- Brannovii*, -ōrum, *m.*, a Celtic people, clients of the Aedui. 1
- XXXV**, for *trigintā quinque*, an *ind. num. adj.*, thirty-five. 1
9. *Arvernī*, -ōrum, *m.*, a powerful people of Celtic Gaul, rivals of the Aedui. \*
- Eleuteti*, -ōrum, *m.*, clients of the Aedui. 1
- Cadurci*, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Aquitania. 5
- Gabali*, -ōrum, *m.*, a Celtic people, clients of the Arverni. 3
- Vellavii*, -ōrum, *m.*, a Celtic people, clients of the Arverni. 1

feet wide. Elsewhere it varies greatly. *diversās ab his*: i. e., facing in the opposite direction. These works were not continuous, being interrupted where the slopes were steep.

1, 2. *conciliō...indictō*: probably at Bibracte, the capital of the Aedui, about 50 miles S. W. of Alesia.

7, 19. Note on the map of Gaul the geographical position of these

10 laviis, quī sub imperiō Arvenōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnūtibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs x; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parisiīs et Helvētiīs; Ambiānīs, Mediomātricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nervīīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus quīna mīlia; Aulercīs Cenomānīs totidem; Atrebatibus iv; Velicassīs totidem; Lemovicibus et Aulercīs Eburovīcibus terna; Rauricīs et Bōiīs bīna; xxx ūniversīs cīvitatibus, quae Oceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuetūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Cōriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, 20 Lexovii, Venelli. Ex his Bellovici suum numerum nōn complēvērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ab Commiō prō eius hospitio duo mīlia ūnā mīsērunt.

11. Butēnī, -ōrum, m., a Celtic people, partly in the Province. \*

12. Parisiī, -ōrum, m., a Celtic people, chief city Lutetia, now Paris. 5

13. Petrocoriī, -ōrum, m., a Celtic people on the right bank of the Garumna. 1

14. Nitiobrogēs, -um, m., a people of Aquitania, chief city Aginnum. 4

Cenomānī, -ōrum, m., a branch of the Aulerci, cf. the Brannovices l.

8 above. 1

15. Lemovicēs, -um, m., a Celtic people, chief city now Limoges. 4

18. Aremoricae, -arum, f. adj. [a Celtic word], maritime. 2

19. Ambibarii, -ōrum, m., a people of North-western Gaul, in what is now Normandy. 1

23. hospitium, -ī [hospes, host or guest], n., the relation of host and guest, guest-friendship, hospitality. 5

tribes and on the map of France the corresponding modern names. Observe how few of the Gallic tribes, outside of the province were not engaged in this struggle for freedom. The principal people not included in this list were the Remi, Treveri and Lingones (cf. 63, 11-15) and the Helvii and Volcae (cf. 64, 13-15). The Aquitani

were not considered Gauls.

20-22. Bellovacī . . . nōn complēvērunt, the Bellovaci did not send their full contingent. suō . . . arbitrio, on their own account and in accord with their own ideas. quod . . . dīcerent: The Bellovaci fought Caesar bravely but ineffectually the following year.

76. Huius operā Commi, ut antea dēmōstrāvimus, fideli atque utili superiōribus annis erat ūsus in Britannia Caesar; quibus ille prō meritis civitatem eius immūnem esse iusserat, iura lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinōs attribuerat. Tamen tanta universae Galliae cōsēnsiō fuit libertātis vindicandae et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā movērentur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coactis equitum VIII milibus et peditum circiter CCL haec in Aeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inibatur, praefecti cōstituēbantur. Commiō Atrebatī, Viridomarō et Eporedorigi Aeduis, Vercassivellaunō Avernō, cōsōbrinō Vercingetorigis, summa imperiī trāditur. His delēcti ex civitatibus attribuuntur, quōrum cōsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam, qui aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārē-

*The Gallic relief army, under Commius, sets out for Alesia.*

4. immūnis, -e [mūnus, duty], free from duty or tribute, unburdened, untaxed. 1

6. cōsēnsiō, -ōnis [cōsēnsiō, agree], f., agreement, unanimity. 1

9. in-cumbō, -ere, cubui, cubitus [cubō, lie down], n., recline or lean upon, bend to; apply or devote one's self. 1

10. re-cēnsēō, -ēre, cēnsui, cēnsus [cēnsēō, take, estimate], a., count over, enumerate, review. 1

12. Viridomarus, -ī, m., an Aeduan chief. \*

Eporedorix, -igis, m., an Aeduan chief. \*

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., a chief of the Arverni, cousin of Vercingetorix. 4

13. cōn-sōbrinus, -ī [soror, sister], m., a mother's sister's son; first cousin. 1

15. fidūcia, -ae [fidō, confide], f., confidence, trust, reliance. 3

1. antea: cf. IV, 21, 27, 35.

4. civitatem eius: the Atrebatēs.

5, 6. ipsi=Commi. Morinōs: as a punishment for their obstinate resistance, they had been reduced to the position of a subject state. universae Galliae: not absolutely true; see note 75, 7-19.

9. coactis: see Int. 176.

14. quōrum cōsiliō: they formed a representative war council.

17. aspectum... multitudinis: in the eyes of the savage numbers constitute strength.



tur, praesertim ancipiti proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptione pūgnārētur, foris tantae cōpiae equitātus peditātusque cererentur.

*Council of the Gauls in Alesia. Desperate measures proposed by Critognatus.*

77. At ii, qui Alēsiaē obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē, quā auxilia suōrum expectāverant, consūptō omni frumentō, inscii quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō convocātō dē exitū suarum fōrtūnārum cōsultābant. Ac variis dictis sententiis, quarum pars dēditionem, pars, dum virēs suppeterent, ēruptionem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critōgnātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crudelitātem. Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et māgnae habitus auctoritātis: 'Nihil', inquit, 10 dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum, quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditionis nōmine appellānt, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad cōsiliū adhibendōs cēnsēō. Cum hīs mihi rēs sit, quī ēruptionem probant; quōrum in cōsiliō omnium vestrum cōsēnsū pristinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. 15 Animi est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ūltrō mortī offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc senten-

19. foris, *adv.*, out of doors, abroad, without. 1

5. cōsultō, 1. [*freq. of cōsulō*, deliberate], reflect, consider, take counsel. 2

7. Critōgnātus, -ī, m., a chief of the Arverni. 2

8. nefārius, -a, -um [*nefās*, impiety], impious, nefarious, execrable. 2

crudelitās, -tātis, [*crudēlis*, cruel], r., cruelty, barbarity. 2

14. re-sideō, -ēre, sēdī [*sedeō*, sit], n., sit or remain behind, remain, abide. 2

15. iste, -a, -ud (*gen. istius*), that (*near you*), that (*which you speak of*), that, this, the very. 1

mollitia, -ae [*mollis*, soft], r., softness, tenderness, weakness, irresolution. 1

17. patienter [*patior*, suffer], *adv.*, with sufferance or submission, patiently. 1

18. ancipiti proeliō: i. e., a simultaneous attack on the Roman intrenchments by the besieged and

the army of relief: cf. I, 26, 1.

3. in Aeduīs: at Bibracte, the place of rendezvous.

tiam probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vitae nostrae iacturam fieri vidērem: sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nos-<sup>20</sup>trum auxilium conq̄itāvimus. Quid hominum milibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectis propinquis cōsanguineisque nostris animi fore existimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salutis causā suum periculum neglēxērunt, nec<sup>25</sup> stultitiā ac temeritatē vestrā aut animi imbēcillitatē omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illis ūteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animine causā cotīdiē exercēri putātis? Sī illōrum<sup>30</sup> nūntiis cōfirmārī nōn potestis omni aditū praesaep̄tō, his ūtiminī testibus appropinquāre eōrum adventum; cuius rei timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid

21. concitō, 1. [*freq. of concieō*, stir up], *a.*, stir up, rouse, instigate, incite. 5

24. vester, -tra, -trum [vōs], *poss. pron.*, you, yours, of you. 5

ex-spoliō, 1. [spoliō, spoil], *a.*, spoil or plunder completely, rob, utterly deprive of. 1

26. stultitia, -ae [stultus, foolish], *r.*, folly. 1

temeritas, -tatis [temerē, by chance, rashly], *r.*, chance, accident; rashness, indiscretion. 5

imbēcillitas, -tatis [imbēcillis, weak], *r.*, weakness, feebleness, pusillanimity. 1

27. prō-sternō, -ere, strāvi, strātus [sternō, strew], *a.*, throw forward or to the ground, overthrow, ruin. 1

28. cōstantia, -ae [cōstāns, firm], *r.*, firmness, steadfastness, resolution. 2

29. ergō, *adv.*, in consequence, therefore, then. 2

31. prae-saepiō, -ire, -psī, ptus [saepiō, hedge in], *a.*, hedge or block up, barricade. 1

33. ex-terreō, 2. [terreō, frighten], *a.*, frighten outright, strike with terror, scare. 2

18. dignitās: i. e., the authority of the advocates of a sortie.

29. ūteriōribus mūnitiōnibus: the outer line of Roman works; cf. 74, 1-3.

30. animi causā: cf. V, 12, 15.

31. omni aditū praesaep̄tō: the blockade must have been very effective. his = Rōmānīs.

33. diem noctemque: the Romans constructed their vast works in less than forty days.

ergo mei cōsiliū est? Facere, quod nostrī māiōrēs nēquā-  
 35quam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in  
 oppida compulsī ac simili inopiā subactī eōrum corporibus,  
 quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur, vītam tolerāverunt  
 neque sē hostibus trādiderunt. Cūius rei sī exemplum nōn  
 habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā institui et posteris prōdi  
 40pulcherrimum iudicārem. Nam quid illi simile bellō fuit?  
 Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbri māgnāque illātā calamitāte finibus  
 quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās  
 petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbīs reliquērunt.  
 Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā  
 45adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cōgnōverunt,  
 hōrum in agrīs civitātibusque cōnsidere atque hīs aeternam  
 iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim unquam aliā condiciōne  
 bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea, quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus  
 geruntur, ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in  
 50prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis secūribus  
 subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte.

36. subigō, -ere, ēgi, āctus [agō, lead], *a.*, lead or bring under; overcome, subdue; incite, constrain. 1

40. pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, handsome; noble, honorable. 2

42. aliquandō [aliquis, some one], at some time, at length, finally. 2

44. invidia, -ae [in-videō, look upon with ill-will], *f.*, envy, hatred, malice. 2

45. fāma, -ae, [inf. fārī, to speak], *f.*, common talk, reputation, fame; rumor, report. \*

46. aeternus, -a, -um [for aeviturnus, *fr.* aevum, age], everlasting, endless. 1

47. in-iungō, -ere, -iūnxi, iūctus [iungō, join], *a.*, join or fasten on to, attach; impose, enjoin. 1

50. secūris, -is [secō, cut], *f.*, axe; the licitor's axe, a sign of authority. 1

34, 35. nēquāquam parī: i. e., to the present war. bellō... Teutonumque: see Int. 63.

42. aliās terrās: to Spain. See

Momm: vol. III, p. 224.

50. secūribus, = *imperio Rōmāno*, the axe and fasces being the symbol of Roman power.

78. Sententiis dictis cōstituunt, ut iī, quī *Non-combat-  
ants vainly  
endeavor to  
leave Alesia.*  
valetūdine aut aetate inūtilēs sint bellō, oppidō  
excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critōgnātī  
sententiam dēscendant: illō tamen potius ūtendum cōsiliō  
sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēdi- 5  
tiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandūbiī,  
quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberis atque uxōribus exīre  
cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent,  
flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in servitūtem recep-  
tōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vallō custōdiis 10  
recipī prohibēbat.

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus *Arrival of the  
Gaulic allies  
under Com-  
mius.*  
summa imperiī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiis  
ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius  
mille passibus ab nostris mūnitiōnibus cōsidunt. Posterō  
diē equitātū ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānciem, quam 5  
in longitudinem tria milia passuum patēre dēmōstrāvimus,

2. valētūdō, -inis [valeō, be  
strong], *v.*, state of health, health;

ill-health, infirmity. 2

6. Mandūbiī: the citizens of



*Securis et Gladii.*

the town and the refugees from the surrounding country.

11. (eōs) recipī prohibēbat: according to Dio Cassius, this whole multitude perished from hunger between the Roman lines and the town. The Romans themselves suffered great privations.

1, 2. quibus . . . permissa erat: cf. 76, 11, 12.

3. colle exteriōre: the hill bounding the plain of Laumes on the southwest: see plan.

4. cōsidunt: probably without fortifying the position; see Int. 186.

5. eam plānciem: the plain of Laumes.

complant pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abditās in locīs superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesia dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulatiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōsidunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

*The German cavalry win victory for the Romans. The Gauls retire within Alesia.*

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs edūcī et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs militēs intentī pūgnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittariōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcērant, quī suis cēdētibz auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab his complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proe-

9. grātulatiō, -ōnis [grātulor, express joy], *r.*, expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 3  
10. laetitia, -ae [laetus, glad], *r.*, gladness, joy, delight. 2  
12. ex-pleō, plēre, plēvi, plētus [pleō, fill], *a.*, fill out or up; finish, complete. \*

6. prōventus, -ūs [prō-veniō, come forward], *m.*, a coming forth; growth, produce; issue, result. 2  
9. suc-currō (sub-) -ere, curri, cursus [currō, run], *n.*, run under or to the help of; assist, succor. 2

7. ab eō locō: where the cavalry was drawn up. paulum abditās: i. e., within easy supporting distance.

8. erat: . . . dēspectus: see View of the plain of Laumes, p. 475.

11, 12. ante oppidum: on the west. proximam fossam: the one described in 72, 2. aggere: materials of all kinds.

1. exercitū: i. e., the infantry, in distinction from equitātum

(line 3). ad utramque partem: the two lines of defense, facing the town and relieving army respectively; see View of the plain of Laumes, p. 475.

4, 5. ex omnibus castrīs: referring to the infantry camps on the heights surrounding Alesia.

7. rārōs sagittariōs: an imitation of the German arrangement (Int. 193, 194).

10. complūrēs: sc. equitum Rōmānōrum.

liō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōn-  
fiderent et nostrōs multitudine premī vidērent, ex omnibus  
partibus et iī, quī mūnitiōnibus continēbantur, et hī, quī ad  
auxilium convēnerant, clamōre et ululātū suōrum animōs  
cōfirmābant. Quod in cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur<sup>15</sup>  
neque rēctē ac turpiter factum celārī poterat, utrōsque et  
laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtutem excitābat.  
Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārē-  
tur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōfertīs turmīs in hostēs impe-  
tum fēcērunt eōsque propulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs<sup>20</sup>  
sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs  
partibus nostrī cēdentēs usque ad castra īnsecūtī suī colli-  
gendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī, quī ab Alesiā prō-  
cesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum  
recēpērunt.

25

*United attack  
upon the Ro-  
man works by  
the Gauls  
within and  
without Alesia.*

81. Unō diē intermīssō Gallī atque hōc spatiō  
magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō  
effectō mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad

14. ululātus, -ūs [ululō, howl],  
m., howling, yell, shrieking. 2

16. rēctē [rēctus, straight], *adv.*,  
straightly; rightly, well. 2

turpiter [turpis, base], *adv.*, base-  
ly, shamefully, disgracefully. 3

17. ignōminia, -ae [in, *neg.* +  
nōmen], *v.*, deprivation of one's  
good name: disgrace, dishonor. 3

24. maestus, -a, -um [maereō,  
be sad], sad, melancholy, de-  
jected. 1

2. scālāe, -ārum [*cf.* scandō], *v.*,  
*pl.*, staircase, ladder, scaling-lad-  
der. 2

harpagō, -ōnis, *m.*, a hook, grap-  
pling-hook, grapple. 1

11. superiōrēs esse: in num-  
bers and tactical skill. Gallī: i. e.,  
the spectators.

13. iī: the besieged. hī: the  
army of relief.

18. dubiā victōriā, *without re-  
sult*.

19. Germānī: who had turned  
the tide in former cavalry fights;  
*cf.* 87, 10 and 70, 4.

21. sagittāriī: *cf.* line 7. They  
could not keep up with the horse-  
man as the German foot did.

1. Galli: those belonging to  
the army of relief.

2. harpagōnum: grappling  
hooks fastened to long poles, with  
which to pull down the breastworks  
on the Roman ramparts.

campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublā-  
 5 tō, quā signifiātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō ad-  
 ventū cōgnōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundis, sagittis,  
 lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliquaque, quae ad op-  
 pūgnātiōnem pertinent, parant administrāre. Eōdem tem-  
 pore clāmōre exauditō dat tubā signum suis Vercingetorix  
 10 atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suis  
 cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundis  
 librilibus sudibusque, quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandi-  
 bus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs adēptō multa  
 utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentis tēla  
 15 coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus  
 hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant, quā ex parte nostrōs

12. librilis, -e [libra, a pound],  
 adj., of a pound weight: fundae,  
 slings which throw stones of a  
 pound weight. 1

glāns, glandis, f., an acorn; nut;  
 ball of lead or clay for shooting,  
 bullet, slug. 2

13. prō-terreō, 2. [terreō, fright-

en], a., frighten or drive away,  
 affright. 2

tenebrae, -arum, f., darkness. 1

15. Antōnius, -ī, m., a Roman  
 gentile name: Marcus Antonius  
 (Mark Antony), one of Caesar's  
 legates in Gaul, a triumvir with  
 Lepidus and Octavius.

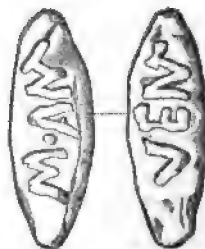
4. campestrēs mūnitiōnēs:  
 those in the plain of Laumes.

8. quae ... pertinent: see Int.  
 155.

9. tubā: i. e., with the Gallic  
 musical instrument called the  
*carynx*, which was quite long,  
 slightly curved and had a mouth-  
 piece representing the head of an  
 animal.

11, 12. fundis librilibus:  
 stones weighing a pound to which  
 cords or straps were tied for hurl-  
 ing them. sudibus: stakes with  
 sharpened points hardened by fire,  
 used as a rude sort of javelin.  
 Large numbers of these and the

*fundae libriles* had been prepared  
 and piled up on the ramparts.  
*glandibus*: see Int. 112.



*Glandēs.*

16. hae partēs: the defences  
 in the plain.

premi intellēxerant, his auxiliō ex ūterioribus castellis dēductōs submittēbant.

82. Dum longius ab mūnitiōne aberant Galli, *Their repulse and retreat.* plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulis inopinantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlāti trāsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiecti pīlis mūrālibus interibant. Multis undique vulneribus acceptis nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī, nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castris ēruptiōne circumvenirentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea, quae ā Vercingetorige ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius in his rēbus adminis-<sup>10</sup>trandis morāti prius suōs discessisse cōgnōvērunt, quam mūnitiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

4. trāns-fodiō, -ire, fodi, fossus [fodiō, dig], *a., dig or thrust through, transfix.* 1

trā (trāns-) -iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, hurl], *a., hurl across or over, hurl through, transfix, pierce.* 4

6. ap-petō(ad-), -ere, petivī, petītus [petō, seek], *a., seek for, aim at, encroach upon, approach.* 6

9. prō-ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātus, bring forth or forward, produce, furnish. 3

1. longius, *at a considerable distance.*

2. plūs . . . prōficiēbant: their fire was heavier and more effective and the Roman loss was greater than afterwards when the Gauls reached the pit-falls and trenches.

5, 6. pīlis mūrālibus: large javelins, hurled by engines. cum lūx appeteret: when had the attack begun? multis . . . perruptā: trans. the first abl. abs. by a concessive clause, the next as a principal clause.

7. ex superiōribus castris: the two on Mont Flavigny.

8. interiōrēs: the Gauls within the circle of the Roman siege works, i. e., the army of Vercingetorix.

10. priōrēs fossās: i. e., they succeeded in filling the first two of the three ditches, but were defeated without being able to get within striking distance of the ramparts. The foresight of Caesar in providing so many obstacles prevented a simultaneous attack on the fortifications themselves, which would probably have been successful.



*The relief  
army tries to  
force Caesar's  
lines on the  
north.*

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Galli. quid agant, cōsulant: locōrum peritōs adhibent: ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter  
5 māgnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostri: necessariō paene iniquō locō et lēniter dēclivī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitis per ex-  
plōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī nu-  
10 merō dēligunt eārum civitātum, quae māximam virtūtis opīni-  
ōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōstituunt: adeundī tempus dēfiniunt, cum meridiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propīnquum Vercingetorigis, praefici-  
15 unt. Ille ex castris primā vigiliā ēgressus prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere post mōntem sē occultāvit militēsque ex

5. circum-plector, plectī, plexus sum [plectō, plait], fold one's self about, enfold, surround. 1

7. Antistius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Caius Antistius Reginus, Caesar's lieutenant. 3

Rēgīnus, -ī, m., a Roman cognomen; see Antistius. 3

Canīnius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Caius Caninius Rebilus, a legate of Caesar.

Rebilus, -ī, m., a Roman cognomen; see Caninius. 2

11. pactum, -ī [paciscor, agree upon], n., agreement, arrangement, compact; manner, way. 1

occultē [occultus, concealed], adv., in concealment, secretly. 1

12. dē-finiō 4, [finiō, bound], a., set bounds to, mark off, limit; define, determine. 1

1. bis ... repulsī: cf. 80 and 82.

2. peritōs: some of the Mandubii.

3. superiōrum castrōrum: i. e., the camps on the heights north of Alesia.

4. collis: Mont Rea, N. W. of Alesia.

5, 6. opere: the lines of circumvallation. iniquō locō: explained

by the words lēniter dēclivī. The camp, being on the slope of the hill, could be commanded by the Gauls on the summit.

8. duābus legiōnibus: on account of its exposed position, this camp had a strong force to guard it.

15, 16. cōfectō ... itinere: a circuitous march of about a dozen miles

nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iūssit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra, quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castris sēsē ostendere **20** coepērunt.

**84.** Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātis, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcēs reliquaque, quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locis, atque omnia temptantur: quae minimē vīsa pars firma est, hūc **5** concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantis mūnitiōnibus distinetur nec facile plūribus locis occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pūgnantibus exstitit, quod suum pericūlum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre: omnia enim plērumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum **10** mentēs perturbant.

**85.** Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur, cōgnōscit; labōrantibus sub-

*Vercingetorix joins in the attack. Straits of the Romans.*

*Valorous fighting of both armies.*

1. **arx, arcis** [arceō, shut up; ward off], **r.**, citadel, fortress, stronghold. **2**  
**3. mūsculōs, -ī** [mūs, mouse],

**m.**, a little mouse; a small shed or mantelet used in sieges, for the protection of the soldiers while working. **1**

**19. equitātus:** from the main camp.

**20. reliquae . . . ostendere:** as on the occasion of the first battle: cf. **79, 7, pedestrēs . . . cōstituērunt.**

**3. mūsculōs,** see Int. 161. **falcēs:** see note III, 14, 16.

**4. prōfert:** Vercingetorix probably directed his main attack against that part of the contravallation opposite the camp at the foot of Mont Rea, so as to co-operate with Vercassivellaunus.

**3. post tergum:** the Romans

formed two lines placed back to back, so that each line had the enemy behind it.

**9. suum pericūlum . . . cōnstāre,** their own peril or safety depended upon the safety of others behind them.

**10. quae absunt:** i. e., what is out of sight.

**1. idōneum locum:** on the slope of the hill of Flavigny where the two lines of works terminate: see View of the plain of Laumes p. 475. One of the two camps on this hill is

mittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit, ūnum esse illud tempus, quō m̄ximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omni salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium expectant. M̄ximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātūr, quō Vereassivellaunum misum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclivitātem fastigium m̄gum habet mōmentum. Aliī t̄la coniciunt, aliī  
 10 testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatigātis in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversis in mūnitiōnem coniectus et ascēsum dat Gallis et ea, quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī, contegit; nec iam arma nostris nec virēs suppetunt.

*Caesar rallies his troops.*

86. His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit: imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet: id nisi necessariō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs, cohortātūr, nē  
 5 labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmiciatiōnum fruct-

8. dēclivitās, -tātis [dēclivis, sloping downwards], *v.*, slope, declivity. 1

9. mōmentum, -ī [*for* momentum *fr.* moveō, move], *n.*, means or cause of motion; a short time, moment; weight, influence, importance. 2

13. con-tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus

[tegō, cover], *a.*, cover up, hide, conceal; dissemble, shield. 1

5. suc-cumbō, -ere, cubui, cubitus [cubō, lie down], *n.*, fall or sink down; yield, succumb. 1

dīmiciatiō, -ōnis [dīmiciō, fight], *v.*, fighting, contest, encounter. 1

supposed to have been Caesar's headquarters, partly from the fact that it was defended by a triple fosse on the north.

6, 7. m̄ximē ... labōrātūr: great numbers of coins bearing the names of Gallic chiefs and peoples were found in the excavations at this point, and attest the truth of Caesar's statement.

8. iniquum loci: see note 83, 5, iniquō locō.

10. testūdine factā: see Int. 166. The Gauls had adopted Roman methods of attack.

11. agger: see note 79, 12. in mūnitiōnem: the additional obstacles placed in front of the agger. *ea*: i. e., the *scrobēs*, *lilia* etc.

1. Labiēnum: probably stationed on the hill northeast of Alsia. *id*: i. e., *ēruptiōne pūgnet*.

4. reliquōs: the soldiers defending the works in the plain, exposed to the general assault: cf. 83, 19, 20, text. *adit*: Caesar galloped down the line from his position on the northern slope of Mont Flavigny: see note 85, 1.

um in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs dēspērātis campestribus locis propter māgnitudinem mūnitiōnum loca praerupta excēnsū temptant: hūc ea, quae parāverant, cōferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum 10 ac lōricam rescindunt.

87. Mittit primō Brūtum adulēscēntem cum *His conduct of the battle.* cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; postremō ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitutō proeliō ac repulsis hostibus eō, quō Labiēnum miserat, contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō 5 dēdūcit, equitum partem sēsequi, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ab tergō hostēs adoriri iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctis unā XL cohortibus, quās ex proximis praesidiis dēductās fōrs obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem, quid 10

8. **excēnsus**, -ūs, m., (*only in abl. sing.*), a scaling, storming, storm. 1

10. **dē-turbō**, 1. [**turbō**, disturb], a., thrust or cast down; drive off, dislodge. 2

2. **Fabius**, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name: Caius Fabius, one of Caesar's lieutenants. \*

**postremō**, adv. [**postremus**, last], at last, finally. 4

6, 7. **interiōrēs**: see note 82, 8. **dēspērātis campestribus locis**: cf. 84, 2, 3. They now transfer their efforts to the works on the slope of Mont Flavigny, which were less formidable than those in the plain, because of the nature of the surface (*loca praerupta*).

1. **mittit**: i. e., to this threatened point. **Brūtum**: III, 11, 11, 12.

4, 5. **eō contendit**: he rides across the plain to the intrench-

ments on the slope of Mont Rea **castellō**: these redoubts were situated between the two lines of works.

6, 7. **circumīre . . . adoriri**: the cavalry leave the camp at Gresigny and pass around to the rear of the enemy on Mont Rea.

9. **XL**: it is difficult to believe that so large a force (one third of Caesar's whole army) could be gotten together so easily. Some authorities would read XL.



faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proelio intersit.

88. Eius adventū ex colore vestitus cognito, *Utter defeat of the Gauls. They retire within Allesia and to their homes.* quo insigni in proeliis uti consuevit, turmisque equitum et cohortibus visis, quas se sequi iusserat, ut de locis superioribus haec declivia et devēxa cernebantur, hostes proelium committunt. Utrimque clamore sublato ex-  
cipit rursus ex vallō atque omnibus munitiōnibus clamor. Nostri omissis pilis gladiis rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitatus cernitur; cohortes aliae appropinquant. Hostes terga vertunt; fugientibus equites occurrunt. Fit magna caedes. Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur:<sup>10</sup> Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militaria LXXIV ad Caesarem referuntur: pauci ex tantō numero se incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Conspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suorum desperatā salutē cōpiās ā munitiōnibus reducunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē auditā ex castris<sup>15</sup> Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crebris subsidiis ac tōtius diēi labore milites essent defessi, omnēs hostium cōpiae delēri po-

11. ac(ad-)celerō, 1. [celer, quick], quicken, hurry, hasten, make haste. 1

carry away or down], sloping: *in pl. as subst. sc. loca*, slopes, hillsides. 1

4. devexus, -a, -um [dēvehō,

10. Sedulius, -ī, m., a leader of the Lemovices. 1

10, 11. quid . . . existimet: viz., a sally.

they make the sally and come to close quarters. See Int. 149.

1. vestitus: see Int. 96.

4. locis superioribus: the summit of Mont Rea. declivia et devēxa: the level of the plain in front of Mont Rea.

8. equitatus: cf. 87, 7. cohortes aliae: those which were following Caesar. He had probably ridden ahead to take part in the sally.

5. hostes . . . committunt: they hoped to break the Roman lines by a supreme effort before Caesar could arrive: see Int. 181.

12, 13. tantō numero: cf. 83, 9

7. gladiis rem gerunt: i. e.,

15, 16. fit . . . fuga: probably they feared an immediate attack by the Romans upon their fortified position.

tuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitatus novissimum agmen cōsequitur: māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; 20 reliquī ex fugā in civitatēs discēdunt.

*Capitulations  
of Vercingeto-  
rix and the  
Gauls.*

39. Posterō diē Vercingetorix conciliō convo-  
cātō id bellum sē suscepisse nōn suārum necessi-  
tātum, sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam  
sit fōrtūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu  
5 morte suā Rōmānis satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint.  
Mittuntur dē his rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī,  
principēs prōducī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castris cōnsēdit:  
eō ducēs prōducuntur; Vercingetorix dēditur, arma prōiciun-  
tur. Reservātis Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs civitatēs  
10 recipere posset, ex reliquīs captivīs tōtō exercitūi capita  
singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

*Caesar quar-  
ters his troops.  
Honors at  
Rome.*

90. His rēbus cōfectis in Aeduōs proficisci-  
tur; civitatē recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missi  
quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnum  
numerus obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit. Captivō-  
5 rum circiter xx milia Aeduīs Arvernisque reddit. T. Labiē-  
num cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficis-  
cī iubet: huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium

7. Semprōnius, -ī, m., a Roman  
gentile name. 1

Rutilus, -ī, m., cognomen of Cae-  
sar's lieutenant, Marcus Sempro-  
nius. 1

18. missus: in pursuit of the  
army of succor.

20. ex fugā discēdunt: see Int:  
183.

4. sē offerre: the conduct of  
Vercingetorix in defeat shows that  
he was of the true heroic mould.

7. in mūnitiōne: Plutarch and  
Florus give vivid pictures of this  
scene.

8. Vercingetorix dēditur: ac-  
cording to Dio Cassius, he was led  
in Caesar's great triumph in 45 B. C.

and afterwards put to death by or-  
der of his conqueror.

9. Aeduīs, Arvernīs: why were  
these particular tribes spared?

10, 11. capita singula: i. e.,  
each soldier received a Gallic pris-  
oner as his slave. These captives  
would be sold to the buyers who  
supplied the slave market at Rome.

1. in Aeduōs: probably to Bi-  
bracte, which had been the gathering  
place of the allies: see note 76, 9.

7. huic . . . attribuit; i. e., Ru-

lĕgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rĕgīnum in Ambivarētōs, T. Sex<sup>10</sup>tium in Biturigēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutĕnōs cum singulis legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cabillonī et Matiscōne in Aeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentāriæ causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit. Hīs cōgnitis Rōmæ diērum vīgintī supplicātiō redditur. 15

8. **Minucius**, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. 2

**Basilus**, -ī, m., cognomen of Caesar's lieutenant, Lucius Minucius. 3

12. **Cicerō**, -ōnis, [cicer, a vetch or small pea], m., a Roman cognomen: Quintus Tullius, brother

of the famous orator, one of Caesar's legates. \*

13. **Cabillonum**, -ī, n., an important town of the Aedui on the Arar. 2

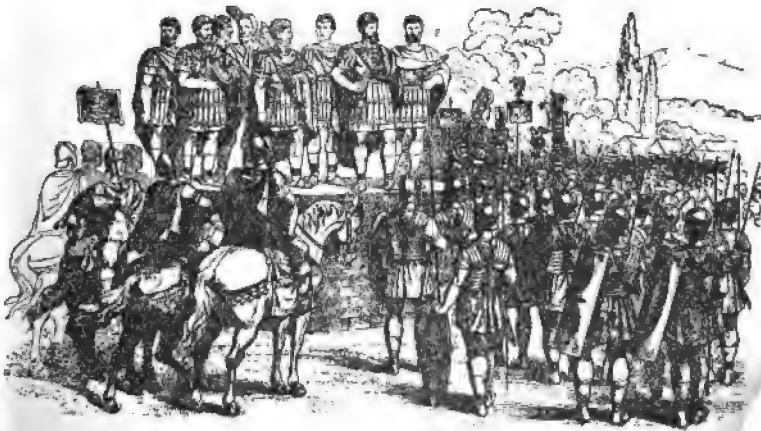
**Matiscō**, -ōnis, m., a city of the Aedui on the Arar. 1

tilus was placed under the orders of Labienus.

9, 10. *nē . . . accipiant*: cf. 63, 12 and 75, 20. **Antistium Rĕgīnum**: seq. Caesar gives the names

of 24 different persons who acted as his *lĕgātī* in the Gallic war.

15. **supplicātiō**: see on II, 35, 10.





## INDEX

### TO THE NOTES AND INTRODUCTION.

**a.**, in the phrase *ante diem* in dates I, 6, 16.

**ab**, adverbial II, 7, 9; 30, 7; IV, 22, 16.

**ABLATIVE**: *Absolute* I, 2, 2; 3, 23; 5, 7; 5, 10; 6, 14; 6, 16; 8, 12; 9, 2; 9, 4; 14, 9; 16, 11; 19, 5; 22, 5; 25, 1; 25, 5; 40, 8; II, 2, 3; III, 12, 5; 17, 12 (*locō*); 21, 14. With *nisi* II, 20, 12. *Accompaniment* I, 10, 2; II, 16, 5; 29, 2. Omitting *cum* II, 19, 2. *Agent* I, 14, 6; 16, 17; 17, 10; II, 14, 5; III, 2, 5; 4, 10; IV, 23, 4. With gerundive IV, 13, 3. *Birth or Origin* IV, 12, 14. *Cause* I, 2, 12; 14, 6 (*eō*); 18, 20; II, 4, 14; III, 21, 11; IV, 34, 1 (*novitātē*). For *mōribus suis* etc., see under *Specification*. *Comparison* I, 15, 15; 22, 3; II, 3, 2; 7, 11; III, 5, 1; VI, 26, 3. *Degree of Difference* I, 14, 1; 14, 3; 16, 18; 32, 9 (*hōc*); II, 20, 4; III, 12, 12; V, 13, 7. With *ante* I, 18, 26; 31, 36; III, 20, 5; IV, 9, 5. As distance I, 43, 3; 43, 5; 48, 1; II, 7, 9; 30, 7. *Instrument* see *Means*. *Manner* (with *cum*) I, 12, 3. (Without *cum*) I, 22, 15; 25, 11; 32, 2; II, 6, 8; 11, 3. *Material* III, 13, 7. *Means or Instrument* I, 3, 20; 16, 6; 43, 5; 53, 7; II, 10, 7;

IV, 17, 2; 31, 1 (*rēbus*). *Measure*, see *Degree of Difference*. *Origin* see *Birth*. *Place* (preposition omitted) I, 6, 8; 40, 26; 48, 10; 49, 1; II, 6, 6; 30, 4; III, 17, 12; 24, 11. *Price* I, 18, 9; IV, 2, 5. *Quality* I, 6, 12; 7, 16; 18, 7; 28, 15; 39, 4; 39, 5; II, 6, 11; 15, 3; 18, 4; III, 4, 9; 13, 8; IV, 1, 20; V, 3, 11; 13, 7, 14, 7; IV, 28, 3. *Separation* I, 14; 8, 12; 8, 16; 23, 11; 46, 11; II, 6, 7; 14, 6; 21, 12; 31, 9; III, 4, 7, 6, 10; IV, 9, 4; 30, 7. *Specification* I, 1, 3; 1, 12; 48, 12; 49, 8; 53, 9; II, 6, 1; 8, 14; 15, 4; 17, 14; III, 8, 4; 17, 12 (*rēbus*); V, 3, 2; 14, 7; VI, 12, 8; 27, 3; (*mōribus suis* etc.) I, 4, 2; 44, 7; 50, 1; II, 13, 12; 19, 4; III, 23, 13; IV, 2, 10; V, 4, 10. *Time* (at) I, 4, 4; 12, 15 (*memoriā*); 15, 1; 16, 10; 50, 1; II, 4, 6; IV, 34, 2. (Within) IV, 18, 1. *Time or Cause* I, 18, 23; II, 1, 15. For *partitive genitive* II, 3, 2; 6, 12; IV, 36, 8. With *Special Words*: *assuēfactus* IV, 1, 18 (*officiō*); 3, 10 (*mōribus*). *frētus* III, 21, 2 (*victōriis*). *frūr* III, 25, 5. *innītōr* II, 27, 3. *nītōr* I, 13, 17. *potior* I, 2, 6; 30, 8; II, 24, 18; 26, 10. *ūtōr* I, 5, 10; 16, 6; 20, 7; 44, 12; 44, 33;

45, 11; 46, 10; II, 3, 12; 7, 1; 14, 11; 25, 18; 32, 12; IV, 11, 9; 38, 5. *vivō* IV, 1, 16; 10, 11.

ABSTRACT for CONCRETE I, 2, 8; 2, 4.

*ac*, after negative 'but' III, 19, 10; IV, 35, 7. 'Than' III, 28, 6. See also *atque*.

ACCUSATIVE: in *-as*, third dec., I, 26, 18; 52, 10; II, 34, 3. in *-im* I, 12, 7. *Adverbial* I, 20, 6; 31, 22; 35, 17; 53, 20; II, 4, 2; 4, 13; 8, 3; III, 9, 18; 20, 14; (For *quod* in *quod si* etc. see *quod*). *Cognate* IV, 4, 13, and see *Adverbial* above. *Extent* (space) I, 2, 17; 21, 2; II, 13, 6. Expressed by Ablative, see *Ablative of Degree*. (Time) I, 3, 12; 26, 15; II, 16, 1; III, 12, 13; IV, 4, 4; 34, 9 (*diēs*). *Limit* (*domum*) I, 5, 7; 54, 2; II, 24, 17; 29, 3. *Name of town with ad* 'near' I, 39, 1. *Two Accusatives* ('asking') I, 16, 1; (compounds) I, 24, 1 (*advertō*); I, 12, 6; II, 5, 13, 14 (*trādūcō*); (*volō*) I, 34, 7. With *propius* I, 46, 2; IV, 28, 9. *proximus* III, 7, 7.

ADJECTIVES: *Agreement* (with nouns of different gender) I, 27, 7; (after complementary infinitive) III, 11, 4. *With adverbial force* II, 22, 3; 22, 6; 23, 9; III, 13, 6. *Denoting a part*: *extrēmus* II, 8, 12; III, 12, 2; *medius* I, 24, 4; *plērique* II, 4, 3; *primus* I, 22, 1; *summus* I, 22, 1; III, 1, 5.

*AEDUI* I, 3, 15, and see *MAP*.

AGREEMENT: *Adjective*, with Nouns of different gender III, 3, 2. *Relative Pronoun* see *RELATIVE*. *Verb*, with predicate noun I, 29, 9. With

subjects considered as a whole I, 1, 5; II, 19, 2.

*alius*, with *ac* III, 9, 21; 28, 6. *Correlative* I, 39, 12; II, 22, 4; 24, 10; 26, 4; IV, 26, 3; V, 16, 12.

*amplius*, not influencing case IV, 12, 8.

ANTECEDENT, see *RELATIVE PRONOUNS*.

APPOSITION I, 3, 11; II, 7, 1.

ARRANGEMENT, interlocked I, 10, 14. *Partitive gen.* separated from governing word I, 34, 12.

ART OF WAR (All references are to articles of the Introduction): *Gallie* 176–187; *German* 188–197. *Roman* 82–175. *aciēs duplex* 147; *a. instructa* 140; *a. triplex* 145. *agger* 130, 131, 158. *āgmen* 140, 141; *a. extrēmum* 141; *a. novissimum* 141; *a. primum* 141; *a. quadrātum* 140. *āla* 101. *antemna* 171. *āplus-tre* 170. *aquila* 120. *aquilifer* 121. *ariēs* 155. *armillae* 114. *Armor* 104–112: *cuirass* 104; *greaves* 105; *helmet* 104, 105, 108; *shield* 106, 108. *Arms* 109–112: *bows* 99; *javelin* 110, 112; *lance* 112; *sling* 112; *sword* 109, 110, 112. *auxilia* 99. *Baggage* 118, 119. *ballistae* 167. *balleus* 109. *Battle* 145–153: *formation* 147; *ground* 148; *order* 145, 146; *pursuit* 152. *bucculae* 105. *būcina* 127. *caligae* 103. *Camp* 129–139: *plan* 133–138; *permanent* 139; *construction* 130–132; *shape* 129; *site* 129; *time of making* 137; *capite cēnsi* 82. *carri* 119. *carro-ballistae* 169. *cassis* 104. *castella* 139, 158. *castra* 129 f.; *c. hiberna* 139; *c. stativa* 139. *catapulta* 167. *Cavalry* 100–101. *centuriae* 87. *centuriōnēs* 89; *rank of* 92; *qualifi-*

cations 93; pay 103; armor 104. *cibāria* 118. *cingulum* 110. *circumvallātiō* 156. *classicum* 128. *clāviculae* 132. *cohortēs* 87; size 88; ensigns 120; formation in battle 145, 146. Commander 96. Commissariat 117. *conquisitōrēs* 84. *contrāvallātiō* 157. *contubernālēs* 137. *contubernium* 137. *cornicinēs* 126. *cornū* 126. *corōnae* 114. Council of War 97. *crātēs* 155. *cristae* 91, 105. *decuriōnēs* 101. *dēlectus* 84. *dōna* 114. Engines of War 167-169. Ensigns 120-124: of battle 123; of the legion 120; of the manipule 122; sacredness 124; where kept 121. Equipment 103-128: dress 103; defensive armor 104-108; offensive weapons 109, 112; rations 116, 117; baggage 118, 119; ensigns 120, 124; signal instruments 125-128; siege train 156-166; artillery 167-169; navy 170-175. *equitātus*, *equitēs* 100, 101. *eruptiō* 165. *evocātī* 98. *excubiae* 138. *expeditus* 119. *explōrātōrēs* 141. *expūgnātiō* 155. *fabrī* 102, 169. *falcēs mūrālēs* 164. *forum* (*castrōrum*) 135. *fossa* 130. *frumentum* 116. *funditōrēs* 99. *furca* 118. *gladius* 109. *glandēs* 112. *gradus* 143. *gubernātor* 172. *hasta* 112. *iaculum* 112. *impedimenta* 118. *imperātor* 96. *insignia* 106. *iter iūstum* 143. *iūmenta* 119. *iūniōrēs* 82. *lēgātus* 94: duties 95, 101; armor 104. Legion 86-97: strength 86; unit of 87; numbers 88; officers 89; council of war 97; auxiliaries 99; cavalry 100; non-combatants 102; baggage 118; standards 120. Levy 84. *lituus* 127, *lōrica* 104, 131. *mātus* 177.

*manipulī* 87; officers 92; standard 122. March 140-144: order 140; divisions of army 141; time of 143; length of 143; scouts 141. *mēnsōrēs* 130. *mētātōrēs* 130. *mīles* 84-88: draft 84; physical standard 85; dress 103; arms 104-112; light armed 99; pay 113-115; rations 116; personal baggage 118, 119: *missiō* 115. *molae* 116. *mūnitiōnēs* 156. *mūsculī* 161. *nāvēs actuāriae* 175; *n. apertae* 172; *n. longae* 170. *n. onerāriae* 175; *n. praetōria* 174; *n. rōstrātae* 170; *n. speculātōriae* 175. Navy 170-175: kinds of ships 170, 175; equipment 171, 172; armament 173-174; crews 172; marines 174; commander 174. *obsessiō* 156. *oppūgnātiō* 155, 158. *ovātiō* 114. *passus* 143. Pay 113-115. *phalarae* 114. Physical requirements for soldiers 85. *pilum* 109-111. *pluteus* 160, 161. *portae* 132. *praefectus classis* 174; *p. equitum* 101; *p. fabrūm* 102. *primipilus* 92, 121. *praelōrium* 121, 135, 136. *prōra* 170. *puppis* 170. *quaestor* 94, 95, 117, 136. *quaestōrium* 136. Rations 116, 117. Recruits 84. *rēmigēs* 172. Rewards 114. *rōstrum* 170. *sacellum* 121. *sacrāmentum* 85. *sagittāriū* 99. *sagum* 103, 118. *sarcinae* 118, 119. *scālae* 155. *scorpiō* 169. *scutum* 106. Service 82-85: who were liable 82; exemptions 83; levies 84; period of 85. Siege Operations 154-166: arrangement of troops 157; defenses for besiegers 158-162; means of attack 162-164; defenses of the town 164-166. *signa* 120, 122, 124. Signal Instruments 125-128. *signifer* 122. *speculātōrēs* 141. *suggestus* 135.

*tessera* 138. *tesserārī* 138. *testūdō* 138. *arietāria* 163. *tormenta* 167. *torquēs* 114. *tribūnus* 89, 90. *trirēmīs* 171. *triumphus* 114. *tunica* 103. *turma* 101, 138, 153. *turris mōbilis* 161; *t. tabulāta* 161. *umbō* 106. *vāgīna* 109. *vāllī* 131. *vāsa* 118. *vēlum* 171. Veterans 98. *vēxillum* 120, 123, 170, 174. *viae castrōrum* 134. *vigilēs* 138. *vigiliae* 138. *vīnea* 160. *vītis* 91.

**ASSUĒFACTUS**, see **ABLATIVE**.

**ASYNDETON** I, 1, 16.

**atque**, giving prominence to what follows II, 8, 6; 20, 8. After a negative 'but,' see **&c.** With words of Likeness and Comparison I, 28, 17; II, 6, 4; III, 9, 22; 28, 6; IV, 13, 15; V, 13, 8.

**CAMP**, see **ART OF WAR**.

**CAESAR** (all references are to articles of the Introduction) 1-54: Birth and Family 1. Education and Political training 2-5; home life 2; academic training 3; inherited political sympathies 4; his own attitude 5. The Sullan Government 6-11: defeat of the popular party 6: Sulla's organization 6; Caesar's defiance 7; his voluntary banishment 7; death of Sulla and failure of Lepidus 8; Caesar and Dolabella 8; Caesar and the pirates 9. Caesar's return to Rome 10; Pompeius and Crassus 11. The Rising Politician 12-19: Caesar as Quaestor and Aedile 12; he is beaten by Cicero 13; he becomes Pontifex Maximus 14; the Conspiracy of Catiline 15; Caesar supports the constitution 16; his praetorship 17; the weakness of Pompeius 18; Caesar in

Spain 18, 19. Caesar's Consulship 20-24: he approaches Crassus and Pompeius 20; the "First Triumvirate" 21; his colleague Bibulus 22; the *lēgēs Jūliae* 23; the province voted him 23, 24. Caesar's personality 25, 26. His war in Gaul (see also the Special Introductions to the seven books) 27-30. His work in Gaul 30-33. His Quarrel with the Senate 34-38. The conquest of Rome 39-45. The writings of Caesar 46-50. Caesar's Military Methods 51-54.

**CAUSĀ**, 'for the sake of' I, 18, 15; II, 15, 2.

**CITIES** see **MAP**.

**coepī**, passive with passive infinitive I, 47, 3; II, 6, 6; IV, 18, 1.

**COMPARATIVE DEGREE**, various meanings I, 14, 16; 20, 2; 48, 17; II, 25, 10; III, 14, 25; 28, 15.

**cōfidō** with ablative III, (9, 13); 27, 5. With doubtful case I, 53, 4; III, 25, 3; IV, 17, 9.

**CONTRACTION**: Perfect tense (*-āvi*) I, 12, 11; 18, 12; (*-ēvi*) I, 14, 13; (*-īvi*) I, 12, 14.

**COUNTRIES**, see **MAP**.

**cum**, preposition, see **ABLATIVE** (*manner*).

**cum**, conjunction, *causal* see **SUBJUNCTIVE**, *concessive* see **SUBJUNCTIVE**. *Temporal*, subjunctive in secondary tenses I, 4, 9. Indicative in pluperfect III, 14, 17, 18; IV, 17, 11; V, 19, 7. See also **SUBJUNCTIVE**.

**DATES**, I, 6, 16,

**DATIVE**: *Agent* I, 11, 15; 31, 49; 32, 14; 33, 6; 37, 9; 38, 5; II, 20, 1; III, 10, 10; 13, 24; 17, 20; IV

24, 7; (expressed by ablative) IV, 13, 3. *Indirect Object*: Intransitive Verbs I, 2, 4; 3, 10; 6, 11; 9, 3; 9, 8; 18, 19; 25, 20; 33, 15; 33, 19; 45, 6; II, 1, 11, 16, 6 (*his*); III, 10, 7; 13, 17; 14, 3; IV, 17, 28; 27, 12; V, 3, 16; 19, 13; VI, 13, 28; 28, 4. Transitive Verbs and accusative I, 33, 4. Compound Verbs (dative alone) I, 2, 5; 16, 13; 23, 5; II, 6, 12; 9, 11; 10, 18; 21, 9; 27, 5; III, 17, 3; IV, 6, 2; (dative and accusative) I, 12, 18; 35, 12; 36, 11; 44, 7; 44, 8; 52, 1; II, 14, 17; III, 6, 13. Compounds of *esse* I, 48, 9; IV, 30, 3. *Possessor* I, 7, 10; 11, 13; 34, 5; 34, 11; 34, 12; 47, 15; II, 6, 10; 15, 10; III, 13, 14; IV, 2, 1; 8, 2; VI, 13, 6. *Purpose* (one dative) I, 30, 9; 38, 6; III, 11, 4; (two datives) I, 18, 28; 25, 6; 33, 3; 40, 34; 44, 14; 52, 17; II, 7, 3; 9, 13; 19, 7; 20, 8; 25, 4; 29, 2; 30, 9, 10; IV, 20, 6; 37, 9. *Reference* I, 28, 2; 31, 5 (for genitive); 44, 24; IV, 36, 2. *Separation* I, 17, 9; 43, 23; II, 25, 14. *After Adjectives* I, 1, 10; 3, 16; 9, 6; 28, 14; 33, 12; 49, 4; II, 2, 6; 9, 7; 11, 5; 17, 2; III, 14, 7. *Special Verbs*: *imperō* (with acc.) I, 7, 4; (with purpose clause) I, 28, 2. *licet* I, 7, 12; 10, 1. *satisfactiō* I, 15, 18.

*dē* in expressions of time I, 12, 8.

*DEMONSTRATIVES*: for reflexive I, 1, 13; 5, 11. Attracted (*hōc metū*) V, 19, 10.

*DEPONENTS*: *Gerundive* passive III, 10, 10. *Perfect participle* passive I, 11, 10; II, 19, 14; IV, 17, 9.

*diēs*, gender I, 4, 4.

*DIMINUTIVES* II, 30, 2; see also

#### ENDINGS

*DIVICIACUS* I, 3, 15.

*domus*, acc. I, 5, 7; abl. I, 5, 9.

*dum* 'while' with present tense I, 27, 7; III, 17, 1; IV, 22, 1; 32, 1. 'Until,' see *SUBJUNCTIVE*.

*DUMNOBIX* I, 3, 14.

*ENDINGS*: -*as*. see *ACCUSATIVE*. -*im* I, 12, 7. -*acus*, -*icus* etc, III, 8, 4. -*itō* II, 15, 13. -*scō* II, 1, 10. -*sor*, -*tor* I, 9, 4. -*ulus* II, 30, 2; III, 12, 2; 21, 4; IV, 22, 9 (adj.).

*eō*, adv., for *ad id* III, 23, 4. *in eōs* I, 42, 18; 51, 11.

*esse*, compounds of, I, 48, 9; IV, 30, 3. Omitted in future infinitive I, 6, 11; 6, 13; 8, 11; 12, 9. *Sup*ply 'there' I, 6, 1; 43, 1.

*et*, after negative 'but' IV, 36, 9.

*ex itinere* II, 12, 5; III, 21, 7.

*EXPLETIVE*, lacking, see *esse*.

*faciundī* for *faciendī* I, 7, 15.

*FINAL CLAUSES*: adverbial I, 3, 5, and see *SUBJUNCTIVE*. Substantive I, 2, 5; 2, 13; 3, 16 and see *SUBJUNCTIVE*.

*frētus* with ablative III, 21, 2.

*frumentum*, -*ta*, meaning I, 16, 4; III, 9, 23.

*fruor*, see *ABLATIVE*.

*FREQUENTATIVES*, see *ITERATIVES*.

*GALLIA* I, 1, 1. *ulterior* I, 7, 4.

*GAUL* Int. 51-81, see also the special introductions to the several books.

*GENDER* of phrases and clauses II, 35, 11; III, 2, 17. *diēs* I, 4, 4.

*GENITIVE*: -*ē* for *ēi* in fifth dec. II, 23, 2. *With adjectives used as nouns* I, 10, 6. *Epezegetic* III, 10, 3. *Material* I, 24, 5. *Measure* see *Qual*

*ity. Objective* (with adjectives) I, 2, 14; 14, 5; 18, 8; 21, 10; 44, 30; III, 21, 10; IV, 24, 13; V, 6, 3; (with nouns) I, 4, 4; 14, 8; 30, 4; II, 8, 2; 15, 1 (*Diviciaci*); 21, 4; 24, 12; IV, 28, 9; VI, 17, 4; (with verbs) I, 13, 12 (*reminiscor*); I, 14, 8 (*obliscor*). *Partitive* (with nouns and adjectives) I, 11, 14; 14, 2; II, 8, 8; 15, 10; 26, 15; III, 3, 7; (with pronouns) I, 31, 49; 34, 12; II, 17, 9; III, 16, 4; IV, 1, 22; 32, 9; (with Numerals) I, 1, 1; 2, 17; 30, 3; with Comparatives and Superlatives) I, 1, 6; 3, 20; 7, 9; (with adverbs) I, 19, 6; (replaced by ablative) see ABLATIVE. *Predicate* IV, 5, 4; 13, 6; 16, 16; VI, 11, 14. *Price* see *Value*. *Quality* II, 15, 13; 27, 12; 29, 9; 30, 9; 30, 11; IV, 2, 7 (predicate); V, 6, 4 (*animi*); as measure I, 5, 8; 38, 1; II, 5, 21; 18, 9; 29, 8; 30, 4. *Subjective* I, 30, 4; *Value* I, 20, 15; IV, 21, 17; V, 4, 10. With Special Words: *causa* I, 18, 15; *ego* VI, 11, 11; *interest* (*refert*) II, 5, 5, 6; *poenitere* IV, 5, 10; *postridie* I, 23, 1; *potior* I, 3, 24.

GEOGRAPHY OF GAUL see MAP.

GERUND: *Definition* I, 2, 14; with *ad* I, 7, 19; genitive I, 2, 14; II, 6, 9; (*sui colligendi*) III, 6, 3; IV, 13, 14; 34, 13.

GERUNDIVE: *General rule* I, 1, 9; 3, 6; 5, 8. *Second periphrastic*, see *Periphrastic*. *Ambiguous form* I, 38, 3; 38, 8; 44, 9; 54, 8. *Denoting Purpose* (with *ad*) I, 1, 9; 3, 6; 5, 8; 38, 3; 38, 8; 44, 9; 54, 8; II, 1, 13; III, 13, 6; (with verbs) I, 13, 2; 19, 4; III, 11, 11; IV, 22, 21; V, 23, 9.

HENDIADYS I, 31, 45; IV, 18, 10; 35, 8.

*hic . . . ille* 'the latter . . . the former,' IV, 1, 11.

*hora* I, 26, 5.

Illustrations (references are to pages): *Aduatuca*, works at, 240. *agger*, section of, 216. *Aisne*, battle on 209. *Alesia*, works at, 426, 475, 479. *aquila* 135, 235. *aquilifer* 235. *Archer* 203. *arcus* 203. *aries* 246. *Axe* 485. *Baggage*, light, 181. *ballista* 208. *Battles*: with *Ariovistus* 169; on the *Axona* (*Aisne*) 209; on the *Rhone* 95; on the *Sabis* 231; siege of *Aduatuca* 240; siege of *Alesia* 426, 475, 479; of *Avaricum* 442; battle against the *Venetii* 264. *Bow* 203. *Bowman* 203. *Bridge* over the *Rhine* 316, 317. *Burial mound* 409. *Caesar*, facing title. *Camp*, plan, 36. *cassis* 229. *castra* 36. *catapult* 207. *Centurion* 221. *clipeus* 133. *contio* 385. *Ditch*, for defence, 214. *Eagles* 135, 235. *Eagle bearer* 235. *expugnatio* 56. *falcēs mūrālēs* 276. *Flags*, see *vexillum* and *signa*. *Fortifications*, plans and sketches: at *Aduatuca* 240; at *Alesia* 426, 475, 479; at *Avaricum* 442; on the *Rhone* 95. *fossa* 214. *fundae* 204. *funditor* 210. *galea* 229. *Galloic burial mound* 409. *Galloic soldier* 196. *Galloic wall* 443. *General* (on foot) 99; (on horseback) 4. *gladii* 132, in scabbard 64. *glandēs* 488. *Helmet* 229. *imperator* (on foot) 99; (on horseback) 4. *Javelins* 132. *legatus* 99. *legionarius* 238. *licitor* 221. *Light armed soldier* 210. *Musical Instruments* 226. *nāvēs* 272, 369, (diagram of rigging) 265. *pila* 132. *Plans of*

battles, see Battles. *pluteus* 476. *pōns*, in *Rhēnō factus*, 316, 317. *por-tus* 272, 369. Rigging of ship 265. Sabis, battle on, 231. *sagitta* and *sagittārius* 203. *sarcinae* 131. *scū-tum* 133. *secūris* 485. Shield 133. Ships 272, 369. Siege, see *Aduatuca*, *Alesia*, *Avaricum*. *signa* 135, 236. *signiferi* 235. Sling 204. Slinger 210. Soldiers (Gallic) 196; (Roman) 238; light armed 210. Storming a city 56. Swords 132. *tabernaculum* 160. *testūdō* 202; *fossāria* 202. Tower, see *turris*. *tropaeum* 135. *tubae* 226. *turris* (*ambulātōria*) 243; (for signals) 247. *vallum* 214. *Venetī*, coast of the, 264. *Vercingetorix* 494. *Vesontio* 157. *vexillum* 226. *vinea* 214, 246. Wall hooks 276. Writing materials 140. Works at *Aduatuca* 240; at *Alesia* 426, 475, 479; at *Avaricum* 442; on the Rhone 95.

**imperō**, dat. and acc. I, 7, 4; dat. and clause I, 28, 3.

**IMPERSONAL VERBS** translated personally I, 22, 9; 23, 5; 26, 1; 26, 6; 31, 8; 43, 8; 46, 7; 50, 8; II, 5, 7; 10, 20; 11, 14; 33, 13; III, 3, 4; 14, 4.

**INCHOATIVES** II, 1, 10; 15, 11.

**INDICATIVE** with *cum* 'whenever' III, 14, 17, 18; IV, 33, 4. See also **ORATIO OBLIQUA**.

**INDIRECT DISCOURSE** see **ORATIO OBLIQUA**.

**INFINITIVE**: As subject (with subject accusative) I, 1, 15; 10, 1; (without subject accusative) I, 3, 18; 7, 11; 7, 13; 10, 3; 17, 8; III, 3, 15; IV, 13, 4. Complementary I, 3, 3. With verbs *sentienti* I, 3, 7; 3, 18 (*esse*); 3, 21; 10, 5. In *oratio obliqua*

I, 7, 10 (*esse*); 7, 12; 8, 10. Tenses in *ō o. I*, 7, 14. Historical I, 16, 2; 32, 6; 32, 7; II, 30, 6; III, 4, 4; 4, 8. With special verbs: *iubeō* I, 24, 7. *prōhibeō* II, 4, 7; IV, 24, 4; V, 9, 15. *inter sē* I, 1, 4; IV, 25, 16. is changed to *hic* in *ō. o.* I, 7, 12.

**ITERATIVES** (Intensives, Frequentatives) II, 15, 13; IV, 32, 5.

*iugum* I, 7, 15.

**Kal.** I, 6, 16.

**LITOTES** I, 1, 8; 39, 11; 42, 20; 52, 4; II, 9, 1; III, 1, 15; 20, 8; IV, 37, 4, 5.

**LOCATIVE**, *domi* I, 18, 14; 28, 7.

*māgnō opere* I, 13, 15.

**MAP** (references to letters and figures on margin of large Map): *Admagetobriga*, location unknown. *Aduatuca* F2. *Aduatuē* EF2. *Aeduī* (*Haeduī*) E4. *Agedincum* E3. *Alesia* EF4. *Allobrogēs* FG45. *Alpēs* FGH45. *Ambarri* F4. *Ambiāni* DE2. *Ambibari* B3. *Ambiliati* B3. *Ambivareti* E4. *Ancalites* BC2. *Andes* C4. *Aquilēia* K45. *Aquitānia* CD6. *Arar* F4. *Arduenna* (*silva*) EF23. *Arecomici*, see *Volcae*. *Aremoricae* (*civitatēs*) ABCD23. *Arverni* DE45. *Atrebatēs* DE2. *Aulerci* (including *Aul. Brannovicēs*, *Cenomāni*, *Diablintēs*, *Eburovicēs*) CD34. *Ausci* CD6. *Avāricum* D4. *Axona* E3. *Bacēnis* (*silva*) H1k2. *Batāvi* F1. *Belgae* DEF23. *Belgium* DEF23. *Bellovaci* DE3. *Bibracte* E4. *Bibrax* E3. *Bibroci* C2. *Bigerriōnēs* DE4. *Bōii* E4 (previously KL3). *Bratuspantium* E3. *Britanni* and *Britan-*

nia ABCD2. *Cabillonum* (Cav-) F4. *Cadurci* D56. *Caemani* F2. *Caroesi* F2. *Caletēs* (-tī) CD8. *Cantabri* AB6. *Cantium* CD2. *Carnūlēs* D34. *Cassi* C2. *Caturiges* FG5. *Celtae* (or *Galli*) CDEFG345. *Cenabum* D4. *Cenimāgnī* (D1). *Cenomānī*, see *Aulerci*. *Ceutronēs* FG5 and (EF2). *Cevenna* (Ceb-) E5. *Cheruscī* HI(1)2. *Cisalpinā Gallia* GHIK45. *Cocosātēs* C6. *Condrūsī* F2. *Cōriosolītēs* B3. *Dānuvius* HI KLM34. *Decetia* E4. *Diablintēs* C3. *Dūbis* FG4. *Dūrocotorum* E3. *Eburōnēs* FG2. *Eburovicēs* CD3. *Elaver* E45. *Eleuteti* see *Cadurci*. *Elusātēs* C6. *Esubiī* (-vī) C3. *Gabali* E5. *Gallia prōvincia* DEFG56. *Garumna* CD56. *Garumnī* CD6. *Gatēs* D6. *Geidūmnī* (EF2). *Genāva* F4. *Gergovia* E5. *Germānia* GHIK(1)23. *Grāiocelī* FG5. *Gru-diī* (F2). *Harūdēs* (H3). *Helvētiī* G4. *Helviī* EF5. *Hercynia* (silva) HIKL3. *Hispānia* ABCD6(7). *Illyricum* KL5. *Italia* IKL6(7). *Itius* (portus) D2. *Iūra* (mōns) FG4. *Latovāci* (-bigi) H3. *Lemannus* (lacus) FG4. *Lemōnum* C4. *Lemovicēs* D45. *Lepontiī* H4. *Leuci* FG3. *Levāci* F2. *Lexovīī* (bī) C3. *Liger* CD4. *Lingonēs* F34. *Lutēlia* D3. *Mandūbiī* EF4. *Marcomanni* KL23. *Māticō* F4. *Matrona* E3. *Mediō-mātricēs* (-cī) FG3. *Meldi* E3. *Menapiī* EF2. *Metiosēdum* E3. *Morini* DE2. *Mosa* F(1)2. *Namnetēs* BC4. *Nantuatēs* G45. *Narbō* E6. *Nemetēs* GH3. *Nerviī* E2. *Nitiobrogēs* CD5. *Nōrēiz* L4. *Noviodūnum*: 1. E4; 2. D4; 3. (E2.) *Oceanus* ABCDE(1)234. *Ocelum* G5. *Octodūrus* G4. *Osismī* A3. *Padus* I5.

*Parisiī* D3. *Petrocoriī* CD5. *Pictonēs* C4. *Pleumoxiī* F2. *Ptiantīī* C6. *Pyrēnaei* (mōntēs) CD6. *Raurici* G4. *Redonēs* BC34. *Rēmi* E3. *Rhēnus* FGH234. *Rhodanus* F456. *Rōma* K(7). *Rutēni* DE56. *Sabis* EF2. *Samarobriua* D3. *Santoni* (-ēs) CD5. *Sedūni* G4. *Sedusiī* (H23). *Sēgni* (FG2). *Segontiaci* (S. E. Britain). *Segusiāvi* E45. *Senonēs* E34. *Sēquana* DE3. *Sēquani* FG4. *Sibuzātēs* C6. *Sotiatēs* CD6. *Suēbi* HIK3. *Suessiōnēs* E3. *Sugambri* GH2. *Tamesis* C2. *Tarbelli* C6. *Tarusātēs* C6. *Tectosagēs* (Volcae) DE6. *Tencteri* G(1)2. *Tigurini*, see *Helvētiī*. *Tolōsa* and *(Tolōsātēs)* D6. *Trēvirī* FG3. *Tribocēs* (-cī) G3. *Trinobantēs* CD(1)2. *Tulingi* GH4. *Turonēs* (-i) D4. *Ubiī* GH2. *Usipitēs* F1. *Vacalus* FG(1)2. *Vangionēs* GH3. *Verāgri* (Vār-) G45. *Veliocassēs* D3. *Vellaudonūnum* E3. *Vellaviī* E5. *Veneti* B4. *Verbigēnus*, see *Helvētiī*. *Vesontio* F4. *Vienna* F5. *Viromandui* E23. *Vocātēs* C5. *Vocontīī* F5. *Volcae*: *Arecomiī* E6; *Tectosagēs* DE6. *Vosegus* G34.

**mercātōrēs** I, 1, 8.

**MOUNTAINS**, see **MAP**.

**nē** after verbs of fearing I, 19, 11; 27, 10; II, 26, 5; V, 3, 17.

**nisi** with abl. absolute II, 20, 12.

With **sī** I, 31, 48.

**nītōr** with abl. I, 13, 17.

**NOMINATIVE**, after passive verb I, 1, 3.

**nōn modo sed nē...quidem** III, 4, 11.

**NOUNS** of agency I, 9, 4. Of motion with acc. I, 5, 7.

**obliviscor** with gen. I, 14, 8.



'ONLY' supplied I, 33, 19.  
opus, with nominative I, 34, 6;  
with abl. of participle I, 42, 20.

ORATIO OBLIQUA: *General Principles* p. 91 foot-note. *Principal verb* (Declaratory sentence) I, 7, 10; (Imperative sentence) *positive* I, 7, 20; 35, 10; III, 8, 19; IV, 11, 10; 16, 2; *negative* I, 13, 15; 13, 18; 35, 9; (Interrogative sentence) *infinitive* I, 14, 11; *subjunctive* I, 40, 11; 43, 23; 44, 24; 44, 25; IV, 16, 16. *Subordinate verb* (Subjunctive) I, 7, 12; 7, 20; 8, 11; 13, 10; II, 14, 5; III, 11, 6 (*cōnentur*); (Indicative) *of fact* I, 40, 15; *of inserted statement* III, 2, 4; 11, 5. *Virtual* I, 16, 2; 27, 2, and see SUBJUNCTIVE.

PARTICIPLES: translated by 'as' 'when' etc. II, 19, 12; 23, 5. *For a coordinate clause* I, 5, 13; II, 5, 11; 17, 4; III, 6, 5. *For a conditional clause* I, 4, 3. *For a relative clause* I, 25, 20; 26, 9; II, 11, 13. *In predicate with adjectival force* I, 1, 1; 5, 3; III, 28, 1. *After habeo in predicate* I, 15, 4; 18, 10; 44, 40; II, 4, 10.

PERIPHRAISIS, *futurum esse* (fore) *ut* I, 20, 12.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS: *First* I, 3, 19; 5, 6. *Second* I, 7, 15; 23, 5.

POSSESSIVE: force of *suus* I, 1, 13.  
potior, see ABLATIVE and GENITIVE *ad fin.*

PRÆTERITIVE VERBS: *cōgnōverat* I, 19, 11; *nōverunt* VI, 15, 7.

præterquam 'except' I, 5, 6.

PRÆTOR I, 21, 6.

PRESENT HISTORICAL: *definition* I, 3, 10; 17, 13; *rule for sequence*

I, 3, 13; III, 5, 10; *either sequence* I, 8, 8. *After dum* 'while' I, 27, 8; 46, 1.

priusquam I, 19, 12.

PROHIBITIONS I, 13, 15.

quam with superlative I, 3, 3; 7, 3; 33, 19; III, 9, 25; 19, 3; IV, 3, 1; 11, 14.

quam ob rem: *relative* I, 34, 1; *interrogative* I, 50, 1.

QUESTIONS: *Indirect* I, 12, 3, and see SUBJUNCTIVE. In indirect discourse, see ORATIO OBLIQUA. *utrum . . . necne* I, 50, 13. *-ne . . . an . . . an* IV, 14, 6, 7.

quā with words of doubt I, 3, 20; 4, 11, and see SUBJUNCTIVE.

quis, distinction between substantive and adjective forms I, 46, 5. *Indefinite* I, 7, 20; 18, 22; 20, 2; 30, 15; 31, 48; 34, 5; 42, 12; II, 32, 6.

quisque with superlative I, 31, 44; 45, 8.

quō, for *ut eō*, see SUBJUNCTIVE. For *ad quem* (locum) II, 16, 10; *ad quōs* V, 14, 11; *in quae* (mūnimenta) II, 17, 20. Without antecedent II, 21, 7; IV, 38, 4 (first quō).

quod: *In Causal clauses* (ō. o.) I, 40, 5; V, 10, 7; (virtual ō. o.) I, 16, 15; 23, 8; 37, 3; 47, 15; II, 1, 6; 1, 8; 11, 16; 11, 17; IV, 16, 19; 22, 5; 27, 12; V, 6, 11. (With verb of saying in subjunctive) V, 6, 12. *In Substantive clauses* (apposition) I, 14, 9, 10; 19, 3-5; (adverb. acc.) I, 14, 11; 17, 12; 18, 26; 36, 14; 44, 28; (quod sī) I, 20, 9; 40, 10; 40, 46; 44, 37.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS I, 1, 13; 6,

13. Replaced by demonstrative I, 5, 11.

regnum, not hereditary with the Gauls I, 3, 13; IV, 12, 14.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS: *Agreement with predicate noun* I, 38, 3; II, 1, 4; VII, 68, 3. *As Connective* I, 1, 11; 14, 4; 27, 2; II, 5, 15; 13, 5; 29, 5; IV, 10, 7. *In expressions of time* III, 23, 4; IV, 18, 1. *Its Antecedent (omitted)* I, 1, 2; 17, 2; 21, 4; II, 27, 2; III, 6, 1; IV, 11, 16; 25, 10; (repeated) I, 6, 1; 16, 10; 29, 3. II, 18, 1; IV, 7, 2; V, 11, 5; (in relative clause) I, 12, 17; 22, 15; 40, 29; II, 19, 12; 19, 16; IV, 31, 6, (in apposition with noun in main clause) III, 9, 9; 21, 10; IV, 1, 17; 24, 3; 38, 5; (implied in adjective) I, 40, 16; (clause replaced by *id*) IV, 29, 10.

reliquus, denoting a part, see ADJECTIVES. *As a participle* I, 12, 7; IV, 34, 8.

reminiscor with genitive I, 13, 12.

REPRESENTATIO I, 7, 13; II, 14, 11.

RIVERS, see MAP.

sī, 'whether' I, 8, 14; II, 9, 2.

Preceded by nisi I, 31, 48. In conditional sentences see SUBJUNCTIVE.

SUB with acc. and abl. I, 24, 12; in expressions of time II, 33, 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE: *Attraction (Integral part)* I, 8, 7; 18, 27; II, 2, 7; IV, 23, 14. *Characteristic* I, 3, 3; 6, 2; 6, 4; II, 5, 16; 16, 9; 28, 9; 35, 3; III, 4, 2; 22, 9; 28, 4; 28, 5; IV, 2, 2 (*vendant*); V, 23, 7; IV, 16, 12; (*ūnus*) I, 31, 27. *Indirect*

*Discourse, see ORATIO OBLIQUA. Indirect questions* I, 12, 8; 15, 5; 17, 13; 20, 21; 21, 8; 32, 6; 34, 12; 40, 4; 43, 16; 43, 17; 45, 2; II, 4, 13; 5, 6; 8, 4; 20, 10; III, 9, 8; 14, 10; 18, 5 (*velit*); 21, 5; IV, 5, 6; 5, 8; 14, 3; 20, 13; 20, 14. *Integral Part, see Attraction. Purpose: Adverbial (positive, ut)* I, 3, 5; 5, 8; 22, 11; II, 9, 4; IV, 2, 2 (*habeant*); (*negative, nē*) I, 4, 8; 9, 12; 17, 6; II, 5, 7; IV, 25, 17; (*quī* etc) I, 7, 10; 15, 5; 21, 4; 34, 2; 50, 6; II, 11, 9; 17, 2; III, 11, 11; IV, 11, 17; V, 10, 5; 20, 8; (*quō*) I, 8, 7; 14, 14; II, 17, 17; 25, 18; 27, 7 (*praeferrent*); III, 13, 4; 16, 9; V, 3, 20. *Substantive (subject)* I, 22, 9 (*nē*); II, 10, 19 (*ut*); (*object*) I, 2, 5; 3, 13; 7, 13; 30, 13; 31, 4; 39, 14; 42, 12 (*nē*); 45, 4; II, 12, 15; 14, 11; 16, 7; 26, 3; 28, 13; III, 1, 9; 18, 5; (*apposition*) I, 30, 8; 48, 6; II, 2, 7; 9, 11; 9, 12; 31, 9; IV, 19, 15. (*verbs of fearing*) I, 19, 12 (*nē*); 39, 24 (*ut*); II, 1, 6, (*nē*). *Result: Adverbial (ut)* I, 6, 5; 6, 13; 13, 17; 25, 10; II, 5, 18; 19, 22; IV, 33, 8; (*ut nōn*) I, 12, 4; II, 18, 17; (*quīn*) I, 47, 8; III, 24, 15; (*quō minus*) I, 31, 26; IV, 22, 17. *Substantive (Subject)* *ut* I, 2, 12; 46, 8; II, 4, 9; 10, 19; *quīn* I, 3, 20; II, 2, 10; III, 23, 20; (*object*) *ut* I, 9, 11 (*dent*); 13, 20; II, 11, 5; IV, 31, 10; *quīn* I, 17, 10; 31, 54; IV, 7, 6; (*Apposition*) *ut* I, 4, 4; 5, 3; 35, 50; 43, 22; III, 2, 8; *quīn* I, 4, 12. *Special Conjunctions: cum* (*temporal*) I, 4, 9; 12, 6; 23, 2; II, 1, 1; 2, 5; 4, 1; 19, 10; (*causal*) I, 9, 3; 26, 18; 41, 14; II, 6, 9; 11, 4; 17, 4; 28, 5; III, 1, 16; 10, 7; 14,

20; (concessive) I, 14, 17; 26, 6; 43, 13; III, 7, 2; 7, 4; IV, 12, 4; V, 15, 11; VI, 14, 9. *dum* I, 7, 18; 11, 6; IV, 13, 5; 23, 10. *priusquam* I, 19, 13; II, 12, 2; III, 10, 10; IV, 4, 18; 12, 11; 14, 3; 21, 2. *quō* (causal) IV, 2, 3. *quoad* IV, 11, 18. *With the relative=cum is* (causal) II, 15, 14; IV, 21, 22; V, 4, 12; accompanied by *ut* IV, 23, 14; (concessive) V, 4, 14.

*SUPINE*, in *-ū* I, 3, 18; IV, 30, 7; in *-um* I, 11, 5; 18, 18 (metaphorical); 30, 3; 37, 3; IV, 32, 2.

*SYNONOMOUS VERBS*, translation, V, 22, 16.

*TENSES: Historical present see*

*PRESENT HISTORICAL. Sequence* II, 4, 2. *Imperfect* of repeated act II, 1, 3; III, 15, 3. *Pluperfect* of repeated act IV, 26, 6. *In ō. o.* II, 9, 10; II, 9, 12; IV, 20, 7.

*TOWNS see MAP.*

*ut* (*utī*) adverb I, 4, 11; 16, 3; 22, 3; II, 7, 10; 22, 1; (subjunctive by attraction) IV, 23, 13; 23, 14. *Conjunction; See in general SUBJUNCTIVE.* Omitted I, 20, 14; III, 5, 11; 11, 3; IV, 16, 13; 21, 18; 23, 16. *Concessive* III, 9, 17.

*ūtor*, see *ABLATIVE*.

*vigilia* I, 12, 8; 21, 5; 21, 8.

*vivō*, see *ABLATIVE*.

*volō*, two accusatives I, 34, 7.

## BRIEF REFERENCE VOCABULARY

This vocabulary contains all words found in the text given in this book. To all words occurring in the annotated portions of the text, numbers are affixed, showing the place of first occurrence, where the Chapter-Vocabulary will give a fuller treatment of the word. If a word occurs first in chapters 30-50 of book 1, the place of its second occurrence is also given. Words unaccompanied by reference numbers do not occur in the annotated portions of the text.

### A

### ACERBE

#### A.

**A.**, abbreviation for *praenomen*

**Aulus.** I, 6, 16.

**a.** = ante, I, 6, 16.

**ā** or **ab** (**abs**), *prep. with abl.*, from, by, on. I, 1, 4.

**ab-dō**, *dere, didi, ditus, a.*, put away. I, 12, 12.

**ab-dūcō**, *-ere, dūxi, ductus, a.*, lead away. I, 11, 7.

**ab-eō**, *-ire, -ivi(ii), -itus, n.*, go away, depart; issue.

**ab-iciō**, *-ere, iēci, lectus, a.*, throw away or down. IV, 15, 2.

**abiēs**, *-ietis, r.*, silver-fir; fir tree. V, 12, 13.

**ab-iungō**, *-ere, iūnxī, iūctus, a.*, disjoin, remove.

**abs-cidō**, *-ere, -cidi, -cīsus, a.*, cut off. III, 14, 19.

**absēns**, *absentis, pres. part. of ab-sum, absent.* I, 32, 12; III, 17, 19.

**ab-similis**, *-e*, unlike. III, 14, 16.

**ab-sistō**, *-ere, stitī*, withdraw; leave off. V, 17, 7.

**abs-tineō**, 2, hold off, refrain. I, 22, 12.

**abs-trahō**, *-ere, trāxī*, tractus, drag away or off; withdraw. III, 2, 14.

**ab-sum**, *esse, ab (ā-) -fuī, aō (ā-) -futūrus*, be absent or free from. I, 1, 8

**ab-undō**, 1, overflow; abound.

**āc**, I, 3, 23, see *atque*.

**ac-cēdō**, *-ere, cessi, cessus*, go to, approach; attack, fall to the lot of, happen; *with ut clause or quod clause as subject*, be added, besides. I, 18, 2.

**ac-celerō**, 1, hasten. VII, 87, 11.

**acceptus**, *-a, -um*, popular with, beloved by (*with dative*). I, 3, 16.

**ac-cidō**, *-ere, -cidi*, befall, happen. I, 14, 4.

**ac-cidō**, *-ere, -cidi, -cīsus*, cut into. VI, 27, 10.

**ac-cipiō**, *-ere, cēpi, ceptus, a.*, receive; understand; accept. I, 3, 16.

**ac(ad-) -clivis**, *-e*, sloping upwards. II, 29, 7.

**acclivitas(ad-)**, *-tātis, r.*, ascent. II, 18, 4.

**Accō**, *-ōnis, m.*, a chief of the *Aedui*.

**ac(ad-) -commodātus**, *-a, -um*, fit, adapted to, appropriate. III, 13, 5.

**ac(ad-) -commodō**, 1, fit, adjust. II, 21, 11.

**accūrātō**, *adv.*, carefully. VI, 22, 10.

**ac(ad-) -currō**, *-ere, curri(cucurri), cursus*, run or rush to. I, 22, 5.

**ac-cūsō**, 1, censure. I, 16, 15.

**acerbō**, *adv.*, harshly, bitterly.

acerbitās, -tātis, *f.*, harshness, rigor.  
 acerbus, -a, -um, harsh, biting, severe.  
 ācerrimē, *superl.* of ācriter.  
 acervus, -ī, *m.*, heap, mass. II, 32, 10.  
 aciēs, ēī(-ē), *f.*, battle line. I, 22, 8.  
 ac-quirō, -ere, quisivī, quisitus, seek or get in addition, win, acquire.  
 ācriter, sharply; zealously. I, 26, 1.  
 āctuārius, -a, -um, swift sailing. V, 1, 11.  
 acūtus, -a, -um, sharpened. V, 18, 6.  
 ad, *prep.* with *acc.*, to, towards, near; about. I, 1, 8.  
 ad-aequō, 1, make equal or level with. I, 48, 19; II, 32, 10.  
 ad-amō, 1, love strongly; covet. I, 31, 15.  
 addō, -ere, didī, ditus, give, add. VII, 70, 7.  
 ad-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead to; influence. I, 3, 1.  
 ad-eō, *adv.*, to such an extent, so much, so very.  
 ad-eō, ire, ivī(ii), itus, go to; attack. II, 7, 8.  
 ad-equitō, 1, ride to or up. I, 46, 3.  
 ad-haereō, -ēre, haesi, haesus, cling or stick to, adhere.  
 ad-hibeō, 2, employ; bring in. I, 20, 17.  
 ad-hortor, 1, encourage, incite.  
 ad-huc, *adv.*, hitherto. III, 22, 7.  
 ad-iaceō, -ēre, uī, lie near or close to, adjoin.  
 Adiatunus, -ī, *m.*, III, 22, 2.  
 ad-iciō, -ere, iēcī, ictus, hurl or turn to, lie near. III, 1, 15.  
 ad-igō, -ere, ēgi, āctus, drive to; force. II, 21, 7.  
 ad-imō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptus, take away. V, 6, 13.  
 adipiscor, -ī, -eptus sum, attain to, gain.  
 aditus, -ūs, *m.*, approach. I, 43, 13; II, 15, 9.  
 ad-iudicō, 1, adjudge, assign, ascribe.  
 ad-iungō, -ere, -xi, -ctus, join to, attach; apply to: *p. p.* as *adj.*, ad-

joining; suitable to. III, 2, 17.  
 ad-iutor, -ōris, *m.*, aider, abettor, coadjutor.  
 ad-iuvō, -āre, iūvi, iūtus, aid. II, 17, 12.  
 Admagetobriga, -ae, *f.*, I, 31, 43.  
 ad-mātūrō, 1, ripen, hasten.  
 ad-minister, -tri, *m.*, attendant, priest. VI, 16, 5.  
 ad-ministrō, 1, attend upon, serve; manage. II, 20, 15.  
 ad-miror, 1, wonder at. I, 14, 13.  
 ad-mittō, -ere, misi, missus, send to; admit; let go; incur. I, 22, 5.  
 ad-modum, *adv.*, very; quite. III, 13, 4.  
 ad-moneō, 2, warn; remind.  
 ad-olēscō, -ere, -olēvi, -ultus, grow up. VI, 18, 7.  
 ad-orior, -iri, ortus sum, attack; undertake. I, 13, 13.  
 ad-sciscō, -ere, scivi, scitus, approve, accept; decree. I, 5, 13.  
 ad-sum, esse, fui, futurus, be present, assist. I, 16, 9.  
 Aduatuca, -ae, *f.*, a stronghold of the Eburones, now Tongres.  
 Aduatuci, -ōrum, *m.*, II, 4, 27.  
 adulescēns, -entis, *m.*, *f.*, a youth. I, 47, 11; III, 7, 7.  
 adulescentia, -ae, *f.*, youth. I, 20, 6.  
 adulescentulus, -ī, *m.*, stripling. III, 21, 4.  
 ad-ventus, -ūs, *m.*, arrival. I, 7, 7.  
 ad-versārius, -ī, *m.*, antagonist, foe.  
 ad-versus, -a, -um, opposite; ad-verse. I, 18, 26.  
 ad-versus, *prep.* with *acc.*, opposite to, against. IV, 14, 6.  
 ad-vertō, -ere, verti, versus, turn to, notice. I, 24, 1.  
 ad-vocō, 1, call to, summon.  
 ad-volō, 1, fly to. V, 17, 6.  
 aedificium, -ī, *n.*, building. I, 5, 5.  
 aedificō, 1, build, construct. III, 9, 3.  
 Aedui, -a, -um, of the Aedui, Aeduan. *As subst.*, an Aeduan; *pl.*, the Aedui. I, 3, 15.  
 aeger, -gra, -grum, ill, sick; wounded; afflicted, dejected.

**aegerrimē**, I, 13, 5. *Superl. of aegrē.*  
**aegrē**, *adv.*, with difficulty. II, 6, 3.  
**Aemilius**, -i, m., I, 23, 7.  
**aequaliter**, *adv.*, equally. II, 18, 2.  
**aequinoctium**, -i, n., the equinox. IV, 36, 4.  
**aequitās** -tātis, f., evenness; justice. I, 40, 8; VI, 22, 12.  
**aequō**, 1, make equal or level. I, 25, 2.  
**aequus**, -a, -um, even, equitable. I, 43, 2; III, 17, 20.  
**aerārius**, -a, -um, of copper, copper. III, 21, 11.  
**aereus**, -a -um, of bronze. V, 12, 9.  
**aes**, aeris, n., bronze, money. IV, 31, 6.  
**aestās**, -tātis, f., summer. I, 54, 5; II, 2, 3.  
**aestimatiō**, -ōnis, f., valuation. VI, 19, 2.  
**aestimō**, 1, value; consider. III, 20, 4.  
**aestivus**, -a -um, of summer, summer.  
**aestuārium**, -i, n., marsh-land. II, 28, 3.  
**aestus**, -ūs, m., tide. III, 12, 3.  
**aetās**, -tātis, f., age. II, 16, 8.  
**aeternus**, -a, -um, everlasting. VII, 77, 46.  
**af(ad)-ferō**, -ferre, attulī, allātus, bring to. I, 43, 22; II, 1, 3.  
**af(ad)-ficiō**, -ere, fecī, fectus, a., do to, influence. I, 2, 14.  
**af(ad)-figō**, -ere, fixī, fixus, fasten to. III, 14, 15.  
**af(ad)-fingō**, -ere, finxī, fictus, form, devise; ascribe; fabricate.  
**af(ad)-finitās**, -tātis, f., relationship. I, 18, 12.  
**af(ad)-firmatiō**, -ōnis, f., declaration, assertion.  
**af(ad)-fictō**, 1, shatter, distress. III, 12, 5.  
**af(ad)-fligō**, -ere, flixī, flictus, strike against. IV, 31, 6.  
**Āfricus**, -i, m., S. W. wind. V, 8, 7.  
**Agedincum**, -i, n., chief town of the Senones, now Sens.  
**ager**, agrī, m., field, territory. I, 2, 9.

**agger**, aggeris, m., embankment, mound; rampart. II, 12, 11.  
**ag(ad)-gredior**, -i, gressus sum, go against, assault. I, 12, 10.  
**ag(ad)-gregō**, 1, collect, attach to. IV, 26, 4.  
**agitō**, 1, impel, incite: harass; devise, debate.  
**āgmen**, -inis, n., marching column; army. I, 15, 6.  
**agō**, -ere, ēgī, āctus, put in motion; drive; lead; do; speak, treat, discuss. I, 13, 8.  
**agricultūra**, -ae, f., agriculture. III, 17, 11.  
**alacer**, -cris, -cre, lively, eager. III, 19, 16.  
**alacritās**, -tātis, f., liveliness, ardor. I, 41, 2; IV, 24, 13.  
**ālārius**, -a, -um, on the wings; *pl. as subst.*, auxiliaries. I, 51, 3.  
**albus**, -a, -um, white; colorless. V, 12, 11.  
**alcēs**, -is, f., elk. VI, 27, 1.  
**Alesia**, -ae, f., VII, 68, 3.  
**alias**, *adv.*, elsewhere. II, 29, 15.  
**aliēnō**, 1, make another's or foreign; estrange: separate, cut off.  
**aliēnus**, -a, -um, another's, unfavorable. I, 15, 6.  
**aliō**, *adv.*, to another place, person, or thing. VI, 22, 6.  
**aliquam-diū**, *adv.*, for some time. I, 40, 19; V, 23, 11.  
**aliquandō**, *adv.*, formerly. VII, 77, 42.  
**aliquantō**, *adv.*, somewhat. III, 13, 2.  
**aliquantus**, -a, -um, some. V, 10, 3.  
**ali-quī (quis) -qua (quae) -quod (quid)**, some one, something, any one, anything; some, any. I, 14, 4.  
**aliquot**, *indef. indecl. num. adj.*, several, some. III, 1, 9.  
**aliter**, *adv.*, otherwise. II, 19, 2.  
**alius**, -a, -ud, *Dat.* alii, another, other. I, 1, 2.  
**al(ad)-liciō**, -ere, lōxī, lectus, attract or allure to, entice.  
**Allobrogēs**, -um, m., I, 6, 7.  
**alō**, -ere, alui, alitus (altus), nourish, sustain. I, 18, 13.

**Alpēs**, -ium, *f.*, the Alps. I, 10, 11.  
**alter**, -era, -erum, the other, (*of two*). I, 2, 9.  
**alternus**, -a, -um, one after another, in turn.  
**altitūdō**, -dinis, *f.*, height; depth. I, 8, 5.  
**altus**, -a, -um, high; deep. I, 2, 8.  
**alūta**, -ae, *f.*, dressed leather. III, 13, 9.  
**ambactus**, -ī, *m.*, vassal. VI, 15, 6.  
**Ambarrī**, -ōrum, *m.*, I, 11, 8.  
**Ambiānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, II, 4, 26.  
**Ambibarii**, -ōrum, *m.*, a small tribe in Celtic Gaul. VII, 75, 19.  
**Ambiliāti**, -ōrum, *m.*, III, 9, 27.  
**Ambiorix**, -igis, *m.*, king of the Eburones.  
**Ambivarēti**, -ōrum, *m.*, clients of the Aedui. VII, 75, 7.  
**Ambivaritī**, -ōrum, *m.*, IV, 9, 6.  
**ambō**, -ae, -ō, both.  
**āmentia**, -ae, *f.*, folly. I, 40, 10; V, 7, 4.  
**amfractus**, -ūs, *m.*, circuitous route.  
**amicitia**, -ae, *f.*, friendship. I, 3, 6.  
**amicus**, -ī, *m.*, friend. I, 3, 13.  
**amicus**, -a, -um, friendly. I, 9, 6.  
**ā-mittō**, -ere, misi, missus, send away; let go; lose. I, 28, 7.  
**āmmēntum**, -ī, *n.*, strap or thong, fastened to the shaft of a javelin to aid its propulsion.  
**amor**, -ōris, *m.*, love. I, 20, 8.  
**amplē**, *adv.*, largely: *comp.* **amplius**, more, farther. I, 43, 11.  
**amplificō**, 1, enlarge. II, 14, 12.  
**amplitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, wide extent; importance. IV, 3, 11.  
**amplius**, *comp. adv.*, more, farther. I, 15, 15.  
**amplus**, -a, -um, of large extent, spacious, large. III, 8, 1.  
**an**, *conj.*, or, or rather. I, 40, 46; IV, 14, 7.  
**Anartēs**, -ium, *m.*, A German tribe near the Hercynian forest. VI, 25, 6.  
**Ancalitēs**, -ium, *m.*, V, 19, 2.  
**anceps**, -cipitis, doubtful. I, 26, 1.  
**ancora**, -ae, *f.*, anchor. III, 13, 8.  
**Andēs**, -ium, *m.*, II, 35, 7.  
**angulus**, -ī, *m.*, corner. V, 13, 2,

**angustē**, *adv.*, narrowly; in close quarters. V, 23, 13.  
**angustiae**, -ārum, *f.*, narrows, defile. I, 9, 2.  
**angustus**, -a, -um, narrow. I, 2, 16.  
**anima**, -ae, *f.*, breath, life, soul. VI, 14, 15.  
**animadvertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus, turn the mind or attention to; attend to; punish. I, 19, 6.  
**animal**, -ālis, *n.*, animal. VI, 17, 11.  
**animus**, -ī, *m.*, spirit; mind; feelings; courage. I, 1, 9.  
**annōtinus**, -a, -um, of last year. V, 8, 18.  
**annus**, -ī, *m.*, year. I, 3, 7.  
**annuus**, -a, -um, yearly. I, 16, 14.  
**ānsēr**, -eris, *m.*, goose. V, 12, 14.  
**ante**, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*, before. I, 3, 14.  
**anteā**, *adv.*, formerly. I, 17, 2.  
**antē-cēdō**, -ere, cēssi, cēssus, precede. III, 8, 5.  
**ante-cursōr**, -ōris, *m.*, forerunner: *pl.*, vanguard.  
**ante-ferō**, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear or carry before; prefer.  
**antemna**, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard. III, 14, 17.  
**ante-pōnō**, -ere, posui, positus, place before; prefer. IV, 22, 10.  
**ante-vertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus, turn or go before; precede; anticipate; prefer.  
**antiquitus**, *adv.*, long ago. II, 4, 4.  
**antiquus**, -a, -um, ancient. I, 18, 21.  
**Antistius**, -ī, *m.*, VII, 83, 7.  
**Antōnius**, -ī, *m.*, VII, 81, 15.  
**Ap.**, *abbrev. for* Appius.  
**aperiō**, -ire, -erui, -ertus, dis-close, open. I, 25, 16.  
**apertē**, *adv.*, openly. VI, 21, 4.  
**apertus**, -a, -um, exposed. I, 25, 16, see **aperio**.  
**Apollō**, -inis, *m.*, Apollo. VI, 17, 5.  
**ap(ad)-parō**, 1, prepare; provide.  
**ap(ad)-pellō**, 1, call. I, 1, 3.  
**ap-pellō**, -ere, puli, pulsus drive or force to; bring to or in, land. III, 12, 9.  
**ap-petō**, -ere, -ivi, -itus, aim at. I, 40, 6; VII, 82, 6.

**Appius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen. V, 1, 1.  
**ap(ad)-plicō**, 1, apply; lean. VI, 27, 7.  
**ap(ad)-portō**, 1, carry to; V, 1, 13.  
**ap-probō**, 1, favor, approve.  
**ap(ad)-propinquō**, 1, approach. II, 10, 18.  
**Apr.**, see **Aprilis**.  
**Aprilis**, -e, of April, April. I, 6, 16.  
**aptus**, -a, -um, fitted. III, 13, 17.  
**apud**, *prep.* with *acc.*, at, among, with, in the land of. I, 2, 1.  
**aqua**, -ae, *f.*, water. IV, 17, 20.  
**aquatiō**, -ōnis *f.*, getting water. IV, 11, 13.  
**aquila**, -ae, *f.*, eagle. IV, 25, 11.  
**Aquilēia**, -ae, *f.*, I, 10, 10.  
**aquilifer**, -eri, *m.*, standard-bearer, first centurion of the first cohort.  
**Aquitania**, -ae, *f.*, I, 1, 21.  
**Aquitānus**, -a, -um, Aquitanian: *pl. as subst.*, the Aquitani. I, 1, 2.  
**Arar**, -aris, *m.*, the Saone. I, 12, 1.  
**arbitr**, -trī, *m.*, umpire, judge. V, 1, 24.  
**arbitrium**, -ī, *n.*, decision; pleasure. I, 36, 4; VI, 11, 8.  
**arbitror**, 1, decide, believe. I, 2, 16.  
**arbor**, -oris, *f.*, tree. II, 17, 17.  
**arcessō**, -ere, -ivī, -ītus, summon. I, 31, 13; II, 20, 5.  
**ardeō**, -ēre, -sī, -sus, burn, blaze; be inflamed.  
**Arduenna**, -ae, *f.*, V, 3, 10.  
**arduus**, -a, -um, difficult. II, 33, 9.  
**Aremericus**, -a, -um, Aremerican. VII, 75, 18.  
**argentum**, -ī, *n.*, silver. VI, 28, 12.  
**argilla**, -ae, *f.*, white clay, marl.  
**aridus**, -a, -um, dry. IV, 24, 9.  
**ariēs**, -etis, *m.*, battering ram. II, 32, 3.  
**Ariovistus**, -ī, *m.*, I, 31, 32; IV, 16, 23.  
**Aristius**, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Aristius, a military tribune.  
**arma**, -ōrum, *n.*, arms. I, 4, 9.  
**armamenta**, -ōrum, *n.*, rigging. III, 14, 20.  
**armātūra**, -ae, *f.*, equipment. II, 10, 2.  
**armō**, 1, arm. I, 40, 20; II, 4, 15.

**Arpinēius**, -ī, *m.*, Caius Arpineius, Caesar's lieutenant.  
**arripō**, -ere, ripuī, *reptus*, *a.*, take or seize hurriedly.  
**arrogantē**, *adv.*, presumptuously. I, 40, 33.  
**arrogantia**, -ae, *f.*, haughtiness, insolence. I, 33, 21.  
**ars**, *artis*, *f.*, skill, art; artifice. VI, 17, 3.  
**artē**, *adv.*, closely. IV, 17, 21.  
**articulus**, -ī, *m.*, joint. VI, 27, 4.  
**artus**, -a, -um, close, narrow, confined.  
**artificium**, -ī, *n.*, trade, artifice. VI, 17, 8.  
**Arverni**, -ōrum, *m.*, I, 31, 11; VII, 75, 10.  
**arx**, *arcis*, *f.*, citadel; stronghold. I, 38, 14; VII, 84, 1.  
**ascendō**, -ere, -dī, -sus, climb up to, mount. I, 21, 7.  
**ascensus**, -ūs, *m.*, ascent, approach. I, 21, 4.  
**aspectus**, -ūs, *m.*, sight, view. V, 14, 7.  
**asper**, -era, -erum, rough, harsh.  
**assiduus**, -a, -um, constant. VI, 22, 7.  
**as(ad)-sistō**, -ere, stitī, stand by. VI, 18, 9.  
**as(ad)-suēfaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fac-tus, accustom. IV, 1, 19.  
**as(ad)-suēscō**, -ere, suēvī, suē-tus, accustom. VI, 28, 9.  
**at**, *conj.*, but, at least. I, 43, 26; II, 23, 12.  
**atque** (*ac*), *conj.*, and (also); as; than. I, 1, 7.  
**Atrebas**, -atis, II, 16, 5.  
**Atrius**, -ī, *m.*, V, 9, 7.  
**at(ad)-texō**, -ere, texuī, *textus*, weave to, join closely.  
**at(ad)-tingō**, -ere, -tigi, *tactus*, *a.*, touch on, extend to, attain. I, 1, 17.  
**at-tribuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, assign. III, 1, 18.  
**auctor**, -ōris, *m.*, originator; promoter. III, 17, 7.  
**auctoritas**, -tātis, *f.*, influence. I, 3, 1.  
**auctus**, -a, -um, increased, abundant. I, 43, 21.



**audácia**, -ae, *f.*, boldness. I, 18, 7.  
**audacter**, *adv.*, boldly. I, 15, 9.  
**audēō**, -ēre, *ausus sum*, dare. I, 18, 10.  
**audiō**, 4, hear, hear of; heed. I, 39, 27; II, 12, 6.  
**auditō**, -ōnis, *f.*, hearing. IV, 5, 9.  
**augeō**, -ēre, *auxi*, *auctus*, increase. I, 18, 11.  
**Aulerci**, -ōrum, *m.*, II, 34, 3.  
**Aulus**, -i, *m.*, a Roman *praenomen*. I, 6, 15.  
**aureus**, -a, -um, of gold. V, 12, 9.  
**auriga**, -ae, *m.*, charioteer. IV, 33, 5.  
**auris**, -is, *f.*, ear. VI, 26, 2.  
**Aurunculeius**, -i, a Roman *nomen*. *E. g.*, L. Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 11, 10.  
**Ausci**, -ōrum, *m.*, III, 27, 4.  
**aut**, *conj.*, or. I, 1, 13.  
**autem**, *conj.*, but, on the other hand; moreover. I, 2, 15.  
**autumnus**, -i, *m.*, autumn.  
**auxiliāris**, -e, auxiliary. III, 25, 3.  
**auxilior**, 1, give aid. IV, 29, 7.  
**auxilium**, -i, *n.*, aid: *pl.* auxiliaries. I, 11, 5.  
**Avāricēnsis**, -e, of Avaricum.  
**Avāricum**, -i, *n.*, the stronghold of the *Bituriges*, now Bourges.  
**avāritia**, -ae, *f.*, covetousness. I, 40, 40.  
**ā-versus**, -a, -um, see *āvertō*.  
**ā-vertō**, -ere, *verti*, versus, *a.*, turn away or back. I, 16, 7.  
**avis**, -is, *f.*, bird. IV, 10, 11.  
**avus**, -i, *m.*, grandfather, ancestor. I, 12, 20.  
**Axona**, -ae, *m.*, the Aisne. II, 5, 13.

## B.

**Bacēnis**, -is, *sc. silva*, the forest Bacenis, between the *Cherusci* and *Suebi*.  
**Baculus**, -i, *m.*, a cognomen. See *Sextius*. VII, 90, 10.  
**Baliāris**, -e, *Baliario*. II, 7, 3.  
**balteus**, -i, *m.*, girdle, belt.  
**Belventius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman *nomen*. *E. g.*, Titus Belventius, one of Caesar's centurions.  
**Barbarus**, -a, -um, foreign, bar-

barous; *as subst.* savages. I, 31, 15; II, 35, 2.  
**Basilus**, -i, *m.*, VII, 90, 8.  
**Batāvi**, -ōrum, *m.*, IV, 10, 3.  
**Belgae**, -ārum, *m.*, I, 1, 2.  
**Belgium**, -i, *n.*, the country of the Belgae. V, 12, 4.  
**bellicōsus**, -a, -um, warlike. I, 10, 5.  
**bellicus**, -a, -um, military. VI, 24, 9.  
**bellō**, 1, make war. I, 2, 14.  
**Bellovaci**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe between the *Seine*, *Oise*, and *Somme*. II, 4, 13.  
**bellum**, -i, *n.*, war. I, 1, 11.  
**bene**, *adv.*, well. III, 18, 10.  
**beneficium**, -i, *n.*, service, favor. I, 9, 9.  
**benevolentia**, -ae, *f.*, good-will, kindness.  
**Bibracte**, -is, *n.*, I, 23, 3.  
**Bibrax**, -actis, *f.*, II, 6, 2.  
**Bibrōci**, -ōrum, *m.*, V, 19, 2.  
**biduum**, -i, *n.*, two days. I, 23, 1.  
**biennium**, -i, two years. I, 3, 7.  
**Bigerriōnes**, -um, *m.*, III, 27, 3.  
**binī**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, by twos. III, 15, 2.  
**bi-pedālis**, -e, of two feet. IV, 17, 16.  
**bi-pertitō**, *adv.*, in two divisions. I, 25, 19.  
**bis**, *num. adv.*, twice. III, 12, 4.  
**Biturigēs**, -um, *m.*, I, 18, 15.  
**Boduōgnātus**, -i, *m.*, II, 23, 15.  
**Bōii**, -ōrum, *m.*, I, 5, 11.  
**bonitās**, -tātis, *f.*, goodness. I, 28, 12.  
**bonus**, -a, -um, *comp.* *melior*, *superl.* *optimus*, good. I, 6, 12.  
**bōs**, *bovis*, *m. f.*, ox; cow. VI, 26, 1.  
**brāchium**, -i, *n.*, arm. I, 25, 10.  
**Brannovicēs**, -ium, *m.*, VII, 76, 8.  
**Brannovii**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe, dependents of the *Aedui*. VII, 75, 8.  
**Bratuspantium**, -i, *n.*, II, 13, 5.  
**brevis**, -e, short, brief. I, 40, 36; III, 4, 1.  
**brevitās**, -tātis, *f.*, shortness. II, 20, 7.  
**breviter**, *adv.*, briefly.  
**Britannia**, -ae, *f.*, II, 4, 20.

**Britannicus**, -a, -um, of Britain, British. V, 4, 4.  
**Britannus**, -a, -um, of Britain. IV, 21, 10.  
**brūma**, -ae, f., the winter solstice. V, 13, 11.  
**Brūtus**, -ī, m., a cognomen. III, 11, 11.

## C.

**C**, sign for 100. I, 2, 17.  
**C.**, abbrev. for praenomen Gaius.  
**Cabillonum**, -ī, n., a town of the Aedui. VII, 90, 13.  
**Cabirus**, -ī, m., I, 47, 11.  
**cacūmen**, -inis, n., top; point. VII, 73, 9.  
**cadāver**, -eris, n., dead body. II, 27, 10.  
**cadō**, -ere, cecidī, cāsus, fall; perish. I, 15, 7.  
**Cadurci**, -ōrum, m., an Aquitanian tribe. VII, 75, 9.  
**caedēs**, -is, f., cutting; slaughter. VI, 13, 13.  
**caedo**, -ere, cecidī, caesus, cut, kill, slay. III, 29, 1.  
**caelestis**, -e, heavenly. VI, 17, 9.  
**caerimonia**, -ae, f., a sacred rite; sacredness.  
**Caeroesi**, -ōrum, m., a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II, 4, 28.  
**caeruleus**, -a, -um, azure. V, 14, 5.  
**Caesar**, -aris, m., I, 7, 1.  
**calamitas**, -tātis, f., misfortune, defeat. I, 12, 17.  
**Caletēs**, -um, (-ī, -ōrum), m., a Belgic tribe. II, 4, 27.  
**callidus**, -a, -um, shrewd. III, 18, 2.  
**calō**, -ōnis, m., camp servant. II, 24, 5.  
**campester**, -tris, -tre, level. VII, 72, 12.  
**campus**, -ī, m., plain; open space or country. III, 26, 14.  
**Camulogēnus**, -ī, m., a chief of the Auleri.  
**Caninius**, -ī, m., VII, 83, 7.  
**canō**, -ere cecini, cantus, sing; sound; recite; predict.  
**Cantabri**, -ōrum, m., III, 26, 15.  
**Cantium**, -ī, n., V, 13, 3.  
**capillus**, -ī, m., the hair. V, 14, 7.

**capio**, -ere, cēpi, captus, take. I, 1, 16.  
**capra**, -ae, f., wild she-goat, roe. VI, 27, 2.  
**captivus**, -ī, m., prisoner. I, 22, 3.  
**captus**, -ūs, m., seizing; capacity. IV, 3, 6.  
**caput**, -itis, n., head; individual. I, 29, 6.  
**careō**, 2, be without, be free from; miss, want.  
**carina**, -ae, f., hull. III, 13, 2.  
**Carnūtēs**, -um, m., II, 35, 7.  
**carō**, carnis, f., flesh. V, 14, 4.  
**carpō**, -ere, carpsi, carptus, pluck; rend; censure. III, 17, 16.  
**carrus**, -ī, m., n., cart. I, 3, 3.  
**cārus**, -a, -um, dear, costly; valued; beloved.  
**Carvilius**, -ī, m., V, 22, 4.  
**casa**, -ae, f., cottage, hut, hovel.  
**cāseus**, -ī, m., cheese. VI, 22, 2.  
**Cassī**, -ōrum, m., V, 21, 3.  
**Cassiānus**, -a, -um, of Cassius. I, 13, 7.  
**cassis**, -idis, f., helmet.  
**Cassius**, -ī, m., I, 7, 13.  
**Cassivellaunus**, -ī, m., V, 11, 18.  
**castellum**, -ī, n., fortress. I, 8, 7.  
**Casticus**, -ī, m., I, 3, 10.  
**castra**, -ōrum, n., camp. I, 12, 8.  
**cāsus**, -ūs, m., accident, chance. I, 12, 16.  
**Catamantaloedēs**, -is, m., I, 3, 10.  
**catōna**, -ae, f., chain, fetter. I, 47, 20; III, 13, 9.  
**Catuvolcus**, -ī, m., a chief of the Eburones.  
**Caturigēs**, -um, m., I, 10, 13.  
**causa**, -ae, f., cause. I, 1, 11.  
**cautē**, adv., cautiously; safely.  
**cautēs**, -is, f., reef. III, 13, 22.  
**Cavarillus**, -ī, m., an Aeduan noble.  
**Cavarinus**, -ī, m., a chief of the Senones.  
**caveō**, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, take precautions. I, 14, 5.  
**cēdō**, -ere, cessi, cessus, go; go away; give way, yield; grant, concede. II, 19, 12.  
**celer**, -eris, -ere, swift, quick; precipitate. IV, 23, 15.  
**celeritās**, -tātis, f., swiftness. I, 48, 18; II, 12, 13.

**celeriter**, *adv.*, quickly. I, 18, 3.  
**cēlō**, 1, conceal. II, 32, 11.  
**Celtae**, -ārum, m., I, 1, 3.  
**Celtillus**, -i, m., an Arvernian chief,  
*father of Vercingetorix.*  
**Cenabēnsēs**, -ium, m., the people of  
 Cenabum.  
**Cenabum**, -i, n., a town of the Car-  
 nutes, now Orleans.  
**Cenimāgnī**, -ōrum, m., II, 34, 3;  
 V, 21, 2.  
**Cenomānī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe in N.  
 E. Gaul.  
**cēnsēō**, -ēre, -uī, **cēnsus**, estimate;  
 decide. I, 35, 16; VII, 75, 3.  
**cēnsus**, -ūs, m., enumeration. I,  
 29, 10.  
**centum**, (c), *indecl. num.*, a hun-  
 dred. I, 2, 17.  
**centuriō**, -ōnis, m., centurion. I,  
 39, 20; II, 17, 1.  
**cernō**, -ere, **crēvi**, **crētus**, separate;  
 distinguish. VI, 21, 4.  
**certāmen**, -inis, n., struggle. III,  
 14, 22.  
**certō**, *adv.*, certainly, at least. IV,  
 25, 13.  
**certō**, 1, contend, strive, struggle.  
**certus**, -a, -um, decided, sure. I,  
 7, 8.  
**cervus**, -i, m., deer. VI, 26, 1.  
**cēspes**, -itis, m., sod. III, 25, 5.  
**cēterus**, -a, -um, the rest of; other.  
 I, 32, 4; II, 3, 8.  
**Ceutrōnēs**, -um, m., a people in the  
 Province. I, 10, 12.  
**Cevenna**, -ae, f., the Cevennes mts.  
*in the south of Gaul.*  
**Cherusci** -ōrum, m., a German tribe  
 between the Weser and Elbe.  
**cibārius**, -a, -um, pertaining to  
 food: *n. pl. as subst.*, provisions.  
 I, 5, 8.  
**cibus**, -i, m., food. IV, 1, 17.  
**Cicerō**, -ōnis, m., VII, 90, 12.  
**Cimberius**, -i, m., I, 37, 7.  
**Cimbri**, -ōrum, m., I, 33, 7; II, 4, 7.  
**Cingetorix**, -igis, m., V, 3, 5.  
**cingō**, -ere, **cinxi**, **cinctus**, encir-  
 cle. I, 38, 10; VII, 69, 7.  
**cippus**, -i, m., pillar, stockade. VII,  
 73, 18.  
**circinus**, -i, m., a pair of compasses.  
 I, 38 9.

**circiter**, *adv.*, about. I, 15, 13.  
**circuitus**, -ūs, m., circuit. I, 21, 4.  
**circum**, *prep. with acc.*, around. I,  
 10, 10.  
**circum-cidō**, -ere, **cidī**, **cisus**, cut  
 out or off, isolate.  
**circum-clūdō**, -ere, **clūsi**, **clūsus**,  
 surround. VI, 28, 12.  
**circum-dō dare**, **dedi**, **datus**, en-  
 compass. I, 38, 13; IV, 32, 19.  
**circum-dūcō**, -ere, **dūxi**, **ductus**,  
 lead or draw around. I, 38, 9;  
 III, 26, 5.  
**circum-eō**, **ire**, **ivi** (ii), **circuitus**,  
 go around. III, 26, 8.  
**circum-fundō** -ere, **fūdī**, **fūsus**,  
 surround; overwhelm.  
**circum-iciō**, -ere, **iēcī**, **iectus**, hurl  
 or place around. II, 6, 5.  
**circum-mittō**, -ere, **misi**, **missus**,  
 send around.  
**circum-muniō**, 4, wall around; for-  
 tify. II, 30, 4.  
**circum-plector**, **plecti**, **plexus**  
 sum, enfold. VII, 83, 5.  
**circum-sistō**, -ere, **steti**, surround.  
 I, 48, 17; III, 15, 2.  
**circum-spiciō**, -ere, **spēxi**, **spec-**  
**tus**, look (around) for, examine.  
**circum-vallō**, 1, invest. VII, 68,  
 11.  
**circum-vehor**, **vehī**, **vēctus sum**,  
 ride or sail around.  
**circum-veniō**, -ire, **vēni**, **ventus**,  
 surround. I, 25, 16.  
**cis**, *prep. with acc.*, on this side.  
 II, 3, 9.  
**Cisalpinus**, -a, -um, Cisalpine, ly-  
 ing on the south side of the Alps.  
**Cisrhēnānus**, -a, -um, on this (the  
 western) side of the Rhine.  
**citerior**, -ius, nearer, hither. I,  
 10, 15.  
**citō**, 1, incite. IV, 10, 7.  
**citō**, *adv.*, *comp.* **citius**, *sup.* **citis-**  
**simē**, quickly, speedily. IV, 33,  
 12.  
**citrā**, *adv.* and *prep. with acc.*, this  
 side, within. I, 12, 7.  
**citrō**, *adv.*, hither. I, 42, 10.  
**civis**, -is, m., f., citizen.  
**civitas** -tātis, f., citizens, state. I,  
 2, 4.  
**clam**, *adv.*, secretly. III, 18, 8.

- clāmitō, 1, exclaim. V, 7, 20.  
 clāmor, -ōris, m., outcry. II, 11, 17.  
 clandestinus, -a, -um, hidden, secret.  
 clārus, -a, -um, clear, loud.  
 classis, -is, f., fleet. III, 11, 12.  
 Claudius, -i, m., a Roman praenomen. E. g., Appius Claudius Pulcher, cos. 54 B. C. V, 1, 1.  
 claudō, -ere, clausi, clausus, enclose. I, 25, 15.  
 clavus, -i, m., spike. III, 13, 8.  
 clēmentia, -ae, f., mercy. II, 14, 11.  
 cliēns, -entis, m., f., dependent. I, 4, 6.  
 clientēla, -ae, f., clientship; dependents. VI, 12, 4.  
 clivus, -i, m., declivity, slope; ascent.  
 Clōdīus, -i, m., the plebeian form of Claudius. E. g., P. Clodius Pulcher, murdered by Milo.  
 Cn., abbrev. for Gnaeus.  
 co-acervō, 1, heap up. II, 27, 10.  
 coāctus, -ūs, m., compulsion.  
 co-āgmentō, 1, join, connect.  
 Cocosātēs, -um, m., III, 27, 5.  
 co-emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmtus, a., purchase. I, 3, 4.  
 co-eō, ire, īvi (īi), assemble. VI, 22, 5.  
 coepī, -isse, coeptus, defect., began. I, 15, 11.  
 co-erceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, confine; control. I, 17, 11.  
 cōgitō, 1, ponder; purpose. I, 33, 7; III, 24, 10.  
 cōgnātiō, -ōnis, f., relationship; clan. VI, 22, 4.  
 cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, learn. I, 19, 1.  
 cōgō, -ere, cōgī, coāctus, collect, gather; compel. I, 4, 3.  
 cohors, -tis, f., cohort. I, 40, 48; II, 5, 20.  
 cohortātiō, -ōnis, f., cheering. II, 25, 1.  
 co-hortor, 1, encourage. I, 25, 3.  
 col(con)-laudō, 1, praise highly. V, 2, 7.  
 col-ligō, 1, bind together. I, 25, 8.  
 col-ligō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, collect. III, 6, 3.  
 collis, -is, m., hill. I, 22, 8.  
 col-locō, 1, place together; station. I, 18, 16.  
 colloquium, -i, n., interview, conference. I, 34, 3.  
 col-loquor, -i, locūtus sum, speak with. I, 19, 16.  
 colō, -ere, colui, cultus, cultivate; inhabit, dwell; honor, cherish. V, 12, 6.  
 colōnia, -ae, f., settlement. VI, 24, 4.  
 color, -ōris, m., hue, tint, color.  
 com-būrō, -ere, būssi, būstus, burn up. I, 5, 6.  
 comes, -itis, m., f., companion.  
 comitium, -i, n., place of assembly or meeting; pl., an election.  
 comitor, 1, accompany, follow.  
 commeātus, -ūs, m., trip; supplies. I, 34, 9; II, 5, 16.  
 com-memorō, 1, remind. I, 14, 3.  
 com-mendō, 1, entrust; surrender. IV, 27, 17.  
 com-meō, 1, go, resort. I, 1, 8.  
 comminus, adv., hand to hand. I, 52, 7.  
 commissūra, -ae, f., uniting; joint. VII, 72, 15.  
 com-mittō, -ere, misī, missus, send together; join; do. I, 13, 18.  
 Commius, -i, m., IV, 21, 14; V, 22, 11.  
 commodē, adv., conveniently. I, 25, 9.  
 commodum, -i, n., advantage. I, 35, 17; III, 22, 5.  
 com-modus, -a, -um, complete; favorable. V, 2, 10.  
 commune-faciō, -ere, fecī, factus, remind forcibly. I, 19, 16.  
 com-moror, 1, tarry. V, 7, 6.  
 com-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move greatly, agitate. I, 13, 4.  
 communicō, 1, impart; share. IV, 13, 10.  
 com-mūniō, 4, fortify strongly. I, 8, 7.  
 communis, -e, common. I, 30, 14; II, 4, 12.  
 commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., change. I, 14, 14.

com-mūtō, 1, change; barter. I, 23, 11.  
 com-parō, 1, prepare; furnish; equip. I, 3, 3.  
 com-parō, 1, match; compare. I, 31, 41; VI, 24, 15.  
 com-pellō, -ere, pulsī, pulsus, collect; compel. II, 23, 4.  
 compendium, -i, n., gain, profit.  
 com-periō, -ire, perī, pertus, ascertain. I, 22, 4.  
 com-plector, -i, plexus sum, embrace. I, 20, 2.  
 com-pleō, -ere, plēvi, plētus, fill, fill up, complete. I, 24, 7.  
 com-plūrēs, -a, many. I, 8, 12.  
 com-pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, place together, unite.  
 com-portō, 1, carry together, I, 16, 9.  
 com-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, seize; comprise. III, 14, 17.  
 com-probō, 1, approve, sanction; establish.  
 cōnātum, -i, n., trial, attempt. I, 3, 18.  
 cōnātus, -ūs, m., attempt. I, 8, 16.  
 con-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, withdraw, give way, yield. I, 7, 15.  
 con-certō, 1, contend or dispute zealously, debate.  
 con-cessus, -ūs, m., concession, permission.  
 con-cidō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus, cut down, slay. I, 12, 11.  
 con-cidō, -ere, cīdī, collapse. III, 14, 19.  
 conciliō, 1, assemble; win over; reconcile. I, 3, 21.  
 concilium, -i, n., council. I, 18, 3.  
 con-cipiō, -ere, cēpi, ceptus, receive, conceive.  
 con-citō, 1, instigate. VII, 77, 21.  
 con-clāmō, 1, cry out. I, 47, 19; III, 18, 10.  
 con-clūdō, -ere, clūsī, clūsus, shut up. III, 9, 21.  
 con-crepō, -are, crepuī, crepitus, rattle, creak, clash.  
 con-currō, -ere, curri, cursus, encounter; concur. I, 48, 16; II, 20, 3.  
 con-cursō, 1, run about, traverse; skirmish.

concursum, -ūs, m., running together; onset. I, 8, 16.  
 con-demnō, 1, convict, sentence.  
 condiciō, -ōnis, f., agreement, stipulation, terms. I, 28, 17.  
 con-dōnō, 1, pardon. I, 20, 17.  
 Condrūsī, -ōrum, m., II, 4, 28.  
 con-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, lead together; conduct; hire. I, 4, 7.  
 cōn-ferō, -ferre, contulī, collātus, bring together; sē, retreat. I, 16, 9.  
 cōnfertus, -a, -um, crowded. I, 24, 11.  
 cōnfestim, *adv.*, hastily. IV, 32, 11.  
 cōn-ficiō, -ere, fecī, factus, accomplish; exhaust; furnish. I, 3, 6.  
 cōn-fidō, -ere, fīsus sum, trust in, rely on. I, 23, 11.  
 cōn-fixō, -ere, fixī, fixus, fasten. III, 13, 8.  
 cōn-finis, -e, adjoining, contiguous.  
 cōnfinium, -i, n., confine, boundary.  
 cōn-fiō, cōn-ferī, confectus sum, to be exhausted or accomplished.  
 cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, f., assurance. III, 18, 13.  
 cōn-firmō, 1, make firm, establish; encourage; assert. I, 3, 6.  
 cōn-fisus, -a, -um, relying upon. V, 17, 9.  
 cōn-fiteor, -eri, fessus sum, acknowledge, confess.  
 cōn-flagrō, 1, n., burn, be on fire.  
 cōn-flictō, 1, come in conflict, collide.  
 cōn-fligō, -ere, flixī, flīctus, strike together; fight. II, 5, 7.  
 cōn-fluēs, fluentis, f., a flowing together. IV, 15, 4.  
 cōn-fluō, -ere, flūxi, flow together.  
 cōn-fugiō, -ere, fūgi, flee, take refuge.  
 cōn-fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, mingle; confuse. VII, 75, 5.  
 con-gredior, -i, gressus sum, encounter; contend. I, 36, 8; II, 23, 11.  
 con-gressus, -ūs, m., meeting; conflict. III, 13, 15.  
 con-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus, throw together; conjecture. I, 26, 9.

**con-lectūra, -ae, f.,** inference, conjecture.  
**con-iunctim, adv.,** jointly. VI, 19, 8.  
**con-iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iunctus,** unite. I, 37, 11; II, 3, 10.  
**coniūratiō, -ōnis, f.,** conspiracy. I, 2, 3.  
**con-iūrō, 1,** conspire. II, 1, 6.  
**con-iūnx, iugis, m., f.,** consort; spouse; husband; wife.  
**cōnor, 1,** attempt. I, 3, 16.  
**con-quiēscō, -ere, quiēvi, quiētus,** rest, repose; be idle.  
**con-quirō, -ere, quisivī, quisitus,** search out. I, 27, 8.  
**cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um,** of the same blood; *as subst.*, kinsman. II, 11, 9.  
**cōn-scendō, -ere, -dī, -sus,** climb; embark. IV, 23, 3.  
**cōn-scientia, -ae, f.,** consciousness, knowledge, sense.  
**cōn-sciscō, -ere, scivī, scitus,** appoint, decree. I, 4, 12.  
**cōn-scius, -a, -um,** conscious. I, 14, 5.  
**cōn-scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus,** *a.,* register; levy. I, 10, 9.  
**cōn-secrō, 1,** dedicate. VI, 13, 27.  
**cōn-sector, 1,** chase. III, 15, 10.  
**cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, f.,** agreement. VII, 76, 6.  
**cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m.,** agreement, consent. I, 30, 14; II, 28, 6.  
**cōn-sentiō, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsus,** agree. II, 3, 6.  
**cōn-sequor, -ī, secūtus sum,** follow up; attain; I, 13, 2.  
**cōn-servō, 1,** save; maintain. II, 12, 15.  
**Cōnsidius, -ī, m.,** I, 21, 10.  
**cōn-sidō, -ere, sēdī, sessus,** settle, encamp. I, 21, 2.  
**cōnsilium, -ī, n.,** counsel, plan; council. I, 5, 10.  
**cōn-similis, -e,** very like. II, 11, 5.  
**cōn-sistō, -ere, stitī, stitus,** halt, take a stand; be or stand firm; exist; consist in, depend upon. I, 13, 16.  
**cōnsōbrinus, -ī, m.,** first cousin. VII, 76, 13.  
**cōn-sōlor, 1,** comfort. I, 20, 14.

**cōnspectus, -ūs, m.,** perception; sight. I, 11, 6.  
**cōn-spiciō, -ere, spēxi, spectus,** perceive; observe. I, 47, 18; II, 21, 14.  
**cōn-spīcor, 1,** perceive. I, 25, 17.  
**cōn-spirō, 1,** combine. III, 10, 10.  
**cōnstanter, adv.,** uniformly. II, 2, 8.  
**cōnstantia, -ae, f.,** firmness. I, 40, 18; VII, 77, 28.  
**cōn-sternō, 1,** confound, perplex, dismay.  
**cōn-sternō, -ere, strāvi, strātus,** strew over. IV, 17, 22.  
**cōn-stipō, 1,** press or crowd closely.  
**cōn-stituō, -ere, stitui, stitutus,** station; put together; determine. I, 3, 2.  
**cōn-stō, -āre, stitī, stātus,** stand firm; agree; be settled. III, 6, 6.  
**cōn-suēscō, -ere, suēvi, suētus,** become accustomed. I, 14, 13.  
**cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f.,** custom. I, 31, 41; II, 17, 5.  
**cōnsul, -ulis, m.,** consul. I, 2, 2.  
**cōnsulātus, -ūs, m.,** consulship. I, 35, 4.  
**cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tus,** consult; have regard for. V, 3, 16.  
**cōnsultō, 1,** reflect, take counsel; take care. VII, 77, 5.  
**cōnsultō, adv.,** designedly. V, 16, 6.  
**cōnsultum, -ī, n.,** decree. I, 43, 16.  
**cōn-sūmō, -ere, -psī, -ptus,** consume. I, 11, 15.  
**cōn-surgō, -ere, surrēxi, surrēctus,** arise together. VI, 23, 14.  
**cōn-tabulō, 1,** floor over; build in stories.  
**cōn-tāgiō, -ōnis, f.,** contact; pollution. VI, 13, 19.  
**cōn-tāminō, 1,** mingle; corrupt; pollute.  
**cōn-tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus,** cover up. VII, 85, 12.  
**cōn-temnō, -ere, temp-sī, temp-tus,** despise, disdain.  
**contemptiō, -ōnis, f.,** disdain. III, 17, 15.  
**contemptus, -ūs, m.,** scorn. II, 30, 10.

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, strive; fight. I, 1, 13.  
 contentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, struggle. I, 44, 32; V, 19, 2.  
 con-tentus, -a, -um, satisfied, pleased.  
 con-testor, 1, call to witness. IV, 25, 11.  
 con-texō, -ere, texuī, textus, weave together. IV, 17, 22.  
 con-tinēns, tinēntis, continuous; neighboring; *as subst.* continent. III, 28, 9.  
 continenter, *adv.*, continually. I, 1, 11.  
 continentia, -ae, *f.*, restraint, moderation.  
 con-tineō, -ere, tinuī, *a.*, restrain; bound. I, 1, 16.  
 con-tingō -ere, tigi, tāctus, reach; concern; befall. I, 38, 13.  
 continuātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, succession. III, 29, 9.  
 continuō, *adv.*, immediately, forthwith.  
 continuus, -a, -um, continuous. I, 48, 7; IV, 34, 8.  
 contiō, -ōnis, *f.*, assembly.  
 contrā, *adv.*, (I, 18, 10) *and prep.* with *acc.*, on the other hand; opposite. I, 40, 29; II, 1, 4.  
 con-trahō, -ere, trāxi, tractus, assemble; contract. I, 34, 10.  
 contrārius, -a, um, opposite. II, 18, 5.  
 contrōversia, -ae, *f.*, dispute. VI, 13, 12.  
 contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, affront. I, 14, 8.  
 con-valēscō, -ere, valuī, gain health or strength, recover.  
 convallis, -is, *f.*, defile. III, 20, 17.  
 con-vehō, -ere, vēxi, vēctus, collect. VII, 74, 8.  
 con-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *a.*, *n.*, come together; be agreed or suitable. I, 6, 15.  
 conventus, -ūs, *m.*, assembly. I, 18, 5.  
 con-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, turn around. I, 23, 12.  
 Convictolitāvis, -is, *m.*, an Aeduan chief.

con-vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, over-power; convict. I, 40, 41.  
 con-vocō, 1, call together. I, 16, 11.  
 co-orior, -īri, ortus, sum, arise; break forth. III, 7, 6.  
 cōpia, -ae, *f.*, plenty; *in pl.* resources, troops. I, 2, 5.  
 cōpiōsus, -a, -um, wealthy. I, 23, 4.  
 cōpula, -ae, *f.*, grapnel. III, 13, 20.  
 cor, cordis, *n.*, heart. VI, 19, 13.  
 cōram, *adv.*, face to face. I, 32, 12; V, 11, 4.  
 Cōriosolitēs, -um, (-ae, -ārum), *m.*, a people of N. W. Gaul. II, 34, 3.  
 corium, -ī, *n.*, skin, hide, leather.  
 Cornelius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman nomen. *E. g.* L. Cornelius Sulla, the famous Dictator. I, 21, 11.  
 cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; wing (of an army). I, 52, 3; II, 23, 13.  
 corōna, -ae, *f.*, chaplet, crown. III, 16, 11.  
 corpus, -oris, *n.*, body; person. I, 25, 10.  
 cor-rumpō, -ere, rūpi, ruptus, destroy, ruin, waste.  
 cortex, -icis, *m.*, *f.*, bark. II, 33, 7.  
 Cōrus, -ī, *m.*, the northwest wind. V, 7, 6.  
 cotidiānus, -a, -um, *adv.*, daily. I, 1, 12.  
 cotidiē, *adv.*, daily. I, 16, 1.  
 Cotta, -ae, *m.*, a Roman cognomen; see Aurunculēius.  
 Cotus, -ī, *m.*, an Aeduan noble.  
 Cn., *abbrev.* for Gnaeus.  
 crassitūdō, -inis, *f.*, thickness. III, 13, 8.  
 Crassus, -ī, *m.*, I, 21, 11.  
 crātis, -is, *f.*, hurdle. IV, 17, 22.  
 crēber, -bra, -brum, frequent. II, 1, 2.  
 crēbrō, *adv.*, repeatedly, often.  
 crē-dō, dere, didi, ditus, believe. II, 33, 6.  
 cremō, 1, burn to ashes. I, 4, 4.  
 creō, 1, create, appoint. I, 16, 14.  
 crescō, -ere, crēvi, crētus, increase. I, 20, 6.  
 Crētēs, -um, *m.*, II, 7, 2.  
 crimen, -inis, *n.*, accusation; crime, offence.  
 Critōgnātus, -ī, *m.*, VII, 77, 7.

**cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.*, torture. I, 31, 7; II, 31, 13.  
**crūdēlītās**, -tātis, *f.*, cruelty. I, 32, 12; VII, 78, 8.  
**crūdēlīter**, *adv.*, cruelly. I, 31, 44.  
**crūs**, **crūris**, *n.*, leg. VI, 27, 3.  
**cubile**, -is, *n.*, couch. VI, 27, 6.  
**culmen**, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. III, 2, 16.  
**culpa**, -ae, *f.*, fault. IV, 27, 9.  
**cultus**, -ūs, *m.*, cultivation, labor; civilization. I, 1, 7.  
**cum**, *conj. with indic.*, when, whenever; *with subj.*, when, since, although. I, 1, 13.  
**cum**, *prep. with abl.*, with. I, 1, 10.  
**cunctātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, delay; reluctance. III, 13, 13.  
**cunctor**, 1, delay. III, 23, 19.  
**cūnctus**, -a, -um, *all*. II, 29, 3.  
**cuneātim**, *adv.*, in wedge shape.  
**cuneus**, -i, *m.*, wedge.  
**cuniculus**, -i, *m.*, burrow; mine. III, 21, 9.  
**cupidē**, *adv.*, eagerly. I, 15, 5.  
**cupiditās**, -tātis, *f.*, desire. I, 2, 3.  
**cupidus**, -a, -um, eager, fond. I, 2, 14.  
**cupiō**, -ere, -īvi, -itus, desire. I, 13, 19.  
**cūr**, *adv.*, why. I, 40, 6; IV, 16, 15.  
**cūra**, -ae, *f.*, care. I, 33, 3.  
**cūrō**, 1, *a.*, care for. I, 13, 3.  
**currō**, -ere, **cucurri**, **cursus**, run, hasten.  
**currus**, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; team. IV, 33, 6.  
**cursus**, -ūs, *m.*, running; course; passage. I, 48, 19; II, 23, 2.  
**custōdia**, -ae, *f.*, guard, protection. II, 29, 13.  
**custōdiō**, 4, protect, defend.  
**custōs**, -ōdis, *m.*, *f.*, guardian, watchman. I, 20, 21.

## D.

**D**, sign for 500. III, 22, 3.  
**D**, *abbrev. for praenomen Decimus*. III, 11, 11.  
**d** = **diem**. I, 6, 16.  
**Daci**, -ōrum, *m.*, the inhabitants of the province, Dacia. VI, 25, 6.  
**damnō**, 1, condemn. I, 4, 3.

**damnum**, -i, *n.*, loss, injury.  
**Dānuvius**, -i, *m.*, the Danube. VI, 25, 5.  
**dē**, *prep. with abl.*, from; concerning, for. I, 1, 11.  
**dēbeō**, 2, owe, ought. I, 11, 8.  
**dē-cēdō**, -ere, **cessi**, **cessūs**, depart from; forsake. I, 31, 35; VI, 13, 13.  
**decem**, (x), *indecl. num.*, ten. I, 4, 5.  
**dē-cernō**, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus, decree. II, 35, 11.  
**dē-certō**, 1, struggle fiercely. I, 44, 12; II, 10, 15.  
**dēcēssus**, -ūs, *m.*, departure. III, 13, 3.  
**Decetia**, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Aedui, now Decize.  
**dē-cidō**, -ere, -cidi, fall down or from. I, 48, 16.  
**decimus**, -a, -um, tenth. I, 40, 47; II, 21, 3.  
**Decimus**, -i, *m.*, a praenomen. III, 11, 11.  
**dē-cipiō**, -ere, **cēpi**, **ceptus**, entrap; deceive. I, 14, 6.  
**dē-clārō**, 1, declare. I, 50, 13.  
**dē-clivis**, -e, declining: *as subst.*, slope. II, 18, 3.  
**dē-clivitās**, -tātis, *f.*, slope. VII, 85, 8.  
**dēcrētum**, -i, *n.*, decision. VI, 13, 16.  
**dēcumanus**, -a, -um, of the tenth; decuman. II, 24, 5.  
**decuriō**, -ōnis, *m.*, decuria. I, 23, 7.  
**dē-currō**, -ere, **curri** (**cucurri**), **cursus**, run away. II, 19, 21.  
**dēdecus**, -oris, *n.*, dishonor. IV, 25, 17.  
**dēditicius** (**dēditit**), -a, *um*, surrendered; *as subst.* prisoner. I, 27, 11.  
**dēditō**, -ōnis, *f.*, capitulation. I, 27, 2.  
**dē-dō**, -ere, **didī**, **ditus**, give up; surrender. II, 15, 7.  
**dēdūcō**, -ere, **dūxī**, **ductus**, lead away; influence. I, 44, 36; II, 2, 3.  
**dēfatigātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, weariness. III, 19, 8.  
**dēfatigō** (**dēfet**), 1, exhaust. I, 40, 25; V, 16, 13.  
**dēfectiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, revolt. III, 10, 4.



dē-fendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, defend. I, 11, 4.  
 dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *r.*, defence. II, 7, 4.  
 dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.*, defender. II, 6, 7.  
 dē-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bring from; convey; bestow. II, 4, 23.  
 dē-fessus, -a, -um, wearied, exhausted. I, 25, 11.  
 dē-ficiō, -ere, feci, fectus, fail. II, 10, 11.  
 dē-figō, -ere, fixi, fixus, fasten. IV, 17, 11.  
 dē-finiō, *f.*, mark off. VII, 83, 12.  
 dē-fluō, -ere, fluxi, fluxus, flow apart. IV, 10, 8.  
 dē-formis, -e, misshapen. IV, 2, 6.  
 dē-fugiō, -ere, fugi, fugitus, flee from. VI, 13, 19.  
 dē-iciō, -ere, iēcī, ictus, cast down; overthrow. I, 8, 12.  
 dē-iectus, -ūs, *m.*, declivity. II, 8, 10.  
 deinceps, *adv.*, successively. III, 29, 1.  
 deinde, *adv.*, from thence, then. I, 25, 1.  
 dē-lectō, 1, delight. IV, 2, 4.  
 dēlēctus, -ūs, *m.*, selection, choice.  
 dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, destroy. II, 27, 6.  
 dē-liberō, 1, consider carefully. I, 7, 19.  
 dē-librō, 1, peel. VII, 73, 8.  
 dēlictum, -ī, *n.*, fault, offence.  
 dē-ligō, 1, bind down; fasten. I, 53, 6; IV, 29, 6.  
 dē-ligō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, select. I, 3, 9.  
 dē-litēscō, -ere, lituī, lurk. IV, 32, 16.  
 dēmentia, -ae, *m.*, madness. IV, 13, 6.  
 dē-metō, -ere, messui, messus, reap. IV, 32, 15.  
 dē-migrō, 1, remove. IV, 4, 8.  
 dē-minuō, -ere, -ui, ūtus, lessen. I, 18, 21.  
 de-mittō, -ere, mīssī, mīssus, send or cast down; descend; lose. I, 32, 5; VII, 72, 12.  
 dēmō, -ere, dēmpsī, dēmptus, take away, remove.  
 dē-mōnstrō, 1, show; explain. I, 11, 13.

dē-moror, 1 delay. III, 6, 16.  
 dēmum, *adv.*, at length. I, 17, 1.  
 dē-negō, 1, deny; refuse. I, 42, 7.  
 dēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num.*, ten each. I, 43, 7; V, 14, 8.  
 dēnique, *adv.*, finally. I, 22, 12.  
 dēnsus, -a, -um, thick. II, 22, 5.  
 dē-nūtiō, 1, announce; warn. I, 36, 15.  
 dē-pellō, -ere, puli, pulsus, drive away. III, 25, 3.  
 dē-perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditus, ruin; lose. I, 43, 21; III, 28, 16.  
 dē-pereō, -ire, -ii, peritūrus perish; die, be lost. V, 23, 4.  
 dē-pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, put away; place; entrust. I, 14, 11.  
 dē-populor, 1, ravage; destroy. I, 11, 10.  
 dē-portō, 1, carry away. III, 10, 10.  
 dē-poscō, -ere, poposci, demand; call for.  
 dēprecātor, -ōris, *m.*, mediator. I, 9, 4.  
 dē-precor, 1, beseech. II, 31, 7.  
 dē-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, take away, seize upon.  
 dē-pūgnō, 1, fight decisively; contend.  
 dērectē, *adv.*, straight. IV, 17, 12.  
 dē-rēctus, -a, -um, straight. IV, 17, 21.  
 dē-rivō, 1, divert. VII, 72, 12.  
 dē-rogō, 1, take away. VI, 23, 18.  
 dē-scendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, descend; resort. VI, 16, 14.  
 dē-secō, -āre, secui, sectus, cut away or off.  
 dē-serō, -ere, serui, sertus, disjoin; abandon. I, 45, 4; II, 25, 10.  
 dēsertor, -ōris, *r.*, deserter. VI, 23, 16.  
 dē-siderō, 1, crave. IV, 2, 3.  
 dēsīdia, -ae, *r.*, inactivity. VI, 23, 12.  
 dē-signō, 1, indicate. I, 18, 2.  
 dē-siliō, -ire, silui, sultus, leap from. IV, 2, 8.  
 dē-sistō, -ere, stitī, stitus, stand from; abandon. I, 8, 16.  
 dēspērātio, -ōnis, *r.*, hopelessness, despair.  
 dē-spērō, 1, despair. I, 18, 25.

**dē-spiciō, -ere, spēxī, spēctus,** scorn. I, 13, 16.

**dē-spoliō, -ere,** deprive; plunder. II, 31, 9.

**dēstinō, -ere,** secure; appoint. III, 14, 17.

**dē-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus,** set aside; abandon. I, 16, 19.

**dē-stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus,** unbind; unsheathe. I, 25, 5.

**dē-sum, esse, fui, futurus,** be wanting. I, 40, 40; II, 21, 12.

**dē-super, adv.,** from above; above.

**dēterior, -ius, comp. adj.,** worse. I, 36, 10.

**dē-terreō, -ere,** hinder. I, 17, 5.

**dē-testor, -ere,** execrate; deprecate.

**dē-tineō, -ere, -uī, tentus,** hold back. III, 12, 14.

**dē-tractō, -ere,** decline, refuse.

**dē-trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus,** withdraw; disparage. I, 42, 17; II, 25, 14.

**dētrimentōsus, -a, -um,** hurtful.

**dētrimentum, -i, n.,** injury. I, 44, 15; V, 22, 9.

**dē-trūdō, -ere, trūsī, trūsus,** thrust or strip off. II, 21, 12.

**dē-turbō, -ere,** dislodge. VII, 86, 10.

**dē-ūrō, -ere, ūssi, ūstus,** burn up, destroy.

**deus, -i, m.,** god, deity. I, 12, 16.

**dē-vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus,** carry away.

**dē-veniō, -ere,** come from; arrive at. II, 21, 3.

**dē-vexus, -a, -um,** sloping. VII, 88, 4.

**dē-vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus,** conquer completely, subdue.

**dē-vocō, -ere,** call off or away, recall.

**dē-voeō, -ere, vōvī, vōtus,** vow; devote: *p. part. pl. as subst.,* devotees. III, 22, 3.

**dexter, -tera(-tra), -terum(-trum),** to or on the right, right. I, 52, 3; II, 23, 13.

**dextra, -ae, f.,** right hand. I, 20, 14.

**Diablintēs(-trēs), -um, m.,** III, 9, 27.

**dicō(dit-), -ōnis, f.,** dominion. I, 31, 26; II, 34, 5.

**dicō, -ere,** proclaim; devote. VI, 12, 23.

**dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus, a.,** say, speak, mention, express. I, 1, 15.

**dictiō, -ōnis, f.,** a pleading. I, 4, 4.

**dictum, -i, n.,** saying, remark; command. I, 39, 27; V, 6, 7.

**di-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, dūctus,** separate. III, 23, 16.

**diēs, -ēi, m., f.,** day; time. I, 4, 4.

**dif-ferō, -ere, distuli, dilatus,** bear apart; defer; differ. I, 1, 4.

**difficilis, -e,** not easy, hard. I, 6, 3.

**difficultās, -tātis, f.,** difficulty. II, 20, 7.

**dif-fidō, -ere, fisus sum,** distrust; despair.

**dif-fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus,** pour or spread out. VI, 26, 4.

**digitus, -i, m.,** finger. III, 13, 8.

**dignitās, -tātis, f.,** worthiness; rank. I, 43, 21; III, 13, 4.

**dignus, -a, -um,** worthy, deserving, fitting.

**dīiudicō, -ere,** distinguish; decide.

**dīlēc-tus, -a, -um,** beloved, dear.

**diligenter, adv.,** carefully. II, 5, 4.

**diligentia, -ae, f.,** heedfulness, I, 40, 12; III, 20, 8.

**di-ligō, -ere, lēxī, lēctus,** choose out; love. VI, 19, 15.

**dī-mēti-or, -iri, mēsus sum,** measure out or off. II, 19, 14.

**dimicātiō, -ōnis, f.,** fight. VII, 86, 5.

**dī-micō, -ere,** brandish; fight. II, 21, 10.

**dīmidium, -i, n.,** see dīmidius.

**dīmidius, -a, -um,** half. V, 13, 7.

**dī-mittō, -ere, misi, missus,** send apart, dismiss. I, 18, 4.

**dī-rigō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus,** distribute; lay out.

**dirimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptus,** interrupt. I, 46, 12.

**dī-ripiō, -ere, ripuī, reptus,** rend asunder; pillage. II, 17, 11.

**Dis, Ditis, m.,** Dis; Pluto. VI, 18, 1.

**dis-cedō, -ere, cēssi, cēssus,** withdraw. I, 14, 23.

**disceptātor, -ōris, m.,** judge, umpire.

**dis-ceptō, -ere,** decide, arbitrate.

**dis-cernō, -ere, crēvi, crētus,** discern. VII, 75, 5.

**discessus**, -ūs, *m.*, separation. II, 14, 1.  
**disciplina**, -ae, *f.*, instruction; training. I, 40, 17; IV, 1, 19.  
**dis-clūdō**, -ere, clūsi, clūsus, hold apart. IV, 17, 18.  
**discō**, -ēre, didici, discitūrus, learn. I, 13, 16.  
**discrimen**, -inis, *n.*, interval; distinction; decision; crisis.  
**dis-cutiō**, -ere, cussi, cussus, strike asunder, shatter, destroy.  
**disiciō**, -ere, iēcī, iectus, hurl apart; rout. I, 25, 5.  
**dis-pār**, paris, unequal. V, 16, 8.  
**dis-parō**, 1, separate.  
**dī-spergō**, -ere, spersi, spersus, disperse. I, 40, 28; III, 28, 12.  
**dis-pōnō**, -ere, posui, positus, place about; arrange. I, 8, 6.  
**disputātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, argument, discussion.  
**dis-putō**, 1, discuss, debate about. VI, 14, 19.  
**dissēnsiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, disagreement. VI, 22, 12.  
**dis-sentiō**, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsus, differ, disagree.  
**dis-serō**, -ere, sow or set at intervals. VII, 73, 25.  
**dis-simulō**, 1, disguise. IV, 6, 10.  
**dis-sipō**, 1, scatter. II, 24, 16.  
**dis-suadeō**, -ēre, suāsi, suāsus, advise against.  
**dis-tineō**, -ēre, tinui, tentus, hold apart. II, 5, 6.  
**dī-stō**, -āre, stand or be apart. IV, 17, 17.  
**dis-trahō**, -ere, trāxi, trāctus, pull asunder, divide.  
**dis-tribuō**, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, assign apart, distribute. III, 10, 11.  
**ditissimus**, *superl. of dives*.  
**diū**, *adv.*, for a long time. I, 14, 12.  
**diurnus**, -a, -um, by day. I, 38, 15.  
**diūtinus**, -a, -um, of long duration, long.  
**diūturnitas**, -tātis, *f.*, long duration. I, 40, 25; III, 4, 8.  
**diūturnus**, -a, -um, long. I, 14, 16.  
**dī-versus**, -a, -um, separate(d), contrary, opposite, different. II, 22, 3.  
**dīves**, dīvitis, wealthy, rich. I, 2, 2.

**Dīvicō**, -ōnis, *m.*, I, 13, 7.  
**dī-vidō**, -ere, visi, visus, separate. I, 1, 1.  
**dīvinus**, -a, -um, divine. II, 31, 4.  
**Diviciacus**, -i, *m.*, I, 3, 15.  
**dō**, dare, dedi, datus, give. I, 3, 17.  
**doceō**, -ēre, -ui, doctus, show, inform. I, 43, 12; II, 5, 5.  
**documentum**, -i, *n.*, example; proof, evidence.  
**doleō**, 2, suffer; grieve. I, 14, 14.  
**dōlor**, -ōris, *m.*, grief, pain. I, 2, 14.  
**dolus**, -i, *m.*, treachery. I, 13, 17.  
**domesticus**, -a, -um, native, of home. II, 10, 16.  
**domicilium**, -i, *n.*, dwelling. I, 30, 10; II, 29, 17.  
**dominor**, 1, be master; rule. II, 31, 14.  
**dominus**, -i, *m.*, master. VI, 13, 7.  
**Domitius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman nomen.  
*E. g. L. Domitius Ahenobarbus, cos. 54, B. C. V, 1, 1.*  
**domus**, -ūs(-i), *f.*, home; house. I, 5, 7.  
**dōnō**, 1, give; endow with. I, 47, 12.  
**Donnotaurus**, -i, *see Valerius*.  
**dōnum**, -i, *n.*, present, gift.  
**dorsum**, -i, *n.*, back; ridge.  
**dōs**, dōtis, *f.*, dowry. VI, 19, 1.  
**Druidēs**, -um, *m.*, the Druids. VI, 13, 8.  
**Dūbis**, -is, *m.*, the Doubs. I, 38, 9.  
**dubitātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, hesitation. I, 14, 2.  
**dubitō**, 1, doubt. I, 17, 8.  
**dubius**, -a, -um, doubtful. I, 3, 19.  
**ducenti**, -ae, -a(cc), *card. num.*, two hundred. I, 2, 17.  
**dūcō**, -ere, dūxi, ductus, lead, guide; construct; consider; defer. I, 3, 7.  
**ductus**, -ūs, *m.*, conducting, leading; command.  
**dum**, *conj.*, while; until. I, 7, 18.  
**Dumnorix**, -igis, *m.*, I, 3, 14.  
**duo**, duae, duo, *num. adj.*, two. I, 6, 1.  
**duo-decim(xii)**, *indecl. num.*, twelve. I, 5, 4.  
**duo-decimus**, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, twelfth. II, 23, 13.  
**duo-dēni**, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, twelve each. V, 14, 8.

**duo-dē-vigintī**, *card. num.*, eighteen. II, 5, 21.

**duplex**, -icis, two-fold. II, 29, 8.

**duplicō**, 1, double. IV, 36, 3.

**dūritia**, -ae, *r.*, hardship. VI, 21, 7.

**dūrō**, 1, harden. VI, 28, 6.

**Dūrocortorum**, -ī, *n.*, the capital of the Remi, now Rheims.

**dūrus**, -a, -um, hard. I, 48, 16.

**Durus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen, see **Laberius**.

**dux**, ducis, *m.*, *r.*, leader, guide. I, 21, 6.

## E.

**ē(ex)**, *prep. with abl.*, out of, from. I, 2, 8.

**ēā**, *adv.*, on that side or way, there.

**Eburōnēs**, -um, *m.*, II, 4, 28.

**Eburovicēs**, -um, *m.*, II, 34, 3.

**ē-discō**, -ere, didicī, learn thoroughly, get by heart. VI, 14, 6.

**ēditus**, -a, -um, elevated, lofty. II, 8, 7.

**ē-dō**, dere, didī, ditus, give out; inflict. I, 31, 45.

**ē-doceō**, 2, explain. III, 18, 5.

**ē-dūcō**, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead out or forth. I, 10, 10.

**ēf-farciō**, -ire, fertus, stuff, fill out.

**ēf-fēminō**, 1, enervate, enfeeble. I, 1, 9.

**ēf-ferō**, ferre, extulī, ēlātus, carry out or away; publish; elate. I, 5, 9.

**ēf-ficiō**, -ere, fēcī, fectus, complete; effect. I, 38, 14; II, 5, 18.

**ēf-fodiō**, -ere, fōdī, fossus, dig out; mine.

**ēf-fugiō**, -ere, fugī, fugitus, flee from; escape; IV, 35, 3.

**ēgeō**, -ēre, egui, need. VI, 11, 11.

**ēgestās**, -tātis, *r.*, poverty. VI, 24, 10.

**ego**, mei, etc. *first pers. pron.*, I; *pl. nōs*, we, us, etc. I, 40, 17; II, 9, 13.

**ego-met**, *emphatic for ego*, I myself, I for my part.

**ē-gredior**, -ī, -gressus sum, go forth. I, 27, 13.

**ēgregiē**, *adv.*, excellently. II, 29, 4.

**ē-gregius**, -a, -um, eminent. I, 19, 10.

**ēgressus**, -ūs, *m.*, going forth. V, 8, 11.

**ē-iciō**, -ere, iēcī, iectus, cast or drive out, expel. IV, 7, 9.

**ēiusmodī**, of such a sort or kind, such.

**ē-lābor**, -ī, lapsus sum, slip away, glide off, escape.

**ē-lātus**, see **ēfferō**

**Elaver**, -eris, *m.*, a river of Aquitania, the Allier.

**ē-lēctus**, see **ēligō**.

**elephantus**, -ī, *m.*, *r.*, elephant; ivory. VI, 28, 2.

**Eleuteti**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe tributary to the Arverni. VII, 75, 9.

**ē-liciō**, -ere, -ui, -itus, draw or entice out, lure forth.

**ē-ligō**, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, select. II, 4, 16.

**Elusātēs**, -um, *m.*, III, 27, 4.

**ē-migrō**, 1, remove. I, 31, 50.

**ē-mineō**, -ēre, -ui, project. VII, 72, 14.

**ēminus**, *adv.*, aloof, at a distance.

**ē-mittō**, -ere, mīsi, mīssus, send forth; discharge. I, 25, 10.

**ēmō**, -ere, ēmi, ēmptus, buy, procure, purchase. I, 16, 15.

**ē-nāscor**, -ī, nātus sum, be born from; spring up. II, 17, 18.

**enim**, *conj.*, for. I, 14, 13.

**ē-nitor**, -ī, nisus (nixus) sum, struggle out; strive, struggle.

**ē-numerō**, 1, reckon up; recount.

**ē-nūntiō**, 1, report. I, 4, 1.

**ēō**, ire, ivi (ii), itus, go. I, 6, 13.

**ēō**, *adv.*, in or to that place, there; thither; therefore. I, 25, 12.

**ēōdem**, *adv.*, to the same place. I, 4, 7.

**ēphippiātus**, -a, -um, caparisoned. IV, 2, 12.

**ēphippium**, -ī, *n.*, saddle pad. IV, 2, 11.

**epistola**, -ae, *r.*, letter, epistle.

**Eporedorix**, -igis, *m.*, VII, 76, 12.

**epulae**, -ārum, *r.*, viands; banquet. VI, 28, 13.

**eques**, -itis, *m.*, horseman, rider; knight: *pl.*, cavalry. I, 15, 8.

equester, -tris, -tre, of cavalry. I, 18, 26.  
 equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry. I, 15, 2.  
 equus, -ī, m., horse. I, 22, 5.  
 Eratosthenēs, -is, m., VI, 24, 5.  
 ē-rēctus, see *erigō*.  
*ergā*, *prep.* with *acc.*, towards, in respect of.  
*ergō*, *adv.*, therefore. VII, 77, 29.  
 ē-rigō, -ere, *rēxi*, *rēctus*, raise up, erect. III, 13, 4.  
 ē-ripiō, -ere, -uī, *reptus*, wrest away; rescue. I, 4, 8.  
 errō, I, wander; err.  
 ē-rumpō, -ere, *rūpi*, *ruptus*, break forth. III, 5, 13.  
 ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., sortie. II, 33, 11.  
 essedārius, -ī, m., charioteer. IV, 24, 2.  
 essedum, -ī, n., the British war-chariot. IV, 32, 19.  
 Esubiī, -ōrum, m., II, 34, 3.  
*et*, *conj.*, and. I, 1, 5.  
*etiam*, *conj.*, even, also. I, 1, 17.  
*et-si*, *conj.*, even if, although. I, 46, 6; III, 24, 4.  
 ē-vādō, -ere, *vāsi*, *vāsus*, escape. III, 19, 13.  
 ē-vellō, -ere, *velli*, *vulsus*, pluck out. I, 25, 8.  
 ē-veniō, -ire, *vēni*, *ventus*, result. IV, 25, 12.  
 ēventus, -ūs, m., result. II, 22, 9.  
 ē-vocō, I, call out. III, 20, 12.  
 ē-volō, I, fly or rush forth. III, 28, 13.  
*ex*, see *ē*.  
*ex-actus*, see *exigō*.  
*ex-agitō*, I, stir up; harass. II, 29, 15.  
*ex-āminō*, I, weigh. V, 12, 10.  
*ex-animō*, I, exhaust. II, 23, 3.  
*ex-ardēscō*, -ere, *ārsi*, *ārsus*, kindle; be inflamed or enraged. V, 4, 15.  
*ex-audiō*, I, hear distinctly. II, 11, 17.  
*ex-cēdō*, -ere, *cēssi*, *cēssus*, go away; retire. II, 25, 11.  
*ex-cellō*, -ere, -uī, *celsus*, surpass. VI, 13, 28.  
*excelsus*, -a, -um, eminent; high. VI, 26, 2.  
*ex-ceptō*, I, take out or up; catch.

*ex-cidō*, -ere, *cidī*, *oisus*, hew away.  
*ex-cipio*, -ere, *cēpi*, *ceptus*, take up. I, 52, 9; III, 5, 12.  
*ex-citō*, I, arouse. III, 10, 8.  
*ex-clūdō*, -ere, -eī, -sus, shut out. V, 23, 12.  
*ex-cōgitō*, I, think out, contrive.  
*ex-cruciō*, I, torment. VI, 19, 11.  
*excubitor*, -ōris, m., watchman. VII, 69, 14.  
*ex-cubō*, -āre, -uī, -itus, lie or camp out; keep guard.  
*ex-culcō*, I, trample. VII, 73, 20.  
*excursiō*, -ōnis, f., sally. II, 30, 2.  
*excūsatiō*, -ōnis, f., excusing; declining.  
*ex-cūsō*, I, justify; apologize. IV, 22, 3.  
*exemplum*, -ī, n., model; precedent. I, 8, 10.  
*ex-eō*, *ire*, *ivi*(ii), *itus*, go from, leave. I, 2, 5.  
*ex-erceō*, 2, practice. I, 48, 12; VI, 23, 12.  
*exercitātiō*, -ōnis, f., training; experience. I, 39, 5; III, 19, 9.  
*exercitātus*, -a, -um, practiced, skilled. I, 36, 18; II, 20, 9.  
*exercitus*, -ūs, m., army. I, 3, 21.  
*ex-hauriō*, -ire, *hausi*, *haustus*, draw out, empty, exhaust.  
*ex-igō*, -ere, *ēgi*, *actus*, finish, pass; determine. III, 28, 1.  
*exiguē*, *adv.*, meagerly, scarcely.  
*exiguitās*, -tātis, f., scarcity. II, 21, 9.  
*exiguus*, -a, -um, limited. IV, 20, 1.  
*eximius*, -a, -um, eminent. II, 8, 2.  
*existimātiō*, -ōnis, f., computation. I, 20, 9.  
*ex-istimō*, I, reckon, think. I, 6, 13.  
*exitus*, -ūs, m., going out; issue. III, 8, 14.  
*ex-pediō*, I, extricate, free.  
*expeditiō*, -ōnis, f., campaign, enterprise, expedition. V, 10, 21.  
*ex-peditus*, -a, -um, unobstructed; light armed. I, 6, 6.  
*ex-pellō*, -ere, *puli*, *pulsus*, drive out. II, 4, 5.  
*ex-perior*, -irī, *pertus sum*, test; experience. I, 31, 52; II, 16, 7.  
*ex-piō*, I, atone for, expiate; avenge.

**ex-pleō, -āre, plēvi, plētus**, fill up. VII, 79, 12.

**explōrator, -ōris, m.**, explorer, scout, spy. I, 12, 5.

**ex-plōrō, 1**, search out. II, 4, 10.

**ex-pōnō, -ere, posui, positus**, place forth; disembark; explain. IV, 23, 6.

**ex-portō, 1**, carry away. IV, 18, 9.

**ex-poscō, -ere, poposci**, entreat; demand.

**ex-primō, -ere, pressi, pressus**, extort; raise; declare. I, 32, 8.

**expūgnatiō, -ōnis, f.**, taking by assault, storming.

**ex-pūgnō, 1**, storm; overpower. I, 11, 8.

**ex-quirō, -ere, quīsivi, quīsitus**, seek for; investigate. I, 41, 11; III, 3, 6.

**ex-sequor, -ī, secūtus sum**, follow out, exercise. I, 4, 9.

**ex-serō, -ere, -ui, -tus**, thrust or put out; uncover.

**ex-sistō, -ere, stitī, stitus**, stand forth. III, 15, 8.

**ex-spectō, 1**, look out for; await. I, 11, 14.

**ex-spoliō, 1**, rob. VII, 77, 24.

**ex-stinguō, -ere, -nxi, -nctus**, put out, quench; destroy.

**ex-stō, -āre, stitī, stand out; be prominent; exist. V, 18, 10.**

**ex-struō, -ere, strūxi, strūctus**, build up. II, 30, 5.

**exterior, -ius, comp. adj.**, outer, exterior. VII, 74, 4.

**exter(exterus), externa, exterum**, outer; foreign: *sup. extrēmus*.

**ex-terreō, 2**, alarm. VII, 77, 33.

**ex-timēscō, -ere, timui**, dread. III, 13, 24.

**ex-torqueō, -āre, torsi, torsus**, wrest or force from, extort.

**extrā, adv. and prep. with acc.**, without, beyond. I, 10, 18.

**ex-trahō, -ere, trāxi, trāctus**, draw out; prolong; waste away. V, 22, 14.

**extrēmus, -a, -um**, farthest, extreme. I, 1, 19.

**ex-trūdō, -ere, trūsi, trūsus**, thrust or shut out. III, 12, 7.

**exul, -ulis, m. and f.**, wanderer, exile.

**ex-uō, uere, ui, ūtus**, draw or strip off, despoil. III, 6, 10.

**ex-ūrō, -ere, ūssi, ūstus**, burn up. I, 5, 11.

## F.

**faber, -bri, m.**, workman; mechanic. V, 11, 6.

**Fabius, -i, m., a nōmen. E. g.**, (1) C. Fabius, one of Caesar's lieutenants. VII, 87, 2. (2) L. Fabius, a centurion of the VIII legion.

(3) Q. Fabius Maximus, victor over the Gauls 121 B. C. I, 45, 6.

**facile, adv.**, easily. I, 2, 6.

**facilis, -e**, easy to do, easy, without difficulty. I, 6, 5.

**facinus, -oris, n.**, crime. I, 40, 40; III, 9, 8.

**faciō, -ere, feci, factus**, make, do. I, 2, 4.

**factiō, -ōnis, f.**, doing; faction. I, 31, 10; VI, 11, 6.

**factum, -i, n.**, deed, act, exploit. III, 14, 25.

**facultās, -tātis, f.**, power; opportunity; means. I, 7, 16.

**fāgus, -ī, f.**, beech tree or timber. V, 12, 13.

**fallō, -ere, fefelli, falsus**, deceive. II, 10, 9.

**falsus, -a, -um**, deceived; false. VI, 20, 6.

**falx, falcis, f.**, sickle. III, 13, 15.

**fama, -ae, f.**, reputation; rumor. VII, 77, 45.

**famēs, -is, f.**, hunger; want. I, 28, 8.

**familia, -ae, f.**, dependents; household. I, 4, 5.

**familiāris, -e**, personal: *as subst.*, intimate friend: *rēs*, property. I, 18, 11.

**familiāritās, -tātis, f.**, intimacy. V, 3, 14.

**fās, n., indecl.**, right. I, 50, 15; V, 12, 14.

**fastigātō, adv.**, sloping. IV, 17, 12.

**fastigātus, -a, -um**, sloping. I, 8, 10.

**fastigium**, -ī, *n.*, elevation; slope. VII, 69, 7.

**fātum**, -ī, *n.*, fate, lot. I, 39, 17.

**faveō**, -ēre, *fāvi*, *fautus*, favor. I, 18, 18.

**fax**, *facis*, *f.*, firebrand, torch.

**felicitās**, -tātis, *f.*, happiness. I, 40, 41.

**felíciter**, *adv.*, happily. IV, 25, 12.

**fēmina**, -ae, *f.*, female, woman. VI, 21, 10.

**femur**, -inis, *n.*, the thigh. VII, 73, 17.

**fera**, -ae, *f.*, wild animal. VI, 25, 11.

**ferāx**, -ācis, fertile. II, 4, 17

**ferē**, *adv.*, almost. I, 1, 12.

**ferō**, *ferre*, *tuli*, *lātus*, bear, bring; endure; report. I, 13, 14.

**ferramentum**, -ī, *n.*, an iron tool or implement.

**ferrāria**, -ae, *f.*, an iron mine.

**ferreus**, -a, -um, of iron. III, 13, 8.

**ferrum**, -ī, *n.*, iron. I, 25, 8.

**fertilis**, -e, productive. VI, 24, 4.

**fertilitās**, -tātis, *f.*, productiveness. II, 4, 4.

**ferus**, -a, -um, wild; *as subst.*, wild beast. I, 31, 15; II, 4, 24.

**fervefaciō**, -ere, *feci*, *factus*, heat, melt.

**fervēns**, -entis, heated, glowing, hot.

**fibula**, -ae, *f.*, fastening. IV, 17, 18.

**fidēlis**, -e, faithful. IV, 21, 16.

**fidēs**, -ei, *f.*, faith, confidence. I, 3, 22.

**fidūcia**, -ae, *f.*, confidence. VII, 76, 15.

**figūra**, -ae, *f.*, form. IV, 25, 6.

**filia**, -ae, *f.*, daughter. I, 3, 17.

**filius**, -ī, *m.*, son. I, 3, 11.

**finḡō**, -ere, *finxi*, *fictus*, form; invent. I, 39, 15; IV, 5, 12.

**finiō**, 4, bound; finish. IV, 16, 14.

**finis**, -is, *m.*, boundary; *pl.* territory. I, 1, 13.

**fīnitimus**, -a, -um, neighboring; *in pl. as subst.*, neighbors. I, 2, 13.

**fiō**, *fiērī*, *factus sum*, be made or done; happen. I, 2, 12.

**fīrmīter**, *adv.*, strongly. IV, 26, 2.

**fīrmitudō**, -inis, *f.*, strength. III, 13, 18.

**fīrmō**, 1, strengthen, fortify; establish.

**fīrmus**, -a, -um, firm. I, 3, 23.

**fistūca**, -ae, *f.*, pile-driver. IV, 17, 11.

**Flaccus**, -ī, *m.* I, 47, 12.

**flāgitō**, 1, demand. I, 16, 2.

**flamma**, -ae, *f.*, fire, blaze. VI, 16, 11.

**flectō**, -ere, *flēxi*, *flexus*, bend. IV, 33, 11.

**fleō**, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, weep. I, 20, 13.

**flētus**, -ūs, *m.*, weeping; tears. I, 33, 2.

**flō**, 1, blow. V, 7, 8.

**flōrēns**, -entis, flourishing. I, 30, 7; IV, 3, 6.

**flōs**, *flōris*, *m.*, blossom, flower.

**fluctus**, -ūs, *m.*, wave. III, 13, 5.

**flūmen**, -inis, *n.*, river. I, 1, 5.

**fluō**, -ere, *flūxi*, *fluxus*, flow, run. I, 6, 8.

**fodiō**, -ere, *fōdi*, *fossus*, dig. VII, 73, 15.

**foedus**, -eris, *n.*, compact, treaty, alliance.

**foris**, *adv.*, abroad. VII, 76, 19.

**forma**, -ae, *f.*, shape. III, 14, 16.

**fōrs**, -tis, *f.*, chance. II, 21, 2.

**fortis**, -e, brave. I, 1, 6.

**fortiter**, *adv.*, bravely. II, 11, 16.

**fortitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, courage. I, 2, 16.

**fortuitō**, *adv.*, by chance.

**fortūna**, -ae, *f.*, success; property. I, 11, 15.

**fortūnātus**, -a, -um, prospered, fortunate.

**forum**, -ī, *n.*, a public place; court market.

**fossa**, -ae, *f.*, trench. I, 8, 6.

**fovea**, -ae, *f.*, pitfall. VI, 28, 5.

**frangō**, -ere, *frēgi*, *fractus*, break. I, 31, 21; IV, 29, 8.

**frāter**, -tris, *m.*, brother. I, 3, 15.

**frāternus**, -a, -um, brotherly. I, 20, 9.

**fraus**, -dis, *f.*, cheating, deception.

**fremitus**, -ūs, *m.*, din. II, 24, 10.

**frequēns**, -entis, constant; in great numbers. IV, 11, 14.

**frētus**, -a, -um, relying upon. III, 21, 2.

**frigidus**, -a, -um, cold. IV, 1, 21.  
**frigus**, -oris, n., cold. I, 16, 8.  
**frons**, -tis, f., brow; front. II, 8, 10.  
**fructuōsus**, -a, -um, productive. I, 30, 10.  
**fructus**, -ūs, m., enjoyment; fruit, crops; profit. IV, 19, 4.  
**frumentārius**, -a, -um, of grain: rēs, provisions. I, 23, 5.  
**frumentatiō**, -ōnis, f., getting grain or fodder, foraging.  
**frumentor**, 1, get grain. IV, 12, 4.  
**frumentum**, -i, n., grain. I, 3, 5.  
**frūor**, -i, fructus sum, enjoy. III, 22, 5.  
**frustrā**, adv., in vain. III, 4, 6.  
**fuga**, -ae, f., flight. I, 11, 12.  
**fugiō**, -ere, fugi, flee; escape. I, 53, 2; II, 11, 13.  
**fugitivus**, -a, -um, fleeing: as *subst.*, deserter. I, 23, 7.  
**fugō**, 1, put to flight, chase; rout. VII, 68, 1.  
**fūmō**, 1, smoke, fume.  
**fūmus**, -i, m., smoke. II, 7, 10.  
**funda**, -ae, f., sling. IV, 25, 5.  
**funditor**, -ōris, m., slinger. II, 7, 3.  
**fundō**, -ere, fūdi, fūsus, pour; rout. III, 6, 10.  
**fungor**, -i, fūctus sum, perform, execute, discharge.  
**fūnis**, -is, m., rope, cable. III, 13, 9.  
**fūnus**, -eris, n., funeral. VI, 19, 11.  
**furor**, -ōris, m., rage. I, 40, 10; II, 3, 11.  
**fūrtum**, -i, n., theft. VI, 16, 12.  
**fūsilis**, -e, liquid, molten.

## G.

**Gabali**, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe. VII, 15, 9.  
**Gabinūs**, -i, m., I, 6, 16.  
**gaesum**, -i, n., javelin. III, 4, 4.  
**Gāius**, -i, m., a *praenomen*. I, 40, 14; III, 5, 7.  
**Galba**, -ae, m., II, 13, 2.  
**galea**, -ae, f., helmet. II, 21, 11.  
**Gallia**, -ae, f., Gaul. I, 1, 1.  
**Gallicus**, -a, -um, Gallic. I, 22, 6.  
**gallina**, -ae, f., hen. V, 12, 14.  
**Gallus**, -a, -um, Gallic: *in pl.* as *subst.*, the Gauls. I, 1, 3.

**Garumna**, -ae, m., the Garonne. I, 1, 5.  
**Garumni**, -ōrum, m., III, 27, 4.  
**Gatēs**, -um, m., III, 27, 4.  
**gaudeō**, -ēre, gāvius sum, rejoice. IV, 13, 17.  
**Geidūmni**, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe, dependents of the Nervii.  
**Genāva**, -ae, f., I, 6, 10.  
**gener**, -eri, m., son-in-law.  
**generātim**, adv., by tribes. I, 51, 8.  
**gens**, gentis, f., race; tribe. II, 28, 2.  
**genus**, -eris, n., race; kind. I, 48, 11; III, 14, 6.  
**Gergovia**, -ae, f., the chief town of the Arverni.  
**Germāni**, -ōrum, m., *pl.*, men of the hills, hill-folk. II, 4, 29.  
**Germānia**, -ae, f., Germany. IV, 4, 4.  
**Germānicus**, -a, -um, German. IV, 16, 1.  
**Germānus**, -a, -um, German; *subst.*, a German: *pl.*, the Germans. I, 1, 10.  
**gerō**, -ere, gessi, gestus, bear, carry; carry on, wage. I, 1, 11.  
**gladius**, -i, m., sword. I, 25, 5.  
**glāns**, -andis, f., acorn; bullet. VII, 81, 12.  
**glōba** (glac-), -ae, f., clod of earth, sod.  
**glōria**, -ae, f., glory, honor. I, 2, 15.  
**glōrior**, 1, boast of. I, 14, 12.  
**Gnaeus** (Cn.), -i, m., IV, 1, 1.  
**Gobannitiō**, -ōnis, m., an Avernian chief.  
**Graecus**, -a, -um, Grecian. I, 29, 2.  
**Grāioceli**, -ōrum, m., I, 10, 13.  
**grandis**, -e, large. I, 43, 2; VII, 72, 14.  
**grātia**, -ae, f., favor. I, 9, 5.  
**grātulatiō**, -ōnis, f., rejoicing. I, 53, 20; VII, 78, 9.  
**grātulor**, 1, congratulate; thank. I, 30, 3.  
**grātus**, -a, -um, pleasing. I, 33, 39; VI, 16, 13.  
**gravis**, -e, heavy, severe. I, 20, 2.  
**gravitās**, -tātis, f., heaviness; dignity. IV, 3, 11.  
**graviter**, adv., heavily; severely; seriously. I, 16, 15.



**gravor**, 1, be unwilling. I, 35, 6.  
**Grudii**, -ōrum, m., a *Belgic* tribe,  
*clients of the Nervii*.  
**gubernātor**, -ōris, m., pilot. III,  
 9, 4.  
**gustō**, 1, taste. V, 12, 14.

## H.

**habeō**, 2, have, hold; carry; regard.  
 I, 2, 16.  
**haesitō**, 1, stick or cling fast, re-  
 main fixed.  
**hāmus**, -ī, m., hook. VII, 73, 24.  
**harpagō**, -ōnis, m., grapple. VII,  
 81, 2.  
**Harūdēs**, -um, m., I, 31, 36.  
**haud**, *adv.*, not, by no means, not  
 at all.  
**Helvēticus**, -a, -um, of the Helve-  
 tii, Helvetian.  
**Helvētius**, -a, -um, of the Helvetii,  
 Helvetian; *as subst.*, m., one of the  
 Helvetii, an Helvetian; *pl.*, the  
 Helvetii. I, 1, 11.  
**Helvii**, -ōrum, m., a *Gallie* tribe be-  
 tween the *Rhone* and *Cevennes*.  
**Hercynia**, -ae, f., the *Hercynian*  
 forest. VI, 24, 5.  
**hereditās**, -tātis, f., inheritance.  
 VI, 13, 14.  
**hiberna**, -ōrum, n., see *hibernus*.  
**hibernāculum**, -ī, n., wintering  
 place; *pl.* winter quarters. II,  
 35, 9.  
**Hibernia**, -ae, f., Ireland.  
**hibernus**, -a, -um, of or belonging  
 to winter, cold, winter; *in n. pl. as*  
*subst.*, *hiberna*, -ōrum (sc. *cas-*  
*tra*), winter camp, winter quar-  
 ters. I, 10, 10.  
**hic**, *haec*, *hōc*, *gen.* *hūius*, *dem.*  
*pron.*, this. I, 1, 3.  
**hic**, *adv.*, here, hereupon. IV, 19, 11.  
**hiemō**, 1, pass the winter. I, 10, 10.  
**hiems**, -emis, f., winter. III, 7, 4.  
**hinc**, *adv.*, hence. VI, 25, 6.  
**Hispania**, -ae, f., Spain. I, 1, 22.  
**Hispanus**, -a, -um, Spanish.  
**homō**, -inis, m., man. I, 2, 14.  
**honestus**, -a, -um, honorable. I,  
 53, 17.  
**honōrificus**, -a, -um, conferring  
 honor. I, 43, 17.

**honor** (*honōs*), -ōris, m., honor. I,  
 18, 22.  
**hōra**, -ae, f., hour. I, 26, 5.  
**horreō**, -ēre, -uī, dread. I, 32, 13.  
**horribilis**, -a, dreadful, horrible.  
**horridus**, -a, -um, bristling; hid-  
 eous. V, 14, 6.  
**hortor**, 1, encourage. I, 19, 19.  
**hospes**, -itis, m., f., host; guest;  
 stranger. I, 53, 18; V, 6, 9.  
**hospitium**, -ī, n., hospitality. I,  
 31, 21; VII, 75, 23.  
**hostis**, -is, m., f., enemy. I, 11, 11.  
**hūc**, *adv.*, hither. I, 38, 14; III, 19, 2.  
**hūius-modi**, of this sort, kind or  
 nature. III, 3, 11.  
**hūmānitās**, -tātis, f., refinement.  
 I, 1, 7.  
**hūmānus**, -a, -um, cultivated. IV,  
 3, 7.  
**humerus**, (*umerus*), -ī, m., the  
 shoulder.  
**humilis**, -e, humble. IV, 3, 13.  
**humilitās**, -tātis, f., lowness; hu-  
 mility. V, 1, 12.

## I.

**I**, *sign* for one.  
**iaceō**, -ēre, *iacuī*, lie; beslain. II,  
 27, 9.  
**iaciō**, -ere, *iacī*, *iactus*, hurl, throw;  
 construct. II, 6, 6.  
**iactō**, 1, toss, discuss. I, 18, 3.  
**iactūra**, -ae, f., loss. VI, 12, 6.  
**iaculum**, -ī, n., javelin.  
**iam**, *adv.*, now, at length. I, 5, 3.  
**ibi** (*ibi*), *adv.*, there. I, 10, 9.  
**iccius**, -ī, m., a *chief of the Remi*.  
 II, 3, 2.  
**ictus**, -ūs, m., stroke. I, 25, 7.  
**Id.**, *abbrev. for Idūs*.  
**idcircō**, *adv.*, therefore. V, 3, 18.  
**idem**, *eadem*, *idem*, *dem.* *adj.*  
*pron.*, the same. I, 3, 16.  
**identidem**, *adv.*, repeatedly. II,  
 19, 10.  
**idōneus**, -a, -um, suitable. II, 8, 6.  
**Idūs**, -uum, f., the *Ides*. I, 7, 20.  
**ignis**, -is, m., fire. I, 4, 4.  
**ignōbilis**, -e, unknown; ignoble.  
**ignōminia**, -ae, f., disgrace. VII,  
 80, 17.

**ignōrō**, 1, not know. I, 27, 12.  
**ignōscō**, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus, forgive. I, 45, 6; IV, 27, 10.  
**ignōtus**, -a, -um, unknown, unfamiliar. IV, 24, 6.  
**ille**, *illa*, *illud*, *gen. illius*, *dat. illi*, *dem. adj. pron.*, that. I, 3, 18.  
**illic**, *adv.*, there. I, 18, 16.  
**il(in-)-ligō**, 1, attach. IV, 17, 21.  
**illō**, *adv.*, there. VI, 13, 31.  
**il(in-)-lūstris**, -e, illumined; distinguished. VI, 19, 8.  
**Illyricum**, -i, *n.*, Illyria. II, 35, 6.  
**imbēcillitas**, -tātis, *f.*, weakness. VII, 77, 26.  
**imber**, -bris, *m.*, rain storm. III, 29, 10.  
**imitor**, 1, imitate, copy after.  
**immānis**, -e, enormous. IV, 1, 20.  
**im-mineō**, -ēre, -uī, project or hang over; touch on.  
**immittō**, -ere, *misi*, *mīssus*, send into; insert. IV, 17, 11.  
**im-molō**, 1, sacrifice. VI, 16, 4.  
**im-mortalis**, -e, immortal. I, 12, 16.  
**immūnis**, -e, unburdened. VII, 76, 4.  
**immunitas**, -tātis, *f.*, immunity. VI, 14, 3.  
**im-pār**, *paris*, uneven, unequal.  
**im-parātus**, -a, -um, not ready or prepared.  
**impedimentum**, -ī, *n.*, hindrance; *pl.* baggage (train). I, 24, 10.  
**im-pediō**, 4, hinder, hamper. I, 12, 10.  
**im-peditus**, -a, -um, encumbered, hampered. I, 12, 10.  
**im-pellō**, -ere, *pulī*, *pulsus*, incite. I, 40, 10; II, 14, 4.  
**im-pendeō**, -ēre, overhang; threaten. I, 6, 5.  
**im-pēnsus**, -a, -um, expensive; great. IV, 2, 4.  
**imperātor**, -ōris, *m.*, commander. I, 40, 15; II, 25, 19.  
**imperātum**, -ī, *n.*, order, command. II, 3, 7.  
**im-perfectus**, -a, -um, unaccomplished. VI, 12, 14.  
**im-peritus**, -a, -um, inexperienced. I, 40, 30; IV, 22, 4.

**imperium**, -ī, *n.*, command; sway; supreme power. I, 2, 6.  
**imperō**, 1, demand from; command. I, 7, 5.  
**impetrō**, 1, obtain (one's request). I, 9, 5.  
**impetus**, -ūs, *m.*, onset. I, 22, 11.  
**im-pius**, -a, -um, wicked. VI, 13, 18.  
**im-plicō**, 1, entwine. VII, 73, 12.  
**im-plōrō**, 1, beseech. I, 31, 25. V, 7, 19.  
**im-pōnō**, -ere, *posuī*, *positus*, place upon. I, 42, 19.  
**im-portō**, 1, carry or bring. I, 1, 9.  
**im-primis**, *adv.*, particularly. I, 33, 7; III, 10, 5.  
**im-probus**, -a, -um, wicked. I, 17, 5.  
**im-prōvisō**, *adv.*, I, 13, 13.  
**im-prōvisus**, -a, -um, unforeseen. I, 13, 13.  
**im-prūdēns**, -entis, not foreseeing. III, 29, 2.  
**imprudentia**, -ae, *f.*, indiscretion. IV, 27, 9.  
**im-pūbēs**, -eris, immature; chaste. VI, 21, 8.  
**im-pūgnō**, 1, fight against. I, 44, 20; III, 26, 12.  
**impūne**, *adv.*, without punishment. I, 14, 12.  
**impūnitās**, -tātis, *f.*, impunity. I, 14, 16.  
**īnus**, *superl. of inferus*. III, 19, 1.  
**in**, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, into, to; among, in; till; on, at. I, 1, 1.  
**inānis**, -e, empty. V, 23, 8.  
**in-cautē**, *adv.*, unwarily.  
**in-cautus**, -a, -um, heedless, unwary.  
**incendium**, -ī, *n.*, conflagration. V, 19, 13.  
**in-cendō**, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus, set fire to; inflame. I, 5, 5.  
**in-certus**, -a, -um, uncertain. IV, 5, 11.  
**in-cidō**, -ere, *cidī cāsus*, fall into; meet; befall. I, 53, 15; II, 14, 13.  
**in-cidō**, -ere, *cidī*, *cisus*, cut into. II, 17, 17.  
**in-cipiō**, -ere, *cēpī*, *ceptus*, undertake. II, 2, 5.

incitō, 1, instigate. I, 4, 8.  
 in-cōgnitus, -a, -um, unknown. IV, 20, 9.  
 in-colō, -ere, colui, cultus, inhabit. I, 1, 2.  
 in-columis, -e, unhurt. I, 53, 23; III, 6, 16.  
 in-commodē, *adv.*, inconveniently, unseasonably.  
 in-commodum, -ī, *n.*, disaster. I, 13, 12.  
 in-crēdibilis, -e, incredible. I, 12, 2.  
 in-crepitō, 1, taunt. II, 15, 13.  
 in-cumbō, -ere, cubui, cubitus, recline upon; bend to. VII, 76, 9.  
 incursiō, -ōnis, *r.*, onset. V, 1, 16.  
 incursus, -ūs, *m.*, inroad, attack.  
 in-cūsō, 1, upbraid. I, 40, 3; II, 15, 13.  
 inde, *adv.*, thence. I, 10, 17.  
 indicium, -ī, *n.*, information. I, 4, 1.  
 in-dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus, proclaim; order. I, 30, 12; VII, 75, 2.  
 in-dicō, 1, point out, announce.  
 in-dictus, -a, -um, unsaid.  
 in-dignē, *adv.*, unworthily, dishonorably.  
 indignitās, -tātis, *r.*, unworthiness; outrage. II, 14, 6.  
 indignor, 1, deem unworthy, resent.  
 in-dignus, -a, -um, unworthy, shameful.  
 in-diligēns, -entis, heedless. VII, 71, 8.  
 in-diligenter, *adv.*, carelessly. II, 33, 5.  
 indiligentia, -ae, *r.*, heedlessness.  
 in-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, lead on; influence. I, 2, 3.  
 indulgentia, -ae, *r.*, forbearance; affection.  
 indulgēō, -ēre, -sī, -tus, favor. I, 40, 49.  
 in-duō, -ere, dui, dūtus, put on. II, 21, 11.  
 industriē, *adv.*, diligently.  
 indūtiae, -ārum, *r.*, truce. IV, 12, 6.  
 Indutiomarus, -ī, *m.*, V, 3, 4.  
 in-eō, ire, ivi, (ii), itus, go into; begin; adopt; form. II, 2, 3.  
 in-ermis, -e, unarmed. II, 27, 4.

inermus, -a, -um, unarmed. I, 40, 19.  
 in-ers, ertis, inactive; cowardly. IV, 2, 11.  
 infāmia, -ae, *r.*, ill repute. VI, 23, 10.  
 in-fāns, -antis, not speaking: *as subst.*, infant.  
 in-fectus, -a, -um, not done, unaccomplished.  
 inferior, -ius, *comp.* of inferus. I, 1, 19.  
 inferō, ferre, intuli, illātus, bring or make upon, inflict. I, 1, 13.  
 inferus, -a, -um, below, low. I, 1, 19.  
 infestus, -a, -um, disturbed; dangerous.  
 inficiō, -ere, feci, fectus, stain. V, 14, 5.  
 in-fidēlis, -e, untrustworthy, faithless.  
 in-figō, -ere, fixi, fixus, fasten in. VII, 73, 24.  
 infirmus, II, 18, 5, *superl.* of inferus.  
 infinitus, -a, -um, endless. V, 12, 7.  
 infirmitās, -tātis, *r.*, weakness; inconstancy. IV, 5, 1.  
 in-firmus, -a, -um, weak; discouraged. III, 24, 9.  
 in-flectō, -ere, flēxi, flexus, bend in, curve. I, 25, 8.  
 in-fluō, -ere, flūxi, fluxus, flow into. I, 8, 3.  
 in-fodiō, -ere, fodī, fossus, dig or drive in. VII, 73, 24.  
 infrā, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*, below. IV, 36, 9.  
 ingēns, -entis, enormous. I, 39, 4; IV, 10, 9.  
 in-grātus, -a, -um, disagreeable.  
 in-gredior, -i, gressus sum, go into. II, 4, 7.  
 in-iciō, -ere, iēcī, ictus, hurl or put into; infuse. I, 45, 14; IV, 17, 22.  
 inimicitia, -ae, *r.*, enmity. VI, 12, 22.  
 in-imicus, -a, -um, unfriendly: *as subst.*, a personal enemy. I, 7, 16.  
 iniquitās, -tātis, *r.*, inequality, unfairness; unfavorable position. II, 22, 9.

**iniquus**, -a, -um, uneven; unfair; unfavorable. I, 44, 12; II, 10, 10.  
**initium**, -ī, n., beginning. I, 1, 15.  
**in-iungō**, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, join to; impose. VII, 77, 47.  
**in-iūria**, -ae, f., wrong, injustice; outrage. I, 7, 17.  
**in-iūssū**, *abl. as adv.*, without orders. I, 19, 4.  
**in-nāscor**, -i, nātus sum, be born or grow in; spring up. I, 41, 3.  
**in-nitor**, -ī, nixus (nisus) sum, lean upon. II, 27, 8.  
**in-nocēns**, -entis, harmless; upright. VI, 16, 14.  
**innocentia**, -ae, f., integrity. I, 40, 41.  
**inopia**, -ae, f., need. I, 27, 1.  
**in-opināns**, -antis, unawares, surprised. I, 12, 10.  
**inquam**, -is, -it; *perf.*, inquit, *def. verb.*, say. IV, 25, 12.  
**in-sciēns**, -entis, not knowing. I, 19, 5.  
**inscientia**, -ae, f., ignorance. III, 10, 15.  
**in-scius**, -a, -um, not knowing. IV, 4, 14.  
**in-sequor**, -i, secūtus sum, follow up; harass. I, 15, 6.  
**in-serō**, -ere, serui, sertus, thrust in. III, 14, 15.  
**insidiae**, -ārum, f., ambush. I, 13, 17.  
**insidior**, 1, lie in ambush.  
**insignis**, -e, remarkable: *neut. as subst.*, signal, decoration. I, 12, 17.  
**in-siliō**, -īre, silui, leap in or on. I, 52, 11.  
**in-simulō**, 1, charge, blame, accuse.  
**in-sinuō**, 1, wind into; penetrate. IV, 33, 4.  
**in-sistō**, -ere, stitī, stand upon; pursue. II, 27, 9.  
**insolenter**, *adv.*, insultingly. I, 14, 11.  
**in-spectō**, 1, look at, view.  
**in-stabilis**, -e, unsteady. IV, 23, 15.  
**instar**, n., *indecl.*, likeness. II, 17, 19.  
**instigō**, 1, goad on, stimulate.  
**in-stituō**, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, establish. I, 14, 21.

**institutum**, -ī, n., arrangement; custom. I, 1, 4.  
**in-stō**, -āre, -itī, status, be at hand, threaten. I, 16, 10.  
**instrūmentum**, -ī, n., implement, tool; apparatus.  
**in-struō**, -ere, strūxī, strūctus, build or draw up. I, 22, 8.  
**insuēfactus**, -a, -um, accustomed. IV, 24, 11.  
**insuētus**, -a, -um, unaccustomed. V, 6, 11.  
**insula**, -ae, f., island. III, 9, 21.  
**insuper**, *adv.*, from above. IV, 17, 16.  
**in-teger**, tegra, tegrum, untouched. III, 4, 5.  
**in-tegō**, -ere, tēxi, tēctus, cover over; protect. VII, 73, 21.  
**intellegō**, -ere, lēxi, lēctus, learn, understand. I, 10, 4.  
**in-tendō**, -ere, -dī, -tus, stretch out; direct; be intent. III, 22, 1.  
**inter**, *prep. with acc.*, between; among. I, 1, 4.  
**inter-cēdō**, -ere, cessī, cessus, intervene; occur. I, 7, 18.  
**inter-cipō**, -ere, cēpi, ceptus, intercept. II, 27, 11.  
**inter-clūdō**, -ere, clūsi, clūsus, shut off. I, 23, 11.  
**inter-dicō**, -ere, dixī, dictus, prohibit. I, 46, 11; V, 22, 16.  
**inter-diū**, *adv.*, by day. I, 8, 14.  
**inter-dum**, *adv.*, meanwhile; sometimes. I, 14, 15.  
**inter-eā**, *adv.*, meanwhile. I, 8, 1.  
**inter-eō**, ire, iui(ii), itus, perish. VI, 14, 15.  
**inter-ficiō**, -ere, fēcī, fectus, kill. I, 12, 15.  
**inter-iciō**, -ere, iēcī, ictus, throw between; interpose. II, 7, 19.  
**interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile. I, 16, 1.  
**interior**, -ius, interior. V, 12, 1.  
**interitus**, -ūs, m., destruction.  
**inter-mittō**, -ere, misi, missus, send between; discontinue. I, 26, 15.  
**interneciō**, -ōnis, f., extermination. I, 13, 19.  
**inter-pellō**, 1, interrupt. I, 44, 28.  
**inter-pōnō**, -ere, posui, positus, place between. I, 42, 15; IV, 9, 8.

**interpres**, -etis, *m., f.*, interpreter; mediator. I, 19, 13.  
**interpreter**, 1, explain. VI, 13, 10.  
**inter-rogō**, 1, ask, inquire.  
**inter-rumpō**, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, break off or through; destroy.  
**inter-scindō**, -ere, scidī, scissus, cut through; break down. II, 9, 12.  
**inter-sum**, esse, fui, futūrus, be between, intervene: interest, it concerns. I, 15, 15.  
**intervallum**, -ī, *n.*, interval. I, 22, 16.  
**inter-venio**, -īre, venī, ventus, come between, intervene.  
**inter-ventus**, -ūs *m.*, interposition. III, 15, 11.  
**in-texō**, -ere, texui, textus, weave in or together. II, 33, 7.  
**intoleranter**, *adv.*, intolerable, excessively.  
**intrā**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, within. I, 32, 14; II, 4, 7.  
**in-tritus**, -a, -um, unwearied. III, 26, 4.  
**intrō**, 1, enter. II, 17, 20.  
**intrō-ducō**, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead in. II, 5, 9.  
**intro-eō**, ire, īvi(ii), itus, enter.  
**introitus**, -ūs, *m.*, entrance. V, 9, 14.  
**intrō-mittō**, -ere, misi, missus, send or let in. II, 33, 19.  
**intrōrsus(um)**, *adv.*, within. II, 18, 6.  
**intrō-rumpō**, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, break in.  
**in-tueor**, 2, look upon; protect. I, 32, 5.  
**intus**, *adv.*, within.  
**in-ūsītātus**, -a, -um, unusual. II, 31, 2.  
**in-ūtilis**, -e, useless. II, 16, 9.  
**in-venio**, -īre, venī, ventus, come upon; discover. I, 53, 5; II, 16, 2.  
**inventor**, -ōris, *m.*, author. VI, 17, 2.  
**inveterāscō**, -ere, -rāvī, -rātūrus, grow old. II, 1, 10.  
**invicem**, *adv.*, in turn. IV, 1, 11.  
**in-victus**, -a, -um, indomitable. I, 36, 17.  
**in-videō**, -ēre, vidī, visus, envy. II, 31, 10.

**invidia**, -ae, *f.*, hatred. VII, 77, 44.  
**in-violātus**, -a, -um, uninjured, inviolate. III, 9, 10.  
**invitō**, 1, summon. I, 35, 6; IV, 6, 5.  
**invītus**, -a, -um, unwilling. I, 8, 7.  
**Iovis**, see Iupiter.  
**ipse**, -a, -um, *dem. pron.*, self, himself, herself, etc.; he, she, etc.: as *adj.*, very, one's own. I, 1, 2.  
**irācundia**, -ae, *f.*, irritability, anger.  
**irācundus**, -a, -um, irritable. I, 31, 47.  
**ir-rideō**, -ēre, risi, risus, jeer. II, 30, 6.  
**irridiculē**, *adv.*, without humor. I, 42, 20.  
**ir(in-)-rumpō**, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, break in. IV, 14, 9.  
**ir(in-)-ruptiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, attack. VII, 70, 6.  
**is**, ea, id, *dem. pron.*, this, that; he, she, it, they, etc. I, 1, 8.  
**ita**, *adv.*, thus. I, 12, 3.  
**Italia**, -ae, *f.*, Italy. I, 10, 8.  
**itaque**, *adv.*, therefore. I, 9, 10.  
**item**, *adv.*, likewise, also. I, 3, 14.  
**iter**, itineris, *n.*, journey, march. I, 3, 5.  
**iterum**, *adv.*, again. I, 31, 18.  
**Itius**, -ī, *m.*, V, 2, 9.  
**iuba**, -ae, *f.*, mane. I, 48, 19.  
**iubeō**, -ēre, iūssī, iūssus, order, enjoin. I, 5, 9.  
**iūdicium**, -ī, *n.*, trial; judgment; court. I, 4, 5.  
**iūdicō**, 1, judge. I, 12, 4.  
**iugum**, -ī, *n.*, yoke; ridge. I, 7, 15.  
**iumentum**, -ī, *n.*, beast of burden. I, 3, 3.  
**iunctūra**, -ae, *f.*, joining. IV, 17, 17.  
**iungō**, -ere, iūnxī, iunctus, join. I, 8, 12.  
**Iunius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman nomen. E. g., (1) Decimus Junius Brutus, commander of Caesar's fleet. III, 11, 12. (2) Q. Junius, a Spaniard.  
**Iūpiter**, Iovis, Jupiter or Jove. VI, 17, 5.  
**Iūra**, -ae, *m.*, I, 2, 10.  
**iūrō**, 1, swear. I, 31, 28; VI, 12, 10.  
**iūs**, iūris, *n.*, right; law. I, 4, 9.

**iūsiurandum**, **iūrisiurandī**, *n.*, oath. I, 3, 22.  
**iūssus**, **-ūs**, *m.*, order, decree.  
**iūstitia**, **-ae**, *f.*, justice. I, 19, 10.  
**iūstus**, **-a**, **-um**, lawful; just. I, 43, 13; IV, 16, 3.  
**iuventūs**, **-ūtis**, *f.*, youth. III, 16, 3.  
**iuvō**, **iuvāre**, **iūvī**, **iūtus**, aid, assist. I, 26, 19.  
**iuxtā**, *adv.*, next, near. II, 26, 1.

## K

**Kalendae**, **-ārum** (**Kal**), *f.*, the Calends, the first day of the Roman month. I, 6, 16.

## L

**L**, sign for 50.

**L.**, *abbr. for praenomen Lucius.*

**Laberius**, **-i**, *m.*, a Roman *nomen*. *E. g.*, Q. Laberius Durus, a tribune. V, 15, 13.

**Labiēnus**, **-i**, *m.* I, 10, 8.

**lābor**, **-i**, **lāpsus** *sum*, slip; go wrong. V, 3, 21.

**labor**, **-ōris**, *m.*, toil. I, 44, 44; III, 5, 13.

**labōrō**, *i.*, toil; be hard pressed. I, 31, 6; IV, 26, 11.

**labrum**, **-i**, *n.*, lip; edge. V, 14, 8.

**lāc**, **lactis**, *n.*, milk. IV, 1, 15.

**lacēssō**, **-ere**, **-ivī**, **-ītus** *harass*; attack. I, 15, 10.

**lacrima**, **-ae**, *f.*, tear. I, 20, 1.

**lacrimō**, *i.*, weep.

**lacus**, **-ūs**, *m.*, lake. I, 2, 10.

**laedō**, **-ere**, **laesi**, **laesus**, hurt, damage.

**laetatiō**, **-ōnis**, *f.*, rejoicing.

**laetitia**, **-ae**, *f.*, joy. VII, 78, 10.

**laetus**, **-a**, **-um**, joyful. III, 18, 18.

**languidē**, *adv.*, faintly.

**languidus**, **-a**, **-um**, faint, sluggish.

**languor**, **-ōris**, *m.*, faintness, lassitude.

**lapis**, **-idis**, *m.*, stone. I, 46, 3; II, 6, 6.

**laqueus**, **-i**, *m.*, noose, snare.

**largior**, *4*, give freely; bribe. I, 18, 12.

**largiter**, *adv.*, freely. I, 18, 15.

**largitiō**, **-ōnis**, *f.*, bribery. I, 9, 5.  
**lassitūdō**, **-inis**, *f.*, weariness. II, 23, 3.

**lātē**, *adv.*, widely. I, 2, 12.

**latebra**, **-ae**, *f.*, hiding place.

**lateō**, **-ēre**, **-uī**, lie concealed. II, 19, 16.

**lātitudō**, **-inis**, *f.*, width, extent. I, 2, 17.

**Latovicī**, **-ōrum**, *m.* I, 5, 9.

**latrō**, **-ōnis**, *m.*, robber. III, 17, 9.

**latrōcinium**, **-i**, *n.*, brigandage. VI, 16, 12.

**lātus**, **-a**, **-um**, broad, wide. I, 2, 8.

**latus**, **-eris**, *n.*, side; flank. I, 5, 16.

**laudō**, *1*, praise. V, 8, 12.

**laus**, **laudis**, *f.*, praise. I, 40, 14; IV, 3, 1.

**lavō**, **-ere** (**-āre**), **lāvī**, **lautus** (**lōtus**), wash; bathe. IV, 1, 24.

**laxō**, *1*, loosen. II, 25, 17.

**lēgatiō**, **-ōnis**, *f.*, embassy, legation. I, 3, 9.

**lēgātus**, **-i**, *m.*, ambassador; lieutenant. I, 7, 8.

**legiō**, **-ōnis**, *f.*, legion. I, 7, 6.

**legiōnārius**, **-a**, **-um**, of a legion. I, 42, 18; II, 27, 6.

**Lemannus**, **-i**, *m.*, (Lake) Geneva. I, 2, 11.

**Lemovicēs**, **-um**, *m.* VII, 75, 15.

**lēnis**, **-e**, gentle, mild, smooth. IV, 28, 4.

**lēnitās**, **-tātis**, *f.*, smoothness. I, 12, 3.

**lēniter**, *adv.*, gently. II, 8, 10.

**Lēpontii**, **-ōrum**, *m.* IV, 10, 5.

**lepus**, **-oris**, *m.*, hare. V, 12, 14.

**Leuci**, **-ōrum**, *m.* I, 40, 35.

**Levāci**, **-ōrum**, *m.*, a Gallic tribe between the Marne and Moselle.

**levis**, **-e**, light. II, 10, 2.

**levitās**, **-tātis**, *f.*, restlessness. II, 1, 11.

**levō**, *1*, lighten, ease, relieve.

**lēx**, **lēgis**, *f.*, law. I, 1, 4.

**Lexovii** (**-obii**), **-ōrum**, *m.* III, 9, 26.

**libenter**, *adv.*, willingly. I, 44, 17; III, 18, 15.

**liber**, **-era**, **-erum**, free. I, 44, 42; V, 7, 20.

**liberalitās**, **-tātis**, *f.*, freedom munificence. I, 18, 7.

**liberaliter**, *adv.*, graciously. II, 5, 1.  
**liberē**, *adv.*, freely. I, 18, 5.  
**liberī**, -ōrum, *m.*, children. I, 11, 7.  
**liberō**, 1, set free. IV, 19, 15.  
**libertās**, -tātis, *f.*, freedom. I, 17, 10.  
**librilis**, -e, of a pound weight. VII, 81, 12.  
**licentia**, -ae, *f.*, license; presumption; lawlessness.  
**liceor**, 2, bid. I, 18, 10.  
**licet**, -ēre, *licuit*, *impers.*, it is lawful or permitted; one may or is allowed. I, 7, 13.  
**Liger**, -eris, *m.*, the Loire. III, 9, 3.  
**lignātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, procuring wood.  
**lignātor**, -ōris, *m.*, wood-forager.  
**lilium**, -ī, *n.*, lily. VII, 73, 23.  
**linea**, -ae, *f.*, linen thread; line.  
**Lingonēs**, -um, *m.*, I, 26, 15.  
**lingua**, -ae, *f.*, tongue; language. I, 1, 3.  
**lingula**, -ae, *f.*, a little tongue. III, 12, 2.  
**linter**, -tris, *f.*, *m.*, skiff. I, 12, 4.  
**linum**, -ī, *n.*, flax; canvas. III, 13, 10.  
**Liscus**, -ī, *m.*, I, 16, 12.  
**Litaviccus**, -ī, *m.*, an Aeduan noble.  
**lis**, litis, *f.*, strife; lawsuit; damages. V, 1, 25.  
**littera**, -ae, *f.*, letter. I, 26, 18.  
**litus**, -oris, *n.*, seashore. IV, 23, 9.  
**locus**, -ī, *m.*, place. I, 2, 7.  
**longē**, *adv.*, far, by far. I, 1, 7.  
**longinquus**, -a, -um, distant; protracted. I, 47, 14; IV, 27, 14.  
**longitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, length. I, 2, 17.  
**longurius**, -ī, *m.*, long pole. III, 14, 16.  
**longus**, -a, -um, long. V, 8, 14.  
**loquor**, -ī, *locutus sum*, speak. I, 20, 21.  
**lōrica**, -ae, *f.*, corselet; parapet. VII, 72, 14.  
**Lūcānius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman nomen; *e. g.*, Q. Lucanius, a centurion.  
**Lūcius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen. I, 22, 11.  
**Lucterius**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Cadurci.  
**Lugotorix**, -igis, *m.*, V, 22, 8.

**lūna**, -ae, *f.*, moon. I, 50, 15; IV, 29, 1.  
**Lutētia**, -ae, *f.*, the capital of the Parisii now Paris.  
**lūx**, lūcis, *f.*, light. I, 22, 1.  
**lūxuria**, -ae, *f.*, extravagance, profusion. II, 15, 10.

## M

**M.**, abbrev. for praenomen **Marcus**.  
**M**, as numeral = 1000.  
**māceria**, -ae, *f.*, enclosure, wall. VII, 69, 9.  
**māchinātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, machine. II, 30, 7.  
**maestus**, -a, -um, dejected. VII, 80, 24.  
**magis**, *comp. adv.*, more. I, 13, 17.  
**magistrātus**, -ūs, *m.*, magistracy; magistrate; government. I, 4, 10.  
**māgnificus**, -a, -um, splendid. VI, 19, 12.  
**māgnitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, greatness; extent; stature. I, 39, 4; II, 12, 12.  
**māgnopere** (māgnō opere), *adv.*, greatly. I, 13, 15.  
**māgnus**, -a, -um, great; abundant; important; extensive. I, 2, 14.  
**māiestās**, -tātis, *f.*, greatness, honor.  
**māior**, -ius, greater. I, 13, 16.  
**malacia**, -ae, *f.*, a calm at sea. III, 15, 7.  
**male**, *adv.*, badly. I, 40, 39.  
**maleficium**, -ī, *n.*, mischief, injury. I, 7, 11.  
**Mallius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman nomen. *E. g.*, L. Mallius, governor of further Spain, 78 B. C. III, 20, 7.  
**mālō**, mälle, mālui, prefer. III, 8, 16.  
**mālus**, -ī, *m.*, mast. III, 14, 17.  
**mandātum**, -ī, *n.*, order. I, 35, 2; II, 5, 10.  
**mandō**, 1, entrust; order. I, 12, 11.  
**Mandūbii**, -ōrum, *m.*, VII, 68, 3.  
**Mandubracius**, -ī, *m.*, V, 20, 2.  
**māne**, indecl., *n.*, morning: *as adv.*, in the morning. IV, 13, 12.  
**maneō**, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, remain. I, 36, 12; IV, 1, 11.  
**manipulāris**, -e, of a manipule; *as subst.*, common soldier.

**manipulus**, -ī, *m.*, company; manipule. II, 25, 17.

**mānsuēfāciō**, -ere, *feci*, factus, tame. VI, 28, 9.

**mānsuētūdō**, -īnis, *f.*, tameness; compassion. II, 14, 11.

**manus**, -ūs, *f.*, hand. I, 25, 10.

**Marcomanni**, -ōrum, *m.*, I, 51, 9.

**Marcus**, -ī, *m.*, a *Roman praenomen*.

**mare**, -is, *n.*, sea. III, 7, 7.

**maritumus**, -a, -um, of the sea, maritime. II, 34, 4.

**Marius**, -ī, *m.*, I, 40, 14.

**Mārs**, -tis, *m.*, Mars. VI, 17, 5.

**mās**, *maris*, masculine; as *subst.*, a male. VI, 26, 5.

**matara**, -ae, *f.*, Celtic javelin. I, 26, 10.

**māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother. I, 18, 15.

**māterfamiliae**, a *matron*. I, 50, 12.

**māteria**, -ae, *f.*, materials. IV, 17, 21.

**māterior**, *i.*, procure wood. VII, 73, 1.

**Mātiscō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a *city of the Aedui*, now Macon. VII, 90, 13.

**mātrīmōnium**, -ī, *n.*, marriage. I, 3, 17.

**Matrona**, -ae, *m.*, the Marne. I, 1, 5.

**mātūrē**, *adv.*, early. I, 33, 20; IV, 6, 2.

**mātūrēscō**, -ere, *mātūrui*, become ripe.

**mātūrō**, *i.*, ripen; hasten. I, 7, 2.

**mātūrus**, -a, -um, ripe. I, 16, 4.

**māximus**, -a, -um, greatest. I, 3, 3.

**medeor**, -ēri, remedy, cure.

**mediocris**, -e, ordinary. III, 20, 8.

**mediocriter**, *adv.*, moderately. I, 39, 8.

**Mediōmātricēs**, -um, (-ī, -ōrum), *m.*, IV, 10, 7; VII, 75, 13.

**mediterrāneus**, -a, -um, midland, inland. V, 12, 11.

**medius**, -a, -um, middle. I, 24, 4.

**Meldi**, -ōrum, *m.*, V, 5, 3.

**membrum**, -ī, *n.*, limb. IV, 24, 10.

**memini**, -isse, *def.*, remember. III, 6, 13.

**memoria**, -ae, *f.*, recollection. I, 7, 13.

**Menapii**, -ōrum, *m.*, II, 4, 26.

**mendācium**, -ī, *n.*, falsehood, fiction.

**mēns**, -entis, *f.*, intellect; mind. I, 39, 9; III, 19, 18.

**mēnsia**, -is, *m.*, month. I, 5, 8.

**mēnsūra**, -ae, *f.*, measure. V, 13, 13.

**mentio**, -ōnis, *f.*, naming, mention.

**mercātor**, -ōris, *m.*, trader. I, 1, 8.

**mercātūra**, -ae, *f.*, trade. VI, 17, 4.

**mercēs**, -ēdis, *f.*, pay. I, 31, 13.

**Mercurius**, -ī, *m.*, Mercury. VI, 17, 1.

**mereō**, 2, deserve; win. I, 11, 6.

**meridiānus**, -a, -um, of mid-day or noon. V, 8, 15.

**meridiēs**, -ei, *m.*, mid-day; the south. I, 50, 5; V, 13, 4.

**meritum**, -ī, *n.*, desert, favor. I, 14, 4.

**Messala**, -ae, *m.*, I, 2, 2.

**mētior**, -īri, **mēnsus sum**, measure (be measured) out. I, 16, 10.

**Metiosēdum**, -ī, *n.*, a *town of the Senones*, now Melun.

**Metius**, -ī, *m.*, I, 47, 15.

**metō**, -ere, **messui**, **messus**, mow. IV, 32, 17.

**metus**, -ūs, *m.*, fear. IV, 4, 16.

**meus**, -a, -um, my, mine. IV, 25, 13.

**miles**, -itis, *m.*, soldier. I, 7, 5.

**militāris**, -e, military. I, 21, 10.

**militia**, -ae, *f.*, military service. VI, 14, 2.

**mille**, *num. adj.* (*indecl. in sing.*), a thousand. I, 2, 17.

**Minerva**, -ae, *f.*, Minerva. VI, 17, 6.

**minimē**, *superl. adv.*, least, by no means. I, 1, 8.

**minimus**, -a, -um, *superl. of parvus*.

**minor**, *comp. of parvus*.

**Minucius**, -ī, *m.*, a *Roman nomen*. *E. g.*, L. Minucius Basilus, *commander of cavalry*. VII, 90, 8.

**minuō**, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, lessen. I, 20, 7.

**minus**, *adv.*, less. I, 2, 12.

**miror**, *i.*, wonder at. I, 32, 6.

**mirus**, -a, -um, wonderful. I, 34, 10.

**miser**, -a, -um, wretched. I, 32, 9; II, 28, 10.

**misericordia**, -ae, *f.*, compassion. II, 28, 10.

**miseror**, *i.*, bewail. I, 39, 18.



**missus**, -ūs, *m.*, sending, despatching.  
**mitissimē**, *superl. adv.*, very mildly or gently.  
**mittō**, -ere, *misī*, **missus**, send; discharge. I, 7, 8.  
**mōbilis**, -e, changeable. IV, 5, 3.  
**mōbilitās**, -tātis, *f.*, inconstancy. II, 1, 11.  
**mōbiliter**, *adv.*, easily. III, 10, 8.  
**moderor**, *i*, limit, regulate. IV, 33, 11.  
**modestia**, -ae, *f.*, moderation, self-control, propriety.  
**modo**, *adv.*, only; even. I, 16, 4.  
**modus**, -ī, *m.*, measure; manner. I, 41, 1; II, 31, 3.  
**moenia**, -um, *n.*, city walls, ramparts; city. II, 6, 6.  
**mōlēs**, -is, *f.*, mass; dike. III, 10, 8.  
**molestē**, *adv.*, with annoyance. II, 1, 10.  
**mōlimentum**, -ī, *n.*, effort; difficulty. I, 34, 10.  
**molliō**, 4, soften, ease; weaken.  
**mollis**, -e, soft; inconstant. III, 19, 17.  
**mollitia**, -ae, *f.*, weakness. VII, 77, 15.  
**molō**, -ere, -uī, -itus, grind. I, 5, 8.  
**mōmentum**, -ī, *n.*, moment; importance. VII, 85, 9.  
**Mona**, -ae, *f.*, the Isle of Man. V, 13, 9.  
**moneō**, 2, warn. I, 20, 19.  
**mōns**, **mōntis**, *m.*, mountain. I, 1, 22.  
**mora**, -ae, *f.*, delay. II, 15, 7.  
**morbus**, -ī, *m.*, disease. VI, 16, 3.  
**Morini**, -ōrum, *m.*, II, 4, 26.  
**morior**, *mori*, **mortuus sum**, die. I, 4, 10.  
**Moritasgus**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Senones.  
**moror**, 1, delay, tarry. I, 26, 17.  
**mors**, -tis, *f.*, death. I, 4, 11.  
**mōs**, **mōris**, *m.*, manner, custom; *pl.*, customs, character. I, 4, 2.  
**Mosa**, -ae, *m.*, the Meuse or Maas. IV, 9, 6.  
**mōtus**, -ūs, *m.*, movement, uprising. IV, 23, 15.  
**moveō**, -ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, move. I, 15, 1.

**mulier**, -eris, *f.*, woman, wife. I, 29, 5.  
**mūliō**, -ōnis, *m.*, muleteer.  
**multitūdō**, -īnis, *f.*, multitude. I, 2, 15.  
**multō**, 1, fine, mulct.  
**multum**, *adv.*, much. III, 9, 13.  
**multus**, -a, -um, much: *pl.*, many. I, 3, 12.  
**mūlus**, -ī, *m.*, mule.  
**Munātius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman nomen. L. Munatius Plancus, Caesar's lieutenant.  
**mundus**, -ī, *m.*, universe; world. VI, 14, 18.  
**mūnimentum**, -ī, *n.*, fortification. II, 17, 19.  
**mūniō**, 4, fortify; defend. I, 24, 9.  
**mūnitiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification. I, 8, 15.  
**mūnus**, -eris, *n.*, service; tribute. I, 43, 11; VI, 18, 7.  
**mūrālis**, -e, mural. III, 14, 16.  
**mūrus**, -ī, *m.*, wall. I, 8, 5.  
**mūsculus**, -ī, *m.*, mantelet. VII, 84, 3.  
**mutilus**, -a, -um, maimed; without. VI, 23, 3.

## N.

**nam**, *conj.*, for. I, 12, 13.  
**Nammēius**, -ī, *m.*, I, 7, 9.  
**Namnetēs**, -um, *m.*, III, 9, 26.  
**namque**, *conj.*, for, indeed. I, 38, 6; III, 13, 1.  
**nanciscor**, -ī, **nactus** (**nanctus**) *sum*, find. I, 53, 7; IV, 23, 1.  
**Nantuatēs**, -um, *m.*, III, 1, 3.  
**Narbō**, -ōnis, *m.*, III, 20, 10.  
**nāscor**, -ī, **nātus sum**, be born; spring up. II, 18, 4.  
**Nasua**, -ae, *m.*, I, 37, 8.  
**nātālis**, -e, natal. VI, 18, 4.  
**nātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, race. I, 53, 9; II, 35, 3.  
**nātivus**, -a, -um, native, natural.  
**nātūra**, -ae, *f.*, nature, character. I, 2, 7.  
**nātus**, -ūs, *m.*, birth. II, 13, 7.  
**nauta**, -ae, *m.*, sailor. III, 9, 4.  
**nauticus**, -a, -um, nautical. III, 8, 4.  
**nāvalis**, -e, naval. III, 19, 14.

**nāvicula**, -ae, *f.*, skiff. I, 53, 6.  
**nāvigātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, navigation. III, 9, 14.  
**nāvigium**, -ī, *n.*, boat; navigation. III, 14, 18.  
**nāvigō**, 1, set sail. III, 8, 4.  
**nāvis**, -is, *f.*, ship. I, 8, 12.  
**nāvō**, 1, do zealously. II, 25, 20.  
**nē**, *conj.* with *subj.*, that . . . not, from; *adv.*, not. I, 4, 7.  
**nec**, see **neque**.  
**necessariō**, *adv.*, of necessity, necessarily. I, 51, 7; III, 14, 19.  
**necessarius**, -a, -um, needful; *n. pl. as subst.*, supplies. I, 11, 9.  
**nece**, *indecl. adj.*, necessary. IV, 5, 11.  
**necessitas**, -tātis, *f.*, necessity. II, 11, 17.  
**necessitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, intimacy. I, 43, 15.  
**nec-ne**, *conj.*, or not. I, 50, 14.  
**necō**, 1, slay. I, 53, 23; III, 16, 11.  
**nēcubi**, *adv.*, lest anywhere.  
**nefarius**, -a, -um, impious. VII, 77, 8.  
**nefas**, *n.*, *indecl.*, an impious deed, sin.  
**neg-legō**, -ere, **lēxī**, **lēctus**, disregard. I, 35, 19; III, 10, 5.  
**negō**, 1, say no, deny. I, 8, 9.  
**negōtior**, 1, carry on business, traffic.  
**negōtium**, -ī, *n.*, business. I, 34, 12; II, 2, 5.  
**Nemetēs**, -um, *m.*, I, 51, 9; VI, 25, 4.  
**nēmō**, *acc.*, **neminem**, *m.*, no one. I, 18, 11.  
**nē-quāquam**, *adv.*, by no means. IV, 23, 9.  
**neque(nec)**, *conj.*, and not, nor. I, 4, 11.  
**nē-quicquam(-quic(d)quam)**, *adv.*, in vain. II, 27, 12.  
**nēquis**, *qua*, **quod(quid)**, *indef. pron.*, lest any one or anything, some one, etc. I, 20, 2.  
**Nervicus**, -a, -um, of the Nervii. III, 5, 6.  
**Nervii**, -ōrum, *m.*, II, 4, 26.  
**nervus**, -ī, *m.*, nerve; strength. I, 20, 7.  
**neu**, II, 21, 15. see **nēve**.

**neuter**, -tra, -trum, neither. II, 9, 6.  
**nēve(neu)**, *conj.*, and not, nor. I, 26, 19.  
**nex**, **necis**, *f.*, death. I, 16, 14.  
**nihil**, *n.*, *indecl.*, nothing. I, 11, 13.  
**nihilō**, *adv.*, by no means; none. I, 5, 1.  
**nimis**, *adv.*, too much, too.  
**nimius**, -a, -um, beyond measure, too great, excessive.  
**nisi**, *conj.*, unless. I, 22, 9.  
**Nitiobrogēs**, -um, *m.*, an *Aquitani*an tribe. VII, 75, 14.  
**nītor**, -ī, **nīsus sum**, rely upon; strive. I, 13, 17.  
**nix**, **nivis**, *f.*, snow.  
**nōbilis**, -e, famous, noted. I, 2, 1.  
**nōbilitās**, -tātis, *f.*, celebrity, nobility; the nobility. I, 2, 3.  
**noceō**, 2, injure. III, 13, 18.  
**noctū**, *adv.*, by night. I, 8, 14.  
**nocturnus**, -a, -um, at night. I, 38, 15; V, 11, 11.  
**nōdus**, -ī, *m.*, knot; joint. VI, 27, 3.  
**nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōlui**, be unwilling. I, 16, 8.  
**nōmen**, -inis, *n.*, name. I, 13, 19.  
**nōminatim**, *adv.*, by name. I, 29, 3.  
**nōminō**, 1, name. II, 18, 3.  
**nōn**, *adv.*, not. I, 3, 19.  
**nōnāgintā**, *card. num.*, ninety. I, 29, 9.  
**nōn-dum**, *adv.*, not yet. I, 6, 12.  
**nōnnihil**, *adv.*, somewhat. III, 17, 16.  
**nōn-nūllus**, -a, -um, some. I, 6, 8.  
**nōnnumquam**, *adv.*, sometimes. I, 8, 14.  
**nōnus**, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, ninth. II, 23, 1.  
**Nōrēia**, -ae, *f.*, I, 5, 12.  
**Nōricus**, -a, -um, Norican. I, 5, 12.  
**nōscō**, -ere, **nōvi**, **nōtus**, learn. III, 9, 21.  
**noster**, -tra, -trum, our, ours. I, 1, 3.  
**nōtitia**, -ae, *f.*, fame; knowledge. VI, 21, 10.  
**nōtus**, -a, -um, known; famous; notorious. IV, 24, 10.  
**novem**, *card. num.*, nine.  
**Noviodūnum**, -ī, *n.*, II, 12, 4.

**novitas**, -tatis, *f.*, newness; strangeness. IV, 34, 1.

**novus**, -a, -um, new; young; recent. I, 9, 7.

**nox**, noctis, *f.*, night.

**noxia**, -ae, *f.*, VI, 16, 12.

**nūbō**, -ere, nūpsi, nūptus, marry. I, 18, 18.

**nūdō**, 1, make bare. II, 6, 7.

**nūdus**, -a, -um, naked; unprotected. I, 25, 11.

**nullus**, -a, -um, not any, no: as *subst.*, no one. I, 7, 12.

**num**, *interrog. implying a negative reply.*, I, 14, 8.

**nūmen**, -inis, *n.*, divinity. VI, 16, 7.

**numerus**, -ī, *m.*, number; account. I, 3, 4.

**Numidae**, -ārum, *m.*, II, 7, 2.

**nummus**, -ī, *m.*, coin. V, 12, 9.

**numquam**, (nun-), *adv.*, never. I, 44, 23; V, 16, 11.

**nunc**, *adv.*, now. I, 31, 16; II, 4, 21.

**nūntiō**, 1, announce, report. I, 7, 1.

**nūntius**, -ī, *m.*, messenger; message. I, 26, 18.

**nūper**, *adv.*, recently. I, 6, 8.

**nūtus**, -ūs, *m.*, nod. I, 31, 46; IV, 23, 15.

## O.

**ob**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of; for; *in comp.*, opposed to. I, 4, 8.

**ob-aerātus**, -a, -um, in debt: as *subst.*, debtor. I, 4, 6.

**ob-dūcō**, -ere, dūxi, ductus, extend. II, 8, 12.

**ob-eō**, ire, ī(ivi), itus, go to, meet.

**ob-iciō**, -ere, īeci, iectus, throw in the way; oppose. I, 26, 8.

**obiectus**, -a, -um, opposite. V, 13, 16.

**obitus**, -ūs, *m.*, destruction. II, 29, 15.

**obliquē**, *adv.*, obliquely. IV, 17, 24.

**obliquus**, -a, -um, slanting. VII, 73, 14.

**obliviscor**, -ī, oblitus sum, forget. I, 14, 8.

**ob-secrō**, 1, implore. I, 20, 2.

**obsequentia**, -ae, *f.*, complaisance, compliance.

**ob-servō**, 1, heed; celebrate. I, 45, 10; VI, 18, 5.

**obses** -idis, *m.*, *f.*, hostage. I, 9, 11.

**obsessiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, blocking up, blockade, siege.

**ob-sideō**, -ēre, sēdi, sessus, besiege. III, 23, 17.

**obsidiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, siege; peril. IV, 19, 14.

**ob-signō**, 1, sign. I, 39, 19.

**ob-sistō**, -ere, stitī, stitus, oppose, resist.

**obstinatē**, *adv.*, resolutely. V, 6, 12.

**ob-stringō**, -ere, -nxi, -ctus, bind. I, 9, 9.

**ob-struō**, -ere, strūxi, strūctus, build against, stop up, obstruct.

**ob-temperō**, 1, obey. IV, 21, 12.

**ob-testor**, 1, entreat. IV, 25, 11.

**ob-tineō**, -ēre, -ui, tentus, possess; maintain; have control of. I, 1, 15.

**ob-veniō**, -īre, vēnī, ventus, meet; occur. II, 23, 4.

**ob-viam**, *adv.*, in the way, to meet, in face of, towards.

**occasiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, opportunity. III, 18, 10.

**occāsus**, -ūs, *m.*, falling or going down; setting. I, 1, 23.

**oc-cidō**, -ere, cidi, cāsus, fall or go down, set; be slain. V, 13, 6.

**oc-cidō**, -ere, cidi, cīsus, cut down; slay. I, 7, 14.

**occultatiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, concealment. VI, 21, 11.

**occultē**, *adv.*, secretly. VII, 83, 11.

**occultō**, 1, conceal. I, 27, 12.

**occultus**, -a, -um, concealed. I, 32, 11; II, 18, 7.

**occupātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, occupying; business. IV, 16, 20.

**oc-cupō**, 1, seize upon; possess. I, 3, 13.

**oc-currō**, -ere, curri(cucurri), cur-sus, run to meet; encounter; occur. I, 33, 20.

**Oceanus**, -ī, *m.*, the ocean. I, 1, 17.

**Ocelum**, -ī, *n.*, I, 10, 15.

**octāvus**, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, eighth. II, 23, 10.

**octingenti**, -ae, -a, *card. num.*, eight hundred. IV, 12, 3.

**octō(VIII)**, *card. num.*, eight. I, 21, 3.  
**octōdecim(XVIII)**, *card. num.*, eighteen. I, 23, 5.  
**Octōdūrus**, -ī, *m.*, III, 1, 14.  
**octōgintā(LXXX)**, *card. num.*, eighty. I, 2, 17.  
**octōni**, -ae, -a, *distr. num.*, eight at a time, eight. VII, 73, 21.  
**oculus**, -ī, *m.*, eye. I, 12, 3.  
**ōdi**, *ōdisse*, *def.*, hate. I, 18, 19.  
**odium**, -ī, *n.*, hatred.  
**of-fendō**, -ere, *fendi*, *fensus*, strike against, wound. I, 19, 12.  
**offensiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, wounding; offence. I, 19, 19.  
**of-ferō**, *ferre*, *ob-tuli*, *ob-lātus*, present. II, 21, 2.  
**officium**, -ī, *n.*, service; duty; business. I, 40, 7; III, 11, 4.  
**Ollovicō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a chief of the *Nitiobroges*.  
**o-mittō**, -ere, *misi*, *missus*, let go; neglect. II, 17, 22.  
**omninō**, *adv.*, altogether, in all. I, 6, 1.  
**omnis**, -e, all, every, the whole. I, 1, 1.  
**onerārius**, -a, -um, freight. IV, 22, 12.  
**onerō**, 1, load; burden. V, 1, 6.  
**onus**, -eris, *n.*, load, burden. II, 30, 11.  
**opera**, -ae, *f.*, work; attention. II, 25, 20.  
**opiniō**, -ōnis, *f.*, reputation. II, 3, 2.  
**oportet**, -ēre, -uit, *impers.*, it is necessary, proper. I, 4, 3.  
**oportūnē**, *adv.*, seasonably. IV, 22, 6.  
**oportunitās**, -tātis, *f.*, advantage. III, 12, 12.  
**oportūnus**, -a, -um, fit; favorable. I, 30, 10; II, 8, 6.  
**oppidānus**, -a, -um, of a town: as *subst.*, townsman. II, 7, 3.  
**oppidum**, -ī, *n.*, town; stronghold. I, 5, 4.  
**op-pōnō**, -ere, *posui*, *positus*, place against or opposite; oppose.  
**op-primō**, -ere, *pressi*, *pressus*, overwhelm. I, 44, 35; III, 2, 7.

**oppugnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, assault. II, 6, 4.  
**op-pugnō**, 1, fight against; storm. I, 5, 13.  
**ops**, *opis*, *f.*, power; influence; wealth. I, 20, 7.  
**optātus**, -a, -um, wished, longed for, desirable.  
**optimē**, I, 45, 3; VII, 71, 7. *superl. of bene*.  
**optimus**, *superl. of bonus*.  
**opus**, -eris, *n.*, work. I, 8, 6.  
**opus**, *n.*, *indecl.*, need. I, 34, 6; II, 8, 17.  
**ōra**, -ae, *f.*, border; shore. III, 8, 2.  
**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, speech; language; argument. I, 3, 21.  
**ōrātor**, -ōris, *m.*, speaker; envoy. IV, 27, 6.  
**orbis**, -is, *m.*, circle. IV, 37, 6.  
**Orcynia**, -ae, *f.*, VI, 24, 7.  
**ōrdō**, -inis, *m.*, arrangement. I, 40, 2; II, 11, 3.  
**Orgetorix**, -igis, *m.*, I, 2, 2.  
**oriēns**, -entis, *pres. part. of orior*.  
**orior**, -iri, *ortus sum*, arise, rise. I, 1, 19.  
**ōrnamētum**, -ī, *n.*, decoration. I, 44, 14.  
**ōrnō**, 1, adorn; equip. III, 14, 6.  
**ōrō**, 1, speak, entreat. I, 20, 14.  
**ortus**, -ūs, *m.*, rising; beginning.  
**ōs**, *ōris*, *n.*, mouth; face, features, countenance.  
**Osismi**, -ōrum, *m.*, II, 34, 2.  
**os-tendō**, -ere, *tendi*, *tentus*, stretch towards; point out. I, 8, 12.  
**ostentātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, show, display; pretence.  
**ostentō**, 1, show, exhibit.  
**ōtium**, -ī, *n.*, leisure; inactivity; peace.  
**ōvum**, -ī, *n.*, egg. IV, 10, 11.

## P.

**pābulātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, foraging. I, 15, 12.  
**pābulātor**, -ōris, *m.*, forager. V, 17, 6.  
**pābulator**, 1, forage. V, 17, 4.  
**pābulum**, -ī, *n.*, food; fodder. 16, 5.

**pācō**, 1, pacify, subdue. I, 6, 8.  
**pactum**, -ī, n., arrangement; manner. VII, 83, 11.  
**Padus**, -ī, m., the Po, *the principal river of Italy*.  
**Paemāni**, -ōrum, m., *a Belgic tribe*. II, 4, 28.  
**paene**, *adv.*, nearly, almost. I, 11, 6.  
**pāgus**, -ī, m., district, canton. I, 12, 12.  
**palam**, *adv.*, openly. VI, 18, 7.  
**palma**, -ae, f., palm; palm-tree. VI, 28, 4.  
**palūs**, -ūdis, f., marsh. I, 40, 26; II, 9, 1.  
**palūster**, -tris, -tre, marshy.  
**pandō**, -ere, **pandi**, **passus**, extend. I, 51, 12; II, 18, 11.  
**pār**, *paris*, equal; alike. I, 28, 17.  
**parcō**, *adv.*, sparingly. VII, 71, 16.  
**parcō**, -ere, **peperci**, **parsus**, spare. VI, 28, 5.  
**parēns**, -entis, m., f., parent. V, 14, 10.  
**parentō**, 1, honor or avenge deceased parents or kindred.  
**pāreō**, 2, obey. I, 27, 6.  
**pariō**, -ere, **peperi**, **partus**, bring forth; procure, obtain.  
**Parisii**, -ōrum, m., *a Gallic tribe about modern Paris*. VII, 75, 12.  
**parō**, 1, prepare; procure. I, 5, 3.  
**pars**, -tis, f., part. I, 1, 1.  
**partim**, *adv.*, partly. II, 1, 8.  
**partior**, 4, divide. III, 10, 10.  
**parum**, *adv.*, too little. III, 18, 14.  
**parvulus**, -a, -um, very small. II, 30, 2.  
**parvus**, -a, -um, small. I, 18, 9.  
**passim**, *adv.*, in all directions. IV, 14, 14.  
**passus**, -ūs, m., a pace. I, 2, 17.  
**passus**, see **pandō** and **patior**.  
**pate-faciō**, make or throw open. II, 32, 12.  
**pateō**, -ēre, -uī, be open; extend. I, 2, 18.  
**pater**, -tris, m., father; *in pl.*, ancestors; senators.  
**pater-familiae**, **patris-familiae**, father or head of a family. VI, 19, 7.  
**patienter**, *adv.*, patiently. VII, 77, 15.

**patientia**, -ae, f., suffering; endurance. VI, 24, 10.  
**patior**, **pati**, **passus sum**, suffer; allow. I, 6, 13.  
**patrius**, -a, -um, paternal; ancestral. II, 15, 14.  
**patrōnus**, -ī, m., protector, defender, patron.  
**patruus**, -ī, m., a paternal uncle.  
**pauci**, -ae, -a, few. I, 15, 7.  
**paucitas**, -tātis, f., fewness. III, 2, 10.  
**paulātim**, *adv.*, little by little. I, 33, 12; II, 8, 10.  
**paulisper**, *adv.*, a little while. II, 7, 6.  
**paulō**, *adv.*, a little. II, 20, 4.  
**paululum**, *adv.*, a very little. II, 8, 7.  
**paulum**, *adv.*, a little. I, 50, 2; II, 25, 21.  
**pāx**, **pācis**, f., peace. I, 3, 6.  
**peccō**, 1, sin. I, 47, 15.  
**pectus**, -oris, n., the breast.  
**pecūnia**, -ae, f., property; money. VI, 17, 4.  
**pecus**, -oris, n., herd. III, 29, 7.  
**pedālis**, -e, of a foot in thickness or diameter. III, 13, 7.  
**pedes**, -itis, m., foot soldier. I, 42, 12; II, 24, 2.  
**pedester**, -tris, -tre, foot. II, 17, 15.  
**peditātus**, -ūs, m., infantry. IV, 34, 16.  
**Pedius**, -ī, m., *a Roman nomen*. E. g. Q. Pedius, one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 2, 4.  
**pēius**, I, 31, 31, *comp. of male*.  
**pellis**, -is, f., hide, skin, pelt. II, 33, 8.  
**pellō**, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsus**, drive, beat, repulse. I, 7, 14.  
**pendō**, -ere, **pependī**, **pēnsus**, weigh; pay. I, 36, 13; V, 22, 17.  
**penes**, *prep. with acc.*, with, in the power of.  
**penitus**, *adv.*, inwardly; deeply; thoroughly.  
**per**, *prep. with acc.*, through. I, 3, 23.  
**per-agō**, -ere, **ēgī**, **actus**, lead through; complete. V, 1, 14.  
**per-angustus**, -a, -um, very narrow.

per-cipio, -ere, cēpī, ceptus, acquire; perceive. V, 1, 21.  
 percontatio, -ōnis, *f.*, inquiry. I, 39, 3; V, 13, 12.  
 per-currō, -ere, curri, cursus, run along or over. IV, 33, 12.  
 per-cutio, -ere, cussi, cussus, strike or thrust through, slay.  
 per-discō, -ere, didici, learn thoroughly. VI, 14, 13.  
 perditus, -a, -um, ruined desperate. III, 17, 9.  
 per-ducō, -ere, duxi, ductus, lead through. I, 8, 6.  
 perendinus, -a, -um, after to-morrow.  
 per-eō, ire, ii, itus, go through; perish. I, 53, 11; IV, 15, 7.  
 per-equitō, I, ride about. IV, 33, 2.  
 per-exiguus, -a, -um, very little. V, 15, 10.  
 per-facilis, -e, very easy. I, 2, 5.  
 per-ferō, -ere, tuli, latus, report; endure. I, 17, 8.  
 per-ficio, -ere, feci, factus, accomplish. I, 3, 18.  
 perfidia, -ae, *f.*, treachery. IV, 13, 12.  
 per-fringō, -ere, frēgi, fractus, break through. I, 25, 5.  
 per-fuga, -ae, *m.*, refugee, deserter. I, 28, 5.  
 per-fugio, -ere, fugi, fugitus, flee for refuge; desert. I, 27, 7.  
 perfugium, -i, *n.*, refuge. IV, 38, 5.  
 pergō, -ere, perrexī, perrectus, go on. III, 18, 20.  
 periclitōr, I, try; risk. II, 8, 4.  
 periculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous. I, 33, 14.  
 periculum, -i, *n.*, danger. I, 5, 7.  
 peritus, -a, -um, tried, skilled. I, 21, 10.  
 per-luō, -ere, luī, lūtus, bathe. VI, 21, 12.  
 per-māgnus, -a, -um, very great, vast.  
 per-maneō, -ēre, mānsi, māsurus, stay through; endure. I, 32, 7; III, 8, 15.  
 per-misceō, -ēre, miscui, mixtus, mix thoroughly, mingle.  
 per-mittō, -ere, misi, missus, let

go; allow; intrust. I, 30, 15; II, 3, 5.  
 per-moveō, -ēre, mōvi, mōtus, move thoroughly, rouse. I, 3, 1.  
 per-mulceō, -ēre, mulsi, mulsus, soothe. IV, 6, 11.  
 perniciēs, -ei, *f.*, destruction. I, 20, 8.  
 per-pauci, -ae, -a, very few. I, 6, 5.  
 perpendiculum, -i, *n.*, plummet. IV, 17, 12.  
 per-petior, -i, pessus sum, suffer, bear patiently.  
 perpetuō, *adv.*, continuously. I, 31, 26; VII, 41, 9.  
 perpetuus, -a, -um, continuous; permanent; entire. I, 35, 13; III, 2, 16.  
 per-quirō, -ere, quisivi, quisitus, ask after, search for.  
 per-rumpō, -ere, rūpi, ruptus, break through. I, 8, 15.  
 per-scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, write out, register.  
 per-sequor, -i, secutus sum, follow on; pursue. I, 13, 11.  
 per-severō, I, persist. I, 13, 11.  
 per-solvō, -ere, solvi, solutus, pay (in full). I, 12, 18.  
 per-spiciō, -ere, spexi, spectus, discern; examine. I, 40, 9; II, 11, 7.  
 per-stō, -āre, stitī, stāturus, stand fast or firm, persist.  
 per-suadeō, -ēre, suāsi, suāsus, convince, persuade: *p. p. as adj.*, convinced, persuaded. I, 2, 4.  
 per-terreō, I, terrify greatly. I, 18, 30.  
 pertinācia, -ae, *f.*, obstinacy. I, 42, 9.  
 per-tineō, -ēre, -uī, pertain; tend; extend. I, 1, 9.  
 perturbatio, -ōnis, *f.*, confusion. IV, 29, 11.  
 per-turbō, I, disturb greatly. I, 39, 9; II, 11, 18.  
 per-vagor, I, range through, overrun.  
 per-veniō, -īre, vēni, ventus, come or attain to, reach. I, 7, 4.  
 pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot. I, 8, 5.  
 petō, -ere, -ivi, -itus, seek, attack. I, 19, 19.

**Petrocorii**, -ōrum, *m.*, a *Gallie tribe north of Dordogne*. VII, 75, 13.  
**Petrōnius**, -ī, *m.*, a *nomen*. *E. g.*, Marcus Petronius, a centurion of the 8th legion.  
**Petrosidius**, -ī, *m.*, a *nomen*. *E. g.*, Lucius Petrosidius, a standard bearer.  
**phalanx**, -ngis, *f.*, phalanx. I, 24, 12.  
**Pictonēs**, -um, a *Gallie tribe, south of the Loire*. III, 11, 12.  
**pietās**, -tātis, *f.*, devotion, loyalty.  
**pilum**, -ī, *n.*, heavy javelin, pike. I, 25, 4.  
**pilus**, -ī, *m.*, manipule. III, 5, 6.  
**pinna**, -ae, *f.*, pinion; battlement. VII, 72, 14.  
**Pirustae**, -arum, *m.*, V, 1, 15.  
**piscis**, -is, *m.*, fish. IV, 10, 10.  
**Pisō**, -ōnis, *m.*, I, 2, 2.  
**pix**, picis, *f.*, pitch.  
**placeō**, 2, please; *impers.*, seem good. I, 34, 1; III, 3, 14.  
**placide**, *adv.*, gently, calmly.  
**placō**, 1, appease. VI, 16, 7.  
**Plancus**, -ī, *m.*, *cognomen* of L. Minutius, Caesar's lieutenant.  
**plānē**, *adv.*, clearly. III, 26, 9.  
**plāniciēs**, -ēi, *f.*, plain. I, 43, 1; II, 8, 7.  
**plānus**, -a, -um, even, flat. III, 13, 2.  
**plēbs**, (plēbēs), plēbis, *f.*, populace, common people. I, 3, 16.  
**plēnē**, *adv.*, fully. III, 3, 2.  
**plēnus**, -a, -um, full, III, 2, 8.  
**plērīque**, -aeque, -aque, *adj. pl.*, very many, the most of. II, 4, 3.  
**plērūmq̄ue**, *adv.*, generally. I, 40, 22; II, 30, 9.  
**Pleumoxii**, -ōrum, *m.*, a *Belgic tribe, dependents of the Nervii*.  
**plumbum**, -ī, *n.*, lead. V, 12, 10.  
**plūrimum**, *adv.*, most, especially. I, 3, 20.  
**plūrimus** and **plūs**, see **multus**, I, 3, 12.  
**pluteus**, -ī, *m.*, shed; breastwork. VII, 72, 15.  
**pōcūm**, -ī, *n.*, cup. VI, 28, 14.  
**pōena**, -ae, *f.*, punishment. I, 4, 3.  
**poeniteō**, -ēre, 2, repent. *Always*

*impers.*, it repents, (one) is sorry. IV, 5, 10.  
**pollex**, -icis, *m.*, the thumb. III, 13, 8.  
**polliceor**, 2, promise. I, 14, 17.  
**pollicitatiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, promise. III, 18, 4.  
**Pompēius**, -ī, *m.*, IV, 1, 2.  
**pondus**, -eris, *n.*, weight. II, 29, 9.  
**pōnō**, -ere, **posui**, **positus**, place. I, 16, 4.  
**pōns**, **pōntis**, *m.*, bridge. I, 7, 6.  
**populatiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, ravaging. I, 15, 12.  
**populor**, 1, devastate. I, 11, 3.  
**populus**, -ī, *m.*, the people, the masses; a people or nation. I, 3, 12.  
**por-rigō**, -ere, **rōxi**, **rēctus**, extend. II, 19, 12.  
**porrō**, *adv.*, farther on; furthermore, then.  
**porta**, -ae, *f.*, gate. II, 24, 6.  
**portō**, 1, carry. I, 5, 6.  
**portōrium**, -ī, *n.*, toll, tariff. I, 18, 9.  
**portus**, -ūs, *m.*, harbor. III, 8, 6.  
**poscō**, -ere, **poposci**, demand. I, 27, 7.  
**possessiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, occupation; property. I, 11, 12.  
**pos-sideō**, -ēre, **sēdi**, **sessus**, hold, possess. I, 34, 8; II, 4, 18.  
**possidō**, -ere, **sēdi**, **sessus**, take possession of, seize. IV, 7, 11.  
**possum**, **posse**, **potui**, be able; can. I, 2, 13.  
**post**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, after; behind, afterwards. I, 5, 1.  
**postea**, *adv.*, afterwards. I, 21, 11.  
**posteaquam**, *adv.*, after. I, 31, 14; IV, 19, 6.  
**posterus**, -a, -um, following. I, 15, 1.  
**post-pōnō**, -ere, **posui**, **positus**, postpone; neglect. V, 7, 14.  
**postquam**, *conj.*, after. I, 24, 1.  
**postrēmō**, *adv.*, finally, at last, VII, 87, 2.  
**postrīdiē**, *adv.*, the day after. I, 23, 1.  
**postulātum**, -ī, *n.*, demand. IV, 11, 15.

**postulō**, 1, demand. I, 31, 30; II, 4, 16.  
**potēns**, -entis, powerful. I, 3, 23.  
**potētātus**, -ūs, m., chief power. I, 31, 11.  
**potentia**, -ae, f., power. I, 18, 15.  
**potestās**, -tātis, f., power. I, 16, 15.  
**potior**, 4, get control of, possess. I, 2, 6.  
**potius**, *comp. adv.*, rather. I, 45, 4; II, 10, 15.  
**prae**, *adv. and prep. with abl.*, before. II, 30, 10.  
**prae-acūtus**, -a, -um, pointed. II, 29, 9.  
**praebēō**, 2, proffer; furnish. II, 17, 20.  
**prae-caveō**, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, take precautions. I, 38, 5.  
**prae-cēdō**, -ere, cessi, cessus, go before, surpass. I, 1, 12.  
**praeceps**, -cipitis, steep; hasty. II, 24, 8.  
**praeceptum**, -ī, n., direction, injunction, command.  
**prae-cipiō**, -ere, cēpi, ceptus, anticipate; order. I, 22, 9.  
**praecipitō**, 1, throw headlong. IV, 15, 6.  
**praecipuē**, *adv.*, especially. I, 40, 49.  
**praecipuus**, -a, -um, especial.  
**prae-clūdō**, -ere, clūsi, clūsus, shut or cut off. V, 9, 14.  
**praecō**, -ōnis, m., herald.  
**Praeconinus**, -ī, m., III, 20, 6.  
**prae-currō**, -ere, curri, cursus, run before, precede.  
**praeda**, -ae, f., booty. IV, 34, 12.  
**prae-dicō**, 1, proclaim; declare. I, 39, 5; IV, 34, 12.  
**praedor**, 1, plunder. II, 17, 16.  
**prae-dūcō**, -ere, dūxi, ductus, lead or construct before. VII, 69, 10.  
**praefectus**, -ī, m., commander; governor. I, 39, 10; III, 7, 9.  
**prae-ferō**, ferre, tulī, lātus, place before, prefer. II, 27, 7.  
**prae-ficiō**, -ere, fēci, fectus, place over. I, 10, 8.  
**prae-figō**, -ere, fixi, fixus, fix before. V, 18, 6.  
**prae-metuō**, -ere, fear beforehand, be apprehensive.

**prae-mittō**, -ere, misi, missus, send before. I, 15, 4.  
**praemium**, -ī, n., reward. I, 43, 14; III, 18, 4.  
**prae-occipō**, 1; seize upon beforehand, preoccupy.  
**prae-optō**, 1, prefer. I, 25, 10.  
**prae-parō**, 1, provide. III, 14, 15.  
**prae-pōnō**, -ere, posui, positus, place over. I, 54, 7.  
**prae-rumpō**, -ere, rūpi, ruptus, break off. III, 14, 18.  
**prae-saepio**(sēp-), -ire, -psi, -tus, hedge or block up. VII, 77, 81.  
**prae-scribō**, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, direct. I, 36, 5; II, 20, 10.  
**praescriptum**, -ī, n., command. I, 36, 4.  
**praesēns**, -entis, *pres. part. of praesum*.  
**praesentia**, -ae, f., presence; the present time. I, 15, 12.  
**prae-sentiō**, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsus, feel beforehand, presage.  
**praesertim**, *adv.* especially. I, 16, 17.  
**praesidium**, -ī, n., guard; stronghold. I, 8, 6.  
**praestō**, *adv.*, at hand, ready.  
**prae-stō**, -stāre, stiti, statūrus (stitus), stand before; furnish; excel. I, 2, 6.  
**prae-sum**, esse, fui, futūrus, be over. I, 16, 18.  
**praeter**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, except, besides. I, 11, 13.  
**praetereā**, *adv.* besides, I, 34, 7; III, 17, 9.  
**praeter-eō**, ire, iī, itus, go past; neglect; *p. p. as subst.*, the past. I, 20, 20.  
**praeter-mittō**, -ere, misi, missus, send or let go by; let pass, overlook. IV, 13, 11.  
**praeter-quam**, *adv.*, besides, except. I, 5, 6.  
**praetor**, -ōris, m., president; general; judge. I, 21, 6.  
**praetōrius**, -a, -um, praetorian. I, 40, 48.  
**prae-ūrō**, -ere, ussi, ūstus, burn front or at the end. VII, 73.  
**prae-vertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus, *prae* anticipate; prefer.



**prāvus**, -a, -um, perverse, wrong.  
**premō**, -ere, pressi, pressus, press.  
 I, 52, 14; II, 24, 15.  
**prendō**, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus, seize,  
 grasp. I, 20, 14.  
**pretium**, -i, n., price. I, 18, 9.  
**prex**, precis, f., prayer. I, 16, 18.  
**pridiē**, *adv.*, on the day before. I,  
 23, 9.  
**primipilus**, -i, first centurion. II,  
 25, 8.  
**primō**, *adv.*, at first. I, 31, 13; II,  
 8, 1.  
**primum**, *adv.*, first. I, 25, 1.  
**primus**, -a, -um, first. I, 10, 19.  
**princeps**, -ipis, chief, principal; *as*  
*subst.* a chief or leader. I, 7, 9.  
**principātus**, -ūs, m., leadership.  
 I, 3, 15.  
**prior**, prius, *comp. adj.*, former.  
 II, 11, 16.  
**pristinus**, -a, -um, former. I, 13,  
 12.  
**prius**, *adv.*, before, sooner. I, 19, 12.  
**priusquam**, *adv.* sooner than, be-  
 fore. I, 19, 12.  
**privātim**, *adv.*, individually. I,  
 17, 4.  
**privātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* private, per-  
 sonal. I, 5, 5.  
**prō**, *prep. with abl.*, before; for;  
 on account of. I, 2, 15.  
**probō**, 1, approve; show. I, 3, 18.  
**prō-cedō**, -ere, -cessi, go forward.  
 I, 38, 1; II, 20, 4.  
**Procillus**, -i, m., a *cognomen*, see  
 Valerius.  
**prō-clinō**, 1, bend forward, incline,  
 totter.  
**prō-cōsul**, -is, m., proconsul. III,  
 20, 7.  
**procul**, *adv.*, from afar. II, 30, 5.  
**prō-cumbō**, -ere, cubui, cubitus,  
 fall forwards, or down. II, 27, 2.  
**prō-cūrō**, 1, care for; expiate. VI,  
 13, 9.  
**prō-currō**, -ere, curri, cursus, run  
 forward; charge. I, 52, 6.  
**prōd-eō**, ire, ii, itus, advance. I,  
 48, 17.  
**prōditiō**, -ōnis, f., betrayal, trea-  
 son.  
**prōditor**, -ōris, m., traitor. VI,  
 23, 17.

**prō-dō**, dere, didi, ditus, put forth;  
 relate; hand down or over, sur-  
 render. I, 13, 20.  
**prō-dūcō**, -ere, dūxi, ductus, lead  
 forth; draw up; prolong. I, 48,  
 7; III, 17, 18.  
**proelior**, 1, engage in battle. II,  
 23, 11.  
**proelium**, -i, n., battle. I, 1, 13.  
**profectiō**, -ōnis, f., start, depart-  
 ure. I, 3, 8.  
**prō-ferrō**, ferre, tuli, lātus, bring  
 forth, produce; VII, 82, 9.  
**prō-ficiō**, -ere, feci, fectus, gain  
 an advantage; accomplish. III,  
 26, 12.  
**proficiscor**, -i, profectus sum, set  
 out. I, 3, 2.  
**prō-fiteōr**, -ēri, fessus sum, avow.  
 VI, 23, 14.  
**prō-figō**, 1, strike down; rout. II,  
 23, 10.  
**prō-fluō**, -ere, fluxi, fluxus, flow  
 forth. IV, 10, 1.  
**pro-fugiō**, -ere, fugi, fugitus, flee  
 forth; escape. I, 31, 29; II, 14, 9.  
**prō-gnātus**, -a, -um, descended.  
 II, 29, 11.  
**prō-gredior**, -i, gressus, sum, go  
 forward. I, 50, 3; II, 10, 10.  
**pro-hibeō**, 2, keep from; debar;  
 prevent. I, 1, 14.  
**prō-iciō**, -ere, ieci, iectus, throw  
 forward; abandon. I, 27, 8.  
**prō-inde**, *adv.*, hence, accordingly,  
 therefore.  
**prō-mineō**, 2, project, extend.  
**prōmiscuē**, *adv.*, in common. VI,  
 21, 12.  
**prō-mittō**, -ere, misi, missus, send  
 forward, let go. V, 14, 7.  
**prō-mōveō**, -ēre, mōvi, mōtus,  
 move forward; extend; put off.  
 I, 48, 1; II, 31, 5.  
**prō-munturium**, -i, n., headland.  
 III, 12, 2.  
**prōmptus**, -a, -um, ready. III,  
 19, 16.  
**prōnē**, *adv.*, sloping downwards.  
 IV, 17, 12.  
**prō-nūntiō**, 1, declare. IV, 5, 8.  
**prope**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*,  
 near, nigh, hard by, at hand;  
 nearly, almost. I, 22, 10.

**prōpellō, -ere, puli, pulsus**, drive forward; rout. I, 15, 9.  
**properō**, I, hasten. II, 11, 4.  
**propinquitās, -tātis, f.**, vicinity, relationship. II, 4, 11.  
**propinquus, -a, -um**, neighboring: *as subst.*, relative. I, 16, 16.  
**propius, comp. adv.**, nearer. I, 42, 3; IV, 9, 3.  
**prō-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus**, put forward; declare. I, 17, 2.  
**proprius, -a, -um**, one's own. VI, 22, 3.  
**propter, adv.**, near; *prep. with acc.*, near; on account of. I, 9, 2.  
**propter-eā, conj.**, on this account. I, 1, 7.  
**prōpugnātor, -ōris, m.**, defender.  
**prō-pugnō**, I, make sallies; defend. II, 7, 5.  
**prō-pulsō**, I, drive forth or back. I, 49, 11; VI, 15, 4.  
**prōra, -ae, f.**, prow. III, 13, 4.  
**prō-ruō, -ere, rui, rutus**, overthrow. III, 26, 8.  
**prō-sequor, -i, secutus sum**, follow. II, 5, 1.  
**prōspectus, -ūs, m.**, lookout. II, 22, 5.  
**prō-spiciō, -ere, spēxi, spectus**, look forwards; provide for. I, 23, 5.  
**prō-sternō, -ere, strāvi, strātus**, prostrate. VII, 77, 27.  
**prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui**, be for or of use, benefit.  
**prō-tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus**, cover.  
**prō-terreo**, 2, frighten off. VII, 81, 13.  
**prōtinus, adv.**, continuously; immediately. II, 9, 7.  
**prō-turbō**, I, drive in confusion. II, 19, 20.  
**prō-vehō, -ere, vēxi, vēctus**, set sail. V, 8, 7.  
**prō-veniō, -ire, vēni, ventus**, come forth, arise, be produced.  
**prōventus, -ūs, m.**, result. VII, 80, 6.  
**prō-vidēō, -ēre, vidī, visus**, foresee. II, 22, 7.  
**prōvincia, -ae, f.**, province. I, 1, 7.  
**prōvinciālis, -e**, of a province.

**prō-volō**, I, fly or rush forth. II, 19, 19.  
**proximē, superl. adv.**, nearest, next. I, 24, 6.  
**proximus, -a, -um, superl. adj.**, next; last. I, 1, 10.  
**prudentia, -ae, f.**, foresight. II, 4, 22.  
**Ptiani, -ōrum, m.**, III, 27, 8.  
**pūbēs, -eris**, grown up, adult; *pl as subst.*, adults.  
**pūblicē, adv.**, at state cost, publicly. I, 16, 2.  
**pūblicō**, I, adjudge to public use; confiscate.  
**pūblicus, -a, -um**, common, public. I, 12, 19.  
**Pūblius, -ī, m.**, a *praenomen*. I, 21, 10.  
**pudēō**, 2, *gen. impers.*, be ashamed, feel shame.  
**pudor, -ōris, m.**, sense of shame or honor. I, 39, 14.  
**puer, -erī, m.**, boy; child. I, 29, 5.  
**puerilis, -e**, childish. VI, 18, 8.  
**pūgna, -ae, f.**, fight. I, 25, 6.  
**pūgnō**, I, fight. I, 25, 9.  
**pulcher, -chra, -chrum**, beautiful; noble. VII, 77, 40.  
**Pulio, -ōnis, m.**, Publius Pulio, a *centurion of Cicero's legion*.  
**pulsus, -ūs, m.**, stroke. III, 13, 15.  
**pulvis, -eris, m.**, dust. IV, 32, 6.  
**puppis, -is, f.**, stern. III, 13, 4.  
**pūrgō**, I, clear, exonerate. I, 28, 3.  
**putō**, I, adjust; think. I, 7, 15.  
**Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um**, Pyrenean, Pyrenees. I, 1, 21.

## Q

**quā, adv.**, where. I, 6, 4.  
**quadrāgēni, -ae, -a, distr. num.**, forty each. IV, 17, 14.  
**quadrāgintā (XL), card. num.**, forty. I, 2, 17.  
**quadringenti, -ae, -a, card. num.**, four hundred. I, 5, 4.  
**quaerō, -ere, -sivi, -situs**, inquire, investigate. I, 18, 4.  
**quaestiō, -ōnis, f.**, inquiry. VI, 19, 10.  
**quaestor, -ōris, m.**, quaestor I 52, 2; IV, 13, 10.

**quaestus**, -ūs, *m.*, gain. VI, 17, 3.  
**qualis**, -e, *interrog.*, of what sort, what. I, 21, 3.  
**quam**, *adv.*, *interrog.*, how; with *comp.*, as, than; with *superl.*, as possible; with *expressions of time*, after. I, 3, 3.  
**quam-ob-rem**, *adv. interrog.*, (I, 50, 10) and *rel.*, wherefore, why. I, 34, 1.  
**quamvis**, *adv.*, however. IV, 2, 12.  
**quandō**, *indef. adv.*, ever, III, 12, 7.  
**quantō opere** (*quantopere*), *adv.*, how greatly, how much. II, 5, 5.  
**quantus**, -a, -um, how great (much); as much (great) as. I, 17, 13.  
**quantusvis**, -avis, -umvis, how ever great.  
**quārē**, *adv.*, wherefore. I, 13, 18.  
**quartus**, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, fourth. I, 12, 7.  
**qua-si**, *adv.*, as if, just as if.  
**quattuor**, *card. num.*, four. I, 12, 13.  
**quatuor-decim**, *card. num.*, fourteen. I, 36, 18; VII, 74, 2.  
**-que**, *enclitic conj.*, and. I, 1, 8.  
**quem-ad-modum**, *adv.*, as, just as, how. I, 36, 2; III, 16, 7.  
**queror**, -i, *questus*, *sum*, complain. I, 16, 19.  
**qui**, *quae*, *quod*, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what, that. I, 1, 1.  
**quicumque**, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, *indef. rel.*, whoever, whatsoever; all who. I, 31, 51; IV, 7, 7.  
**quid**, *adv. interrog.*, why? I, 49, 19.  
**quidam**, *quaedam*, *quoddam* (*quiddam*), *indef. pron.*, a certain, some; some one (body or thing). I, 30, 13; II, 17, 4.  
**quidem**, *adv.*, indeed, even. I, 16, 5.  
**quies**, -ētis, *r.*, repose. VI, 27, 4.  
**quiētus**, -a, -um, in repose, undisturbed, peaceful.  
**quin**, *conj.*, that not, but that, that. I, 3, 20.  
**quinam**, see *quisnam*.  
**quincunx**, -uncis, *m.*, five-twelfths. VII, 73, 14.  
**quindecim**, *card. num.*, fifteen. I, 15, 13.  
**quingenti**, -ae, -a, *card. num.*, five hundred. I, 15, 8.

**quini**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*, five each. I, 15, 15.  
**quinquaginta**, *card. num.*, fifty. I, 41, 12; II, 4, 24.  
**quinque**, *card. num.*, five. I, 10, 12.  
**quintus**, -a, -um (*v*), *ord. num.*, fifth. I, 6, 16.  
**Quintus**, -i, *m.*, a *praenomen*. I, 45, 6; II, 2, 3.  
**quis** (*qui*), *quae*, *quid* (*quod*), (1) *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? (2) *indef. pron.*, any one, anything; some. I, 7, 20.  
**quisnam**, (*quinam*), *quaenam*, *quodnam* (*quidnam*), *interrog. pron.*, who then? what pray? II, 30, 7.  
**quis-piam**, *quae-piam*, *quid-* (*quod-*) *piam*, any. VI, 17, 14.  
**quisquam**, *quaequam*, *quidquam* (*quicquam*), any; any person or thing. I, 19, 12.  
**quisque**, *quaeque*, *quid* (*quic-*) *que*, or *quodque*, *general indef. pron.*, each one, each; every one, every, all. I, 5, 8.  
**quisquis**, *quaequae*, *quidquid* (*quicquid*), *indef. rel.*, whoever; any. I, 19, 12; II, 17, 15.  
**quivis**, *quaevis*, *quod* (*quid-*) *vis*, *indef. pron.*, any one; any. II, 31, 12.  
**quō**, (1) *final conj.*, in order that, that. I, 8, 7. (2) *rel. adv.*, whither, as far as. II, 16, 10. (3) *interrog. adv.*, whither? VI, 27, 9. (4) *indef. adv.*, in any direction, with *si*. I, 43, 17; II, 8, 17.  
**quoad**, *adv.*, as long as; until. IV, 11, 18.  
**quod**, *conj.*, in that, because. I, 1, 7.  
**quō minus**, *conj.*, so that not, that not, from. I, 31, 25; IV, 22, 17.  
**quoniam**, *conj.*, since, whereas. I, 35, 8; V, 3, 16.  
**quoque**, *adv.*, also. I, 1, 12.  
**quōque-versum**, *adv.*, in every direction. III, 23, 5.  
**quot**, *adj.*, *indecl.*, how many.  
**quotannis**, *adv.*, yearly. I, 36, 13; IV, 1, 9.  
**quotiēns**, *adv.*, how often? as often as. I, 43, 17.

## R.

**rādx**, -īcis, *r.*, root, base, foot. I, 38, 12; VI, 27, 9.  
**rādō**, -ere, *rāsī*, *rāsus*, scrape; shave. V, 14, 8.  
**rāmus**, -ī, *m.*, branch, twig. II, 17, 18.  
**rapiditās**, -tātis, *r.*, swiftness. IV, 17, 5.  
**rapina**, -ae, *r.*, plunder. I, 15, 12.  
**rārus**, -a, -um, few. III, 12, 15.  
**ratio**, -ōnis, *r.*, reckoning; plan; reason. I, 28, 10.  
**ratis**, -is, *r.*, raft. I, 8, 12.  
**Raurici**, -ōrum, *m.*, I, 5, 9.  
**rebelliō**, -ōnis, *r.*, renewing war. III, 10, 4.  
**Rebilus**, -ī, *m.*, VII, 83, 7.  
**re-cēdō**, -ere, *cessī*, *cessus*, go back, retire.  
**recēns**, -entis, late recent. I, 14, 8.  
**re-cēnsēō**, -ēre, *cēnsuī*, *cēnsus*, review. VII, 76, 10.  
**receptāculum**, -ī, *n.*, retreat, refuge.  
**receptus**, -ūs, *m.*, refuge. IV, 33, 8.  
**recessus**, -ūs, *m.*, going back, retreat.  
**re-cidō**, -ere, *cidī*, fall or spring back; return; relapse.  
**reciperō**, 1, recover, regain. III, 8, 9.  
**re-cipiō**, -ere, *cēpī*, *ceptus*, take back; receive; *sē*, retreat. I, 5, 13.  
**re-citō**, 1, read out, rehearse.  
**re-clinō**, 1, bend back. VI, 27, 7.  
**rēctē**, *adv.*, rightly. VII, 80, 16.  
**rēctus**, -a, -um, straight. VI, 25, 5.  
**recuperō**, 1, regain. VII, 76, 7.  
**re-cūsō**, 1, refuse. I, 31, 25; III, 22, 9.  
**rēda**, -ae, *r.*, wagon. I, 51, 10.  
**red-dō**, *dere*, *didi*, *ditus*, give back; render. I, 35, 10; II, 5, 16.  
**red-eō**, *ire*, *ii*, *itus*, go back; descend. I, 29, 10.  
**red-igō**, -ere, *ēgī*, *actus*, bring back; collect; render. I, 45, 7; II, 14, 5.  
**red-imō**, -ere, *ēmī*, *emptus*, buy up. I, 18, 10.  
**red-integrō**, 1, renew. I, 25, 18.  
**reditiō**, -ōnis, *r.*, return. I, 5, 7.

**reditus**, -ūs, *m.*, going back, return. IV, 30, 9.  
**Redonēs**, -um, *m.*, II, 34, 3.  
**re-dūcō**, -ere, *dūxi*, *ductus*, lead or draw back. I, 28, 2.  
**re-ferō**, *ferre*, *tuli*, *lātus*, bring back, restore. I, 25, 12.  
**re-ficiō**, -ere, *fēci*, *fectus*, remake, recruit. III, 5, 13.  
**re-fringō**, -ere, *frēgī*, *fractus*, break open, destroy. II, 33, 18.  
**re-fugiō**, -ere, *fūgi*, *fugitus*, flee for safety, escape.  
**Rēginus**, -ī, *m.*, see *Antistius*, VII, 83, 7.  
**regiō**, -ōnis, *r.*, direction, quarter; country. I, 44, 36; II, 4, 19.  
**rēgius**, -a, -um, of a king, royal.  
**rēgnō**, 1, reign, rule.  
**rēgnum**, -ī, *n.*, sovereignty, kingdom. I, 2, 3.  
**regō**, -ere, *rēxi*, *rēctus*, guide, direct, control. III, 13, 13.  
**re-gredior**, -ī, *gressus sum*, go or turn back, retreat.  
**rē-iciō**, -ere, *iēci*, *iectus*, repel, reject. I, 24, 11.  
**re-languēscō**, -ere, *languī*, grow faint. II, 15, 11.  
**re-lēgō**, 1, send away, despatch; banish.  
**religiō**, -ōnis, *r.*, religion. V, 6, 12.  
**re-liquō**, -ere, *liquī*, *lictus*, leave. I, 9, 1.  
**reliquus**, -a, -um, remaining, the rest of; *with participial force*, left.  
**reliquum**, -ī, *m.*, remainder, residue. I, 1, 12.  
**re-maneō**, -ere, *mānsī*, *mānsurus*, remain. I, 39, 5; IV, 1, 12.  
**rēmex**, -igis, *m.*, rower, III, 9, 3.  
**rēmigō**, 1, row. V, 8, 13.  
**re-migrō**, 1, move back. IV, 4, 16.  
**re-miniscor**, -ī, call to mind. I, 13, 11.  
**re-missus**, -a, -um, relaxed; mild. V, 12, 16.  
**re-mittō**, -ere, *mīsī*, *mīssus*, send back; yield; relax. I, 43, 26; II, 15, 12.  
**re-mollēscō**, -ere, become enervated. IV, 2, 14.  
**re-mōtus**, -a, -um, remote, distar. I, 31, 51.

re-môveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, remove. I, 19, 14.  
 re-mūneror, 1, reward. I, 44, 43.  
 rēmus, -ī, m., oar. III, 13, 15.  
 Rēmus, -a, -um, belonging to, or one of the Remi, as *subst. pl.*, the Remi, a *Belgic people*.  
 rēnō, -ōnis, m., deer-skin. VI, 21, 13.  
 re-novō, 1, renew. III, 2, 7.  
 re-nūntiō, 1, report. I, 10, 1.  
 re-pellō, -ere, -puli, pulsus, drive back. I, 8, 16.  
 repente, *adv.*, unexpectedly. I, 52, 6; V, 17, 5.  
 repentinus, -a, -um, sudden, unexpected. I, 13, 4.  
 repentiniō, *adv.*, unexpectedly, without warning. II, 33, 10.  
 reperiō, -ire, -peri, -pertus, find; learn. I, 18, 6.  
 re-petō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, seek again; claim, exact. I, 30, 5.  
 re-pleō, -ēre, plēvī, plētus, replenish, supply, fill up.  
 re-portō, 1, carry back. IV, 29, 12.  
 re-poscō, -ere, demand back, claim, exact.  
 re-praesentō, 1, exhibit; do at once. I, 40, 43.  
 re-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus, capture. I, 20, 18.  
 re-primō, -ere, pressī, pressus, restrain. III, 14, 3.  
 repudiō, 1, reject. I, 40, 10.  
 re-pūgnō, 1, resist. I, 19, 8.  
 re-quirō, -ere, -sivī, -situs, require, demand; miss, look in vain for.  
 rēs, rei, f., thing, matter, circumstance. I, 2, 12.  
 re-scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus, cut down, destroy. I, 7, 7.  
 re-sciscō, -ere, scivī, scītus, learn. I, 28, 1.  
 re-scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus, write again; re-enlist. I, 42, 23.  
 re-servō, 1, keep back. I, 53, 22; III, 3, 14.  
 re-sideō, -ēre, sēdī, remain. VII, 77, 14.  
 re-sidō, -ere, sēdī, grow calm.  
 re-sistō, -ere, stitī, stītus, stand back or still, halt; withstand, resist. I, 25, 20.

re-spiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus, look back or about; regard. II, 24, 7.  
 re-spondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsus, reply. I, 7, 19.  
 respōsum, -ī, n., reply. I, 14, 23.  
 rēs-pūblica, rei-pūblicae, f., public affairs; state. I, 33, 12; II, 5, 5.  
 re-spuō, -ere, spui, spurn. I, 42, 5.  
 re-stinguō, -ere, -nxi, -nctus, extinguish, quench.  
 re-stituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, restore. I, 18, 22.  
 re-tineō, -ēre, tinui, tentus, retain. I, 18, 4.  
 re-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, drag or call back. V, 1, 16.  
 re-vellō, -ere, velli, vulsus, bear away or out. I, 52, 11; VII, 73, 11.  
 re-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, and re-vertor, -ī, versus sum, return. I, 7, 20.  
 re-vinciō, -ire, vinxi, vinctus, fasten. III, 13, 9.  
 re-vocō, 1, recall; withdraw. II, 20, 3.  
 rēx, rēgis, m., king. I, 31, 32; II, 4, 18.  
 Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine. I, 1, 10.  
 Rhodanus, -ī, m., the Rhone. I, 1, 16.  
 rīpa, -ae, f., bank. I, 6, 15.  
 rivus, -ī, m., small stream.  
 rōbur, -oris, n., oak. III, 13, 6.  
 rogō, 1, ask. I, 11, 5.  
 Rōma, -ae, f., Rome. I, 31, 29; VI, 12, 14.  
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman: as *subst.*, a Roman. I, 3, 12.  
 Rōscius, -ī, m., a *Roman nomen*. E. g., Lucius Roscius a *lieutenant of Caesar*.  
 rōstrum, -ī, n., beak, prow. III, 13, 18.  
 rota, -ae, f., wheel. I, 26, 10.  
 rubus, -ī, m., bramble. II, 17, 18.  
 Rūfus, -ī, m., a *cognomen*. See *Sulpicius*.  
 rūmor, -ōris, m., report. II, 1, 2.  
 rūpēs, -is, f., rock, cliff. II, 29, 6.  
 rūrsus, *adv.*, again. I, 25, 17.  
 Rutēni, -ōrum, m., a *Gallie tribe between the Cadurci and Gabali*. I, 45, 6; VII, 75, 11.

Rutilus, -i, m., VII, 90, 7

## S.

Sabinus, -i, m., II, 5, 20.  
 Sabis, -is, m., II, 18, 2.  
 sacerdos, -ōtis, m., priest.  
 sacramentum, -i, n., oath.  
 sacrificium, -i, n., sacrifice. VI, 13, 9.  
 saepe, *adv.*, often. I, 1, 8.  
 saepenumero, *adv.*, oftentimes. I, 33, 8.  
 saepes, -is, f., hedge. II, 17, 19.  
 saevio, 4, rage. III, 13, 21.  
 sagitta, -ae, f., arrow. IV, 25, 5.  
 sagittarius, -i, m., archer. II, 7, 2.  
 sagulum, -i, n., a small military or traveling cloak.  
 saltus, -ūs, m., forest, thicket, jungle.  
 salus, -ūtis, f., health; safety. I, 27, 11.  
 Samarobriua, -ae, f., a Gallic city, now Amiens.  
 sancio, -ire, sānxi, sānctus, ordain; ratify. I, 30, 17; VI, 20, 2.  
 sānctus, -a, -um, sacred. III, 9, 10.  
 sanguis, -inis, m., blood.  
 sānitās, -tātis, f., soundness (of mind or body). I, 42, 6.  
 sāno, 1, make sound, restore, heal.  
 Santoni, -ōrum, Santonēs, -um. I, 10, 8.  
 sānus, -a, -um, sound; sensible. V, 7, 17.  
 sapiō, -ere, -īvi, taste; be wise; discern.  
 sarcina, -ae, f., pack; luggage. I, 24, 8.  
 sarmentum, -i, n., brushwood. III, 18, 19.  
 satis, *adv. and adj.*, enough, sufficiently. I, 3, 7.  
 satis-faciō, -ere, feci, factus, satisfy; apologize. I, 14, 19.  
 satisfactiō, -ōnis, f., amends; apology. I, 41, 10.  
 saucius, -a, -um, wounded, hurt. III, 4, 12.  
 saxum, -i, n., rock, large stone. II, 29, 9.  
 scālae, -ārum, f., steps; ladder. VII, 81, 2.

Scaldia, -is, m., the Scheldt, a river of Belgic Gaul.  
 scapha, -ae, f., skiff. IV, 26, 9.  
 scelerātus, -a, -um, accursed. VI, 13, 18.  
 scelus, -eris, n., crime. I, 14, 15.  
 scientia, -ae, f., knowledge; experience. I, 47, 13; II, 20, 8.  
 scindō, -ere, scidi, scissus, split; destroy. III, 5, 4.  
 sciō, 4, know. I, 20, 3.  
 scorpiō, -ōnis, m., a military engine for hurling missiles.  
 scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, write. II, 29, 1.  
 scrobis, -is, m., f., pit. VII, 73, 15.  
 scūtum, -i, n., shield. I, 25, 7.  
 scēius, *adv.*, less. I, 49, 50; IV, 17, 23.  
 secō, -āre, secui, sectus, cut, cut off; reap.  
 secrētō, *adv.*, privately. I, 18, 6.  
 sectiō, -ōnis, f., cutting; booty. II, 33, 19.  
 sector, 1, follow eagerly, chase.  
 secundum, *prep. with acc.*, along; in accordance with. I, 32, 6; II, 18, 8.  
 secundus, -a, -um, following; favorable. I, 14, 15.  
 secūris, -is, f., axe. VII, 77, 50.  
 sed, *conj.*, but, yet. I, 12, 19.  
 sēdecim, *indecl. num.*, sixteen. I, 8, 5.  
 sēdēs, -is, f., seat; abode. I, 31, 37; IV, 4, 12.  
 sēditio, -ōnis, f., insurrection, meeting.  
 sēditiosus, -a, -um, mutinous. I, 17, 5.  
 Sedulius, -i, m., a chief of the Lemo, vices. VII, 88, 10.  
 Sedūni, -ōrum, m., III, 1, 3.  
 Sedusiī, -ōrum, m., I, 51, 9.  
 seges, -etis, f., growing grain, crop.  
 Sēgni, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe.  
 Segonax, -acis, m., V, 22, 4.  
 Segontiaci, -ōrum, m., V, 21, 2.  
 Segūsiāvi, -ōrum, m., I, 10, 17.  
 semel, *adv.*, once. I, 31, 17.  
 sēmentis, -is, f., planting, sowing. I, 3, 4.

**sēmita**, -ae, *f.*, lane, foot-path. V, 19, 9.  
**semper**, *adv.*, always. I, 18, 18.  
**Semprōnius**, -i, *m.*, see Rutulus, VII, 90, 7.  
**senātor**, -ōris, *m.*, elder; senator. II, 28, 8.  
**senātus**, -ūs, *m.*, senate. I, 3, 12.  
**senex**, *senis*, *adj.*, old: as *subst.*, old man. I, 29, 8.  
**sēni**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*, six each. I, 15, 15.  
**Senonēs**, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe about modern Sens. II, 2, 5.  
**sententia**, -ae, *f.*, opinion; decision. I, 45, 1; II, 10, 16.  
**sentio**, -ire, *sēnsi*, *sēnsus*, *perceive*. I, 18, 2.  
**sentis**, -is, *m.*, briar; thorn. II, 17, 18.  
**sēparātim**, *adv.*, separately. I, 19, 18.  
**sē-parō**, 1, separate. IV, 1, 14.  
**septem** (VII), *card. num.*, seven. IV, 23, 18.  
**septentrionēs**, -um, (*Septentriō -ōnis*) *m.*, the North. I, 1, 18.  
**septimus**, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, seventh. I, 10, 16.  
**septingenti**, -ae, -a, *card. num.*, seven hundred. V, 13, 15.  
**septuāgintā**, *indecl. num.*, seventy. IV, 12, 13.  
**sepultūra**, -ae, *f.*, burial. I, 26, 17.  
**Sēquana**, -ae, *m.*, the Seine. I, 1, V.  
**Sēquani**, -ōrum, *m.*, I, 1, 17.  
**sequor**, -i, *secūtus sum*, follow. I, 4, 3.  
**Ser.**, abbrev. for **Servius**.  
**sermō**, -ōnis, *m.*, conversation. VI, 13, 19.  
**sērō**, *adv.*, late.  
**sero**, -ere, *sēvi*; **satus**, sow, plant. V, 14, 4.  
**Sertōrius**, -i, *m.*, III, 23, 11.  
**servilis**, -e, of a slave. I, 40, 16; VI, 19, 9.  
**serviō**, 4, be a slave; heed. IV, 5, 11.  
**servitūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, slavery. I, 11, 7.  
**Servius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman *praenomen*. III, 1, 1.  
**servō**, 1, save; watch. II, 33, 5.  
**servus**, -i, *m.*, slave, servant. I, 27, 7.

**sēsqui-pedālīs**, -a, of a foot and a half. IV, 17, 8.  
**seu**, see *sive*. I, 23, 8.  
**sevēritas**, -tātis, *f.*, gravity, sternness, severity.  
**sē-vocō**, 1, call apart. V, 6, 14.  
**sēvum**, -i, *n.*, tallow, suet, grease.  
**sēx**, *card. num.*, six. I, 27, 8.  
**sexāgintā** (LX), *card. num.*, sixty. II, 4, 16.  
**sexcenti**, -ae, -a, *card. num.*, six hundred. II, 8, 12.  
**Sextius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman *nomen*. *e. g.*, (1) P. Sextius Baculus, a *centurion*. II, 25, 8. (2) T. Sextius, one of Caesar's lieutenants. VII, 90, 10.  
**sī**, *conj.*, if, I, 7, 20.  
**Sibuzātēs**, -um, *m.*, III, 17, 4.  
**sic**, *adv.*, so, thus. I, 38, 7; II, 4, 2.  
**siccitās**, -tātis, *f.*, drought. IV, 38, 4.  
**sicubi**, *adv.*, if in any place, if anywhere, wheresoever. V, 17, 6.  
**sic-ut**, (-utī), *adv.*, so as, just as. I, 44, 26; VI, 26, 3.  
**sidus**, -eris, *n.*, star; constellation. VI, 14, 17.  
**signifer**, -erī, *m.*, standard-bearer. II, 25, 6.  
**significātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, signal; meaning. II, 33, 12.  
**significō**, 1, indicate. II, 7, 11.  
**signum**, -i, *n.*, signal; standard. I, 25, 19.  
**Silānus**, -i, *m.*, a *cognomen*. See **Iūnius**.  
**silentium**, -i, *n.*, silence. VII, 71, 18.  
**Silius**, -i, *m.*, a Roman *nomen*. *E. g.*, T. Silius. III, 7, 12.  
**silva**, -ae, *f.*, forest. I, 12, 12.  
**silvestris** (-ter) -tre, wooded. II, 18, 6.  
**similis**, -e, like.  
**similitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, likeness. VII, 73, 22.  
**simul**, *adv.*, at once, at the same time. I, 19, 16.  
**simulācrum**, -i, *n.*, image. VI, 18, 9.  
**simul-atque**, see **simul**.  
**simulātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, deceit. I, 40, 32; IV, 13, 12.

**simulō**, 1, feign. I, 44, 34; IV, 4, 12.  
**simultās, -tātis**, *r.*, dissension, rivalry.  
**sīn**, *conj.*, but if. I, 13, 11.  
**sincērō**, *adv.*, candidly, uprightly.  
**sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without. I, 7, 10.  
**singulāris**, -e, remarkable. II, 24, 12.  
**singulātīm**, (*singill-*), *adv.* one by one. III, 2, 9.  
**singuli**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each; single; each. I, 6, 4.  
**sinister**, -tra, -trum, left. I, 25, 9.  
**sinistrōsus** (-um), *adv.*, to the left. VI, 25, 6.  
**sinō**, -ere, *sivī*, *situs*, permit. IV, 2, 13.  
**sī quandō**, *adv.*, if ever. III, 12, 7.  
**situs**, -ūs, *m.*, situation. III, 12, 1.  
**sive** (*seu*), *conj.*, or if, whether. I, 12, 16.  
**socer**, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law. I, 12, 20.  
**societās, -tātis**, *r.*, association, alliance.  
**socius**, -ī, *m.*, associate; ally. I, 5, 13.  
**sōl**, **sōlis**, *m.*, the sun. I, 1, 21.  
**sōlācium**, -ī, *n.*, comfort, solace.  
**soldūrii**, -ōrum, *n.*, vassals. III, 22, 3.  
**sōlēō**, -ēre, *solitus sum*, be wont, be accustomed. VI, 15, 3.  
**sōlitudō**, -inis, *r.*, solitude; wilderness. IV, 18, 10.  
**sollertia**, -ae, *r.*, expertness, ingenuity.  
**sollicitō**, 1, incite. II, 1, 8.  
**sollicitūdō**, -inis, *r.*, anxiety  
**solum**, -ī, *n.*, soil. I, 11, 18.  
**solum**, *adv.*, only. I, 12, 19.  
**sōlus**, -a, -um, alone, only. I, 18, 4.  
**solvō**, -ere, *solvi*, *solutus*, loosen. IV, 23, 2.  
**sonitus**, -ūs, *m.*, sound, din.  
**sonus**, -ī, *m.*, sound.  
**soror**, -ōris, *r.*, sister. I, 18, 17.  
**sors**, -tis, *r.*, lot. I, 50, 13.  
**Sotiatēs**, (*Sont-*), -um, *m.*, III, 20, 12.  
**spatium**, -ī, *n.*, space, period. I, 7, 18.

**speciēs**, -ēi, *r.*, sight; appearance. I, 51, 5; II, 31, 2.  
**spectō**, 1, look, face. I, 1, 20.  
**speculātor**, -ōris, *m.*, spy. II, 11, 6.  
**speculātorius**, -a, -um, scouting. IV, 26, 10.  
**speculor**, 1, spy. I, 47, 19.  
**spērō**, 1, hope. I, 3, 24.  
**spēs**, -ei, *r.*, hope. I, 5, 7.  
**spiritus**, -ūs, *m.*, spirit; pride. I, 33, 21; II, 4, 9.  
**spoliō**, 1, strip, pillage, despoil.  
**spontis** *gen.*, *sponte* *abl.*, voluntarily. I, 9, 3.  
**stabilio**, 4, fix. VII, 73, 19.  
**stabilitās**, -tātis, *r.*, steadiness. IV, 33, 8.  
**statim**, *adv.*, immediately. I, 53, 21; II, 11, 5.  
**statiō**, -ōnis, *r.*, military post; sentries. II, 18, 8.  
**statuō**, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, set up; determine. I, 11, 15.  
**statūra**, -ae, *r.*, size; stature. II, 30, 9.  
**status**, -ūs, *m.*, position. VI, 12, 25.  
**stimulus**, -ī, *m.*, goad. VII, 73, 26.  
**stipendiarius**, -a, -um, under tribute: *as subst.*, tributary. I, 30, 11.  
**stipendium**, -ī, *n.*, tribute; pay; term of service. I, 36, 13.  
**stipes**, -itis, *m.*, log; stake. VII, 73, 10.  
**stirps**, -pis, *m.*, stock, root; source, race.  
**stō**, -āre, *steti*, *status*, stand. VI, 13, 16.  
**strāmentum**, -ī, *n.*, covering, straw, thatch.  
**strepitus**, -ūs, *m.*, uproar. II, 11, 2.  
**strūctūra**, -ae, *r.*, structure; mine. III, 21, 11.  
**studeō**, -ēre, -ui, be zealous for, desire. I, 9, 8.  
**studiōsē**, *adv.*, eagerly. VI, 28, 5.  
**studium**, -ī, *n.*, zeal, devotion. I, 19, 9.  
**stultitia**, -ae, *r.*, folly. VII, 77, 26.  
**sub**, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under. I, 7, 15.  
**sub-dolus**, -a, -um, subtle, crafty.  
**sub-dūcō**, -ere, *dūxi*, *ductus*, draw up or off; beach. I, 22, 8.



subductiō, -ōnis, *r.*, drawing up or on shore. V, 1, 6.  
 sub-eō, -ire, -ivī (ii), itus, go under, come up to; endure. I, 5, 8.  
 sub-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, ictus, hurl below or from beneath; subject. I, 26, 10.  
 sub-igō, -ere, -egī, -āctus, subdue; incite. VII, 77, 36.  
 subitō, *adv.*, suddenly. I, 39, 7; II, 19, 18.  
 sub-itus, -a, -um, unexpected. III, 7, 5.  
 sub-levō, lift up; assist. I, 16, 17.  
 sub-lica, -ae, *r.*, stake, pile. IV, 17, 12.  
 sub-luō, -ere, lui, lūtus, wash. VII, 69, 4.  
 sub-ministrō, 1, furnish. I, 40, 35; III, 25, 4.  
 sub-mittō, -ere, misi, missus, send up. II, 6, 14.  
 sub (sum-)moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, remove, dislodge. I, 25, 20.  
 sub-ruō, -ere, -rui, rutus, dig under. II, 6, 6.  
 sub-sequor, -i, secūtus sum, follow closely, pursue. II, 11, 12.  
 subsidium, -i, *n.*, reserves; aid. I, 52, 17; II, 6, 14.  
 sub-sido, -ere, -sēdī, sessus, sit down, settle, remain.  
 sub-sistō, -ere, stitī, withstand; remain. I, 15, 9.  
 sub-sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be beneath or near. I, 25, 12.  
 sub-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, with-draw. I, 44, 17.  
 subvēcīō, -ōnis, *r.*, carrying up; conveying.  
 sub-vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus, convey. I, 16, 6.  
 sub-veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus, come to help, aid, succor.  
 suc-cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessus, come up to; prosper. I, 24, 12.  
 suc-cendō, -ere, cendī, cēnsus, kindle. VI, 16, 10.  
 successus, -ūs, *m.*, approach. II, 20, 7.  
 suc-cidō, -ere, cidī, cīsus, cut down IV, 19, 2.

suc-cumbō, -ere, cubui, cubitus, yield. VII, 86, 5.  
 suc-currō, -ere, curri, cursus, run to help. VII, 80, 9.  
 sudis, -is, *r.*, pile, stake. V, 18, 6.  
 sūdor, -ōris, *m.*, sweat; hard labor, weariness.  
 Suēbī, -ōrum, *m.*, I, 37, 6; IV, 1, 5.  
 Suēbus, -a, -um, I, 53, 9.  
 Suessionēs, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe about modern Soissons. II, 3, 5.  
 suf (sub)-ficio, -ere, feci, factus, afford; suffice, be enough.  
 suf (sub)-fodiō, -ere, fodi, fossus [fodiō, dig], *a.*, dig under, stab or pierce underneath. IV, 12, 9.  
 suffrāgium, -i, *n.*, ballot. VI, 13, 24.  
 Sugambri, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe.  
 suggestus, -ūs, *m.*, platform, stage.  
 sui (*gen.*), *dat. sibi, acc. and abl. se* or *sēsē, reflex. pron. of 3d pers.*, (of, for, etc.) himself, themselves, etc. I, 1, 4.  
 Sulla, -ae, *m.*, a cognomen. See Cornelius.  
 Sulpicius, -i, *m.*, a Roman nomen. *E. g.*, P. Sulpicius Rufus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. IV, 22, 21.  
 sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be; live; stay. I, 1, 1.  
 summa, -ae, *r.*, chief point; sum total; control. I, 29, 6.  
 summus, -a, -um, highest; the top of. I, 16, 13. *As subst. N. sing.*, top, highest point.  
 sūmō, -ere, sūmpai, sūmptus, take; employ; inflict. I, 7, 20.  
 sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, expensive. VI, 19, 12.  
 sūmptus, -ūs, *m.*, expense. I, 18, 13.  
 super, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, above, over, on.  
 superbē, *adv.*, haughtily. I, 31, 43.  
 superior, -ius, upper; former. I, 10, 13.  
 superō, 1, surpass; remain. I, 17, 9.  
 super-sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus, refrain. II, 8, 3.  
 super-sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be over; survive. I, 23, 2.

sup(sub)-petō, -ere, -ivī, (ii), -itus, be at hand or in store. I, 3, 5.

supplémentum, -i, n., supplies, reinforcements.

supplex, -icis, suppliant. II, 28, 10. supplicatio, -ōnis, f., thanksgiving. II, 35, 11.

suppliciter, adv., humbly. I, 27, 4. supplicium, -i, n., punishment. I, 19, 11.

sup-portō, 1, bring to, furnish. I, 39, 25; III, 3, 10.

supra, adv. and prep. with acc., above, before. I, 24, 5.

sus-cipio, -ere, cōpi, ceptus, undertake; undergo. I, 3, 9.

suspectus, -a, -um, distrusted.

suspicio, -ōnis, f., suspicion. I, 4, 11.

suspisor, 1, distrust. I, 44, 34; IV, 6, 4.

sustentō, 1, hold up, support, sustain. II, 6, 4.

sustineō, -ēre, tinui, tentus, uphold; check; withstand. I, 24, 3.

suus, -a, -um, reflex. adj. pron., of himself, herself, etc., his own, etc., their own, etc., his, theirs. I, 1, 13.

## T.

T. abbrev. for Titus. I, 10, 8.

tabernaculum, -i, n., hut; tent. I, 39, 16.

tabula, -ae, f., board; tablet; list. I, 29, 1.

tabulatum, -i, n., flooring of boards; story.

taceō, 2, be silent. I, 17, 2.

tālea, -ae, f., rod, bar. V, 12, 9.

tālis, -e, such.

tam, adv., so. I, 14, 11.

tamen, conj., yet, nevertheless. I, 7, 18.

Tamesis, -is, m., the Thames. V, 11, 19.

tametsi (tamen etsi), conj. although. I, 30, 3.

tandem, adv., at length. I, 25, 11.

tangō, -ere, tetigi, tactus, touch. V, 3, 8.

tantopere, adv., so greatly. I, 31, 11.

tantulus, -a, -um, so small. II, 30, 9.

tantum, adv., only so much, only, merely, but. V, 19, 12.

tantummodo, adv., only. III, 5, 12.

tantundem, adv., just as great or far. VII, 72, 4.

tantus, -a, -um, so much, so great. I, 15, 8.

Tarbelli, -ōrum, m., III, 27, 3.

tardē, adv., slowly. IV, 23, 4.

tardō, 1, hinder. II, 25, 21.

tardus, -a, -um, slow. II, 25, 10.

Tarusātes, -ium, m., III, 23, 2.

Tasgetius, -i, m., a chief of the Car-  
nutes.

taurus, -i, m.; bull, ox. VI, 28, 3.

Taximagulus, -i, m., V, 22, 4.

taxus, -i, f., yew, yew-tree.

Tectosagēs, -um, m., VI, 24, 7.

tectum, -i, n., roof; house. I, 36, 18.

tegimentum, -i, n., covering. II, 21, 12.

tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus, cover. V, 18, 7.

tēlum, -i, n., javelin. I, 8, 16.

temerārius, -a, -um, rash. I, 31, 47; VI, 20, 5.

temerē, adv., rashly. I, 40, 6; IV, 20, 9.

temeritās, -tātis, f., rashness. VII, 77, 26.

tēmō, -ōnis, m., pole (of a wagon). IV, 33, 12.

temperantia, -ae, f., prudence, self control. I, 19, 11.

temperātus, -a, -um, moderate. V, 12, 15.

temperō, 1, moderate; restrain. I, 7, 17.

tempestās, -tātis, f., time; storm. III, 12, 13.

temptō(tentō), 1, attempt. I, 14, 9.

tempus, -oris, n., time. I, 3, 15.

Tencterī, -ōrum, m., IV, 1, 3.

tendō, -ere, tetendi, tēnsus(ten-  
tus), stretch. II, 13, 8.

tenebrae, -arum, f., darkness. VII, 81, 12.

teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, hold  
7, 13.

- tener, -era, -erum, tender. II, 17, 17.  
 tenuis, -a, slim, thin; slight, insignificant; inferior.  
 tenuitās, -tātis, *r.*, thinness; want, poverty; simplicity.  
 tenuiter, *adv.*, thinly, slightly. III, 13, 10.  
 ter, *num. adv.*, three times. I, 53, 21.  
 teres, -etis, rounded; smooth. VII, 73, 16.  
 tergum, -ī, *n.*, back; rear. I, 53, 2; III, 19, 10.  
 terni, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, by threes. III, 15, 2.  
 terra, -ae, *r.*, earth. I, 30, 6; III, 15, 11.  
 Terrasidius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman *nomen*. *E. g.*, T. Terrasidius, one of Caesar's officers. III, 7, 11.  
 terrēnus, -a, -um, of earth. I, 43, 2.  
 terreō, 2, frighten. VI, 20, 6.  
 territō, 1, alarm. V, 6, 15.  
 terror, -ōris, *m.*, fright. II, 12, 2.  
 tertius, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, third. I, 1, 2.  
 testāmentum, -ī, *n.*, will. I, 39, 18.  
 testimōnium, -ī, *n.*, proof. I, 44, 20; VI, 28, 8.  
 testis, -is, *m. r.*, witness. I, 14, 23.  
 testūdō, -inis, *r.*, tortoise; covered column; shed. II, 6, 7.  
 Teutomatus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the *Nitiobroges*.  
 Teutoni, -ōrum, (-ēs, -um), *m.*, I, 33, 17; II, 4, 7.  
 tignum, -ī, *n.*, log, timber.  
 Tigrinus, -a, -um, I, 12, 12.  
 timeō, -ēre, -ui, fear. I, 14, 7.  
 timidē, *adv.*, timidly. III, 25, 7.  
 timidus, -a, -um, affrighted. I, 39, 22.  
 timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear. I, 23, 8.  
 Titūrius, -ī, *m.*, II, 5, 19.  
 Titus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman *praenomen*. I, 10, 8.  
 tolerō, 1, endure; support. I, 28, 8.  
 tollō, -ere, sustuli, sub-lātus, lift up, elate; remove; destroy. I, 5, 7.  
 Tolōsa, -ae, *r.*, III, 20, 10.  
 Tōlōsātēs, -ium, *m.*, I, 10, 3.  
 tormentum, -ī, *n.*, hurting engine; torture. II, 8, 13.  
 torreo, -ēre, torrui, tostus, parch, roast, scorch.  
 tot, *indecl. num. adj.*, so many. III, 10, 5.  
 totidem, *indecl. num. adj.*, just the same number. I, 48, 12; II, 4, 21.  
 tōtus, -a, -um, the whole, all. I, 2, 6.  
 trabs, trabis, *r.*, beam; timber. II, 29, 9.  
 trā-dō, dere, didi, ditus, give over; intrust; transmit. I, 27, 10.  
 trā-dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, lead across. I, 11, 2.  
 trāgula, -ae, *r.*, Celtic dart. I, 26, 10.  
 trahō, -ere, trāxi, tractus, draw, drag. I, 53, 14.  
 traieciō, -iō, *m.*, passage. IV, 21, 6.  
 trā (trāns-) -iciō, -ere, ieci, iectus, hurl across; pierce. VII, 28, 4.  
 tranō, 1, swim across. I, 53, 5.  
 tranquillitās, -tātis, *r.*, stillness. III, 15, 8.  
 trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, beyond, over. I, 1, 10.  
 Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, across the Alps.  
 trāns-cendō, -ere, -di, cēnsus, climb across or into; board; surmount. III, 15, 8.  
 trāns-eō, ire, ivi, (ii), itus, go across. I, 5, 12.  
 trāns-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, carry across, transfer. VI, 13, 30.  
 trāns-figō, -ere, fixi, fixus, pierce through. I, 26, 7.  
 trāns-fodiō, -ere, fodi, fossus, dig or thrust through. VII, 82, 4.  
 trans-gredior, -ī, gressus sum, go over, cross. II, 19, 8.  
 transitus, -ūs, *m.*, crossing, passage.  
 trāns-marinus, -a, -um, across the sea. VI, 24, 12.  
 trāns-missus, -ūs, *m.*, sending across; passage. V, 13, 8.  
 trāns-mittō, -ere, misi, missus, send across.

**trans-portō**, 1, carry across; transport. I, 37, 4; IV, 16, 21.  
**Trāns-rhēnānus**, -a, -um, across the Rhine. IV, 16, 17.  
**trānstrum**, -ī, n., cross-beam; thwart. III, 13, 7.  
**trāns-versus**, -a, -um, athwart. II, 8, 11.  
**Trebius**, -ī, m., III, 7, 11.  
**Trebōnius**, -ī, m., V, 17, 5.  
**trecenti**, -ae, -a, *card. num.*, three hundred. IV, 37, 2.  
**trepidō**, 1, hurry with alarm, be disturbed or agitated.  
**trēs**, *tria*, *gen. trium*, *card. num.*, three. I, 1, 1.  
**Trēvir**, -eri, m., one of the Treveri. V, 26, 5. *Pl.*, the Treveri, a Celtic people. I, 37, 6; II, 24, 12.  
**Tribōcēs**, -um, (-ī, -ōrum), m., I, 51, 9; IV, 10, 7.  
**tribūnus**, -ī, m., tribune. I, 39, 10; II, 26, 2.  
**tribuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, assign; render. I, 13, 15.  
**tribūtum**, -ī, n., tribute. VI, 13, 5.  
**triduum**, -ī, n., three days. I, 26, 17.  
**triennium**, -ī, n., three years. IV, 4, 4.  
**Trinobantēs**, -um, m., V, 20, 1.  
**trini**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, by threes; triple. I, 53, 13.  
**tripertitō**, *adv.*, in three parts or divisions. V, 10, 1.  
**triplex**, -icis, three-fold. I, 24, 4.  
**triquetrus**, -a, -um, triangular. V, 13, 1.  
**tristis**, -e, sad, dejected. I, 32, 5.  
**tristitia**, -ae, f., sadness. I, 32, 7.  
**Troucillus**, -ī, m., a Gallic name, see Valerius.  
**truncus**, -ī, m., stem, trunk. IV, 17, 26.  
**tū**, *tui*, *pers. pron.*, you.  
**tuba**, -ae, f., trumpet. II, 20, 8.  
**tueor**, 2, look at; protect. IV, 8, 4.  
**Tulingi**, -ōrum, m., I, 5, 9.  
**tum**, *adv.*, then. I, 17, 1.  
**tumultuor**, 1, make a disturbance.  
**tumultuōsē**, *adv.*, in confusion, disorderly.  
**tumultus**, -ūs, m., uproar, revolt. I, 40, 16; II, 11, 2.

**tumulus**, -ī, m., mound. I, 43, 1; II, 27, 11.  
**tunc**, *adv.*, then, just then; thereupon.  
**turma**, -ae, f., squadron. IV, 33, 4.  
**Turonēs**, -um, (-ōrum), m., II, 35, 8.  
**turpis**, -e, disgraceful. I, 33, 11; IV, 2, 10.  
**turpiter**, *adv.*, basely. VII, 80, 16.  
**turpitūdō**, -inis, f., disgrace. II, 27, 5.  
**turris**, -is, f., tower. II, 12, 11.  
**tūtō**, *adv.*, safely. III, 13, 22.  
**tūtus**, -a, -um, safe. II, 5, 16.  
**tuus**, -a, -um, your, yours.

## U.

**ubi** (*ubi*), *adv.*, where; whenever; when. I, 5, 3.  
**Ubii**, -ōrum, m., I, 54, 8; IV, 3, 5.  
**ubique**, in any place, everywhere. III, 16, 5.  
**ulciscor**, -ī, *ultus sum*, avenge. I, 12, 20.  
**ullus**, -a, -um, any; *as subst.*, any one. I, 7, 11.  
**ulterior**, -ius, *comp. adj.*, farther; ulterior. I, 7, 4.  
**ultimus**, -a, -um, farthest. III, 27, 5.  
**ultrā**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, beyond. I, 48, 4.  
**ultrō**, *adv.*, beyond; of one's own accord. I, 42, 7; III, 27, 2.  
**ululātus**, -ūs, m., yell. VII, 80, 14.  
**umquam** (*unq-*), *adv.*, ever. I, 41, 8; III, 28, 4.  
**unā**, *adv.*, together or along with. I, 5, 11.  
**unde**, *adv.*, whence. I, 28, 6.  
**undecim**, *card. num.*, eleven. VII, 69, 11.  
**undecimus**, *ord. num.*, eleventh. II, 23, 9.  
**undique**, *adv.*, on all sides. I, 2, 7.  
**universus**, -a, -um, the whole. II, 33, 20.  
**ūnus**, -a, -um, *card. num.*, one. I, 1, 1.  
**urbānus**, -a, -um, of or in the city.  
**urbs**, *urbis*, f., city. I, 7, 8.  
**urgeo**, -ēre, *urssi*, *impel.* II, 27

**ūrus**, -ī, m., wild ox. VI, 28, 1.  
**Usipetēs**, -um, m., IV, 1, 2.  
**ūsītātus**, -a, -um, wonted, ordinary, familiar.  
**usque**, *adv.*, even to. I, 50, 7; III, 15, 12.  
**ūsus**, -ūs, m., use; advantage. I, 30, 5; II, 9, 18.  
**ut** (*utī*), *conj. with subj.*, that, in order that, to; so that, so as to; although; that not; *with indic. as adv.*, as, how. I, 2, 4.  
**uter**, *utra*, *utrum*, which (of two). I, 12, 3.  
**utroque**, *utraque*, *utrumque*, each (of two), both. I, 34, 3; II, 8, 9.  
**ūtilis**, -e, useful. IV, 7, 10.  
**ūtilitās**, -tātis, f., advantage. IV, 19, 17.  
**ūtor**, -ī, *ūsus sum*, use, enjoy; possess. I, 5, 10.  
**utrimque** (*utrin-*), *adv.*, on both sides. I, 50, 7; IV, 17, 18.  
**utrum**, *conj.*, whether. I, 40, 45.  
**uxor**, -ōris, f., wife. I, 8, 17.

## V.

**Vacalus**, -ī, m., the Waal. IV, 10, 3.  
**vacātiō**, -ōnis, f., exemption. VI, 14, 2.  
**vacō**, 1, be empty; lie waste. I, 28, 11.  
**vacuus**, -a, -um, empty; destitute. II, 12, 5.  
**vadum**, -ī, n., ford, shoal. I, 6, 9.  
**vāgīna**, -ae, f., sheath, scabbard.  
**vagor**, 1, roam, wander. I, 2, 13.  
**valeō**, -ēre, -uī, *valitūrus*, be strong; avail. I, 17, 4.  
**Valerius**, -ī, m., a Roman nomen. *E. g.*, (1) O. Valerius Troucillus, a Gallic interpreter. I, 19, 14. (2) O. Valerius Flaccus, Governor of Gaul 83 B. C. I, 47, 12. (3) C. Valerius Caburus, a Gaul in Caesar's army. I, 47, 11. (4) O. Valerius Proculus, son of No. 3. I, 47, 10. (5) L. Valerius Praeconinus, a Roman legate before Caesar. III, 20, 5. (6) O. Valerius Domotaurus, son of No. 3.  
**valētūdō**, -inis, f., state of health. VII, 78, 2.

**vallis** (*vallēs*), -is, f., vale, valley. III, 1, 14.  
**vallum**, -ī, n., rampart. I, 26, 8.  
**vallus**, -ī, m., stake, palisade. VII, 73, 18.  
**Vangionēs**, -um, m., I, 51, 9.  
**varietās**, -tātis, f., diversity. VI, 27, 2.  
**varius**, -a, -um, diverse. II, 22, 9.  
**vāstō**, 1, lay waste. I, 11, 7.  
**vāstus**, -a, -um, waste; boundless. III, 9, 22.  
**vāticinātiō**, -ōnis, f., divination. I, 50, 13.  
**vēctigal**, -ālis, n., tribute; revenue. I, 18, 9.  
**vēctigālis**, -e, tributary. III, 8, 7.  
**vēctōrius**, -a, -um, for transport. V, 8, 13.  
**vehementer**, *adv.*, violently. I, 37, 9; III, 22, 11.  
**vehō**, -ere, *vēxī*, *vēctus*, carry. I, 43, 5.  
**vel**, *conj.*, or, even. I, 6, 13.  
**Velānius**, -ī, m., III, 7, 12.  
**Vellavii**, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe, tributary to the Arverni. VII, 75, 9.  
**Vellaunodūnum**, -ī, n., a town of the Senones.  
**Veliocassēs**, -um, m., a Belgic tribe on the Seine. II, 4, 27.  
**velōcitās**, -tātis, f., swiftness. VI, 28, 4.  
**velōciter**, *adv.*, swiftly, speedily.  
**velōx**, -ōcis, swift, rapid. I, 48, 13.  
**vēlum**, -ī, n., veil; sail. III, 13, 9.  
**velut**, *adv.*, just as. I, 32, 12.  
**vēnātiō**, -ōnis, f., hunting. IV, 1, 17.  
**vēnātor**, -ōris, m., hunter. VI, 27, 8.  
**vēn-dō**, *dera*, *didī*, *ditus*, sell at auction. II, 33, 20.  
**Venelli** (*Unelli*), -ōrum, m., II, 34, 2.  
**Venetī**, -ōrum, m., II, 34, 2.  
**Venetia**, -ae, f., the country of the Veneti. III, 9, 24.  
**Veneticus**, -a, -um, Venetian. III, 18, 14.  
**venia**, -ae, f., indulgence, kindness, grace.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, come. I, 8, 9.  
 ventitō, 1, resort. IV, 3, 9.  
 ventus, -ī, m., wind. III, 13, 12.  
 vēr, vēris, n., the spring.  
 Verāgrī, -ōrum, m., III, 1, 3.  
 Verbigenus, -ī, m., I, 27, 9.  
 verbum, -ī, n., word. I, 20, 13.  
 Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., VII, 76, 12.  
 Vercingetorix, -igis, m., VII, 68, 1.  
 vereor, 2, fear. I, 19, 12.  
 vergō, -ere, incline. I, 1, 18.  
 Vergobretus, -ī, m., I, 16, 13.  
 vērisimilis, -e, probable. III, 13, 11.  
 vērō, *adv.*, in truth; indeed. I, 32, 14; II, 2, 9.  
 Veromandui, -ōrum, m., II, 16, 5.  
 versō, 1, be versatile or busy; employ.  
 versor, 1, dwell; be engaged. I, 48, 15; II, 1, 9.  
 versus, *adv.*, turned towards, facing.  
 versus, -ūs, m., turning; verse. VI, 14, 6.  
 Verticō, -ōnis, m., a Nervian, who carried dispatches from Cicero to Caesar.  
 vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, turn. I, 53, 2; III, 19, 10.  
 Verucloetius, -ī, m., I, 7, 9.  
 vērus, -a, -um, true. I, 18, 6.  
 verūtum, -ī, n., dart, javelin.  
 Vesontio, -ōnis, m., I, 38, 3.  
 vesper, -eri, m., evening. I, 26, 6.  
 vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours. VII, 77, 24.  
 vestigium, -ī, n., track; instant. IV, 2, 9.  
 vestiō, 4, clothe. V, 14, 4.  
 vestis, -is, f., clothing.  
 vestitus, -ūs, m., clothing. IV, 1, 22.  
 veterānus, -a, -um, old, veteran. I, 24, 5.  
 vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, forbid. II, 20, 13.  
 vetus, -eris, old. I, 13, 11.  
 vexillum, -ī, n., flag; standard. II, 20, 2.  
 vēxō, 1, harass. I, 14, 10.  
 via, -ae, f., way. I, 9, 1.

viātor, -ōris, m., traveller. IV, 5, 5.  
 vicēni, -ae, -a, *dist. num.*, twenty each. VI, 14, 7.  
 vicēsimus (vicēns-), -a, -um, *ord. num.*, twentieth.  
 viciēs, *num. adv.*, twenty times. V, 13, 19.  
 vicinitas, -tatis, f., neighborhood.  
 vicis, *gen.*, f., succession. IV, 1, 11.  
 victima, -ae, f., victim. VI, 16, 4.  
 victor, -ōris, m., conqueror. I, 31, 31; II, 24, 6.  
 victōria, -ae, f., victory. I, 14, 11.  
 victus, -ūs, m., living; food. I, 31, 41; VI, 22, 2.  
 vicus, -ī, m., village. I, 5, 4.  
 videō, -ere, vidi, visus, see: *in pass.*, seem. I, 6, 12.  
 Vienna, -ae, f., a Gallic city on the Rhone, now Vienna.  
 vigilia, -ae, f., I, 12, 8.  
 viginti, *card. num.*, twenty. I, 13, 4.  
 vimen, -inis, n., twig, withe. II, 33, 7.  
 vincio, -ire, vinxi, victus, bind. I, 53, 14.  
 vincō, -ere, vici, victus, conquer. I, 25, 19.  
 vinculum (vinclum), -ī, n., bond. I, 4, 2.  
 vindicō, 1, avenge. III, 16, 9.  
 vinea, -ae, f., shed. II, 12, 8.  
 vinum, -ī, n., wine. II, 15, 10.  
 violō, 1, outrage. VI, 23, 18.  
 vir, viri, m., man. II, 25, 8.  
 virgō, -inis, f., maiden, virgin. V, 14, 11.  
 virgultum, -ī, n., thicket; sprouts. III, 18, 19.  
 Viridomarus, -ī, m., VII, 76, 12.  
 Viridovix, -icis, m., III, 17, 3.  
 viritim, *adv.*, individually. VII, 71, 16.  
 Viromandui, -ōrum, m., II, 4, 27.  
 virtus, -ūtis, f., valor; virtue. I, 1, 12.  
 vis, vis, f., force; *pl.* power; supply. I, 6, 13.  
 vīta, -ae, f., life. I, 16, 14.  
 vitō, 1, avoid. I, 20, 20.  
 vitrum, -ī, n., glass; woad. I, 14, 5.

**vivō, -ere, vixī, victus**, live. IV, 1, 16.

**vīvus, -a, -um**, living. VI, 16, 10.

**vix, adv.**, with difficulty, scarcely. I, 6, 4.

**Vocātēs, -um, m.**, III, 23, 2.

**Vocciō (Voctiō), -ōnis, m.**, I, 53, 10.

**vocō, 1, call.** I, 19, 13.

**Vocontii, -ōrum, m.**, I, 10, 16.

**Volcae, -ārum, m.**, VI, 24, 7.

**Volcaciū, -ī, m.**, a Roman nomen.

*E. g.*, C. Volcaciū Tullus, one of Caesar's officers.

**volgō (vul-), adv.**, commonly; publicly. I, 39, 18; II, 1, 14.

**volgus, see vulgus.**

**volō, velle, voluī, wish, will.** I, 7, 20.

**voluntārius, -a, -um**, willing, of free will; *pl. as subst.*, volunteers.

**voluntās, -tātis, f.**, willingness; approval. I, 7, 12.

**voluptās, -tātis, f.**, pleasure. I, 53, 16; V, 12, 15.

**Volusōnus, -ī, m.**, III, 5, 7.

**Vosegus, -ī, m.**, Vosges Mountains. IV, 10, 1.

**voveō, -āre, vōvī, vōtus**, devote, vow. VI, 16, 5.

**vōx, vōcis, f.**, voice; cry; word. I, 32, 8; II, 13, 8.

**Vulcānus (Vol-), -ī, m.**, Vulcan. VI, 21, 5.

**vulgō, see volgo.**

**vulgus (vol-), -ī, n., m.**, the common people, rabble. I, 20, 9.

**vulnerō (vol-), 1, wound.** I, 26, 10.

**vulnus (vol-), -eris, n.**, wound. I, 25, 11.

**vultus (vol-), -ūs, m.**, countenance. I, 39, 6.









This book should be returned to  
the Library on or before the last date  
stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred  
by retaining it beyond the specified  
time.

Please return promptly.

~~WUC MAR 9 '30~~



